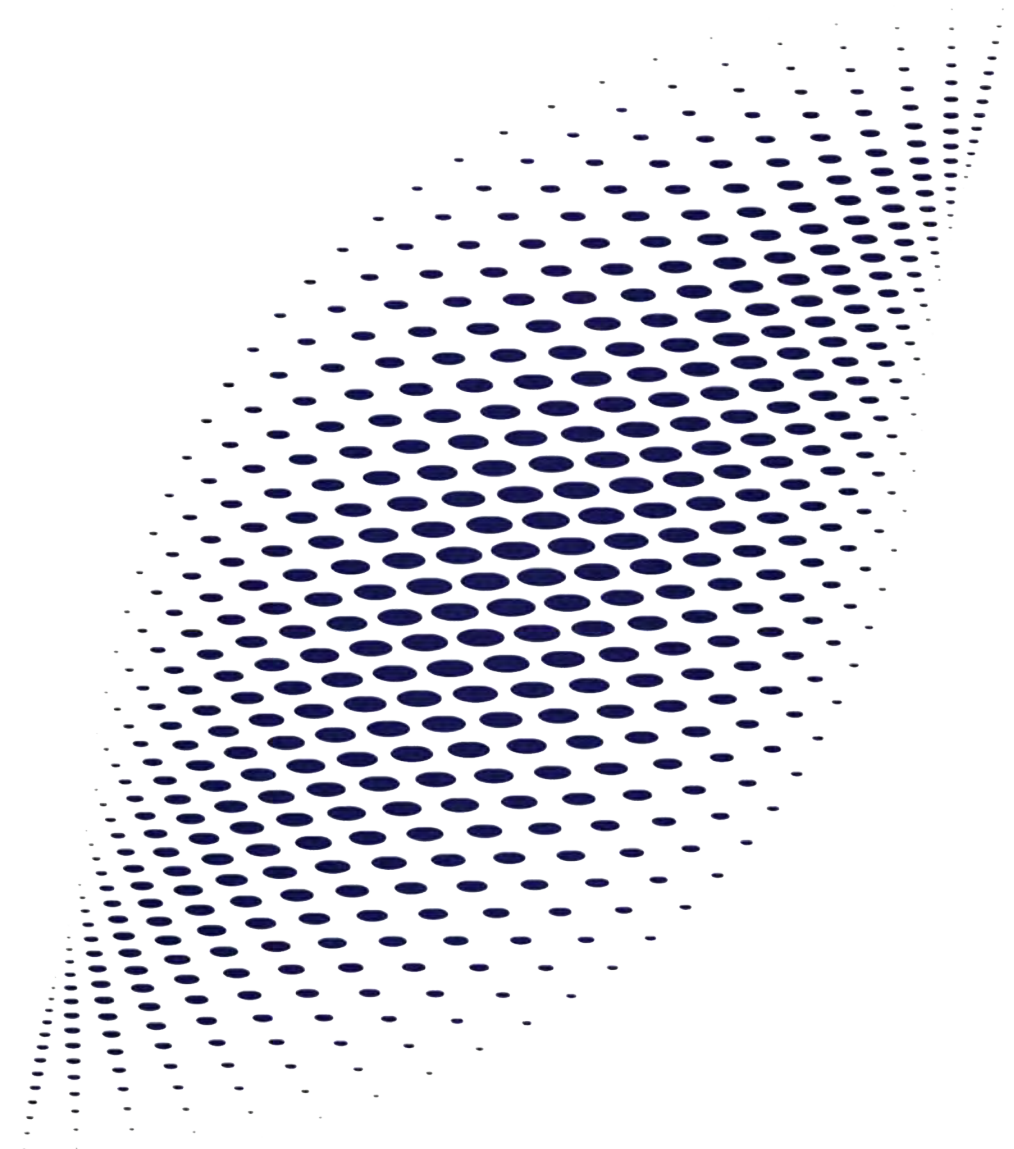


FORD **TOURNEO CONNECT / TRANSIT CONNECT** Owner's Manual

FORD **TOURNEO CONNECT / TRANSIT CONNECT** Owner's Manual



Owner's Manual
FORD TOURNEO CONNECT /
TRANSIT CONNECT
V2, R2, en_GB
Print status: 17.04.2025
English: 2025.07
part number: 2KF012720AG



2KF012720AG

The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stor-

ed in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2025

All rights reserved.

Introduction

WARNING

Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this publication. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.



Use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.



Pass on all printed owner's information when selling this vehicle.

Features and Options



This publication describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It could describe options that are not available on the vehicle you have purchased.

Illustrations



Some of the illustrations in this publication could show features as used in different models, so could appear different to you on your vehicle.



Table of Contents

Vehicle overviews

— Front view	8
— Rear view	9
— Rear view	10
— Driver door	11
— Driver side	12
— Centre console	14
— Front passenger side	16
— Controls in the roof	16

Driver information

— Symbols on the instrument cluster	17
— Warning and information messages	21
— Introduction to instrument cluster	22
— Digital instrument cluster Pro	22
— Digital instrument cluster Basic	27
— Rev counter	30
— Fuel gauge	31
— Coolant temperature display	31
— Driving data display	31
— Service	32
— Time and date	34
— Exit Vehicle menu	34
— Vehicle settings menu	34
— Drowsiness Monitor	35
— Attention Monitor	37
— Advanced Traffic Sign Display	40

Data protection

— Data recording	45
------------------	----

Safety

— Sitting position	48
— Seat belts	49
— Airbag system	56
— Safe transport of children	63
— In an emergency	74

Opening and closing

— Vehicle key	80
— Keyless Entry	83
— Doors and central locking button	87
— Anti-theft alarm	94
— Interior monitoring and anti-tow alarm	94
— Boot lid	95
— Wing doors	97
— Windows	98

Steering wheel

— Adjusting the steering wheel position	101
---	-----

Seats and head restraints

— Front seats	102
— Rear seats	106
— Head restraints	112
— Seat functions	114

Lights

— Vehicle lighting	116
— Fog lamps	120
— Parking lamps	121
— Light functions	123
— Interior lighting	124

Vision

— Wipers	125
— Mirrors	128
— Sun blind	131

Heating and air conditioning system

— Automatic Climate Control	132
— Manual air conditioning system	133
— Heating and fresh air system	133
— Climate Control menu in the Infotainment system	134
— Temperature control	134
— Air distribution and blower speed	135
— Defrost function	135
— Air recirculation mode	135
— Roof ventilator	136
— Seat heating	136
— Steering wheel heating	138
— Windscreen heating	139
— Rear window heating	139
— Automatic supplementary heating function	139
— Auxiliary heater and ventilation	140
— Remote control for the auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation	142
— Troubleshooting	145

Driving

— Steering	146
— Pedals	147
— Brakes	148
— Starting the engine	150
— Switching off the engine	156
— Auto StartStop	157

— Manual gearbox	159
— Automatic transmission	161
— Brake support systems	166
— Driving on uphill gradients	169
— Information on driving	170

Driver assist systems

— Information on sensors	176
— Cruise Control	178
— Speed Limiter	180
— Predictive speed limiter	181
— Eco Coach	184
— Adaptive Cruise Control	185
— Predictive cruise control	190
— Automatic Emergency Braking	193
— Lane-Keeping System	198
— Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring	201
— Driver State Assist	204
— Blind Spot Assist	206

Parking and manoeuvring

— Stopping the vehicle	209
— Auto Hold function	214
— Information on the parking systems	215
— Parking sensors	219
— Rear view camera system	221
— Active Park Assist	223
— Pro Trailer Backup Assist	227
— Cross Traffic Alert	229

Practical equipment

— Stowage	231
— Cigarette lighter	233
— Sockets and charging facilities for mobile devices	233

Data transmission

— Cyber security	239
— Over-the-air updates	240
— Wired and wireless connections	242
— Using the internet in the vehicle	245

Mobile online services

— Connected vehicle	247
---------------------	-----

Infotainment system

— Introduction	248
— Safety information	248
— Notes on use	251
— Brands, licences, copyright law	252
— Overview and operation of the Infotainment system	253

— Radio	258
— Media	261
— Navigation	264
— Mobile phone interface	271
— Ford Assistant	277
— Mobile Apps	279

Transporting items

— Stowing loads	283
— Load compartment cover	284
— Partition	286
— Load compartment equipment	291
— Towing bracket	293
— Trailer towing	297
— Rear carrier system (bicycle carrier)	303
— Roof load carrier	305

Fuel and emission control

— Safety information on using fuel	307
— Fuel types and refuelling	308
— Emission control	312

If and when

— Vehicle toolkit	320
— Wiper blades	321
— Changing lights	323
— Changing fuses	328
— Jump starting	333
— Transport and towing	336

Checking and refilling

— In the bonnet space	342
— Service fluids and equipment	345
— Washer fluid	346
— Engine oil	347
— Coolant	352
— Brake fluid	355
— 12-volt vehicle battery	357

Wheels and tyres

— Introduction	363
— Wheel and tyre maintenance	364
— Wheels and tyres in snow and ice	370
— Troubleshooting	372
— Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator	373
— Tyre Pressure Monitoring System	377
— Changing a wheel	381
— Breakdown set	391
— Tyre characteristics	396

Maintenance

— Vehicle care	400
----------------	-----

— Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts	406
--	-----

Customer information

— Declaration of conformity	410
— Radar sensors	410
— Infotainment system and antennas	410
— Component protection	411
— Third-party copyright information	411
— Information stickers and plates	411
— Fluids in the Climate Control system	412
— Information in accordance with the EU chemicals regulation	413
— Product recycling	413
— Returning and scrapping end-of-life vehicles	415
— Information on radio systems	415
— Declaration of Conformity for radio systems in countries outside the European Union (EU)	435

Technical data

— Notes on technical data	452
— Vehicle identification number (VIN)	452
— Position of the vehicle identification number (VIN)	453
— Type plate	454
— Safety certificate	454
— Dimensions	454
— Capacities	456
— Petrol engines	456
— Diesel engines	459

List of abbreviations	465
------------------------------	------------

Index	467
--------------	------------

About this Owner's Manual

This Owner's Manual is valid for all variants and versions of your Ford model and model year. The Owner's Manual describes all equipment and models without indicating whether the equipment is optional or specific to the model type. This means that your vehicle may not have some of the equipment described, or it may only be available in certain markets. The scope of equipment fitted in your vehicle can be found in the sales documentation, or you can contact a suitably qualified workshop for this information. An authorised dealer is recommended for this.

In addition, the effectiveness of systems can be significantly impaired if components and systems have been retrofitted, e.g. by second stage manufacturers. On vehicles with add-ons or modifications, the correct operation of system can then be impaired or adjusted. Have the second stage manufacturer confirm that the systems are functioning properly.

All data in this Owner's Manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to print. Because the vehicle is constantly being developed and further improved, there may be differences between your vehicle and the data in this Owner's Manual. No discrepancy in data, illustrations or descriptions shall form the basis for any legal claim.

An alphabetical [index](#) and a [list of abbreviations](#), which explains technical abbreviations and terms, help you to familiarise yourself with and understand the Owner's Manual.

[Short definitions](#) appear in a different colour before some sections of this manual to provide a summary of the relevant topic. More detailed information about the features, conditions and limitations of systems and equipment can be found in the relevant sections.



Explanations

The following section explains some phrases and terms used in the Owner's Manual to help you to understand them better.

Directions

Directions and positions such as left, right, front and rear are normally relative to the vehicle's direction of travel, unless otherwise indicated.

Dimensions and speeds

Values given in miles instead of kilometres or mph instead km/h refer to the country-specific instrument clusters or Infotainment systems.

Illustrations

Illustrations help with orientation and should be regarded as a general guide. The illustrations may differ from your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual was written for left-hand drive vehicles. In *right-hand drive vehicles*, the controls may sometimes be arranged differently to those displayed in illustrations or described in the text.

Form of address

For better legibility, the male form of address is used. However, this refers to all genders equally. The shortened linguistic form is used for editorial reasons and does not represent a value judgement.

Terms and their meanings:

Qualified workshop Qualified workshops are repairers that employ trained or qualified staff who specialise in performing service work on passenger cars. A qualified workshop can be either an authorised dealer or an independent workshop.

Authorised dealer Authorised dealers are workshops that have a contractual relationship with Ford Motor Company. The contractual relationship ensures that further information is available and that there is an additional direct communications channel to the manufacturer.

Go to a qualified workshop. In some situations you will have to take your vehicle to a qualified workshop to have it checked.

Seek expert assistance If it is not possible to continue driving the vehicle, you must have an expert check performed on the vehicle on the spot. A decision must then be taken as to whether the vehicle can continue to be driven after the check or if it has to be towed. This depends on the individual situation.



Description of symbols



Indicates a reference to a section within a chapter that contains important information and safety notes that should always be observed. The arrow indicates the end of a section.



The symbol indicates situations in which the vehicle must be stopped as quickly as possible.

TM

This symbol means "Trademark" and denotes a recognised but as yet not officially registered trademark. However, the absence of this symbol does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any term.



The symbol indicates a registered mark. However, the absence of this symbol does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any term.



This symbol means "Copyright" and indicates that the full rights of use are held by Ford Motor Company. In particular, any reproduction, distribution, storage and publication is prohibited without the prior consent of Ford Motor Company.



Symbols like this refer you to warnings within the same section or on a given page. They draw your attention to possible risks of accident or injury and explain how they can be avoided.



Cross reference to potential risks of damage to property in the same section or on the page specified.

DANGER

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which will lead to fatal or severe injuries if you do not observe the warning.

WARNING

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which could lead to fatal or severe injuries if you do not observe the warning.

CAUTION

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which could lead to slight or medium injuries if you do not observe the warning.

NOTICE

Texts with this symbol indicate situations which could cause vehicle damage if you do not observe the warning.



Texts with this symbol contain additional information on the protection of the environment.



Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Vehicle overviews

Front view

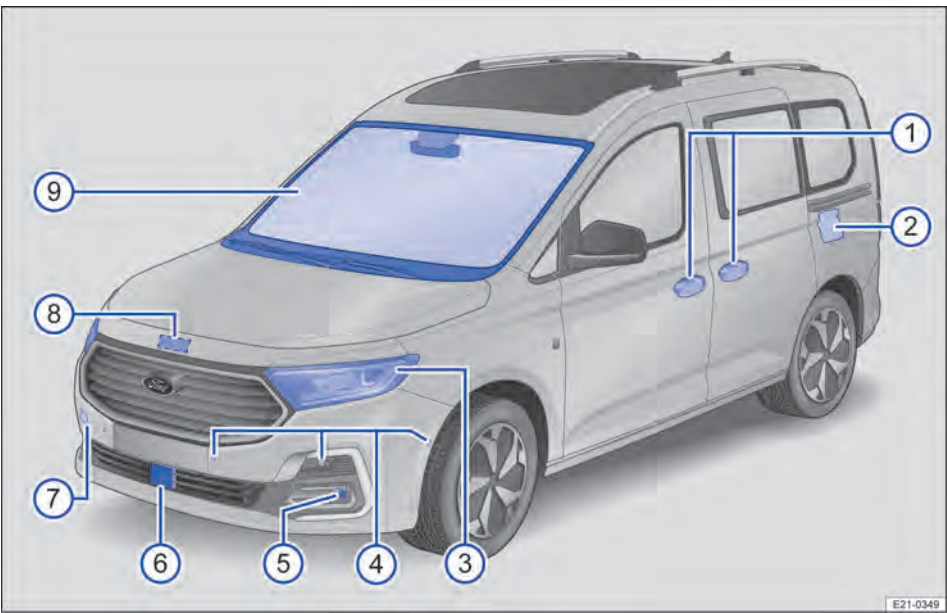


Fig.1 Overview of the front of the vehicle.

① Door handles	87
② Tank flap	308
③ Headlamps	323
④ Sensors for assist systems	402
⑤ Fog lamps	323
⑥ Radar sensor for assist systems	402
⑦ Behind a cover: mounting for towing eye	336
⑧ Lever for opening the bonnet	343
⑨ Windscreen:	
— with vehicle identification number	452
— with windscreen heating	139
— with windscreen wiper	125
— with camera window for assist systems	402
— with rain/light sensor positioned near the interior mirror	127, 402 ◀

Rear view

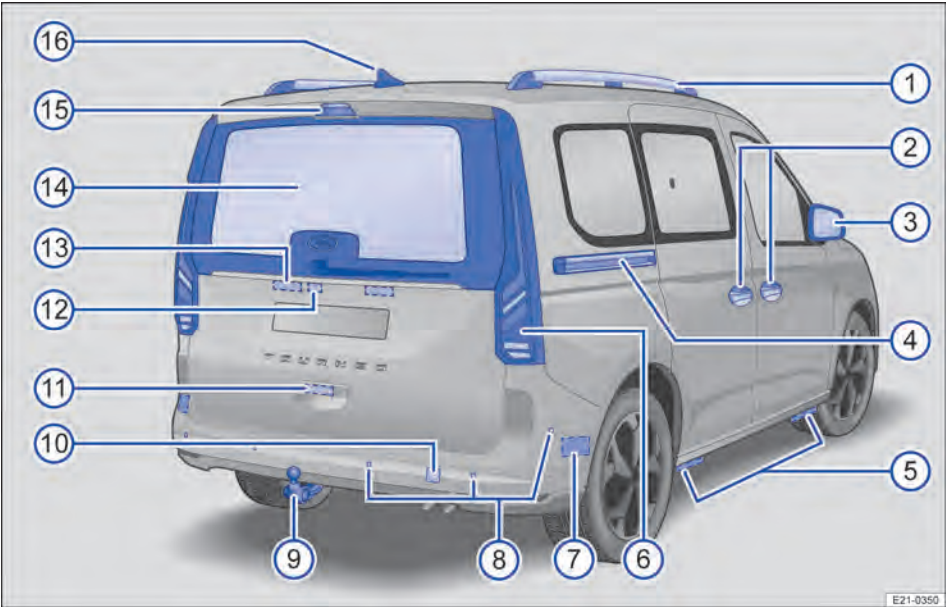


Fig. 2 Overview of the rear of the vehicle.

① Roof railing	305
② Door handles	87
③ Exterior mirrors	130
④ Side sliding door rail	
⑤ Jacking points	381
⑥ Tail lamp clusters and reflectors	116, 323
⑦ Behind the bumper: radar sensor for assist systems	402
⑧ Sensors for assist systems	402
⑨ Towing bracket (country-dependent)	297
⑩ Behind a cover: mounting for towing eye	336
⑪ Button for opening the boot lid	95
⑫ Camera for parking systems	221, 402
⑬ Licence plate lamp	323
⑭ Rear window:	
– with rear window heating	139
– with rear window wiper	125
⑮ High-level brake light	
⑯ Roof aerial	



Rear view

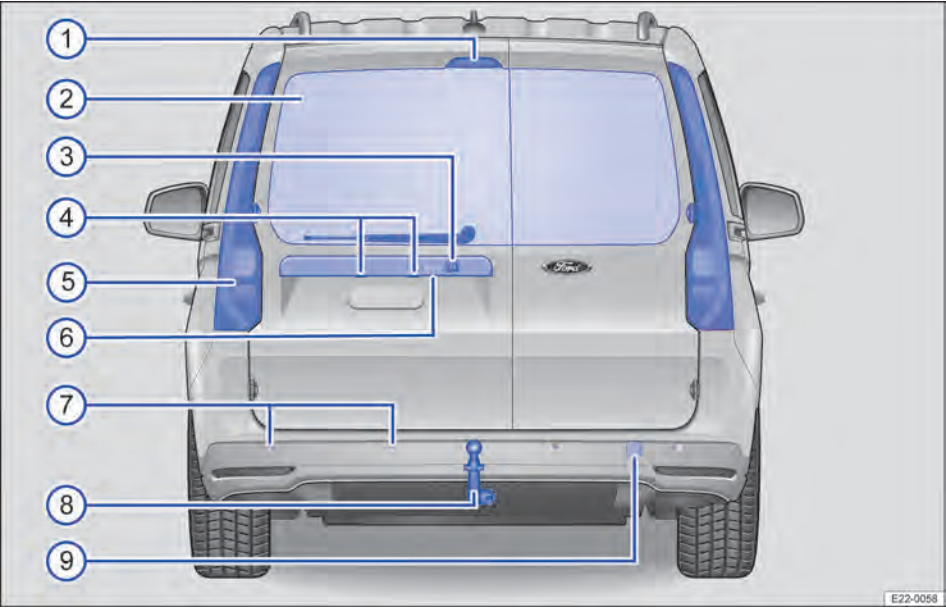


Fig. 3 Overview of vehicle rear with rear doors.

①	High-level brake light	
②	Rear window:	
	— with rear window heating	139
	— with rear window wiper	125
③	Camera for parking systems	221, 402
④	Licence plate lamp	323
⑤	Tail lamp clusters and reflectors	116, 323
⑥	Opening handle	87
⑦	Sensors for assist systems	402
⑧	Towing bracket (country-dependent)	297
⑨	Behind a cover: mounting for towing eye	336

Driver door

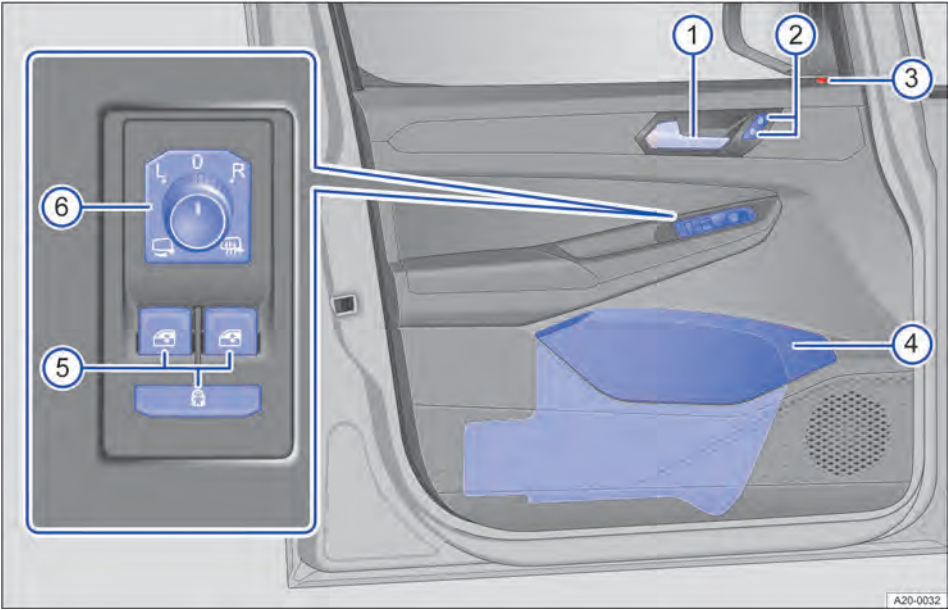


Fig. 4 Overview of controls in the driver door (left-hand drive vehicles).

①	Door release lever	
②	Central locking buttons for locking and unlocking the vehicle	89
③	Central locking system indicator lamp	88
④	Storage compartment with:	
	— Storage possibility for a high-visibility waistcoat	76
⑤	Buttons:	
	— For operating the electric windows	98
	— For adjusting the electric childproof lock	90
⑥	Rotary knob for exterior mirror adjustment and functions	130

Driver side

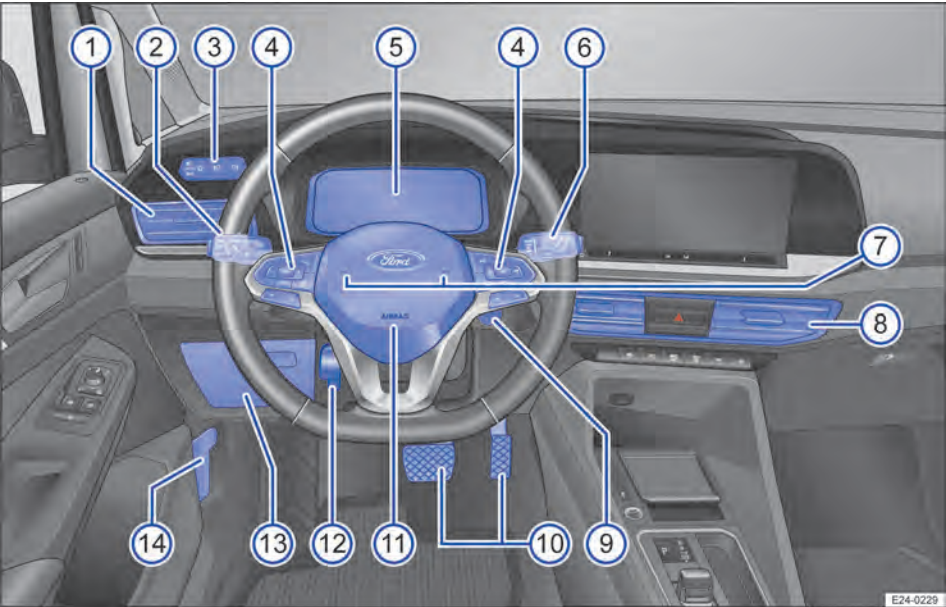


Fig. 5 Overview of driver side in left-hand drive vehicles.

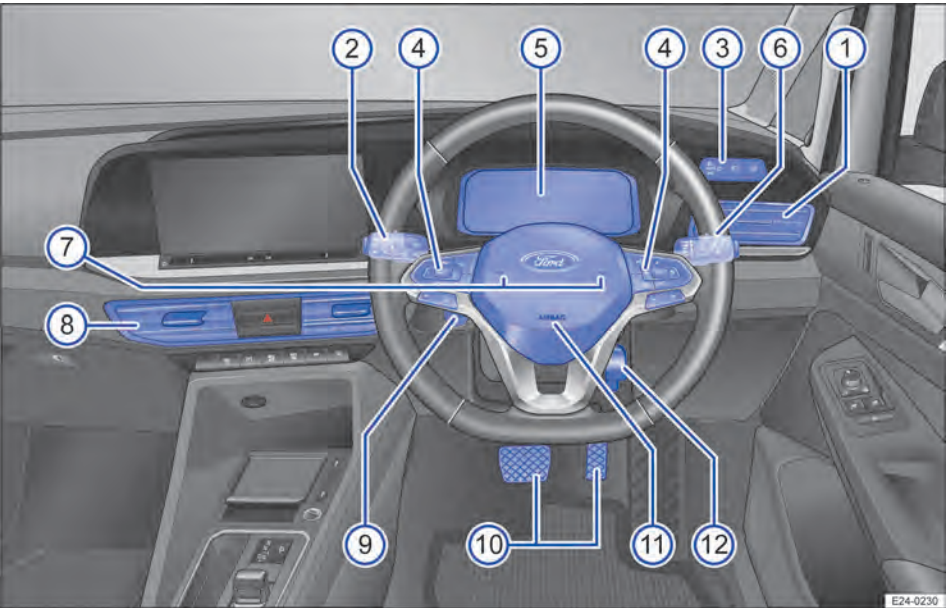


Fig. 6 Overview of driver side in right-hand drive vehicles.

① Vents	135
② Direction indicator and high beam headlamp lever	116, 118
③ Touch panel for light functions	116
④ Controls on the multifunction steering wheel:	
— for driver assistance systems	176
— for menu selection	34
— for accepting telephone calls	
— for audio, navigation	
— for volume adjustment	
— for activating voice control	
— to switch between the current and previous menus	34
⑤ Instrument cluster	17
— with warning and indicator lamps	17
⑥ Lever for wipers and washers	125
— With buttons for operating the menu	34
⑦ Horn	
⑧ Vents	135
⑨ Ignition lock	151
⑩ Pedals	147
⑪ Location of the driver front airbag	56
⑫ Lever for adjusting the steering column position	101
⑬ Stowage compartment	231
⑭ Bonnet release lever (on the left side in left-hand and right-hand drive vehicles).....	343



Centre console

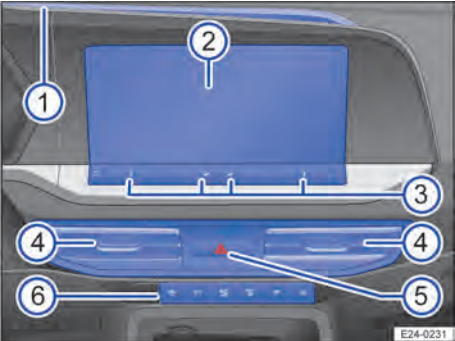


Fig. 7 Overview of the upper section of the centre console (left-hand drive vehicles).

① Shelf	231
② Infotainment system	248
③ Controls:	
— for switching the Infotainment system on and off	253
— for setting temperature of the Climate Control system or heating and fresh air system	134
— for volume adjustment	248
④ Vents	135
⑤ Button for switching the hazard warning lights off and on ▲	74
⑥ Controls:	
— for driver assistance systems	176
— for the Climate Control system, heating and fresh air system	132
— for assist systems for parking and manoeuvring	209

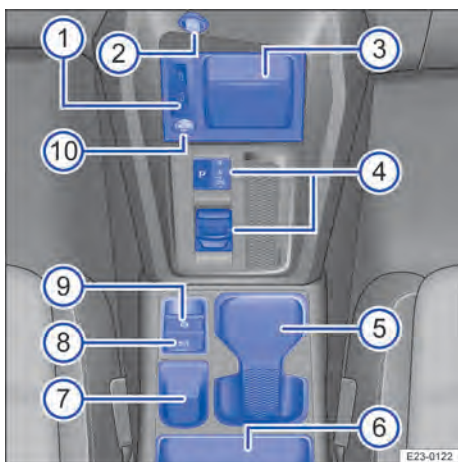


Fig. 8 Overview of the lower section of the centre console (left-hand drive vehicles).

① USB port	243
② Cigarette lighter or 12-volt socket	233, 233
③ Stowage compartment	231
④ Lever:	
— for manual gearbox	159
— for automatic transmission	161
⑤ Drink holder	231
⑥ Stowage compartment under the centre armrest	231
⑦ Stowage compartment	231
⑧ Button for Auto Hold function	214
⑨ Electric parking brake	210
⑩ Push button ignition switch for starting and switching off the engine	152 ◀

Front passenger side

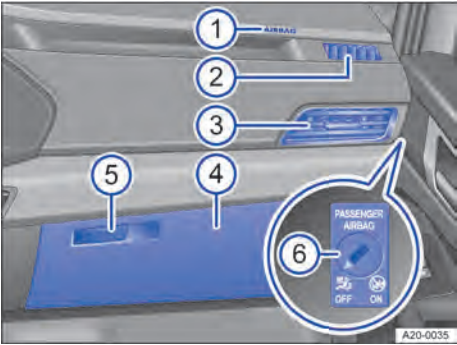


Fig. 9 Passenger side (left-hand drive vehicles): overview of the dash panel (mirrored for right-hand drive vehicles).

① Location of front passenger front airbag in the dash panel	58
② Vent	135
③ Adjustable vent	135
④ Glove box or open stowage compartment	231
⑤ Lever for opening the glove box	231
⑥ At the sides of the dash panel: Key switch for switching off the front passenger front airbag	56

Controls in the roof

Symbol	Meaning
 REAR	Buttons for interior and reading lights → page 124.
 ON OFF	Indicator lamp for the front passenger front airbag switch-off function → page 56.
 SOS	Button for the emergency call system→ page 77.

Driver information

Symbols on the instrument cluster

The warning and indicator lamps can light up individually or in combination and indicate warnings, faults or certain functions. Some warning and indicator lamps light up when the ignition is switched on and should go out after a short period of time.

You can find information on other indicator lamps, e.g. in switches or touch panels, in the respective chapters.

WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic and can cause accidents, serious injury and even death.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

Due to ongoing vehicle enhancement, the listed warning and indicator lamps may differ in their appearance in the vehicle after an update.

Symbol	Meaning
	Do not continue driving! Central warning lamp → page 21
	Fastening the seat belts → page 50
	Electric parking brake switched on → page 210
	Holding force of the electric parking brake is insufficient → page 210
	Button for electric parking brake faulty → page 212

Symbol	Meaning
	Do not drive on! Electric parking brake fault → page 212
	Do not drive on! Brake system fault → page 150
	Do not drive on! Brake fluid level low → page 357
	Do not drive on! Electromechanical brake servo failure → page 168
	Take control of the vehicle and be prepared to apply the brakes! → page 185, → page 216
	Do not drive on! Engine oil level too low → page 351
	Do not drive on! Engine oil pressure too low → page 351
	Do not continue driving! Engine coolant system or high-voltage cooling system faulty → page 355
	Do not drive on! Steering fault → page 147
	Do not drive on! Engine management system fault → page 154
	Do not drive on 12-volt power supply faulty → page 362
	Collision warning → page 194

Symbol	Meaning
	Take over steering immediately → page 204
	Driver State Assist is performing a control intervention, Lane Centring active → page 205
	Driver State Assist is performing a control intervention, Lane Centring passive → page 205
	AdBlue® level too low → page 317
	Do not drive on!
	Transmission overheated! → page 165
	Transmission faulty → page 165
	Obstacle detected at the rear → page 229
	Increased risk for traffic → page 39
	Acute risk for traffic → page 39
	Advancing fatigue detected → page 36
	Acute risk for traffic → page 37
	Fault in the selective catalytic reduction system → page 316
	Central warning lamp → page 21
	Seatbelt status indicator faulty → page 52
	Airbag or belt tensioner system switched off with diagnostic tool → page 57
	Airbag or belt tensioner system fault → page 52, → page 57
OFF 	Front passenger front airbag switched off → page 60
ON 	Front passenger front airbag switched on → page 59

Symbol	Meaning
	Emergency call system fault → page 79
	Vehicle key not in the vehicle → page 86
	Electric parking brake fault → page 212
	Electromechanical brake servo fault → page 168
	Check the brake pads → page 150
	Brake too hot → page 150
	Flashes: Electronic Stability Control (ESC) or Traction Control (TCS) is performing a control intervention → page 166
	Lit up: Electronic Stability Control (ESC) switched off for system-related reasons → page 166, → page 169
	Anti-lock brake system (ABS) fault → page 169
	Engine oil level too low → page 352
	Engine oil level too high → page 352
	Engine oil system fault → page 352
	Tank almost empty → page 31
	Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring not available → page 204
	Water in the diesel → page 31
	Vehicle lighting failure → page 120
	Rear fog light switched on → page 121
	Rain and light sensor fault → page 120, → page 127
	Wiper fault → page 127

Symbol	Meaning
	Washer fluid level too low → page 127
	Steering fault → page 147
	Low tyre pressure → page 376, → page 381
	Fault in the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System → page 377, → page 381
	Engine management system fault → page 155
	No or limited sensor visibility towards the front → page 178
	Automatic Emergency Braking not available or functions re- stricted → page 198
	Lane-Keeping System switch- ed off → page 200
	Automatic Emergency Braking deactivated → page 197
	Speed Limiter not available → page 181
	Cruise Control not available → page 180
	Adaptive Cruise Control not available → page 189
	Driver State Assist not availa- ble → page 206
	Lane-Keeping System not available → page 201
	Lane-Keeping System per- forming control intervention → page 201
	Blind Spot Assist fault → page 208
	Exhaust system fault → page 319
	Diesel engine preheating → page 155
	Particulate filter clogged with soot → page 318
	Engine speed limited → page 155

Symbol	Meaning
	AdBlue® level too low → page 317
	12-volt power supply faulty → page 362
	Danger of rolling away! P not possible → page 165
	Clutch faulty → page 161
	Transmission malfunction → page 165
	Clutch overheated → page 161
	Selector lever fault → page 165
	Clutch slipping → page 161
	Transmission in emergency mode → page 165
	Transmission overheated → page 165
	Auxiliary heater → page 141, → page 142
	Drowsiness Monitor is only available to a limited extent → page 37
	Drowsiness Monitor is not available → page 37
	Attention Monitor is only available to a limited extent → page 39
	Attention Monitor is not avail- able → page 39
	Advanced Traffic Sign Display not available → page 43
	Fault in the selective catalytic reduction system → page 316
	Depress the brake pedal! → page 165
	Auto-Hold function active → page 214
AUTO HOLD	Auto Hold function active → page 214
	Direction Indicators → page 120

Symbol	Meaning
	Trailer direction indicator → page 120
	Cruise Control switched on, system control active → page 178, → page 189
	Speed limiter switched on, control active → page 180
	Lane-Keeping System ready to perform control interven- tions → page 201
	Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring active → page 202
	Adaptive Cruise Control ac- tive, no vehicle detected ahead → page 188
	Adaptive Cruise Control ac- tive, vehicle detected ahead → page 188
	Speed regulation due to speed limit, example → page 183, → page 192
	Speed regulation due a left- hand bend → page 192
	Speed regulation due to a right-hand bend → page 192
	Speed regulation due to a roundabout → page 192
	Speed regulation due to a junction → page 192
	Speed regulation due to lifting of the speed limit → page 192
	Main beam or headlight flash- er → page 118
	Automatic Main Beam Control switched on → page 119
	Cruise Control switched on, system control not active → page 178, → page 189
	Speed limiter switched on, system control not active → page 180

Symbol	Meaning
	Adaptive Cruise Control is not performing a control interven- tion, vehicle detected ahead. → page 188
	Adaptive Cruise Control is not performing a control interven- tion, no vehicle detected ahead → page 188
	Lane-Keeping System not ready to perform control inter- ventions → page 201
	Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring passive, Dis- tance Indication active, Lane Centring passive → page 202
	Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring deactivated → page 202
	Central warning lamp → page 52
	Seat not occupied → page 51
	Outside temperature below +4 °C (+39 °F) → page 25, → page 29
	Seat is occupied → page 51
	Auto StartStop active → page 157
	Auto StartStop not available → page 157
	Service due → page 33
	Fatigue detected → page 36
	Driver inattentive → page 39
	Advanced Traffic Sign Display partially deactivated → page 44
	Automatic Main Beam Control active → page 119
	Take over steering → page 204
	Automatic Emergency Braking starting up → page 198

Symbol	Meaning
	Distance warning → page 194
	Maximum speed limit active → page 26, → page 29
	AdBlue® level too low → page 317
	Fault in the selective catalytic reduction system → page 316
	Mobile phone battery charge level → page 27, → page 30
	Reference to information in the owner's manual → page 21
	Speed regulation due to a left-hand bend → page 184, → page 192
	Speed regulation due to a right-hand bend → page 184, → page 192
	Speed regulation due to a junction → page 184, → page 192
	Speed regulation due to a roundabout → page 184, → page 192
	Speed regulation due to lifting of the speed limit → page 192
	Take foot off accelerator → page 184
	Motorway exit ahead → page 184
	Downhill gradient ahead → page 184
	Speed limit ahead, example → page 183, → page 184, → page 192
	Vehicle in front → page 184
	Steering wheel heating → page 138
	Rear seat warning muted → page 209

Symbol	Meaning
	Mobile telephone connected via Bluetooth® → page 27, → page 30

Warning and information messages

The system runs a check on certain components and functions in the vehicle when the ignition is switched on or while the vehicle is in motion. Malfunctions are indicated by red and yellow warning symbols with information messages on the instrument cluster display. An acoustic warning is also given in certain cases. What the information messages and symbols look like can vary depending on the version of the instrument cluster.

In addition, a list of current malfunctions can be opened manually. To do so, open the **Vehicle status** or **Vehicle** menu → page 34.

Priority 1 warning message

The red central warning lamp flashes or lights up, in some cases together with acoustic warnings or additional symbols. **Do not drive on!** Danger. Check the fault. Seek expert assistance immediately.

Priority 2 warning message

The yellow central warning lamp flashes or lights up, in some cases together with acoustic warnings or additional symbols. Malfunctions and insufficient service fluids can damage the vehicle and cause it to break down. Check the fault as soon as possible. Immediately consult a suitably qualified workshop and have the system checked.

Reference to information in the Owner's Manual

You can find further information on the warning message in the Owner's Manual.

Information message

Information about various procedures within the vehicle.

i If several warning reports are detected, the symbols will appear for several seconds, one after another. The symbols will continue to appear until the faults are rectified.

i If warning messages about malfunctions are displayed when the ignition is switched on, it may not be possible to adjust some settings or display information as described. If the fault persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

Introduction to instrument cluster

The vehicle is fitted with a digital instrument cluster. The instrument cluster indicates basic information, such as speed.

The following functions may also be available, depending on the equipment:

- Display messages.
- Information on fuel economy and range.
- Status displays for the driver assistance systems.
- Various menus, e.g. For driver assistance systems.
- Warning and indicator lamps.

You can use these menus to customise the content and adjust the settings.

⚠ WARNING

Operating the instrument cluster and Infotainment system can distract you from

the road. If the driver is distracted when driving, this can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always drive with your full attention and responsibly.
- Operate the instrument cluster and the Infotainment system only when the vehicle is stationary or if the traffic situation permits.

⚠ WARNING

The display may be switched off if there is a serious fault in the instrument cluster.

The red **⚠** central warning lamp may additionally light up. Warnings can no longer be displayed. This can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic and can cause accidents, serious injuries and even death.

- Park the vehicle in a safe place.
- Seek assistance from a suitably qualified workshop.

i You may find that system settings, such as personal convenience settings and programming, have been changed or deleted when you start the engine after the 12-volt vehicle battery has been fully discharged, replaced or after a jump start. Check and correct the settings as necessary once the 12-volt vehicle battery has been sufficiently charged.

i When the outside temperature is low, the display in the instrument cluster may take slightly longer to appear than it does when the outside temperature is higher.

Digital instrument cluster Pro

Overview of Digital Cockpit Pro

The Digital Cockpit Pro is a Pro version of the digital instrument cluster with extended functions and a high-resolution TFT colour display. In addition to the standard round instruments such as the rev counter, it is also possible to choose various second-

dary displays to view additional data. Depending on equipment, it is also possible to display the navigation map. The term “digital instrument cluster Pro” is used below to refer to the Digital Cockpit Pro.

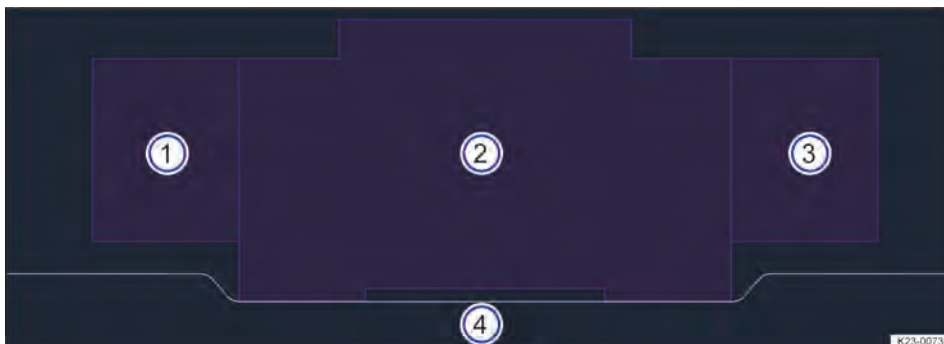


Fig. 10 In the dash panel: digital instrument cluster Pro (illustration).

- ① Secondary displays and pop-ups: situation-dependent information (e.g. driver assistance system status).
- ② Main display area.
- ③ Secondary displays.
- ④ Status display, e.g. engaged gear selector position.

Operating the digital instrument cluster Pro



Fig. 11 Right side of the multifunction steering wheel: operating the digital instrument cluster Pro (illustration).

If any priority 1 warnings are displayed, you will be unable to open any menus → page 21, *Warning and information messages*. You can confirm and hide some

warnings using the **OK** button on the multifunction steering wheel → Fig. 11.

Views in the display area

Various views are available in the display area:

Classic Display of the round instruments (rev counter and digital speedometer).

Special Display of a central round instrument (rev counter).

Minimal Display of a minimalist view (digital speedometer and, depending on equipment, information on active Driver assistance systems).

Main display

In the **Classic** view, you can place the focus on various main displays:

Driving data Display of current driving time, current distance covered, average speed and average and current consumption.

Driver assist systems Display of active driver assist systems.

Navigation Navigation map and route guidance information.

Changing the view and main display

1. To switch between the **Classic** and **Special** views and change the focus of the main display, press the **(VIEW)** repeatedly until the desired display is shown.
2. To change to the **Minimal** view, press the **(VIEW)** button and hold for a few seconds.

Extending the main display

You can hide the round instruments and secondary displays in order to extend the main display and show more information.

1. Press the **(VIEW)** button repeatedly until the desired main display is shown.
2. Press the **(OK)** button to hide round instruments and secondary displays.
3. To return to the main display in the **Classic** view, press the **(OK)** button again.

Or: if you are in the **Navigation** extended main display in Zoom mode of the navigation map:

1. To return to the main display in the **Classic** view, press the **(VIEW)** button.

Selecting secondary displays

1. Select the right or left secondary display area with the **(←)** or **(→)** button.
2. Select the desired secondary display with the arrow buttons **(▲)** and **(▼)**.
3. Confirm the selection with the **(OK)** button.

Configuring secondary displays

You can configure the secondary displays according to your preferences in order to select which secondary displays are available:

1. Press the **(VIEW)** button repeatedly until the main display is shown for which you would like to configure the secondary display.
2. Select the right or left secondary display area with the **(←)** or **(→)** button.

3. Use the arrow buttons **(▲)** and **(▼)** to navigate to the **Settings** menu and open this menu.
4. To change the secondary display, press the **(OK)** button.
A tick **☑** indicates that the corresponding secondary display is activated.
5. To return to menu selection, press the **(←)** or **(→)** button.

i The secondary displays can be configured or hidden independently of each other.

i Depending on equipment, some systems can be operated via the secondary displays. For example, you can start route guidance to an already entered destination.

Navigation map in the digital instrument cluster Pro

Depending on equipment, the digital instrument cluster Pro may display a detailed navigation map.

The size of the navigation map can be steplessly adjusted both in the **Navigation** main display and in its extended main display. To select the preferred map size:

1. To open the **Navigation** main display, press the **(VIEW)** button on the multifunction steering wheel. If necessary, switch to the extended main display with the **(OK)** button.
2. To zoom in and out to the desired size in the navigation map, press the arrow buttons **(▲)** or **(▼)**.
3. To return to the original map size directly after adjusting the map size, press the **(OK)** button.

i A display with information on the vehicle status, e.g. total mileage, is shown before starting and after switching off the engine.

i If warnings about malfunctions are displayed when the ignition is switched on, it may not be possible to adjust some settings as described, or the information display may appear different. If the fault persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

WARNING

Operating the instrument cluster can distract you from the road. If the driver is distracted when driving, this can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always drive with your full attention and responsibly.
- Operate the instrument cluster only when the vehicle is stationary or if the traffic situation permits.

Information displays on digital instrument cluster Pro

Possible displays in the main display area of the digital instrument cluster Pro

The main displays depend on the vehicle equipment and may display different information for the respective equipment → page 22:

- Outside temperature display.
- Recognised traffic signs of the Traffic Sign Recognition function.
- Driver assistance systems → page 176.
- Gear-change indicator → page 171.
- Open doors, bonnet and boot lid or rear door.
- Speed warning for winter tyres.
- Maximum speed limit.
- Infotainment system and navigation information.
- Radiator fan run-on.
- Engine code.
- Range → page 31.
- Service interval display.
- Time.
- Selector lever position for automatic transmission.
- Warning and information messages.
- Warning and indicator lamps.

Outside temperature display

If the outside temperature falls below approximately +4°C (around +39°F), the temperature display also shows a snow-

flake symbol ❄. This symbol remains lit until the outside temperature rises above +6°C (+43°F).

In the following situations, the temperature displayed may be higher than the actual outside temperature as a result of the heat radiated from the engine.

- When the vehicle is stationary.
- When the auxiliary heater is being used.
- When travelling at very low speeds.

The measuring range is between -45°C (-49°F) and +76°C (+169°F).

WARNING

Roads may be icy at low outside temperatures, also above freezing. There is an increased risk of accidents on icy roads. This can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Drive with particular care if the ❄ symbol is displayed on the instrument cluster display.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather and road or traffic conditions.
- Never rely only on the outside temperature display.

Gear-change indicator

While the vehicle is in motion, the gear-change indicator may show which gear should be selected to reduce fuel consumption → page 171.

Open doors, bonnet and boot lid or rear door

The digital instrument cluster Pro indicates if any doors, the bonnet or boot lid or rear door are open once the vehicle has been unlocked and while the vehicle is in motion. In some cases, an acoustic warning is also given.

Speed warning for winter tyres

A display in the digital instrument cluster Pro indicates when you have exceeded the set maximum speed.

Speed warning settings can be adjusted in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system.

Maximum speed limit

The customer-specific maximum speed limit limits the vehicle speed to a fixed maximum speed that cannot be exceeded. This maximum speed can be set only by a suitably qualified workshop.

When you start the engine with a set maximum speed limit, the  indicator lamp is displayed on the instrument cluster. The set maximum speed is also displayed in a text message.

WARNING

A set maximum speed limit can make overtaking more difficult. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always adapt your speed and driving style to the set maximum speed.
- Note that the maximum speed limit cannot be cancelled by the kickdown function.

Radiator fan run-on

This display appears after the engine has been switched off if the radiator fan is in after-run mode.

A run-on time of the radiator fan may be due to the following:

- Exhaust gas treatment, e.g. during particulate filter regeneration.
- Active brake cooling after driving downhill.
- Dissipation of engine heat after a high load, e.g. when towing.

Engine code

1. Open the Service menu → page 32.
2. Select the **Engine code** menu option.

Selector lever position for automatic transmission

The selected position and, depending on driving profile, the selected gear are displayed both on the selector lever and in the instrument cluster. The gear shift pattern is displayed in the instrument cluster when the brake is pressed or the selector lever operated → page 161.

Possible secondary displays in the digital instrument cluster Pro

Depending on equipment, a configuration menu can be used to configure and display additional views in the secondary display of the digital instrument cluster Pro

→ page 22:

- Operating temperatures.
- Driving data displays, e.g. **Driving time/Distance covered**.
- Digital compass.
- Charge pressure.
- Power.
- Selective wheel torque control.
- Navigation information.
- Telephone.
- Destination information.

Operating temperatures

The following operating temperatures may be displayed, depending on the vehicle equipment:

- Engine oil.
- Coolant.
- Gearbox.

Digital compass

If the **Compass** secondary display is activated, the current compass direction in which you are driving is shown as a blue arrow with a representation of the vehicle in combination with a compass.

Selective wheel torque control

The secondary display **Torque distribution** shows the currently present torque individually for each wheel.

Navigation information

When route guidance is active, the direction of travel is displayed in the **Navigation information** secondary display by an arrow symbol.

The submenu contains the home address and a list of recent destinations. You can start route guidance using the **OK** button → page 264.

Telephone

If the **Telephone** secondary display is activated and a mobile telephone is connected via Bluetooth®, for example, the Bluetooth symbol  is shown in the digital instrument cluster Pro display. In addition, the  symbol shows the charge level of the mobile phone battery

The submenu contains a list of the most recent calls and permits the displayed contacts to be called back.

Destination information

When route guidance is active, the **Destination information** secondary display

shows the expected journey time and the distance to the destination in km or miles.

 Some notifications in the digital instrument cluster Pro may be overridden by sudden events, e.g. incoming telephone calls.

 Depending on the vehicle equipment level, some settings and displays may also appear in the Infotainment system. 

Digital instrument cluster Basic

Overview of Digital Cockpit Basic

The Digital Cockpit Basic is a basic version of the digital instrument cluster with a high-resolution TFT colour display. In addition to the standard round instruments such as the rev counter, it is also possible

to choose various secondary displays to view additional data. The term “digital instrument cluster Basic” is used below to refer to the Digital Cockpit Basic.

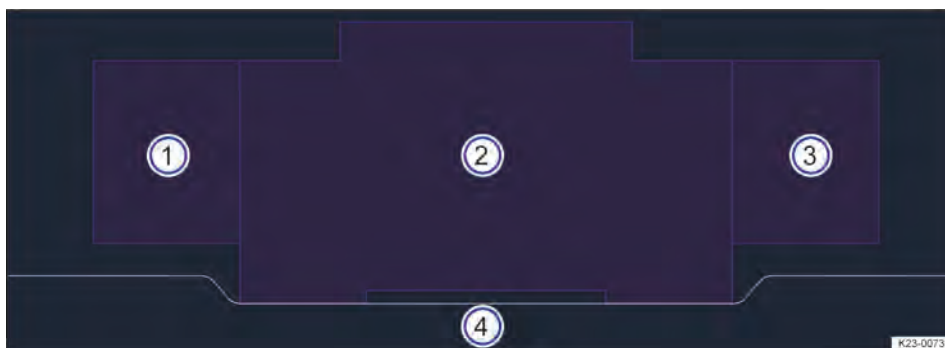


Fig. 12 In the dash panel: digital instrument cluster Basic (illustration).

- ① Secondary displays and pop-ups: situation-dependent information (e.g. driver assistance system status).
- ② Main display area.
- ③ Secondary displays.
- ④ Status display, e.g. engaged gear selector position.

Operating the digital instrument cluster Basic



Fig. 13 Right side of the multifunction steering wheel: operating the digital instrument cluster Basic (illustration).

If any priority 1 warnings are displayed, you will be unable to open any menus → page 21, *Warning and information messages*. You can confirm and hide some warnings using the **OK** button on the multifunction steering wheel → Fig. 13.

Adjusting views in the display area

You can manually adjust the views for speedometer, rev counter or driver assistance in the display area.

1. Press the **VIEW** button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Classic Central display of the round instrument views for speedometer or rev counter.

Modern Central display of the driver assistance systems view.

i A display with information on the vehicle status, e.g. total mileage, is shown before starting and after switching off the engine.

Selecting secondary displays

1. Select the right or left secondary display area with the **⏏** or **⏏** button.
2. Select the desired secondary display with the arrow buttons **⬆** and **⬇**.
3. Confirm the selection with the **OK** button.

Showing or hiding secondary displays

1. Hold down the **VIEW** button.

Configuring secondary displays

You can configure the secondary displays according to your preferences in order to select which secondary displays are available in the secondary display area:

1. Select the right or left secondary display area with the **⏏** or **⏏** button.
2. Use the arrow buttons **⬆** and **⬇** to navigate to the **Settings** menu and open this menu.
3. Press the **OK** button to make your changes.

A tick ☒ indicates that the corresponding secondary display is activated.
4. To return to menu selection, press the **⏏** or **⏏** button.

i The secondary displays can be configured or hidden independently of each other.

i If warning messages about malfunctions are displayed when the ignition is switched on, it may not be possible to adjust some settings or display information as described. If the fault persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Operating the instrument cluster can distract you from the road. If the driver is distracted when driving, this can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always drive with your full attention and responsibly.
- Operate the instrument cluster only when the vehicle is stationary or if the traffic situation permits.

Information displays on digital instrument cluster Basic

Possible displays in the main display area of the digital instrument cluster Basic

The main displays depend on the vehicle equipment and may display different infor-

- mation for the respective equipment → page 27:
- Outside temperature display.
- Recognised traffic signs of the Advanced Traffic Sign Display function.
- Driver assistance systems → page 176.
- Gear-change indicator → page 171.
- Open doors, bonnet and boot lid or rear door.
- Speed warning for winter tyres.
- Maximum speed limit.
- Infotainment system information.
- Radiator fan run-on.
- Engine code.
- Range → page 31.
- Service interval display.
- Time.
- Warning and information messages.
- Warning and indicator lamps.
- Selector lever position for automatic transmission.

Outside temperature display

If the outside temperature falls below approximately +4°C (around +39°F), the temperature display also shows a snowflake symbol ❄. This symbol remains lit until the outside temperature rises above +6°C (+43°F).

In the following situations, the temperature displayed may be higher than the actual outside temperature as a result of the heat radiated from the engine.

- When the vehicle is stationary.
- When the auxiliary heater is being used.
- When travelling at very low speeds.

The measuring range is between -45°C (-49°F) and +76°C (+169°F).

WARNING

Roads may be icy at low outside temperatures, also above freezing. There is an increased risk of accidents on icy roads. This can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Drive with particular care if the ❄ symbol is displayed on the instrument cluster display.

- Always adapt your speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather and road or traffic conditions.
- Never rely only on the outside temperature display.

Gear-change indicator

While the vehicle is in motion, the gear-change indicator may show which gear should be selected to reduce fuel consumption → page 171.

Open doors, bonnet and boot lid or rear door

The digital instrument cluster indicates if any doors, the bonnet or boot lid or rear door are open once the vehicle has been unlocked and while the vehicle is in motion. In some cases, an acoustic warning is also given.

Speed warning for winter tyres

A display in the digital instrument cluster indicates when you have exceeded the set maximum speed.

Speed warning settings can be adjusted in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system.

Maximum speed limit

The customer-specific maximum speed limit limits the vehicle speed to a fixed maximum speed that cannot be exceeded. This maximum speed can be set only by a suitably qualified workshop.

When you start the engine with a set maximum speed limit, the  indicator lamp is displayed on the instrument cluster. The set maximum speed is also displayed in a text message.

WARNING

A set maximum speed limit can make overtaking more difficult. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always adapt your speed and driving style to the set maximum speed.
- Note that the maximum speed limit cannot be cancelled by the kickdown function.

Radiator fan run-on

This display appears after the engine has been switched off if the radiator fan is in after-run mode.

A run-on time of the radiator fan may be due to the following:

- Exhaust gas treatment, e.g. during particulate filter regeneration.
- Active brake cooling after driving downhill.
- Dissipation of engine heat after a high load, e.g. when towing.

Engine code

1. Open the Service menu → page 32.
2. Select the **Engine code** menu option.

Selector lever position for automatic transmission

The selected position and, depending on driving profile, the selected gear are displayed both on the selector lever and in the digital instrument cluster. The gear shift pattern is displayed in the instrument cluster when the brake is pressed or the selector lever operated → page 161.

Possible secondary displays in the digital instrument cluster Basic

Depending on equipment, a configuration menu can be used to configure and display additional views in the secondary display of the digital instrument cluster → page 27:

- Operating temperatures.
- Driving data displays, e.g. **Driving time/Distance covered**.
- Telephone.

Operating temperatures

The following operating temperatures may be displayed, depending on the vehicle equipment:

- Engine oil.
- Coolant.
- Gearbox.

Telephone

If the **Telephone** secondary display is activated and a mobile telephone is connected via Bluetooth®, for example, the Bluetooth

symbol is shown in the digital instrument cluster display ⑧. In addition, the  symbol shows the charge level of the mobile phone battery

The submenu contains a list of the most recent calls and permits the displayed contacts to be called back.

 Some displays on the digital instrument cluster may be overridden by sudden events such as incoming telephone calls.

 Depending on the vehicle equipment level, some settings and displays may also appear in the Infotainment system. <

Rev counter

Vehicles with a manual gearbox: It is advisable to change up a gear or lift your foot off the accelerator before the needle reaches the red zone.

Vehicles with an automatic transmission: You should change to the next higher position, engage selector lever position **D/S** or lift your foot off the accelerator before the needle reaches the red zone.

NOTICE

The needle on the rev counter should only briefly point into the red area, as engine damage may otherwise be incurred. Heavy loads on the engine, particularly when the engine is cold, can cause engine damage.

- When the engine is cold, avoid high engine speeds, strong acceleration and high engine loads.



Changing up a gear early will help to save fuel and reduce engine noise. <

Fuel gauge

Overview of fuel gauge



Fig. 14 In the digital instrument cluster: fuel gauge (illustration).

i A small arrow next to the petrol pump symbol in the fuel gauge shows you the side of the vehicle on which the tank flap is located.

Troubleshooting

Fuel tank almost empty

The indicator lamp lights up yellow. The reserve volume (red marking) is being consumed.

1. Refuel at the next opportunity
→ page 311.

Depending on equipment: when the  indicator lamp lights up, the auxiliary heater and the fuel-powered supplementary heater switch off automatically.

Water in the diesel fuel

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

1. Reduce speed immediately and go to a suitably qualified workshop.
Or: if the indicator lamp lights up at the start of the journey immediately after the last refuelling, **do not continue driving!** Switch off the engine and go to a qualified workshop immediately.

WARNING

When the fuel level is too low, the fuel supply to the engine could be irregular and lead to the engine stuttering or switching off, especially when driving up or down hills and inclines. The steering, all

driver assist systems and brake support systems will not function if the engine stops due to a lack of fuel or irregular fuel supply. This can cause breakdowns in traffic, accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Check that the fuel tank is always sufficiently filled.
- Always refuel if the fuel tank is only 1/4 full.

NOTICE

Irregular fuel supply can cause misfiring and allow unburnt fuel to enter the exhaust system.

- Never run the fuel tank completely dry. <

Coolant temperature display

Digital coolant temperature display

Depending on equipment, the coolant temperature display can be displayed in the secondary displays on the digital instrument cluster.

If the  warning lamp lights up red, the coolant temperature is too high for the engine or the coolant level is too low for the engine → page 352. <

Driving data display

The multifunction display (driving data display) shows driving and fuel consumption data (e.g. driving time, distance travelled). Several driving data views are available in the secondary display area.

Different driving data can be selected depending on the vehicle equipment level. The driving data displayed depend on the current driving behaviour, the vehicle status, e.g. particulate filter regeneration, and the current driving situation, e.g. urban traffic. The driving data is calculated as an average value over sections of varying length. Consequently, the value currently displayed may differ from the actual average value.

Since start memory

The memory collects travel and fuel economy data from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. The memory will be deleted if the trip is interrupted for more than two hours.

Long-term memory

The memory collects the driving values for a driving time of up to 100 hours or a distance covered of 9999.9 km (mi). The memory is deleted if one of these maximum values is exceeded.

Since refuelling memory

Display and storage of the collected driving and fuel economy values. The memory is deleted when the tank is refilled

Resetting driving data displays in the instrument cluster

1. Press the  or  button.
2. Using the arrow buttons  or , select the desired driving data display in the configuration menu.

An arrow after the entry in the configuration menu indicates that a submenu is available.

3. Select **Reset data** in the submenu and confirm with the  button.

Resetting the trip recorder

1. Touch the **Vehicle** function button in the Infotainment system.
2. In the **Vehicle** menu, touch the **Status** function button.
3. Tap the **Distance covered** function button.
4. Tap the  function button to reset the value.

AdBlue® range or Range

Approximate calculation of the distance in km (miles) that the vehicle can still travel with the current AdBlue® level if the same driving style is maintained. If it is possible to increase the range by refilling, the required refill quantity is also displayed.

WARNING

Operating the instrument cluster and Infotainment system can distract you from the road. If the driver is distracted when driving, this can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always drive with your full attention and responsibly.
- Operate the instrument cluster and the Infotainment system only when the vehicle is stationary or if the traffic situation permits.

Service

Service menu

Settings can be made in the Service menu depending on the vehicle equipment.

Opening the Service menu

1. Select the **Driving time/Distance covered** information profile in the secondary displays.
2. Depending on the selected secondary display area, press and hold the  or  button on the multifunction steering wheel for around 6 seconds.
3. Navigate in the menu using the arrow buttons  and .

Opening the service interval status

1. Select the **Service** menu.
An overview of the remaining distance and days until the next maintenance or oil change service is shown in the instrument cluster display.

Resetting maintenance

1. Select the **Reset maintenance** menu.
2. Follow the instructions on the instrument cluster display.

Resetting oil change service

1. Select the **Reset oil service** menu.
2. Follow the instructions on the instrument cluster display.

Displaying the engine code

1. Select the **Engine code** menu.
The engine code is shown on the instrument cluster display.

Setting the time

1. Select the **Time** menu.
2. Set the correct time with the arrow buttons  and .

Viewing copyright information

1. Select the **Copyright** menu.

Service interval display

Service events are displayed on the instrument cluster and in the Infotainment system.

Versions and displays can vary as different versions of the instrument cluster and Infotainment system are available.

In vehicles with a fixed oil change service interval, services take place at predefined intervals.

The service intervals are calculated on a custom basis in vehicles with flexible oil change service interval. An oil change service must only be carried out when required by the vehicle. The individual conditions in which the vehicle is used and the driver's personal driving style are taken into account. The service reminder is displayed 30 days before the service is due. The distance is rounded to the nearest 100 km and the remaining time is rounded to full days.

Service alert

If an oil change service or maintenance is due soon, a service alert will appear the next time the ignition is switched on.

The mileage or time shown corresponds to the maximum mileage or time that can still be driven before the next service.

Service event

For a scheduled oil change service or scheduled maintenance, an acoustic signal will be given when the ignition is switched on and a spanner symbol  may be displayed

played on the instrument cluster display for several seconds together with one of the following displays:

- **Maintenance due!**
- **Oil change service due!**
- **Oil change service and maintenance due!**

Accessing service schedules

You can access the current service schedule when the ignition is switched on, the engine is not running, and the vehicle is stationary:

1. Tap the  function button.
2. Select the  menu item and tap the  function button to display the service information.

Information on the service schedule can also be accessed via the Service menu → page 32.

Resetting the service interval display

If the service interval display was not reset after a service or maintenance, it can be reset as follows:

The service interval display can only be reset via the Service menu → page 32.

Do not reset the service interval display between service intervals, otherwise incorrect data may be shown.

If the oil change service interval was reset manually, the service interval display then also changes to a fixed service interval in vehicles with flexible oil change service.

 The service message will go out after a few seconds when the engine is running or you can press the  button on the multifunction steering wheel.

 If the 12-volt vehicle battery was disconnected for long periods in vehicles with flexible oil change service, the system cannot calculate the time at which the next service is due. The information shown in the service interval display may therefore be incorrect. If this is the case, then please observe the maximum service intervals. 

Time and date

Setting the time and date on the Infotainment system

1. Tap the **Settings** function button → page 34.
2. Select the **Time and date** menu option to set the time and date.

 The date is displayed only on the Infotainment system.

 The automatic time function may not be available or may be restricted depending on the equipment and country. Set the time manually in this case.

Exit Vehicle menu

You can use the exit menu to adjust some function settings before leaving the vehicle. The Exit Vehicle menu appears on the Infotainment system when you turn off the ignition.

The options shown depend on the equipment and may only be available under certain conditions. The adjustable functions might include:

- Auxiliary heater.
- Interior monitoring.

Hiding the menu

The Exit Vehicle menu is hidden automatically when you leave the vehicle.

1. To manually hide the exit menu, tap .

 The exit menu can be opened again by switching the ignition on and then immediately switching it back off again.

Setting

You can select the entries individually and arrange their order.

1. Tap .
2. Select the desired entries and re-arrange their order as required.
3.  must be tapped again.

Vehicle settings menu

You can switch individual functions and systems on and off and make settings in the vehicle settings of the Infotainment system.

General information on operating the unit

The activated functions are highlighted in colour.

Opening the Vehicle settings menu

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Switch on Infotainment system if necessary.
3. Tap the **Vehicle** function button, if available in your version.
4. Depending on the equipment: tap the **Vehicle** menu option and choose between the **Interior** or **Exterior** function buttons.
Or: select the  menu option.
5. Open the desired menu and make the desired setting.
6. To return to the home screen, tap the home button .

Systems settings and display of vehicle information

Depending on the version, information can be displayed or settings adjusted in the **Vehicle settings** menu:

- Depending on the equipment: 3D vehicle view (**Interior** or **Exterior**).
- Vehicle status.
- Driving data.

 When you start the engine after the 12-volt vehicle battery has been totally discharged or changed, system settings such as time, date, personal convenience settings, programming and also user accounts may have been changed or deleted. Check and correct the settings as necessary once the 12-volt vehicle battery has been sufficiently charged.

⚠ WARNING

Operating the Infotainment system can distract you from the road. If the driver is distracted when driving, this can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always drive with your full attention and responsibly.
- Operate the Infotainment system only when the vehicle is stationary or if the traffic situation permits.

Drowsiness Monitor

📖 Introduction



Fig. 15 On the instrument cluster display: Drowsiness Monitor symbol.

The Drowsiness Monitor informs the driver if their driving shows signs of tiredness.

The Drowsiness Monitor determines the driver's driving behaviour while driving and uses this information to evaluate the tiredness of the driver. If the system detects that the driver is tired, it provides a visual indication of this on the instrument cluster display by means of a warning or indicator lamp in combination with a supplementary text message and also issues an acoustic warning → page 36. The text message on the instrument cluster display is shown for around 4 to 6 seconds.

Function conditions

The driving behaviour is evaluated for the first time only at a speed of more than around 65 km/h (around 40 mph) and

then only at speeds above around 60 km/h (around 37 mph).

⚠ WARNING

The Drowsiness Monitor is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. The Drowsiness Monitor function therefore may not detect that the driver is tired in all situations and may not warn or may warn with a delay or in an undesired way. There is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is responsible at all times for their fitness to drive.
- Observe the system limits → page 35.
- Never drive a vehicle when you are tired.
- During long trips, take regular and sufficient breaks.
- Follow the information in the instrument cluster display, and respond according to the prompts → page 36.

System limits of the Drowsiness Monitor

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 35.

System limits of the Drowsiness Monitor

The Drowsiness Monitor has system-related limitations. The following conditions can limit the function of the Drowsiness Monitor, or prevent it from working altogether:

- Speeds below around 60 km/h (around 37 mph).
- Speeds above around 130 km/h (around 80 mph).
- Roads with bends.
- Poor roads.
- Adverse weather conditions.
- Road works.
- Sporty driving style.

- Towing a heavy or long trailer
→ page 297.
- The driver is distracted.

 The Drowsiness Monitor has been developed for use only when driving on motorways and good main roads.

Microsleep

No urgent warning is issued for microsleep.

Resetting the Drowsiness Monitor

The Drowsiness Monitor is reset in the following situations:

- The ignition is switched off.
- The driver seat belt is unfastened and the driver door is open.
- The vehicle has been stationary for longer than approximately 30 minutes.

Driving with the Drowsiness Monitor

 Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 35.

Switching on and off

Depending on country, the Drowsiness Monitor is always switched on when the engine is started.

If required, you can switch off the Drowsiness Monitor manually in the Infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assist systems** menu.
2. Switch the Drowsiness Monitor on or off in the corresponding submenu.

Adjusting the sensitivity

You can adjust the sensitivity of the Drowsiness Monitor manually and influence how quickly the system reacts to your driving behaviour.

In the Infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assist systems** menu.
2. Open **Drowsiness Monitor**.
3. Select sensitivity in the **Sensitivity** submenu.

Hiding messages via the multifunction steering wheel

1. Press the  button on the multifunction steering wheel.

WARNING

Operating the instrument cluster and Infotainment system can distract you from the road. If the driver is distracted when driving, this can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always drive with your full attention and responsibly.
- Operate the instrument cluster and the Infotainment system only when the vehicle is stationary or if the traffic situation permits.

Warning levels of the Drowsiness Monitor

 Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 35.

If the system detects that the driver is tired, it provides a visual indication of this on the instrument cluster display by means of a warning or indicator lamp in combination with a supplementary text message and an acoustic warning. A warning is issued in three levels.

Drowsiness Monitor – Level 1



The system has detected that the driver is starting to become tired. An acoustic warning sounds. A white indicator lamp appears together with a text message on the instrument cluster display. Consider taking a break.

Drowsiness Monitor – Level 2



Advancing fatigue detected. An acoustic warning sounds. A red warning lamp appears together with a text message on the instrument cluster display. Consider taking a break soon.

Drowsiness Monitor – Level 3



Acute risk detected.

An acoustic warning sounds. A red warning lamp appears together with a text message on the instrument cluster display. Acute risk to traffic. Stop your journey as quickly as possible and drive as a matter of urgency to the nearest place where it is possible to take a break.

Time-dependent information



The Drowsiness Monitor detects a journey time of 4.5 hours without a break and without recognised tiredness on the part of the driver. A white indicator lamp appears together with a text message on the instrument cluster display. Consider taking a break.

Troubleshooting

Please refer to at the start of the chapter on page 35.



The availability of the Drowsiness Monitor is restricted

An acoustic warning sounds. A yellow indicator lamp appears together with a text message on the instrument cluster display. The availability of the Drowsiness Monitor is restricted.

- Fault or malfunction. Switch off and restart the engine. Check the settings for Drowsiness Monitor in the Infotainment system.
- The system limits of the Drowsiness Monitor are not met → page 35.
- If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.



Drowsiness Monitor is not available

An acoustic warning sounds. A yellow indicator lamp appears in combination with the yellow central warning lamp. A text message is also displayed on the instru-

ment cluster display and in the **Vehicle status** menu.

- Fault or malfunction. Switch off and restart the engine. Check the settings for Drowsiness Monitor in the Infotainment system.
- The system limits of the Drowsiness Monitor are not met → page 35.
- If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

Attention Monitor

Introduction



Fig. 16 On the instrument cluster display: Attention Monitor symbol.

The Attention Monitor informs the driver if their driving behaviour indicates a lack of attention on the basis of the vehicle-related operating inputs.

The Attention Monitor evaluates the driver's vehicle-related operating inputs in order to establish whether the driver is distracted. If the system detects that the driver is distracted, it indicates this on the instrument cluster display by means of a warning or indicator lamp in combination with a supplementary text message and, depending on the settings, also issues an acoustic warning → page 39. The text message on the instrument cluster display is shown for around 4 to 6 seconds.

Function conditions

The driving behaviour can be evaluated only when the speed is above approx. 10 km/h (around 6 mph).

WARNING

The Attention Monitor is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. The Attention Monitor therefore may not be able to detect whether the driver is paying attention in all situations and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. There is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is responsible at all times for their fitness to drive.
- Observe the system limits → page 38.
- Do not allow yourself to be distracted when driving.
- Adjust personal vehicle settings before starting your journey.
- Follow the information in the instrument cluster display, and respond according to the prompts → page 39.

 In the event of a fault, have the system checked by a suitably qualified workshop.

System limits of the Attention Monitor

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 37.**

System limits of the Attention Monitor

The Attention Monitor has system-related limitations. The following conditions can limit the function of the Attention Monitor, or prevent it from working altogether:

- Speeds below around 10 km/h (around 6 mph).
- Significant distraction of the driver due to external influences, e.g. traffic.
- Significant distraction of the driver by activities not associated with the vehicle, e.g. using a mobile device.

Driving with the Attention Monitor

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 37.**

Switching on and off

Depending on country, the Attention Monitor is always switched on when the engine is started.

If required, you can switch off the Attention Monitor manually in the Infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assist systems** menu.
2. Switch the Attention Monitor on or off in the corresponding submenu.

Or:

1. Open the Control Centre in the Infotainment system → page 253.
2. Switch the Attention Monitor on or off.

Or:

1. In the App Favourites bar, tap the  button to switch the Attention Monitor on or off → page 253.

 The  function button must have been placed in the App Favourites bar beforehand → page 256.

Activating and deactivating the acoustic warning

Depending on equipment and not available in all countries.

In the Infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assist systems** menu.
2. Tap the **Attention Monitor** function button.
3. Activate or deactivate the acoustic warning in the corresponding option.

Adjusting the sensitivity

You can adjust the sensitivity of the Attention Monitor manually and therefore influence how quickly the system reacts to your driving behaviour. This function is dependent on the equipment level and is not available in all countries.

In the Infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assist systems** menu.

2. Tap the **Attention Monitor** function button.
3. Select sensitivity in the **Sensitivity** sub-menu.

Hiding messages via the multifunction steering wheel

1. Press the **OK** button on the multifunction steering wheel.

WARNING

Operating the instrument cluster and Infotainment system can distract you from the road. If the driver is distracted when driving, this can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always drive with your full attention and responsibly.
- Operate the instrument cluster and the Infotainment system only when the vehicle is stationary or if the traffic situation permits.

Warning levels of the Attention Monitor

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 37.**

If the system detects that the driver is distracted, it provides a visual indication of this on the instrument cluster display by means of a warning or indicator lamp in combination with a supplementary text message and, depending on setting, by means of an acoustic warning. A warning is issued in three levels.

Attention Monitor warning – Level 1



Distraction detected.

Depending on the settings, an acoustic warning may be issued. A white indicator lamp appears together with a text message on the instrument cluster display. Stop distracting activity and pay attention to the traffic.

Attention Monitor warning – Level 2



Advancing distraction detected.

Depending on the settings, an acoustic warning may be issued. A red

warning lamp appears together with a text message on the instrument cluster display. Stop distracting activity and pay attention to the traffic.

Attention Monitor warning – Level 3



Acute risk detected.

Depending on the settings, an acoustic warning may be issued. A red warning lamp appears together with a text message on the instrument cluster display. Acute risk to traffic. Stop distracting activity immediately and pay attention to the traffic.

Troubleshooting

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 37.**



The availability of the Attention Monitor is restricted

An acoustic warning is given. A yellow indicator lamp appears together with a text message on the instrument cluster display. The availability of the Attention Monitor is restricted.

- Fault or malfunction. Switch off and restart the engine. Check the settings for the Attention Monitor in the Infotainment system.
- The system limits of the Attention Monitor are not met → page 38.
- If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.



Attention Monitor is not available

An acoustic warning is given. The yellow warning lamp lights up in the instrument cluster in combination with the yellow central warning lamp. A text message is also displayed on the instrument cluster display and in the **Vehicle status** menu.

- Fault or malfunction. Switch off and restart the engine. Check the settings for the Attention Monitor in the Infotainment system.

- The system limits of the Attention Monitor are not met → page 38.
- If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.



Advanced Traffic Sign Display

Introduction



Fig. 17 On the instrument cluster display: Advanced Traffic Sign Display symbol.

The Advanced Traffic Sign Display system detects speed limits, overtaking restrictions and selected danger signs and informs the driver if the maximum permitted speed is exceeded.

The Advanced Traffic Sign Display system uses a camera in the base of the interior mirror to detect standard traffic signs and informs the driver of any detected speed limits, overtaking restrictions and selected danger signs. Within the system limits, the Traffic Sign Recognition function of the Advanced Traffic Sign Display system also displays sub-plates, e.g. to indicate restrictions when wet. In some cases, the system can also display the current speed limits on non-signposted routes.

If the maximum permitted speed is exceeded, the speed warning function of the Advanced Traffic Sign Display system shows this visually on the instrument cluster display by a flashing speed limit detected by the system and, depending on setting, also issues an acoustic warning → page 43.

Traffic Sign Recognition



Fig. 18 On the instrument cluster display: displays of Traffic Sign Recognition with detected sub-plate (illustration).

After validation and evaluation of the information from the camera, the Infotainment system and the current vehicle data, the Traffic Sign Recognition system shows up to two valid traffic signs and one detected sub-plate, e.g. when wet → Fig. 18:

1st position: The traffic sign that currently applies is shown on the left-hand side of the display, e.g. a speed limit of **130 km/h (80 mph)**.

2nd position: A further traffic sign can be shown in second position, e.g. a speed limit **100 km/h (62 mph)**, where applicable with a sub-plate.

Sub-plate: A detected sub-plate, e.g. when wet, is displayed under the valid traffic sign.

The display of danger signs is not available in all countries and the system may not be able to recognise all danger signs. In addition to speed limits and overtaking restrictions, Traffic Sign Recognition also detects the sign which indicates that all restrictions have been lifted on motorways and main roads in Germany. In all other countries in which the system is operated, the current speed limit is displayed instead.

The traffic signs detected by the Traffic Sign Recognition system are displayed on the instrument cluster display. Traffic signs may also be displayed in the Infotainment system, depending on the system installed in the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

The Advanced Traffic Sign Display system is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. The Advanced Traffic

Sign Display system therefore cannot recognise all traffic signs and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. Driving recommendations and traffic signs displayed by Traffic Sign Recognition may differ from the current traffic situation.

- Observe the system limits → page 41.
- Keep the navigation data up-to-date.
- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Traffic signs and traffic regulations have priority over the recommendations and displays provided by the Traffic Sign Recognition system.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather and road or traffic conditions.
- Follow the information in the instrument cluster display, and respond according to the prompts → page 43.

System limits of Advanced Traffic Sign Display

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 40.**

The Advanced Traffic Sign Display system has system-related limitations. The following conditions can limit the function of the Advanced Traffic Sign Display system, or prevent it from working altogether:

- High ambient temperatures or prolonged exposure to direct sunlight.
- Poor visibility, e.g. in snowy conditions.
- When dazzled, e.g. by oncoming traffic or sunlight.
- High speeds.
- Dirty camera.
- Traffic signs that are located outside the area covered by the camera window.
- Partially or fully hidden traffic signs, e.g. by trees, snow, dirt or other vehicles.
- Traffic signs that do not correspond to the standard design.

- Damaged or bent traffic signs.
- Variable traffic signs on gantries (changeable traffic sign display using LEDs or other light sources).
- Out-of-date map material of the Infotainment system.
- Vehicles that have traffic sign stickers, e.g. speed restrictions on trucks.

 The system partly uses the camera behind the windscreen. You can find further information in the section on sensors → page 176, → page 176, → page 176, → page 178.

 The system also uses navigation data even if the vehicle does not have a navigation system. Keep the navigation data up-to-date → page 270. If you have any questions, please contact a suitably qualified workshop.

Driving with the speed warning function

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 40.**

Function conditions

The speed warning function warns at speeds above around 20 km/h (around 12 mph).

Switching on and off

Depending on the country, the speed warning is always switched on when the engine is started. If required, you can switch off the speed warning manually in the Infotainment system.

1. Open the **Assist systems** menu.
2. Switch the speed warning on or off in the corresponding submenu.

Or:

1. Open the Control Centre in the Infotainment system → page 253.
2. Switch the speed warning on or off.

Or:

1. In the App Favourites bar, tap the  button to switch the speed warning on or off → page 253.

 The  function button must have been placed in the App Favourites bar beforehand → page 256.

In the digital instrument cluster Pro:

1. In the main view, select **Driver assist systems** → page 23.
2. Press the  button on the multifunction steering wheel to display the list of Driver assistance systems on the right side.
3. Select the speed warning function using the  or  buttons and switch on or off with .

Activating and deactivating the acoustic warning

In the Infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assist systems** menu.
2. Tap **Speed warning**.
3. Activate or deactivate the acoustic warning in the corresponding option.

 The acoustic warning is always activated when the engine is started.

Adjusting the warning threshold

You can adjust the warning thresholds of the speed warning function manually.

In the Infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assist systems** menu.
2. Tap **Speed warning**.
3. To select the level for the warning thresholds, tap  in the **Warning threshold** menu option.

 When the engine is started, the warning thresholds of the speed warning are always reset to the default value.

Activating and deactivating the change tone

The change tone informs the driver acoustically about a change in the speed limits. You can switch off the change tone manually if required.

In the Infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assist systems** menu.
2. Tap **Speed warning**.
3. Activate or deactivate the change tone in the corresponding option.

Hiding fault messages via the multifunction steering wheel

1. Press the  button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Trailer mode

In vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket and a trailer with an electrical connection to the vehicle, the display of traffic signs that may apply to the vehicle when towing a trailer, e.g. applicable speed limits and no-overtaking signs, can be activated or deactivated in the vehicle settings menu in the Infotainment system.

In trailer mode, display of the valid speed limits can be adjusted to the type of trailer and to country-specific legal requirements.

In the Infotainment system:

1. Open the **Assist systems** menu.
2. Tap **Trailer detection**.
3. To adapt the warning threshold specifically for trailer mode, tap  in the **Warning at over** menu option.

WARNING

Operating the instrument cluster and Infotainment system can distract you from the road. If the driver is distracted when driving, this can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always drive with your full attention and responsibly.
- Operate the instrument cluster and the Infotainment system only when the vehicle is stationary or if the traffic situation permits.

Warning levels of the speed warning function

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 40.

If the system detects that the maximum permitted speed has been exceeded, it shows this visually on the instrument cluster display by a flashing speed limit detected by the system and, depending on setting, also issues an acoustic warning. A warning is issued in two warning levels.



Fig. 19 On the instrument cluster display: detected violation of maximum permitted speed (illustration).

Speed warning – Level 1

Violation of maximum permitted speed detected.

The speed limit detected by the system flashes continuously in the instrument cluster → Fig. 19.

Speed warning – Level 2

Progressive violation of maximum permitted speed detected.

An acoustic warning sounds. The speed limit detected by the system flashes continuously in the instrument cluster → Fig. 19.

i The second warning level is triggered if the speed continues to increase above the speed limit.

i The second warning level is cancelled again when the driver actively slows down.

Troubleshooting

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 40.

Advanced Traffic Sign Display is outside the operating area

An acoustic warning sounds. A text message is also displayed on the instrument cluster display and in the **Vehicle status** menu.

— No data available for this region. The Advanced Traffic Sign Display system is not supported in the country in which you are currently travelling.

⚠ Advanced Traffic Sign Display is not available

An acoustic warning sounds. A yellow indicator lamp is displayed on the instrument cluster display in combination with the yellow central warning lamp. A text message is also displayed on the instrument cluster display and in the **Vehicle status** menu.

— The windscreen is dirty in the area of the camera or the camera view is impaired due to the weather conditions. Clean the windscreen → page 400.

— The view of the camera is impaired by add-on parts or stickers. Keep the area around the camera window clear → page 406.

— The camera has been displaced or damaged, e.g. due to damage to the windscreen. Check whether damage is visible → page 406.

— The camera was deactivated due to a high ambient temperature or prolonged exposure to direct sunlight. When the camera is available again, the Advanced Traffic Sign Display system will also be available once more. Switch off and restart the engine.

— Fault or malfunction. Switch off and restart the engine. Check the settings for Advanced Traffic Sign Display in the Infotainment system.

— The system limits of Advanced Traffic Sign Display are not met → page 41.

- If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

OFF Q
/i\ **Advanced Traffic Sign Display is partially deactivated**

A white indicator lamp is shown in the instrument cluster display for 10 seconds.

The default settings for the speed warning have been changed:

- Check whether the speed warning is deactivated → page 41.
- Check that the acoustic warning is activated → page 41.
- Check whether the default warning threshold has been changed → page 41. <

Data protection

Data recording

Introduction

WARNING

Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the diagnostic connection. Unauthorised persons could gain access to vehicle data and restrict the functionality of safety-related systems.

- Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect devices to the diagnostic connection.

We respect and protect your privacy. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release; however, as technology evolves rapidly, we recommend that you visit your country's Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle is equipped with electronic control units that have data acquisition functions and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data may include information about the condition and status of your vehicle as well as maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. This section describes the types of data that can be collected. Some of the collected data is stored in event or error logs.

 Error logs are deleted after maintenance or repair.

 We may provide information at the request of law enforcement authorities, other authorities or third parties who have a legal authority or are taking legal action. This information may be used by the respective requester in legal proceedings.

The data collected includes, but is not limited to, the following:

- Operating states of system components, e.g. fuel fill level, tyre pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, e.g. wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seat belt status.

- Events or faults in important systems, e.g. headlights and brakes.
- System reactions to driving situations, e.g. deployment of airbags and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, e.g. temperature.

Some of this data can be assigned to specific persons in combination with other information, e.g. an accident report, damage to the vehicle or witness statements.

Services provided by us

When you use our services, we collect and use data that could identify you, e.g. account information, location and vehicle handling. We transmit this data via a dedicated, secure connection. We collect and use the data exclusively to enable you to use the services you subscribe to, only with your consent and to the extent permitted by law. For more information, please refer to the terms and conditions of your subscribed services.

You can find further information on our privacy policy on your country's Ford website.

Services provided by third parties

We recommend that you check the terms and conditions and data protection information for all services that your vehicle is equipped with or that you subscribe to. We accept no responsibility for services provided by third parties.

Maintenance data

 Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 45.

Our dealerships record maintenance data via the diagnostic connection in your vehicle. They use the maintenance data, e.g. fault logs, to assist with repairs. They will share this information with our team of technicians as needed to facilitate diagnosis. In addition to use for diagnostic and repair purposes, we also provide maintenance data for the purpose of continuous improvement to our service providers, e.g. parts suppliers, to the extent required

and permitted by law; we also disclose other data available from you, e.g. contact information, so that these service providers can offer you products and services that may interest you, to the extent permitted by law and in accordance with your preferences. Our service providers are also legally required to protect your data and comply with applicable retention guidelines.

 Third-party workshops can also record maintenance data via the diagnostic connection.

Setting data

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 45.**

Your vehicle is equipped with control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalised settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect there, e.g. a USB data storage device or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also select whether you want to share the data via your subscribed services.

Data in comfort and convenience systems

The data collected includes, but is not limited to, the following:

- Position of seat and steering wheel.
- Interior climate control settings.
- Radio station buttons.

Data in the Infotainment system

The data collected includes, but is not limited to, the following:

- Music, videos and album covers.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

Data of the connected vehicle

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 45.**

 The modem has a SIM card. The modem was activated when the vehicle was manufactured and regularly sends messages to maintain the connection to the mobile network, receive automatic software updates and send vehicle-related data to us, e.g. diagnostic data. These messages may contain information that identifies your vehicle and SIM card, as well as the electronic serial number of the modem. The operators of the mobile networks could have access to further information, e.g. identification of the respective mobile communications mast. You can find further information on our privacy policy on your country's Ford website or at:

www.FordConnected.com

 The modem transmits this information continuously unless you deactivate the modem or stop transmission of vehicle data by the modem by changing the modem settings → page 247.

 The service may be unavailable or interrupted for various reasons, e.g. due to environmental or topographical conditions or coverage by the data plan.

 To find out whether your vehicle is equipped with a modem, visit:

www.FordConnected.com

Mobile device data

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 45.**

 If you connect a mobile device to the vehicle, you can display data from this device, e.g. music and album covers, on the touchscreen. You can use the system to share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device → page 280.

The mobile app feature works through the connected device and transmits data to us in the USA. The data is encrypted; it includes, for example, the vehicle identifica-

tion number of your vehicle, the mileage reading, system-compatible apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We only store this data for as long as necessary to provide this service, carry out troubleshooting measures, make continuous improvements to products and services, and to provide you with products and services that may be of interest to you in accordance with your preferences, to the extent permitted by law.

When you connect a mobile telephone to the system, the system creates a profile that is linked to this mobile telephone. This profile enables the use of additional mobile communications functions and efficient operation. Among other things, this profile includes data from your address book, read and unread text messages and a call list, including a list of calls made while your mobile telephone was not connected to the system.

If you also connect a media device, the system creates and stores a media device index of the supported media content. The system also stores a short diagnostic log of approx. 10 minutes with the latest system activities.

The mobile telephone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain stored in the vehicle until they are deleted; they can also generally only be accessed in the vehicle if you connect your mobile telephone or media device. If you no longer wish to use the system or the vehicle, we recommend performing a general reset to delete all stored information → page 272.

Access to the system data is only possible with special equipment and access to the vehicle's module.

You can find further information on our privacy policy on your country's Ford website.

 To find out whether your vehicle is equipped with connectivity technologies, visit:

www.FordConnected.com

Emergency call system data

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 45.**

If the emergency call system is active, it can transmit to the emergency call centre the fact that the vehicle was involved in an accident in which the airbag was triggered or fuel pump shutoff was activated. Some versions or updates of the emergency call system may also report the location of the vehicle and/or details of the vehicle or accident to the emergency services electronically or verbally, so that the emergency services can initiate the appropriate emergency measures. If you do not wish to transmit this information, do not activate the emergency call system.

The following data may be transmitted, for example:

- Vehicle identification number.
- Fuel type of vehicle.
- Current time.
- Location and direction of travel.
- Whether the emergency call was made automatically or manually.
- Vehicle category.
- Number of passengers in the vehicle.

 The legally prescribed emergency call systems cannot be deactivated. 

Safety

Sitting position

Introduction

Assuming an incorrect sitting position considerably impairs the level of protection provided by a seat belt. This could lead to severe or even fatal injuries. The risk of severe or fatal injuries is especially increased when a deploying airbag strikes a vehicle occupant who has assumed an incorrect sitting position. The driver is responsible for all occupants transported in the vehicle, especially children.

Overview of seats (authorised use of vehicle seats in accordance with type approval)

	2-seat- er	5- seater	7- seat- er
1st seat row	2	2	2
2nd seat row	–	3	3
3rd seat row	–	–	2

Number of seats

The number of seats depends on the seating configuration and the equipment in the particular vehicle model.

Each seat is equipped with a seat belt.

Retrofitting seats

Additional seats can be retrofitted, provided that the maximum number of seats specified by the manufacturer in the vehicle documentation is not exceeded. For this purpose, seat anchor points should be fitted to the vehicle floor by a suitably qualified workshop in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

These additional seats must also have seat belt anchor points and seat belts.

WARNING

Assuming an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle can increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries during a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre, in the event of a collision or accident, or if the airbags are triggered.

- All vehicle occupants must assume a correct sitting position before setting off and maintain this position throughout the trip. This also applies to the fastening of seat belts.
- The number of vehicle occupants must never exceed the number of seats with seat belts in the vehicle.
- Never tilt the backrest too far to the rear.
- Always keep your feet in the footwell during the trip. Never place your feet on the seat or dash panel, for example. Never hold your feet out of the window. If you sit like this, the airbag and seat belt cannot provide optimal protection and could actually increase the risk of injury during an accident.

Correct sitting position

Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 48.

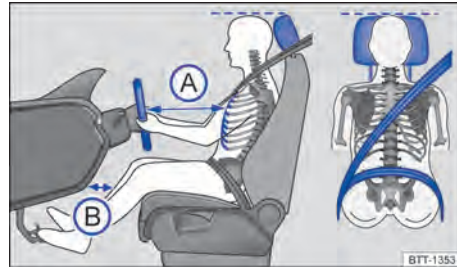


Fig. 20 Illustration: correct distance between the driver and the steering wheel, correct seat belt routing and correct head restraint adjustment.

The following details the correct sitting positions for the driver and passengers.

If any vehicle occupants cannot assume a correct sitting position due to their physical build, they should contact a suitably qualified workshop to find out about possible special modifications. The seat belts and airbags can only provide a maximum level of protection if you assume a correct sitting position.

Adopt the following seating position for your own safety and to reduce the level of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident:

The following applies to all vehicle occupants:

- Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same height as the top of the head, but not lower than eye level. Position the back of your head as close to the head restraint as possible → Fig. 20.
- For small people: push the head restraint all the way down, even if the head is then located underneath the top edge of the head restraint.
- For taller people, push the head restraint up as far as it will go.
- Keep both feet in the footwell while the vehicle is in motion.
- Adjust and fasten seat belts properly → page 49.

Additional points for the driver:

- Sit as far back as possible on the seat.
- Adjust the driver seat by moving it forwards or backwards so that you are able to press the pedals to the floor with your knees still slightly bent and so that the distance from the dash panel to the lower leg area is at least 10 cm (around 4 inches) → Fig. 20 Ⓑ.
- Adjust the height so that you can reach the highest point of the steering wheel.
- Move the backrest into an upright position so that your back rests fully against it.
- The thighs should rest comfortably on the seat cushion. The back of the knees should protrude a few centimetres beyond the front edge of the seat. Use further equipment-dependent adjustment options for the seats.
- Adjust the seat so that the distance between the steering wheel and your breastbone is at least 25 cm (around 10 inches) → Fig. 20 Ⓐ and the circumference of the steering wheel can be held at the sides with both hands and your arms slightly bent.

- The steering wheel must always point towards the breastbone and not towards the face.

Additional points for the front passenger:

- If possible, move the backrest into an upright position so that your back rests fully against it.
- Push the front passenger seat as far back as possible so that the airbag can provide maximum protection if it is deployed. ◀

Seat belts

Introduction

If worn properly, seat belts hold the vehicle occupants in the correct sitting position during an accident or braking manoeuvre, providing maximum protection.

WARNING

Incorrectly fastened or unfastened seat belts can increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries.

- Before every trip, each vehicle occupant must adopt the correct sitting position, correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to their seat and keep it fastened properly throughout the trip.
- Before every journey and while the vehicle is in motion, secure all children travelling in the vehicle in a restraint system suitable for their weight and height. They must also wear correctly fastened seat belts → page 63.
- Insert the latch plate only into the belt buckle of the corresponding seat and make sure that the latch plate engages securely. Using a buckle that does not belong to the seat that you are occupying reduces the level of protection and can lead to severe injuries.
- Never unfasten the seat belt while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never allow more than one person to share the same seat belt.

- Never transport children or babies on your lap and never secure them with a seat belt together with a person.
- Never travel wearing loose, bulky clothing (such as an overcoat over a jacket). This could prevent the seat belts from fitting and functioning properly.

⚠ WARNING

Damaged seat belts increase the risk of serious or fatal injuries. If the belt webbing or any other part of the seat belt becomes damaged, the seat belt may tear during an accident or sudden braking manoeuvre.

- Never damage the belt by trapping it in the door or in the seat mechanism.
- If the belt webbing, belt connections, belt retractor or seat belt buckle become damaged, the seat belt or belt attachment element in question must be replaced immediately by a suitably qualified workshop. The suitably qualified workshop must use correct spare parts that are compatible with the vehicle, equipment level and model year.
- Never try to repair, modify or remove the seat belts or belt attachment elements yourself. Have all repairs to seat belts, belt retractors and buckles carried out by a suitably qualified workshop. The suitably qualified workshop must only replace the seat belt with a seat belt approved for the seat.
- Have seat belts that have been subjected to stress and stretched during an accident replaced by a suitably qualified workshop. Renewal may be necessary even if there is no apparent damage. Also check the anchorages of the seat belts.

⚠ WARNING

Using seat belts incorrectly increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries.

- Regularly check to ensure that the seat belt and its related parts are in perfect condition.
- Always keep the seat belts clean.
- Avoid allowing foreign bodies or liquids to enter the seat belt buckle slots and

belt buckles. This could prevent the seat belt buckle slots, belt buckles and seat belts from working properly.

- Never trap the seat belt. Never damage the belt or allow it to rub against sharp edges.

Seat belt warning system

 **Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 49.**



Warning lamp for the seat belt warning system on the instrument cluster display.

Seat belt warning for the front seats

If the driver or front passenger seat is occupied by an adult, an acoustic warning will be emitted if the seat belts are not fastened at the start of a journey and the vehicle reaches a speed of more than around 25 km/h (around 15 mph) or if the seat belts are unfastened while the vehicle is in motion. The red  warning lamp also flashes on the instrument cluster display.

The red warning lamp  will not go out until all vehicle occupants have fastened their seat belts when the ignition is switched on.

Seat belt warning for the rear seats

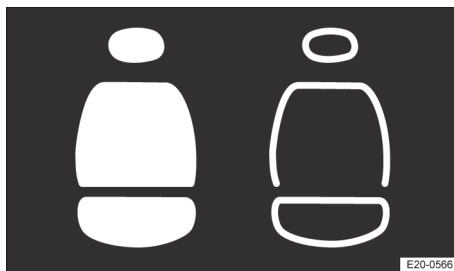


Fig. 21 On the display of the instrument cluster: seat belt warning for the rear seats.

The seat belt warning for the rear seats shows the driver the number of seats detected when the ignition is switched on. Additionally, a black or white symbol indicates whether there are adult passengers in the rear seats → Fig. 21. The display goes out after around 60 seconds.



The black symbol indicates seats that are not occupied.



The filled-in white symbol shows the occupied seats.

The belt status display for the rear seats is battery operated using a radio standard . Other radio-based systems, such as two-way radios, may interfere with the system → .

Before setting off, the driver must check whether the number of seats shown in the instrument cluster corresponds to the number of seats in the passenger compartment → . If the number does not match, have the system checked by a qualified workshop → page 52.

Seat belt warning for the rear seats (vehicles with flexible partition)



Fig. 22 On the display of the instrument cluster: Seat belt warning system (illustration).



The green symbol indicates that the passenger on this seat has fastened their seat belt.



The red symbol indicates that the passenger on this seat has undone their seat belt.



The grey symbol indicates that this seat is not occupied or that the passenger on this seat has not fastened their seat belt.

After the ignition has been switched on, the seat belt warning → Fig. 22 shows the driver on the instrument cluster display whether

any adult passengers on the rear seats have fastened their seat belts.

If a seat belt is unfastened while the vehicle is in motion, the symbol for this seat lights up red. The red warning lamp also flashes on the instrument cluster display. An acoustic signal will also sound for around 92 seconds if the vehicle is travelling faster than approximately 8 km/h (around 5 mph).

WARNING

Ignoring the seat belt warning system can cause serious injury. The system is not a substitute for the full concentration of the driver.

- Before setting off, check whether the number of seats shown in the instrument cluster corresponds to the number of seats in the passenger compartment.
- Before setting off, check that all vehicle occupants have fastened their seat belts correctly.

WARNING

The buckle-up request is designed to detect adult persons. If a seat is occupied by lighter persons, in particular children, the detection will not be reliable. The seat belt warning system also does not respond or responds only in a limited way if child seats and seat pads are used. As a result, the system may not be able to detect when lighter persons and children have not fastened their seat belts and this can lead to them suffering serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.

- Always ensure that all vehicle occupants, especially children, have fastened their seat belts properly.



The vehicle may still detect seats which have been removed but left near the vehicle.



If seats are subsequently replaced or retrofitted, the seat belt warning system must be activated by a suitably qualified workshop → page 51.

Troubleshooting

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 49.



Fault in seat belt warning system

The yellow indicator lamp lights up continuously. In addition, a message may be displayed in the instrument cluster.

The battery in the radio system is too weak on at least one seat.

1. Consult a suitably qualified workshop.
2. Check the rear seat and replace the battery if necessary.



Seat belt warning system has failed

The yellow indicator lamp lights up continuously. In addition, a message may be displayed in the instrument cluster.

1. Consult a suitably qualified workshop.



Fault in seat belt warning system

The indicator lamp lights up continuously. In addition, a message may be displayed in the instrument cluster.

The battery in the radio system is too weak on at least one seat.

1. Consult a suitably qualified workshop.
2. Check the rear seat and replace the battery if necessary.

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 49.

Fastening the seat belts



Fig. 23 Inserting the seat belt latch plate into the buckle.

Fasten seat belts before every trip.

1. Adopt correct sitting position → page 48.
2. Take hold of the belt and pull it evenly across your chest and pelvis. Do **not** twist the belt and the latch plate.
3. Insert the latch plate securely into the buckle belonging to the occupied seat → Fig. 23.
4. Pull on the seat belt to ensure that the latch plate is securely locked in the buckle.

Unfastening the seat belts



Fig. 24 Removing the latch plate from the buckle

Unfasten seat belts only when the vehicle is stationary.

1. Press the red button on the belt buckle → Fig. 24. The latch plate is released and springs out.
2. Guide the belt back by hand so that it rolls up easily, without twisting the seat belt and without damaging the trim.

Twisted seat belt

If it is difficult to remove the seat belt from the belt guide, the seat belt may have become twisted if it was returned too quickly into the side trim:

1. Take hold of the latch plate then slowly and carefully pull out the seat belt.
2. Untwist the seat belt and guide it back slowly by hand.
3. Fasten the seat belt even if you are unable to undo the twist.
However, the twist should not be in the part of the seat belt that comes into direct contact with the body.
4. Go to a suitably qualified workshop as soon as possible to have the twist removed.

Seat belt routing

📖 **Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 49.**

Seat belts only provide an optimum level of protection during an accident when they are routed correctly. Correct seat belt routing reduces the risk of severe or fatal injuries. Correct seat belt routing also holds the vehicle occupants in position so that an inflating airbag can offer the maximum level of protection. Therefore you must always fasten your seat belt and ensure that the seat belt routing is correct → Fig. 25.

Correct seat belt routing

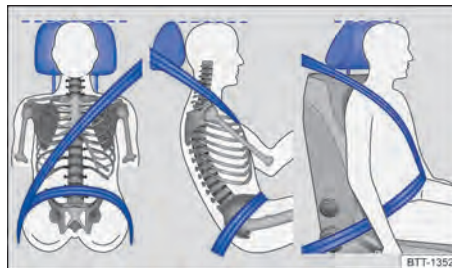


Fig. 25 Correct seat belt routing and head restraint adjustment

- The shoulder part of the seat belt must always lie on the centre of the shoulder, never across the neck, over or under the arm or behind the back.
- The lap part of the seat belt must always lie across the pelvis, never across the stomach.
- The seat belt must always lie flat and snugly on the body. Tighten the belt if necessary.

Correct seat belt routing during pregnancy



Fig. 26 Correct seat belt routing during pregnancy

Pregnant women must position the seat belt evenly over the chest and as low as possible over the pelvis. It must lie flat so that no pressure is exerted on the lower body – this applies in every stage of pregnancy → Fig. 26.

Correct seat belt routing according to height

The following equipment can be used to adjust the seat belt routing:

- Seat belt height adjuster for the front seats → page 54.
- Height-adjustable front seats → page 102.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect seat belt routing can cause serious injuries in the event of an accident or a sudden braking or driving manoeuvre.

- Make sure that the seat belt routing is correct.
- Adjust the backrest to an upright position and fasten the seat belt correctly corresponding to your body size in order to achieve the optimum protective effect of the seat belts.
- Route the shoulder section of the seat belt over the centre of the shoulder and never under the arm or across the neck.
- Route the seat belt so that it lies flat and snugly on the upper body and pelvis. Pull the belt a little again to tighten it if necessary.
- Make sure that the lap part of the belt is routed in front of your pelvis and never over your stomach.
- If you are pregnant, make sure that the seat belt is routed evenly over your chest and as low as possible over your pelvis and so that it lies flat during the entire course of the pregnancy. In this way, no pressure is exerted on the lower abdomen.
- Do not twist the belt when fastening or wearing the seat belt.
- Never hold the seat belt away from your body with your hand.
- Do not route the belt over hard or fragile objects, such as glasses, pens or keys.
- Never change the belt routing by means of belt clips, retaining eyes or similar.

i If a person's physical build prevents them from routing the seat belt properly, contact a suitably qualified workshop

to find out about any special modifications so that the seat belts and airbags can provide the optimum level of protection. <

Seat belt height adjuster

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 49.

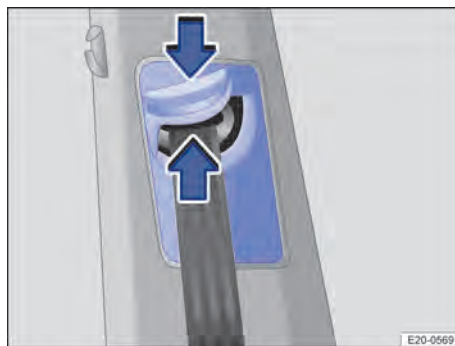


Fig. 27 Next to the front seats: seat belt height adjuster.

The seat belt height adjusters for the front seats can be used to adjust the position of the seat belt on the shoulder so that it can be fastened properly:

1. Push and hold the shoulder belt guide in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 27.
2. Push the shoulder belt guide up or down so that the seat belt is routed over the middle of the shoulder → page 53.
3. Let go of the shoulder belt guide.
4. Pull sharply on the seat belt to check whether the shoulder belt guide is engaged securely.

⚠ WARNING

If you adjust the belt height while the vehicle is in motion, this can cause serious and fatal injuries.

- Never adjust the seat belt height when the vehicle is in motion. <

Belt retractor, belt tensioner, belt tension limiter

📖 **Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 49.**

The seat belts in the vehicle are part of the vehicle safety concept → page 56 and include the following important functions:

Automatic belt retractor

The seat belts on the front seats and on the rear seats (depending on equipment) are fitted with a belt retractor on the shoulder section of belt. Full freedom of movement is made possible when the shoulder belt is pulled slowly or when the vehicle is travelling at normal speeds. However, if the belt is pulled out quickly or during sudden braking, during travel in mountains or bends and during acceleration, the automatic belt retractor is locked.

Belt tensioners

Depending on the equipment, the following seat belts are equipped with belt tensioners:

- Front seats.
- Outer seats in the second row of seats.

The belt tensioners are activated by sensors during severe frontal, side and rear collisions. They tighten the seat belts against the direction in which they are pulled.

A loose seat belt is retracted and kept taught, which can reduce the forward motion of the vehicle occupants and their motion in the direction of impact. Depending on the equipment, the belt tensioner works together with the airbag system.

A fine dust may be produced when the airbags are triggered. This is quite normal and does not mean that there is a fire in the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

The protective function of the belt tensioners permits only one activation of the belt tensioners. The system must be replaced if the belt tensioners have been triggered.

- Belt tensioners that have been triggered, and any affected system parts,

must be replaced immediately with new parts that are approved for the vehicle.

- Have repairs and modifications to your vehicle carried out only by a suitably qualified workshop. Qualified workshops have the necessary tools, diagnostic equipment, repair information and trained personnel.
- Never install recycled belt tensioner components or components that have been taken from end-of-life vehicles in your vehicle.
- Never modify any components of the belt tensioners.

Belt tension limiter

The seat belts are fitted with belt tension limiters, depending on equipment. The belt tension limiter reduces the pressure exerted by the seat belt on the body during an accident.

 All safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. Qualified workshops are familiar with these requirements.

Service and disposal of belt tensioners

📖 **Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 49.**

Seat belts may become damaged during any work on the belt tensioners or while removing or refitting any vehicle parts in conjunction with any other repair work. This damage will not always be noticeable. The consequence may be that the belt tensioners could function incorrectly, or not function at all, in the event of an accident.

Regulations must be observed to ensure that the effectiveness of the belt tensioner is not reduced and that removed parts do not cause any injuries or environmental pollution. Suitably qualified workshops are familiar with these requirements.

WARNING

The risk of severe or fatal injuries may be increased if the seat belts, automatic belt retractors and belt tensioners are not used correctly, or if they are repaired by a non-professional. As a result, the belt tensioners may not be triggered when they should, or they may be triggered unexpectedly.

- Never carry out any repairs, adjustments or removal and fitting of parts in the belt tensioners or seat belts by yourself, and have such work carried out only by a suitably qualified workshop → page 406.
- Seat belts, belt tensioners and automatic belt retractors cannot be repaired. They must be replaced.

 The airbag modules and belt tensioners may contain perchlorate. Observe the applicable legislation regarding disposal.

Airbag system

Introduction

Airbags cannot replace seat belts, which must be worn at all times.

Airbags are only able to offer additional safety for vehicle occupants if the seats, seat belts, head restraints and – in the case of the driver – steering wheel are adjusted and used correctly.

Visible damage to the vehicle does not always mean that the airbag should have been triggered.

Situations in which the airbags will not necessarily be triggered:

- If the ignition is switched off during a collision.
- In the case of minor front-end collisions.
- During a minor side collision.
- During rear collisions.
- If the vehicle rolls over.
- In the case of low-speed collisions.

A triggered airbag may cause injuries, such as swelling, bruising, burning and grazing.

WARNING

The risk of injury increases if there are any objects between the vehicle occupants and the deployment zones of the airbags when they are triggered as these objects will change the airbag deployment zone. The objects could enter the deployment zone of the airbag during sudden braking or driving manoeuvres and then be flung dangerously through the vehicle interior if the airbag is activated.

- Never hold any objects in your hand or on your lap while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never transport any objects on the front passenger seat.

WARNING

Airbags no longer work effectively after being triggered and must be replaced. Without the protection offered by airbags, the risk of injury increases in the event of sudden braking or driving manoeuvres or accidents.

- Airbags that have been triggered, and any affected system parts, must be replaced immediately with new parts that the vehicle manufacturer has approved for the vehicle.
- Have repairs and modifications to your vehicle carried out only by a suitably qualified workshop. Suitably qualified workshops have the necessary tools, diagnostic equipment, repair information and trained personnel.
- Never install recycled airbag components or components that have been taken from end-of-life vehicles in your vehicle.
- Never alter components of the airbag system.

WARNING

Fine dust particles or steam may be released when the airbags are triggered. This is normal and does not mean that there is a fire in the vehicle. The fine dust can cause irritation to the skin and eye membranes and cause breathing difficul-

ties, particularly for people suffering from asthma or people who have (had) other respiratory problems.

- To help reduce breathing difficulties, get out of the vehicle or open the windows or doors for more fresh air.
- If you come into contact with the dust, you should wash your hands and face with a mild soap and water before eating.
- If dust has entered your eyes, rinse them with water.

WARNING

Cleaning agents that contain solvents cause the surface of the airbag modules to become porous. In an accident that triggers the airbag, loose plastic parts can cause serious injury.

- Never clean the dash panel or the airbag covers with cleansers that contain solvents.

Type of front passenger front airbag system

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 56.**

With some equipment levels, an **airbag system** or an **airbag system with front passenger front airbag deactivation** may be installed.

Airbag system

The front passenger front airbag can be deactivated only by a suitably qualified workshop.

Characteristics of the airbag system:

- Front passenger front airbag in the dash panel.
- Indicator lamp  in the instrument cluster display.

Airbag system with front passenger front airbag deactivation

The front passenger front airbag can be deactivated manually by means of a key-operated switch → page 59.

Characteristics of the airbag system with front passenger front airbag deactivation:

- Front passenger front airbag in the dash panel.
- Indicator lamp  in the instrument cluster display.
- PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator lamp **OFF**  in the roof console.
- PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator lamp **ON**  in the roof console.
- Key-operated switch on the front passenger side.

Indicator lamp

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 56.**

Functional check

-  The yellow indicator lamp in the instrument cluster display lights up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on and goes out after a few seconds.

Fault in airbag or belt tensioner system

-  The yellow indicator lamp lights up continuously. In addition, a message may be displayed in the instrument cluster. A malfunction has been detected in at least one airbag or belt tensioner.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop and have the airbag and belt tensioner system checked.

Airbag system or belt tensioner system switched off with diagnostic tool

-  The yellow indicator lamp lights up for around 4 seconds when the ignition is switched on and then flashes for around 12 seconds. In addition, a message may be displayed in the instrument cluster. At least one airbag or belt tensioner was switched off with a diagnostic tool.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop and have a check carried out to establish whether the airbag or belt tensioner system must remain switched off.

Fitting locations and deployment zones

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 56.

The airbag locations are identified by the text "AIRBAG".

The areas inside the red lines in the images of airbags are covered by the airbags when deployed (deployment zone). You must never leave or attach any objects in these areas → ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Once triggered, an airbag inflates in milliseconds at very high speed. This could cause objects to be flung through the vehicle interior. This can cause serious injuries.

- Always leave the deployment zones of the airbags clear.
- Never secure any items to the covers or in the deployment zones of the airbags.
- Do not stick anything on or cover the locations of the airbags or the surfaces in the deployment zones of the airbags or modify these components in any way.
- No other people, animals or objects may be carried between the occupants and the airbag deployment zones. Ensure that children and passengers keep to this rule.
- Do not attach any objects, e.g. mobile navigation devices, to the windscreen above the front airbag on the front passenger side.
- Only push the sun visors over to the side windows if no items are attached to them (e.g. pens or the remote control for a garage door).
- Do not install any sun blinds onto the side windows unless they have been expressly approved for use in your vehicle.
- The coat hooks in the vehicle should be used only for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp objects in the pockets.
- Do not fit any accessories to the doors.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the seats could hinder the proper function of the airbags and cause serious injury.

- Never remove the front seats from the vehicle or modify any part of them.
- Do not exert excessive force on the seat backrest bolsters.
- Do not fit seat covers or protective covers over the seats unless they have been expressly approved for use in the vehicle.
- Have any damage to the seat covers or around the seams of the airbags repaired immediately by a suitably qualified workshop.

Front airbags

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 56.

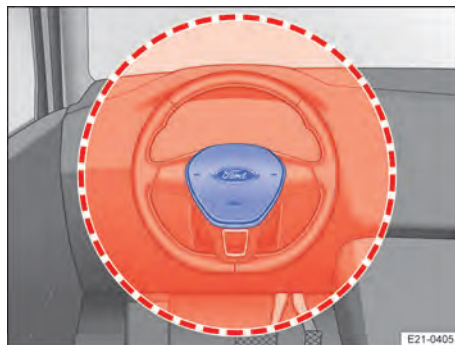


Fig. 28 Fitting location and deployment zone of the driver front airbag (illustration).

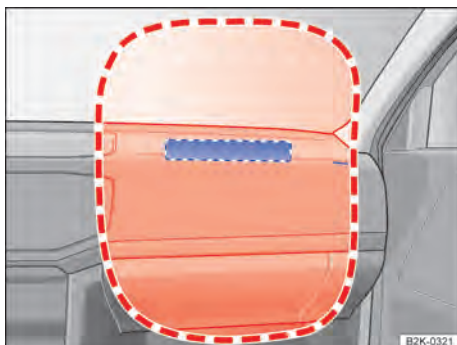


Fig. 29 Fitting location and deployment zone of the front passenger front airbag (illustration).

⚠ WARNING

An incorrect sitting position can prevent the front airbags from functioning correctly and cause serious injuries.

- When driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the ring at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions.
- Adjust the driver seat so that there is at least 25 cm (around 10 in) between the driver's rib cage and the hub of the steering wheel. If your build makes it impossible to fulfil this requirement then you must contact a suitably qualified workshop for assistance.
- Adjust the front passenger seat so that the distance between the passenger and the dash panel is as large as possible.

Switching the front passenger front airbag on and off

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 56.



Fig. 30 On the front of the dash panel: key-operated switch for switching the front passenger front airbag on and off.

The front passenger front airbag must be deactivated if you fit a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat.

Observe the country-specific specifications for use of child seats on the front passenger seat.

Deactivation of the front passenger front airbag is not available in all countries. If there is no key-operated switch in the vehicle, the front passenger airbag can only be switched off by a suitably qualified workshop.

Front passenger front airbag switched on

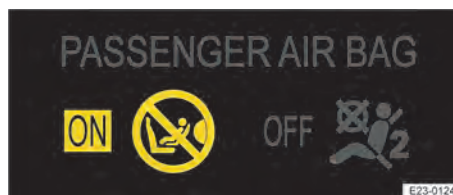


Fig. 31 In the roof console: indicator lamp showing front passenger front airbag enabled.

ON ⚠ The yellow indicator lamp for the enabled front passenger front airbag lights up approximately 60 seconds after the ignition is switched on or after the front passenger front airbag is activated using

the key-operated switch and then goes out automatically → Fig. 31. The front passenger front airbag has been switched on.

1. Check whether the front passenger front airbag must remain switched on.

Front passenger front airbag deactivated

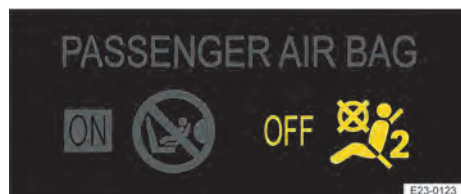


Fig. 32 In the roof console: indicator lamp showing front passenger front airbag disabled.

OFF The yellow indicator lamp lights up continuously → Fig. 32. The front passenger front airbag has been switched off.

1. Check whether the front passenger front airbag must remain switched off, e.g. when using a child seat on the front passenger seat.

Enabling the front passenger front airbag

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Open the front passenger door.
3. Remove the spare key from the vehicle key.
4. Insert the key bit into the key-operated switch until you feel the second point of resistance → Fig. 30. Around three quarters of the key bit should be inserted in the key-operated switch at this point.
5. Turn the manual key to the **ON** position without exerting excessive force.
6. Remove the manual key from the key-operated switch and insert it back into the vehicle key.

The yellow PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator lamp **ON** in the roof console lights up and goes out after approximately 60 seconds.

7. Close the front passenger door.

8. Check that the PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator lamp **OFF** in the roof console **does not** light up → page 57.

Deactivating the front passenger front airbag

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Open the front passenger door.
3. Remove the spare key from the vehicle key.
4. Insert the key bit into the key-operated switch until you feel the second point of resistance → Fig. 30. Around three quarters of the key bit should be inserted in the key-operated switch at this point.
5. Turn the manual key to the **OFF** position without exerting excessive force.
6. Close the front passenger door.
7. The PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** indicator lamp in the roof console lights up continuously when the ignition is switched on → page 57.

Do not let any vehicle occupants travel on the front passenger seat when the front passenger front airbag is switched off. Only rear-facing child seats must be used.

Recognising a deactivated front passenger front airbag

A deactivated front passenger front airbag is indicated **only** by the PASSENGER AIR BAG indicator lamp **OFF** in the roof console lighting up continuously → page 57.

If the **OFF** indicator lamp in the roof console **does not light up continuously** or lights up together with the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster display, there may be a fault in the airbag system. Do not fit a child restraint system on the front passenger seat for safety reasons. The front passenger front airbag may trigger during an accident.

DANGER

Please observe important safety information about the front passenger front airbag → page 65.

⚠ DANGER

If the airbag is deactivated, people on the front passenger seat may be severely or fatally injured in the event of an accident. For this reason, the front passenger front airbag must be deactivated only in special cases.

- Switch the front passenger front airbag off only if, in exceptional circumstances, a rear-facing child seat is secured on the front passenger seat. As soon as the rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat is no longer being used, switch the front passenger front airbag on again.
- Only deactivate the front passenger front airbag if, in exceptional circumstances, the front passenger seat backrest is folded forwards (depending on the vehicle equipment). Reactivate the front passenger front airbag as soon as the front passenger seat backrest is folded back again.
- To prevent damage to the airbag system, switch the front passenger front airbag on and off only when the ignition is switched off.
- As the driver, always make sure that the key-operated switch is in the correct position.

⚠ WARNING

If there is a fault in the airbag system, the airbag may not trigger correctly, may not trigger at all or may trigger unexpectedly. This can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- In the event of a fault, have the airbag system checked immediately by a suitably qualified workshop.
- If there is a fault in the airbag system, never install a child seat on the front passenger seat and remove any child seats that are installed.

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle key or manual key remains in the key-operated switch while driving, vibrations may cause it to turn unintentionally in the switch and potentially activate the front passenger front airbag. Untimely

inflation of the front passenger front airbag could lead to serious or fatal injuries.

- Always remove the vehicle key or manual key from the key-operated switch before you switch on the ignition.

ⓘ NOTICE

If the key bit is not inserted far enough, the key switch could be damaged when the key is turned.

- Insert the key bit into the key-operated switch up to the second point of resistance.

ⓘ NOTICE

If the vehicle key or manual key is inserted in the key-operated switch, the key-operated switch and the vehicle key or manual key may be damaged when the front passenger door is closed.

- Always remove the vehicle key or manual key from the key-operated switch before closing the front passenger door. <

Side airbags

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 56.

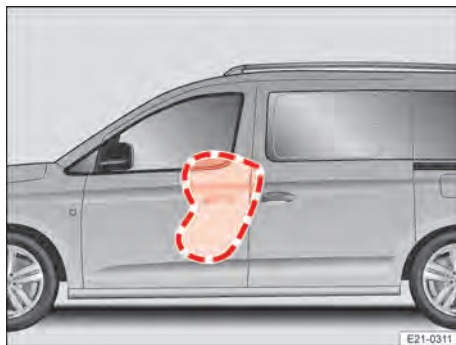


Fig. 33 On the left-hand side of the vehicle: side airbag deployment zone.



Fig. 34 On the side of the front seat: Location of the side airbag.

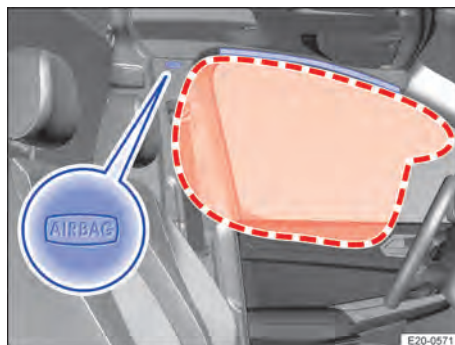


Fig. 36 On the left-hand side of the vehicle: location and deployment zone of the curtain airbag (2-seater). ◀

Curtain airbags

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 56.

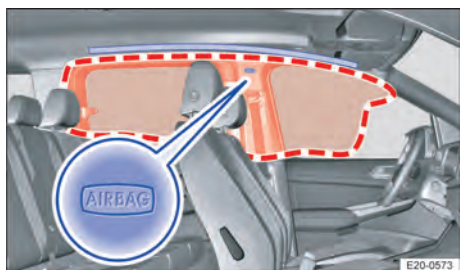


Fig. 35 On the left-hand side of the vehicle: location and deployment zone of the curtain airbag (5-seater).



Fig. 37 On the left-hand side of the vehicle: location and deployment zone of the curtain airbag (7-seater).

Depending on the vehicle equipment, curtain airbags are fitted on the driver side and possibly on the front passenger side. ◀

Central airbag

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 56.

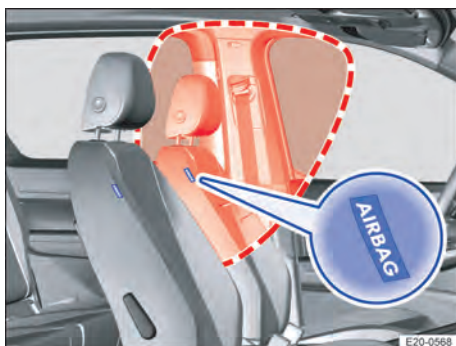


Fig. 38 In the inner backrest cushion on the driver seat: centre airbag.

Safe transport of children

📖 Introduction

Using child seats can reduce the risk of injury to the child if there is an accident. Always use child seats when driving with children.

Note the following:

- Child seats are classified into groups depending on the size, age and weight of the child for which they are designed.
- Various securing systems are used to secure child seats in the vehicle.

For safety reasons, child seats must always be fitted to the rear seats → page 65.

⚠ WARNING

If children are not secured or are inadequately secured, they are at greater risk of serious or even fatal injury. Please note the following:

- Children who are either under 12 years of age or less than 150 cm (around 4 ft 11 in) tall must not be carried in the vehicle unless they are secured in a suitable child seat while the vehicle is in mo-

tion. Regulations in some countries may differ and must be complied with.

- Always secure children in the vehicle in a suitable child seat. The child seat used must be appropriate for the child's height, weight and age.
- Observe the specifications of the child seat manufacturer when installing the child seat in the vehicle and securing the child in the child seat.
- Never fasten more than one child into one child seat.
- Under no circumstances should children or babies be held on a passenger's lap while driving.
- Never leave a child unsupervised in a child seat.
- Never allow a child to be carried in a vehicle without being properly secured, and never allow a child to stand up or to kneel on a seat, or to sit incorrectly while the car is in motion. This is particularly important for children carried on the front passenger seat. In an accident, children may sustain serious injuries to themselves and others.
- The child seat can only provide maximum protection if the seat belt is routed correctly. Always ensure that the seat belt is routed as specified in the instructions provided by the child seat manufacturer. If seat belts are fitted correctly this can cause injuries even in a minor accident.
- After an accident, replace any child seats that were in use during the accident as they could have sustained invisible damage.

Types of child seat

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 63.

Only use child seats that have been officially approved and are suitable for the child.

Standards for child seats

Regulations ECE-R 44 or ECE-R 129 apply to child seats within the European Union.

Both regulations apply simultaneously. Child seats which have been tested in accordance with these standards carry an orange ECE approval label. This ECE approval label may include the following information on the child seat:

- Weight class.
- Size class.
- Approval category (universal, semi-universal, vehicle-specific or i-Size).
- Approval number.

On child seats that are approved under regulation ECE-R 44, the eight-digit approval number on the ECE approval label must begin with 03 or 04. This shows that the seat is admissible for use. Older child seats with an approval number beginning with 01 or 02 are not admissible.

Child seat weight classes



Fig. 39 Example illustrations of child seats.

Class	Child's weight
Group 0	up to 10 kg
Group 0+	up to 13 kg
Group 1	9 to 18 kg
Group 2	15 to 25 kg
Group 3	22 to 36 kg

- **Weight class 0/0+:** group 0/0+ or 0/1 rear-facing infant carriers → Fig. 39 are the best option for the period from birth to around 18 months.
- **Weight class 1:** group 1 (up to about 4 years old) and group 1/2 (up to about 7 years old) with an integral belt system are the best option for children over the relevant weight limit.
- **Weight classes 2/3:** groups 2 and 3 include child seats with a backrest, and booster seats with no backrest. Child

seats with a backrest have integrated seat belt routing and side padding, and so provide better protection than booster seats with no backrest. The use of child seats with backrests is recommended. Group 2 child seats are for children up to the age of about 7, group 3 child seats for those older than 7.

When using a Group 2 child seat, use the fourth anchorage point of the child seat, if available, for the seat belt. Please observe the instructions for use of the child seat.

Not every child will fit in the child seat specified for their weight group. Likewise, not every seat will fit in every vehicle. Therefore it is vital to check that the child fits properly in their child seat and that the child seat can be securely fastened in the vehicle.

Child seat approval categories

Child seats can be classified as “universal”, “semi-universal” or “vehicle-specific” (all in accordance with regulation ECE-R 44) or “i-Size” (in accordance with regulation ECE-R 129).

- **Universal:** child seats with “universal” approval are approved for use in all vehicles. No type list is required. ISOFIX child seats with universal approval must also be secured using a top tether.
- **Semi-universal:** “semi-universal” approval requires other safety devices for attaching the seat (that require additional testing) in addition to the standard requirements for universal approval. Child seats with “semi-universal” approval come with a type list. The seats should only be used in vehicles that are included on this list. Please refer to the child seat manufacturer's vehicle type list to find out whether the child seat may be fitted in the vehicle.
- **Vehicle-specific:** a child seat with vehicle specific approval must have undergone dynamic testing in each model of vehicle for which it is approved. Child seats with “vehicle-specific” approval also come with a type list. Please refer to the child seat manufacturer's vehicle type list to find out whether the child seat may be fitted in the vehicle.

- **i-Size:** child seats classified as i-Size must conform to the installation and safety requirements prescribed in regulation ECE-R 129. Contact the child seat manufacturer to find out which child seats are approved for this vehicle in accordance with i-Size.

Installing and using child seats

📖 **Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 63.**

Country-specific regulations

The standards and regulations governing the use of child seats and child seat securing mechanisms differ from country to country. Not all countries allow you to transport children on the front passenger seat. Legislation and legal requirements take precedence over the information given in this Owner's Manual.

Information on fitting a child seat

Observe the following general information when fitting a child seat. This information is relevant whatever child seat securing system is being used.

- Read and follow the instructions provided by the child seat manufacturer → ⚠.
- Whenever possible, fit the child seat on the rear bench seat behind the front passenger seat so that children can exit the vehicle on the kerb side.
- Set the seat belt height so that the seat belt routing follows a natural line and is adjusted to the child seat without turning back on itself. For rear-facing child seats, use the lowest position of the belt height adjuster.
- Deactivate the front passenger front airbag if fitting a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat.
- When fitting on the front passenger seat, push the front passenger seat back fully and adjust the seat to the highest position. Set the backrest to the upright position → page 48.
- Set the backrest to the upright position when installing the seat on the second row → page 48.

- Always ensure that there is enough space around the child seat. If necessary, adjust the position of the seat in front. When doing so, ensure that the driver or front passenger can still maintain a correct sitting position → page 48.

- ◀ — The backrest of the child seat must lay as flat as possible against the vehicle seat backrest. If required, adjust the seat backrest angle so that the child seat lies flush against the backrest. Once it has been installed, if the child seat is touching the head restraint and therefore cannot be positioned flush against the backrest, push the head restraint all the way up, or remove and stow safely in the vehicle → page 48.
- Before installing a child seat, fold the centre armrest up if necessary.

Airbag sticker



Fig. 40 Illustration: airbag label on the sun visor.



Fig. 41 Illustration: airbag label on the B-pillar.

The vehicle may be provided with stickers giving key information about the front passenger front airbag. The information on these stickers may vary from country to country. The stickers may be found:

- On the driver sun visor and, in some cases, on the front passenger sun visor.
- On the B-pillar on the front passenger side.

It is essential to observe the warning information shown on these stickers before installing a rear-facing child seat → .

Risks involved in carrying children on the front passenger seat

If you are using a **rear-facing child seat**, the front passenger front airbag can cause critical or potentially fatal injuries when it inflates → .

Rear-facing child seat may only be used on the front passenger seat if the front passenger front airbag has been deactivated. The front passenger front airbag has been deactivated when the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  indicator lamp is displayed continuously in the roof console. Deactivating the front passenger front airbag → page 57.

If using a **front-facing child seat**, do not deactivate the front passenger front airbag. When fitting the child seat, ensure that it is as far away as possible from the front passenger front airbag. The front passenger front airbag can cause severe injuries when it inflates → .

Some child seats are not suitable for use on the front passenger seat. The child seat must be specially authorised by the manufacturer for use on the front passenger seat in vehicles with front and side airbags.

Risks presented by side airbags and centre airbags

When triggered, the side airbag or centre airbag could hit the child in the head, causing serious injury → .

DANGER

Please observe important safety information about the front passenger front airbag → page 59.

DANGER

If you use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat, the child sitting in it is at increased risk of sustaining serious or

life-threatening injuries or being killed in the event of an accident.

- Never secure a rear-facing child seat to the front passenger seat if the front passenger front airbag is switched on.
- Deactivate the front passenger front airbag if you want to install a child seat on the front passenger seat. If the front passenger front airbag cannot be deactivated, you must not use rear-facing child seats.
- In order to establish the maximum possible distance from the front passenger front airbag, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust to the highest position.
- Move the backrest to the upright position.
- Set the seat belt height so that the seat belt routing follows a natural line and is adjusted to the child seat without turning back on itself. For rear-facing child seats, use the lowest position of the seat belt height adjuster.
- Only use child seats that have been approved by the child seat manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with front and side airbags.

WARNING

Child seats present a risk of injury if incorrectly installed.

- Always read and follow the installation instructions and warning information provided by the child seat manufacturer.

WARNING

Using a front-facing child seat on the front passenger seat presents a risk of injury.

- In order to establish the maximum possible distance from the front passenger front airbag, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust to the highest position.
- Move the backrest to the upright position.
- Set the seat belt height so that the seat belt routing follows a natural line and is adjusted to the child seat without turn-

ing back on itself. For rear-facing child seats, use the lowest position of the seat belt height adjuster.

- Only use child seats that have been approved by the child seat manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with front and side airbags.

WARNING

To avoid injuries caused by inflation of a head airbag or side airbag:

- Make sure that children are not in the airbag deployment zone.
- Do not place any objects in the side airbag deployment zones.

 If a child seat is used on a single seat with Easy Entry function, the seats located behind that seat are difficult to access. Therefore, a child seat should be used on another rear seat, if possible.

Securing systems

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 63.**

Different countries use different securing systems for safely fitting child seats in the vehicle.

Overview of securing systems

— **ISOFIX:** ISOFIX is a standardised securing system for fitting child seats in the vehicle quickly and safely. The ISOFIX attachment system creates a rigid connection between the child seat and the vehicle body.

The child seat has two rigid attachment arms. The attachment arms engage in ISO-FIX anchor points, which can be located between the seat and the rear seat backrest. The ISOFIX securing system as described here is specific to Europe → page 68. A top tether or a support leg may sometimes have to be used in addition to the ISOFIX anchor points described above.

— **Three-point automatic seat belt:** it is better to secure child seats using the ISOFIX system, if available, rather than with a three-point automatic seat belt.

Additional securing points:

- **Top tether:** the top tether strap at the top of the child seat is routed over the rear seat backrest and hooked to an anchor ring on the back of the rear seat or in the load compartment. Top tether anchor points are marked with an anchor symbol → page 67.
- **Support leg:** some child seats are supported by with a support leg resting on the floor of the vehicle. This support leg helps prevent the child seat tipping forward in a crash.

Recommended child seat securing systems

Child seats should be secured as follows:

- **Infant carrier or rear-facing child seat:** ISOFIX and support leg.
- **Front-facing child seat:** ISOFIX and top tether and possibly additional support leg.

WARNING

Unsecured or inadequately secured children can suffer serious or fatal injuries in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre and in an accident.

- Observe the specifications of the child seat manufacturer when installing the child seat in the vehicle and securing the child in the child seat.
- Do not use child seats that must be secured in the vehicle with lower tethers according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

WARNING

Incorrect use of the support leg can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Ensure that the support leg is always correctly and safely installed.
- Always read and follow the installation instructions and warning information provided by the child seat manufacturer.
- Do not transport children in child seats with a support foot if the weight of the child seat, including the child, exceeds a total weight of 33 kg (around 73 lbs).

⚠ WARNING

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no

circumstances are they to be used for adult seatbelts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Securing a child seat with ISOFIX

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 63.

Installation overview with ISOFIX and i-Size

The identification marking of the ISOFIX or i-Size anchorage points is equipment and country dependent.

The table below shows the options for securing ISOFIX or i-Size child seats to ISOFIX anchor points at the various possible seats in the vehicle.

Group	Orientation of the child seat	Size class	Front passenger seat		Outer seats in the second row	Centre seat in the second row	Seats in the third row
			Front passenger front airbag is activated	Front passenger front airbag is deactivated			
Group 0: up to 10 kg	Rear facing	E/R1	X	X	IL-SU	X	X
Group 0+: up to 13 kg	Rear facing	E/R1	X	X	IL-SU	X	X
		D/R2	X	X		X	X
		C/R3	X	X		X	X
Group 1: 9 to 18 kg	Rear facing	D/R2	X	X	IL-SU IUF	X	X
		C/R3	X	X		X	X
	Forward facing	B/F2X	X	X		X	IL-SU
		B1/F2X	X	X		X	IL-SU
		A/F3	X	X		X	IL-SU
Group 2: 15 to 25 kg	Forward facing	–	X	X	IL-SU	X	IL-SU
Group 3: 22 to 36 kg	Forward facing	–	X	X	IL-SU	X	IL-SU
i-Size child restraint system	Rear facing	–/R2	X	X	i-U	X	X
	Forward facing	–/B2, F2X	X	X			
Booster seat	Forward facing	–/B2, B3	X	X	i-B	X	i-B

— **Size class:** the size class shown corresponds to the permissible weight range of the child using the seat. The size class is indicated on the ECE test certificate for child seats with “universal” or “semi-universal” approval.

A size class indication is affixed to the child seat.

— **X:** seat not suitable for securing an ISOFIX or i-Size child seat in this group.

- **IL-SU**: seat suitable for installing an ISO-FIX child seat with “semi-universal” approval. Refer to the vehicle list supplied by the child seat manufacturer.
- **IUF**: seat suitable for installing an ISOFIX child seat with “universal” approval.
- **i-U**: seat suitable for installing a front-facing or rear-facing i-Size child seat with “universal” approval.
- **i-UF**: seat suitable for installing a front-facing i-Size child seat with “universal” approval.
- **i-B**: seat suitable for installing a front-facing ISOFIX booster seat of Group 2/3 as well as a front-facing i-Size child seat for children with a height of 100 to 150 cm (around 3 ft 3 in to 4 ft 11 in).

Installing child seats with ISOFIX

The location of the ISOFIX anchor points is indicated by a symbol.



Markings identifying the ISOFIX anchor points for child seats on the seats of the rear seats.



Markings identifying the i-Size anchorage points for child seats on the rear seats.



Fig. 42 On vehicle seat in second seat row: marking variants identifying the ISOFIX anchorage points for child seats.



Fig. 43 On vehicle seat in third seat row: marking variants identifying the ISOFIX anchorage points for child seats.



Fig. 44 Illustration: fitting an ISOFIX child seat with the attachment arms.

1. Observe the instructions → page 65.
2. Remove the protective caps from the ISOFIX anchor points or open the zips, depending on the equipment.
3. Push the attachment arms on the child seat into the ISOFIX anchor points as shown by the arrows → Fig. 44. The child seat must click and audibly secure into place.
4. Pull on both sides of the child seat to check whether the seat has clicked properly into place.

If the child seat is fitted with a support leg, the leg must stand firmly on the floor of the vehicle.

Securing child seats with the top tether

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 63.



Fig. 45 Illustration: marking for the top tether anchor point.

ISOFIX child seats with “universal” approval must be secured with a top tether strap in addition to the ISOFIX anchor points.

Secure the top tether only at the top tether anchor points provided for this purpose. These are marked with a symbol → Fig. 45 and, in some cases, the “TOP TETHER” label → Fig. 45.

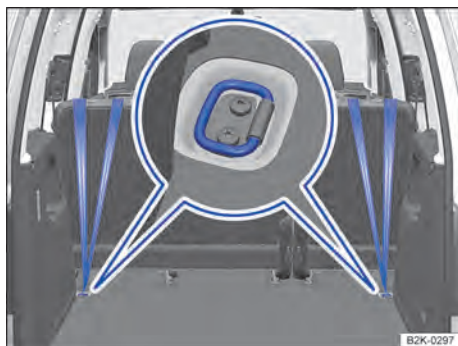


Fig. 46 Outer seats in the second row: top tether straps attached in the bolted fastening rings at the sides of the load compartment.

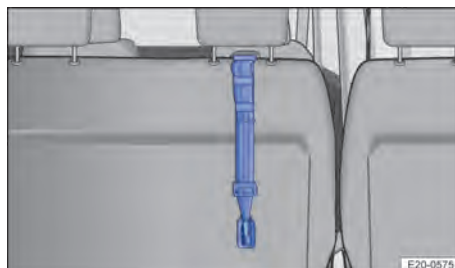


Fig. 47 Middle seat in the second seat row: top tether strap attached in the top tether anchor point (depending on market and equipment).



Fig. 48 Third seat row: top tether straps attached in top tether anchor point (depending on equipment).

1. Observe the instructions → page 65.
 2. Remove the net partition if necessary.
 3. Push the head restraint on the vehicle seat all the way up or remove it.
 4. Push the attachment arms on the child seat into the ISOFIX anchor points as shown by the arrows → page 68. The child seat must click and audibly securely into place.
 5. Remove the load compartment cover if necessary.
 6. If necessary, push the head restraint upwards and route the top tether of the child seat under the head restraint to the rear.
- Or:** remove the head restraint if necessary and route the top tether of the child seat over the backrest to the rear.
7. Hook the top tether strap of the child seat into the fastening rings → Fig. 46 or

top tether anchor point → Fig. 47 or → Fig. 48.

8. Tighten the tether so that the top of the child seat rests against the rear seat backrest.
9. Install the load compartment cover if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

If the top tether is not secured properly or is not secured at the anchor point provided for this purpose, the child seat can become detached and cause serious injuries.

- Always secure only *one* child seat top tether at one anchor point or fastening ring.
- Secure the top tether strap only at the side **bolted** fastening rings if no anchor points are present.

⚠ WARNING

Objects in the rear pockets of the seats can damage the top tether in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injuries.

- Do not keep any objects in the rear pockets of the seats when using the top tether.

1. Observe the instructions → page 65.
2. Feed the top tether through the top tether loop → Fig. 49 ① under the head restraint.
3. Push the attachment arms on the child seat into the ISOFIX anchor points as shown by the arrows → page 68. The child seat must click and audibly securely into place.
4. Attach the top tether in the top tether loop → Fig. 49 ② under the middle head restraint.
5. Tighten the belt so that the child seat is positioned at the top of the rear seat backrest.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the fastening rings can cause serious injury.

- Secure the top tether only to the fastening rings provided for this purpose.
- Always use the fastening ring on the respective seat and additionally the fastening ring of the middle seat.

Vehicles with flexible partition

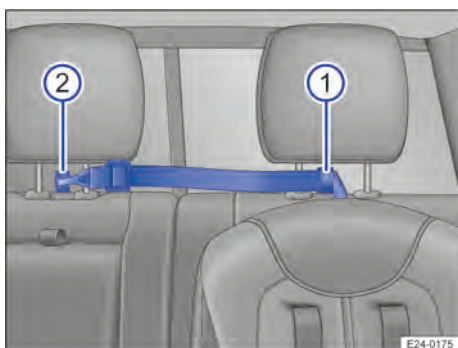


Fig. 49 Attaching the top tether strap (illustration).

Securing a child seat using the seat belt

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 63.

If you wish to fit a child seat in your vehicle, you must first ensure that it is approved for the seats in question. Important informa-

tion is given on the orange ECE approval label on the child seat. Installation options are shown in the table below.

Group		Child's weight	Front passenger seat ^{a)}		Seats on the rear bench seat (second row of seats)	Seats on the rear bench seat (third row of seats)
			Front passenger front airbag is activated	Front passenger front airbag is deactivated		
Group 0		up to 10 kg	x	u	u	x
Group 0+		up to 13 kg	x	u	u	L
Group 1	Rear facing	9 to 18 kg	x	u	u	L
	Forward facing	9 to 18 kg	u	x	u	L
Group 2		15 to 25 kg	u	x	u	L
Group 3		22 to 36 kg	u	x	u	L

a) Possible, depending on country. Please inform yourself whether it is permitted to secure a child seat on the front passenger seat.

u: universal; x: seat is not suitable for installing a child seat from this group; L: seat is suitable for installing a child seat in accordance with specification L.

Securing a child seat using the seat belt

1. Observe the instructions → page 65.
2. When fitting on the front passenger seat, push the front passenger seat back fully and adjust the seat to the highest position. Adjust the backrest to an upright position.
3. Set the seat belt height so that the seat belt routing follows a natural line and is adjusted to the child seat without turning back on itself. For rear-facing child seats, use the lowest position of the belt height adjuster.
4. Put on the seat belt according to the instructions of the child seat manufacturer and guide it through the child seat.
5. Ensure that the seat belt is not twisted.

6. Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it audibly engages.

Child seats according to specification L

Due to the vehicle's construction, only certain child seats can be used on the third row of seats. The following list contains a selection of child seats that are suitable for use in the third row of seats. If you have any questions, please contact a suitably qualified workshop.

Group 0+

- BeSafe iZI Go.
- Britax Römer Baby-Safe² i-Size.
- Britax Römer Baby-Safe with belted base.
- Britax Römer Baby-Safe Plus SHR II.

- Britax Römer First Class Plus.
- Britax Römer Primo.
- Britax Römer Primo with Base.
- Chicco Autofix.
- Chicco Autofix belted base.
- Chicco Cosmos RF.
- Chicco Keyfit.
- Chicco Oasys.
- Chicco Seat Up RF.
- Cybex Aton M i-Size.
- Cybex Cloud Z i-Size.
- Joie Gemm.
- Joie i-Gemm.
- MaxiCosi Cabriofix.
- Nuna Pippa.
- Recaro Avan.
- Recaro Guardia.
- Recaro Privia.
- Recaro Privia evo.
- Takata Mini.

Group 0/1

- Britax Römer Multi-Tech RF.
- Britax Römer Multi-Tech III RF.
- Joie Verso RF.

Group 0+1/2

- Britax Römer Hi-WAY II.

Group 1

- Bébé Confort Axiss.
- Bébé Confort Tobì.
- Bébé Confort Priori.
- Bébé Confort PrioriFix.
- Bébé Confort Opal.
- BeSafe iZi Combi X4 Isofix (forward-facing).
- Britax Römer Duo Plus.
- Britax Römer EVOLVA 1-2-3.
- Britax Römer EVOLVA PLUS.
- Britax Römer EVOLVA 1-2-3 SL SICT.
- Britax Römer FIRST CLASS PLUS.
- Britax Römer King II LS.

- Britax Römer King II ATS.
- Britax Römer SAFEFIX.
- Britax Römer VERSAFIX.
- Chicco Cosmos FF.
- Chicco Go-One.
- Chicco Gro-Up.
- Chicco Seat Up.
- Chicco Youniverse.
- MaxiCosi Tobì.
- MaxiCosi Priori.
- MaxiCosi PrioriFix.
- MaxiCosi Opal.
- MaxiCosi Axiss.
- RECARO Young Sport.
- RECARO Young Sport Hero.

Group 1/2

- Britax Römer Max Way.
- Britax Römer Max Way Plus.
- Britax Römer Multi Tech.
- Britax Römer Multi Tech III.

Group 1/2/3

- Britax Römer Advansafix.

Group 2

- Chicco Universe.

Group 2/3

- Bébé Confort RodiFix.
- Bébé Confort RodiFix Air Protect.
- Bébé Confort Rodi XP.
- Bébé Confort Rodi XR.
- Bébé Confort Rodi SPS.
- BeSafe iZi FlexFix iSize.
- Britax Römer Advansafix IV R.
- Britax Römer Advansafix IV M.
- Britax Römer Advansafix Z-Line.
- Britax Römer ADVENTURE.
- Britax Römer Discovery SL.
- Britax Römer EVOLVA 1-2-3.
- Britax Römer EVOLVA PLUS.
- Britax Römer EVOLVA 1-2-3 SL SICT.
- Britax Römer KIDFIX 2R.

- Britax Römer KIDFIX 2S.
- Britax Römer KIDFIX SL SICT.
- Britax Römer KIDFIX SL.
- Britax Römer KID II.
- Britax Römer KIDFIX III M.
- Britax Römer KIDFIX III S.
- Britax Römer KIDFIX Z-LINE.
- Britax Römer KidFix² M.
- Britax Römer KidFix XP.
- Chicco Gro-Up.
- Chicco Fold & Go.
- Chicco OASYS.
- Chicco Youniverse.
- Chicco Seat 4 Fix.
- Concord Transformer T.
- Concord Transformer Pro.
- Concord Transformer XT.
- Concord Transformer XT Pro.
- Concord Vario.
- Cybex Solutions S i-Fix.
- Cybex Solutions Z i-Fix.
- Joie Trillo LX.
- Joie Traver.
- Joie Bold.
- Joie Verso.
- Kiddy Guardianfix Pro.

- Kiddy Guardian Pro.
- Kiddy Guardianfix 3.
- Kiddy Cruiserfix 3.
- Kiddy Cruiser Pro.
- Kiddy Smartfix.
- MaxiCosi RodiFix.
- MaxiCosi RodiFix Air Protect.
- MaxiCosi Rodi XP.
- MaxiCosi Rodi XR.
- MaxiCosi Rodi SPS.
- RECARO Monza Nova.
- RECARO Monza.
- RECARO Monza Nova EVO.
- RECARO Monza Nova 2.
- RECARO Young Sport.
- RECARO Young Sport Hero.
- Takata Maxi.

Booster

- Graco Booster Basic.
- Osann Dream.
- Osann Junior.
- Osann Topo.
- Osann Up.
- PegPerego Viaggio 2-3 Shuttle.



In an emergency

Making you and your vehicle safe

Observe any legislation concerning the safety of a broken-down vehicle. For example, many countries stipulate that you have to switch on the hazard warning lights and wear a high-visibility waistcoat.

Checklist of what to do in the event of a breakdown

To ensure your own safety and the safety of your passengers, observe the following actions in the specified order → :

1. Stop the vehicle at a safe distance away from moving traffic and on a suitable surface. Observe all the important information on parking → page 209.

2. Switch on the hazard warning lights with the  button.
3. Switch on the electronic parking brake.
4. Shift the gear lever to neutral position or engage parking lock **P**.
5. Switch off the engine.
6. Ensure that all occupants exit the vehicle and go straight to a safe place away from moving traffic, e.g. behind the safety barrier. Observe the country-specific regulations concerning high-visibility waistcoats.
7. Take all vehicle keys with you when you leave the vehicle.

8. Place the warning triangle in position to draw the attention of other road users to your vehicle.
9. Allow the engine to cool down and if necessary seek suitably qualified expert assistance.

If the ignition is switched on and the hazard warning lights activated, you can still indicate a change in direction or change of lane with the turn signal lever. The warning lights will be interrupted temporarily.

WARNING

Any broken-down vehicle poses a high accident risk for the vehicle occupants and other road users.

- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.
- Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights.
- Never leave anyone alone in the vehicle, particularly children or people requiring assistance. This applies in particular when the doors are locked. People locked in the vehicle may be subjected to very high or very low temperatures.

NOTICE

Pushing the vehicle by hand can damage the vehicle.

- When pushing the vehicle by hand, make sure that you do not exert excessive pressure on the components.

WARNING

The components of the exhaust system become very hot. This can cause fires and serious injuries.

- Park the vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass, fuel.

Checklist of what to do after an accident

To ensure your own safety and that of your passengers in an accident, observe the following actions in the specified order:

1. Switch off the ignition.

2. Switch on the hazard warning lights with the  button.
3. Place the warning triangle in position to draw the attention of other road users to your vehicle.
4. Ensure that all occupants exit the vehicle and go to a safe place away from moving traffic, e.g. behind the safety barrier. Administer first aid and observe country-specific regulations on high-visibility waistcoats.
5. Report the accident to the fire service. Inform the fire service that the vehicle in question is an electric vehicle.
6. Wait for the emergency services at the scene of the accident.
7. Inform the emergency services and the persons involved at the scene of the accident that it is an electric vehicle.

Switch on the hazard warning lights in the following situations, for example:

- When traffic ahead suddenly slows down or you reach the tail end of a traffic jam to warn vehicles behind you.
- When there is an emergency.
- If the vehicle breaks down.
- The vehicle has broken down.
- When tow-starting or towing.

Always follow local regulations for the use of the hazard warning lights.

If the hazard warning lights are not working, you must use an alternative method of drawing attention to the broken-down vehicle. This method must comply with traffic legislation.

 The 12-volt vehicle battery will discharge if the hazard warning lights are left on over a long period of time – even when the ignition is switched off.

 In some vehicles, if you brake hard at speeds over approximately 80 km/h (50 mph), the brake lights will flash to warn the traffic behind. If you then continue to brake, the hazard warning lights will be switched on automatically at speeds under approximately 10 km/h (6 mph). The brake light will light up steadily. Once the vehicle

starts to accelerate, the hazard warning lights will switch off again.

Equipment for an emergency

First-aid kit

The first-aid kit must comply with legal requirements. Please observe the use-by date of the contents.

The first-aid kit may be located in the following positions:

- Under the front passenger seat.
- In the front door trim.

After use, renew contents if necessary and then stow the first-aid kit away again safely.

Warning triangle

The warning triangle must comply with legal requirements.

The warning triangle may be located in the following positions:

- Under the front passenger seat.
- Behind a cover on the right side of the load compartment.
- In a pocket on the left side trim.

High-visibility waistcoat

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the high-visibility waistcoat may be located in a stowage compartment in the front door trim or in the stowage compartment on the front passenger side.

Fire extinguisher

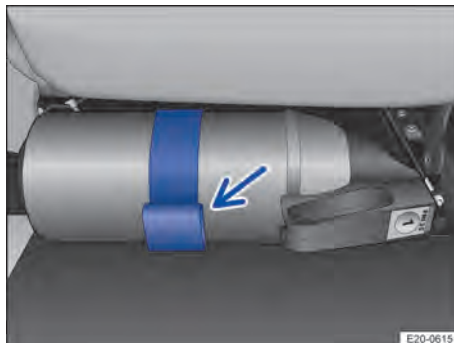


Fig. 50 Under the front passenger seat: Bracket with fire extinguisher (illustration).

Depending on the equipment, a fire extinguisher may be located in a holder in the footwell under the front passenger seat.

The fire extinguisher must comply with applicable legal regulations, must always be ready for use and must be checked or replaced regularly (see inspection seal or expiry date on the fire extinguisher).

Stow fire extinguishers properly after use and replace them as soon as possible.

Removing and stowing fire extinguisher

Before using the fire extinguisher, make sure you are familiar with its operation. For this purpose, there are instructions for use on the fire extinguisher.

1. Open the tab on the bracket and remove the fire extinguisher → Fig. 50 (arrow).
2. Fit the fire extinguisher in the bracket. Guide the tab over the belt, press the tab down and close it.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident, loose objects could be flung through the vehicle and cause severe injuries.

- Always secure the first aid kit, warning triangle and fire extinguisher safely in the holders provided in the vehicle.
- Stow the high-visibility waistcoat in a stowage compartment where it can be easily reached.

eCall Emergency System



Fig. 51 In the roof console: button for eCall Emergency System (behind button cover) and indicator lamp.

 eCall Emergency System.



Fig. 52 Control for emergency call: indicator lamp and button for eCall Emergency System.

- ① Indicator lamp.
- ② Button for eCall Emergency System.

Depending on the equipment and country, the vehicle may be equipped with an emergency call system. In some countries, the free legally required eCall Emergency System is activated as standard. The control is located in the roof console.

The emergency call function allows help to be organised very quickly in danger situations. A voice connection is established to a public emergency call centre. The call centre communicates in the language of the country in which the vehicle is located. In addition, data relevant to the emergency call and required by law is transmitted automatically to the public emergency call centre, such as the current vehicle position.

The legal basis for data processing by the legally required eCall Emergency System corresponds to the country-specific legislation such as the EU Regulation 2015/758. Please also observe the information on data storage units and data services.

The required connection is established by a factory-fitted control unit. Additional components are required in order to ensure that the function is still possible even after a serious accident – emergency call microphone, emergency call loudspeaker and an integrated battery that is independent of the vehicle electrical system.

Indicator lamp for the eCall Emergency System

Depending on the operating state, the indicator lamp lights up in different colours and light sequences → Fig. 52 ①:

- Indicator lamp does not light up: emergency call is not available.
- Indicator lamp flashes red for about 20 seconds after the ignition has been switched on: emergency call is deactivated.
- Indicator lamp lights up red continuously: system error. Emergency call is restricted or not available.
- Indicator lamp lights up green: emergency call is available, system ready for operation.
- Indicator lamp flashes green: emergency call is active.

WARNING

It may not be possible to make a manual or automatic emergency call, or the availability of the emergency call function may be restricted, in the following conditions:

- Your current emergency call location is in an area with no or insufficient mobile communications and satellite signal reception.
- No 2G/3G mobile communications network of telecommunication providers is available in areas with sufficient mobile communications and satellite signal reception.
- The emergency call system is not available in some countries.
- The public emergency call centre is technically not able to receive emergency call data.
- The components in the vehicle required for the manual or automatic emergency

call are damaged or do not have sufficient electrical energy.

- The vehicle ignition is not switched on.

Initiating an emergency call manually

1. Briefly press the button cover  and fold open the button cover → Fig. 51.
2. Press and hold the emergency call button → Fig. 52  for several seconds.
The emergency call is now initiated and a voice connection is established to the public emergency call centre.

If you have accidentally pressed the emergency call button, cancel the emergency call immediately:

1. Press the emergency call button again until the indicator lamp lights up green continuously.

Automatic emergency call

An automatic emergency call is initiated only when the ignition is switched on.

A connection to the emergency call centre is set up automatically in the following situations:

- Immediately after the airbags are triggered.
- Immediately after the belt tensioners are triggered.
- Depending on equipment, after a system intervention by Driver State Assist.

The automatic emergency call cannot be cancelled by pressing the button for the legally required eCall Emergency System → Fig. 52.

Rescue measures will be initiated automatically if there is no response to questions from the public emergency call centre.

Integrated battery

The integrated battery ensures that the legally required eCall Emergency System remains available for some time if the 12-volt vehicle battery is disconnected or faulty.

A corresponding message will be displayed in the instrument cluster display if the integrated battery is discharged or faulty → page 79, *Troubleshooting*. If the corresponding message is displayed, go to

a qualified workshop immediately and have the integrated battery replaced.

-  Have the integrated battery checked by a suitably qualified workshop after about 3 years and replaced if necessary.

Data transmission

In the event of an emergency call, the legally prescribed data is transmitted to the public emergency call centre in order to determine necessary rescue measures.

The data on the vehicle location is continuously overwritten so that only the last three stored locations required for correct functioning of the legally required eCall Emergency System are available. The vehicle is therefore not permanently tracked.

The data relating to the emergency call is processed exclusively in order to ensure correct functioning of the legally required eCall Emergency System. The data relating to the emergency call will be deleted automatically by the system 13 hours after the emergency call was initiated.

The transmitted data includes the following:

- Current position of the vehicle when the emergency call was initiated.
- Two other positions, a few 100 m (around 328 ft) of the driving route, shortly before the emergency call was initiated.
- Vehicle identification number (VIN).
- Type of vehicle drive.
- Vehicle class.
- Type of initiation (automatic or manual).
- Type of call.
- Direction in which the vehicle was moving when the emergency call was triggered.
- Time of the collision.
- Reliability of the positioning data.
- Data record version.
- Counter for transmitted data records per call.
- Estimated number of passengers per call.



Troubleshooting

eCall emergency call system fault

The indicator lamp in the emergency call button lights up red continuously . In addition, a message may be displayed in the instrument cluster.

There is a system fault in the eCall Emergency System. It is not possible to make an emergency call.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop immediately and have the fault rectified.

eCall Emergency System restricted

The indicator lamp in the emergency call button lights up red continuously . In addition, a message may be displayed in the instrument cluster.

The availability of the eCall Emergency System is restricted. It may not be possible to make an emergency call.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop immediately and have the fault rectified.

Touch panels do not react as expected

Moisture, dirt and grease can impede the functioning of the touch panels.

1. Always keep touch panels clean and dry.



Opening and closing

Vehicle key

Functions of the vehicle key

Buttons on the vehicle key

 Lock the vehicle. Direction indicators flash once. Pressing once locks the vehicle and activates SAFELOCK. Pressing twice locks the vehicle without SAFELOCK.

 Unlock the vehicle. Press once: the vehicle unlocks according to the settings in the Infotainment system. Press twice: the entire vehicle is unlocked.

 Unlock the tailgate or rear door individually. All direction indicators flash twice. To do this, press and hold the button briefly.

 Unlock the load compartment and lock the driver's cab → page 92.

 Depending on the vehicle equipment level, the vehicle may have a SAFELOCK mechanism. This prevents the doors from being opened from both the inside and the outside.

If a vehicle is equipped with SAFELOCK, this is activated automatically when locking with the vehicle key or the sensor in the door handle. If the SAFELOCK function is to be deliberately cancelled, the vehicle key or the door handle sensor must be actuated again. The vehicle is then only locked. Opening from the outside is prevented, opening from the inside is possible.

Single door unlocking

When single door unlocking is activated, pressing the unlock button on the remote control once unlocks only the driver door. The other doors and the boot lid remain locked. Pressing the unlock button twice in quick succession unlocks the entire vehicle, even if single door unlocking is activated.

Single door unlocking can be adjusted in the Infotainment system:

- Tap the **Vehicle** menu.
- Tap the **Central locking** menu item.

- Tap the **Door unlocking** menu item.
- Select **Single door** to activate the function.

Replacement key

You will need to quote the vehicle identification number when ordering a replacement key or additional vehicle keys.

Each new key contains a microchip which must be encoded with the data for the vehicle's electronic immobiliser. A vehicle key will not work if it contains an unencoded microchip. The same applies for keys that have been cut to fit the vehicle.

New vehicle keys are available from qualified workshops and authorised key services which are qualified to manufacture these vehicle keys.

WARNING

If the vehicle key is left unattended in the vehicle, children or unauthorised persons could lock the doors and the boot lid, start the engine or switch on the ignition and thus operate electrical equipment, e.g. electric windows. This can result in accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle.

WARNING

If children, people requiring assistance or animals are left unattended in the vehicle, they could accidentally set the vehicle in motion or be exposed to very high or low temperatures. There is a risk of accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never leave children, people requiring assistance or animals unattended in the vehicle.

NOTICE

External influences can restrict the vehicle key functions and damage the key.

- Protect the key from moisture and excessive vibration.

 The service life of the button cell in the vehicle key may be shortened by regular use of convenience systems and other usage patterns.

Spare key



Fig. 53 Vehicle key: releasing the spare key.

- ① Press the release button briefly. The keyring folds open.
- ② Press the release button and pull the spare key out in the direction of the arrow.
- ③ Spare key.

A manual key → Fig. 53 ③ is located in the vehicle key for Keyless Entry. This can be used to lock and unlock the vehicle manually.

If the vehicle battery or button cell in the vehicle key is flat, it may be necessary to lock or unlock the vehicle manually.

Changing the button cell

There are two options for changing the button cell in the vehicle key, depending on the equipment: → Fig. 54 and → Fig. 55.

This button cell can be changed by a suitably qualified workshop → ⚠.

Changing the button cell (variant 1)

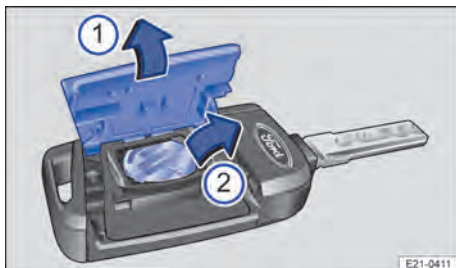


Fig. 54 Vehicle key: changing the button cell.

1. Fold out the key bit on the vehicle key.
2. Open the cover upwards → Fig. 54 ①.
3. Remove the button cell from the compartment ②.
4. Press the new button cell into the compartment.
5. Press the cover onto the housing.
6. Dispose of the discharged button cell in an environmentally friendly way.

Changing the button cell (variant 2)

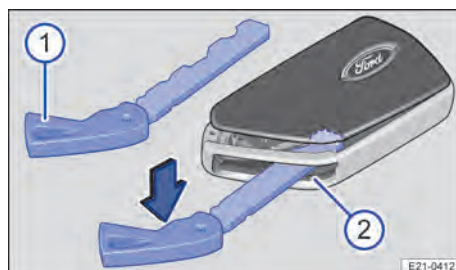


Fig. 55 Vehicle key: opening the cover.



Fig. 56 Vehicle key: changing the button cell.

1. Remove the spare key → page 81.
2. Insert the manual key in the slot → Fig. 55 ②, press in the direction of the arrow and lever off the cover.
3. Remove the button cell from the compartment → Fig. 56.
4. Press the new button cell into the compartment.
5. Press the cover onto the housing.
6. Put the spare key back → page 81.
7. Dispose of the discharged button cell in an environmentally friendly way.

DANGER

If button cell batteries are swallowed or get into the wind pipe, this will lead to serious or even fatal injuries due to suffocation or internal burns within a very short space of time.

- Seek immediate medical assistance if you suspect that someone has swallowed a button cell.
- Always keep the vehicle key and key fob with button cells out of the reach of children.

NOTICE

The vehicle key can be damaged if the button cell is not changed properly.

- Replace a discharged button cell only with a new button cell of the same voltage rating, size and specification.
- Ensure that the button cell is fitted with the correct polarity.
- If the cover cannot be closed, do not use the remote control.

 Button cells of the type used in the remote control of your vehicle key may contain perchlorate. This may require special handling. Please observe all the legal requirements regarding the handling and disposal of these button cells → page 413. Have this service carried out by a suitably qualified workshop.

Synchronising the vehicle key

If you cannot lock or unlock the vehicle with the vehicle key, synchronise the vehicle key or replace the button cell → page 81.

Synchronising the vehicle key:

1. Stand beside the vehicle.
2. Press the  button on the vehicle key twice in quick succession.

Or:

1. Remove the spare key → page 81.
2. Press the  button on the vehicle key.
3. Unlock the vehicle using the manual key.

4. Open left-hand front door.

If the vehicle has an anti-theft alarm, this will be triggered immediately
→ page 94.

5. Switch on the ignition.

An emergency start must be performed in order to switch on the ignition
→ page 154.

The synchronisation process is complete. 

Troubleshooting

Vehicle cannot be locked or unlocked

The vehicle key is subject to interference caused by obstacles, adverse weather conditions or other transmitters operating in the same frequency range in the vicinity of the vehicle, e.g. mobile devices, or due to a flat button cell.

Or: the central locking system has switched itself off temporarily to protect itself against overloading.

1. Close the driver door.

Or: synchronise the vehicle key
→ page 82.

Or: change the button cell in the vehicle key → page 81.

 The central locking system switches off temporarily to protect itself from overloading.

1. Wait for about 10 seconds.
2. Try to activate the central locking system again.

Indicator lamp does not flash

If the indicator lamp in the vehicle key does not flash when pressing the button, the button cell in the vehicle key has to be replaced → page 81.

Vehicle does not flash when locked

— All doors, the bonnet and the boot lid must be fully closed. The direction indicators flash only if the vehicle is fully closed.

— Check whether the vehicle key is close enough to the vehicle.

- Check the charge level of the button cell in the vehicle key.

i The indicator lamp in the vehicle key must light up each time the buttons are pressed.

The central locking button lights up white

- The vehicle is unlocked.
- Close all doors and operate the central locking button in the door.
- The central locking button lights up yellow when all doors have been locked from inside.
- If the central locking button still lights up white, the doors are not locked and there is a fault. Go to a qualified workshop.

Vehicle cannot be unlocked due to a flat vehicle button cell in the ignition key

1. Remove the manual key from the vehicle key → page 81.
2. Insert the manual key in the door lock and turn anticlockwise.
On right-hand-drive vehicles, turn the manual key clockwise.
3. The front left door is unlocked mechanically.
4. Open left-hand front door.
5. Switch on the ignition. The alarm is ended.
6. To unlock the other doors, operate the central locking button in the door.

i Depending on equipment, an alarm is triggered when the door is opened.

Vehicle cannot be unlocked due to a discharged vehicle battery

1. Remove the manual key from the vehicle key → page 81.
2. Insert the manual key in the door lock and turn anticlockwise.
On right-hand-drive vehicles, turn the manual key clockwise.
3. The front left door is unlocked mechanically.
4. Open left-hand front door.

5. If the SAFELOCK function was not activated previously, all doors can now be opened and unlocked individually by pulling the respective interior door handle.

6. It is not possible to open the other doors if the SAFELOCK is activated.

The central locking functions will be available again after the convenience battery has been charged.

i Additional or replacement vehicle keys can be obtained from a qualified workshop. <

Keyless Entry

Introduction

Depending on equipment, the vehicle has the Keyless Entry function.

Keyless Entry allows you to unlock and lock the vehicle without actively using the vehicle key. A valid vehicle key must be located within the operating range of the vehicle for this. <

Unlocking and locking the vehicle with Keyless Entry

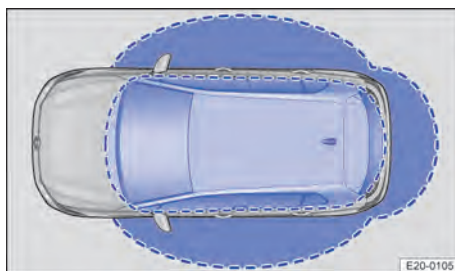


Fig. 57 Keyless Entry: operating ranges.

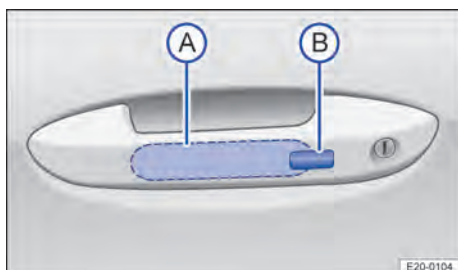


Fig. 58 In the door handle: sensors.

- Ⓐ Sensor on the inside of the door handle.
- Ⓑ Sensor on the outside of the door handle.

Configuring Keyless Entry

You can set the behaviour of the keyless locking and starting system Keyless Entry in the **Vehicle** menu in the Infotainment system.

If the Keyless Entry function is deactivated, functions may be restricted as a result.

The recommendation is to always leave Keyless Entry activated.

Unlocking the vehicle

1. Touch the sensor → Fig. 58Ⓐ on the inside of the door handle.

All direction indicators flash twice.

The entire vehicle is unlocked if the sensor is touched twice.

Unlocking the vehicle when approaching

Depending on equipment, the vehicle can be unlocked when you approach it. The following conditions must be met simultaneously for this:

- ✓ The function is activated in the Infotainment system.
- ✓ The vehicle key is located in the unlock range of the vehicle.

If automatic unlocking is successful, all direction indicators flash twice.

If the vehicle is not unlocked for an extended period of time, the function is not available again until the next engine start.

When the single door unlocking function is activated, the driver door is unlocked only if the driver side is approached. Other doors are not unlocked.

Locking the vehicle

You can only lock the vehicle using the front door handles, not the sliding door handle.

1. Park the vehicle.
2. Touch the sensor → Fig. 58Ⓑ on the outside of the door handle.

All direction indicators flash once.

The unlock function is deactivated for a few seconds so that you can check that the vehicle has been locked properly.

The vehicle will be locked if all doors and the boot lid are closed. A double acoustic warning may be output to indicate that there are open doors if this function has been activated in the vehicle settings.

Locking the vehicle when leaving

Depending on equipment, the vehicle can be locked automatically when you move away from it. The following conditions must be met simultaneously for this:

- ✓ The function is activated in the Infotainment system.
 - ✓ The last key belonging to the vehicle leaves the locking range.
- If automatic locking is successful, all direction indicators flash once.

If there is another vehicle key in the vehicle, automatic locking does not take place.

Deactivate automatic locking once:

1. Press the  button for longer than 2 seconds with the door open.

Automatic locking is not available until the next time the vehicle is deliberately locked.

The vehicle will only be locked if all doors and the boot lid are closed. Depending on the vehicle settings, a double acoustic warning may sound to warn the driver about open doors.

When locking by leaving the vehicle, the vehicle is locked without SAFELOCK. This is

indicated by a single acoustic feedback signal. The vehicle is locked with SAFELOCK only by deliberate locking on the door handle or using the vehicle key.

If the key is in the detection range around the vehicle for an extended period, locking when leaving or unlocking when approaching may be restricted.

A double acoustic warning may be output, depending on the settings.

 Certain devices may prevent locking. The vehicle then remains unlocked without an acoustic warning. Always check the locking status of the vehicle.

 If the vehicle has been parked for an extended period and has not been used, the vehicle can only be unlocked via the sensor on the inside of the driver door handle or the vehicle key.

Unlocking and opening the sliding door

The vehicle is unlocked if you press the button in the sliding door handle once when the vehicle is locked.

Pressing the button a second time opens the sliding door.

Locking and unlocking the boot lid

When the vehicle is locked, the boot lid will be unlocked automatically if you open it when a vehicle key is located within the operating range of the boot lid. The boot lid will be locked again after closing.

If the unlocking when approaching function is disabled in the Infotainment system, the boot lid unlocks only after it has been opened using the handle on the boot lid → page 96.

When **Central locking, all doors** and **Keyless Entry Unlock vehicle when approaching** are activated in the Infotainment system, the vehicle remains unlocked after the boot lid has been opened and closed. The vehicle must be actively locked.

If **Keyless Entry Lock vehicle when walking away** is activated, the vehicle is also locked automatically when you walk away from it.

Temporarily deactivating Keyless Entry

The Keyless Entry unlocking function can be deactivated temporarily.

1. Lock the vehicle with the  button in the vehicle key.
2. Touch the sensor on the outside of the door handle once within 5 seconds → Fig. 58 . Do not reach into the door handle.

Keyless Entry is deactivated temporarily.

3. To check deactivation, wait for at least 10 seconds and pull the door handle again.

It should not be possible to open the door.

When the vehicle is next unlocked, it can be unlocked only using the vehicle key. Keyless Entry is reactivated the next time the vehicle is unlocked.

Permanently deactivating Keyless Entry

You can deactivate Keyless Entry permanently in the Infotainment system to prevent the vehicle from being unlocked and started by unauthorised third parties.

 When Keyless Entry is deactivated, depending on equipment, the sensor-controlled opening and closing of the boot lid is also deactivated even if the function is enabled in the vehicle menu.

Operating the convenience functions

The electric windows can be closed automatically.

1. Place a finger on the sensor of the driver or front passenger door handle for a few seconds → Fig. 58.

The sensor functions can be set in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system.

 The unlock function is deactivated for a few seconds so that you can check that the vehicle has been locked properly.

 A vehicle with an automatic transmission can only be locked when the parking lock  is engaged.

 The entire vehicle will be unlocked if the sensor is touched twice, even if a single door has already been unlocked.

Troubleshooting

Keyless Entry not working

The sensors may have limited functionality if they become very dirty.

1. Clean the sensors.

All direction indicators flash four times

The vehicle key used last is still in the vehicle.

1. Remove the vehicle key and lock the vehicle.

Automatic deactivation of the sensors

The sensors will be disabled in the following circumstances:

- The vehicle is not unlocked or locked for an extended period.
- A sensor has been triggered an excessive number of times.

Reactivating the sensors:

1. Unlock the vehicle with the  button in the vehicle key.

Vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked from inside due to discharged button cell in the vehicle key

If the button cell in the vehicle key is weak or discharged, it is possible that the vehicle key will not be recognised.

1. Hold the vehicle key against the lower section of the centre console
→ page 154.

The vehicle key is recognised.

The doors can be unlocked or locked again.

No valid vehicle key recognised

The indicator lamp lights up yellow. A text message is additionally shown on the instrument cluster display.

The vehicle key is no longer in the vehicle or in the unlocking and locking range.

1. Do not switch off the ignition.
2. Bring the vehicle key back into the vehicle or the operating range.

Or: depending on the equipment, remove the vehicle key from the immediate vicinity of the wireless charging function. Then place the vehicle key in the shelf of the centre console.

If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

Automatic unlocking or locking does not work

The vehicle does not unlock when approached.

— Function must be set in the Infotainment system.

The vehicle does not lock when you move away.

— The function is not selected in the Infotainment system.

— There is still a vehicle key in the vehicle.

— The doors and windows are not completely closed.

 If at least one window is open and sensor surfaces on the door handles are continuously activated, all windows will close.

 There may be a malfunction in the Keyless Entry system if the message **Error. Keyless Entry system** appears on the instrument cluster display. Go to a qualified workshop in this case.

 The Keyless Entry function may not work properly if the vehicle key is subject to interference from another radio signal, e.g. mobile telephone in the direct vicinity, or is covered by another object such as a metal case. If there is no vehicle key in the vehicle or if it is not detected, a corresponding display will be shown on the instrument cluster display.

Doors and central locking button

Introduction

If the vehicle key or central locking fails, the doors can be locked manually and, in some cases, also unlocked manually.

The central locking system enables you to centrally lock and unlock all the doors, the boot lid and the tank flap of the vehicle.

The vehicle can be locked if the ignition has been switched off or the driver has switched off the engine before leaving the vehicle.

Always take the vehicle key with you when you leave the vehicle.

Display when doors are open

A symbol in the instrument cluster display indicates if one or more doors or lids are not closed properly → .

Do not drive on!

1. Park the vehicle safely if necessary.
2. Open the door in question and then close it again.

This symbol is also visible when the ignition is switched off and will go out a few seconds after the vehicle has been locked when all doors and lids are closed.

WARNING

Any door that is not properly closed could open suddenly while the vehicle is in motion. This could lead to severe injuries.

- Stop immediately as soon as the traffic permits and close the door.
- Make sure that the door is closed properly and that the lock has engaged. The closed door must be flush with the surrounding body panels.

WARNING

Any door being held open by the door arrester could close unexpectedly in strong winds or if the vehicle is on a slope. This could lead to serious injuries.

- Always hold the door handle firmly when opening and closing doors.

WARNING

Opening and closing the doors and boot lid without taking due care is dangerous and can cause serious injuries.

- Open or close the doors and boot lid only when there is no-one in the movement path.

WARNING

The central locking system locks all doors. However, locked doors can make it difficult for helpers to gain access to the vehicle interior in the event of an accident or emergency. If the vehicle is locked from the outside, the doors and electric windows cannot be opened from the inside. There is a risk of serious or fatal injuries.

- Never leave children, people requiring assistance or animals unattended in the vehicle.

WARNING

All doors can be locked from the inside using the central locking button. This may mean that children, persons requiring assistance or animals lock themselves in the vehicle. In an emergency, they may not be able to leave the vehicle independently or to help themselves. They can also be exposed to very high or low temperatures. There is a risk of serious or fatal injuries.

- Never leave children, people requiring assistance or animals unattended in the vehicle.

NOTICE

Incorrect handling of the components for manual locking can cause damage to the vehicle.

- Take care when performing manual locking or unlocking.

 Locking the vehicle from the inside can prevent accidental opening of the doors and unauthorised persons from entering the vehicle.

 People who are locked in the vehicle can unlock the doors in an emergency by pulling the door release lever forcefully

twice. The lever must be pulled beyond a noticeable resistance in this case.

 You can save some settings in the user account in personalisation.

Locking and unlocking doors manually

 **Please refer to  and  at the start of the chapter on page 87.**

The doors can be locked or unlocked manually in the event of a fault in the electric vehicle key or central locking.

Locking the doors manually

Left front door with lock cylinder:

1. Insert the vehicle key bit into the lock cylinder of the left front door.
The grip of the manual key points towards the rear door.
2. To lock the vehicle, turn the vehicle key **clockwise**.
3. Ensure that the door is locked.

Depending on the equipment, the locked door will be unlocked again when the vehicle is unlocked or the door is opened from the inside.

Unlocking the doors manually

1. *From inside (depending on equipment):* pull the door release lever.
2. *From outside:* insert the vehicle key bit into the lock cylinder of the left front door.

The grip of the manual key points towards the rear door.

3. To unlock the vehicle, turn the vehicle key **anti-clockwise**.
4. Pull the door handle firmly to open the door.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the alarm may be triggered when you open the door → page 94. Switch on the ignition immediately to deactivate the alarm.

Things to note when unlocking manually

When manual locking takes place, all doors are locked. With manual unlocking, only the left front door is unlocked. Observe the information about the anti-theft alarm → page 94.

- An alarm is triggered when the left front door is opened → page 94.
- The vehicle must be started manually once unlocked → page 154.
- Switch on the ignition to switch off the alarm.

The electronic immobiliser recognises a valid vehicle key.

WARNING

Opening and closing the doors and boot lid without taking due care is dangerous and can cause serious injuries.

- Open or close the doors and boot lid only when there is no-one in the movement path.

 If there is no vehicle voltage present (e.g. due to a discharged 12-volt vehicle battery), only the door that was manually locked or unlocked will be locked or unlocked. The other doors will remain in their initial condition.

 Depending on the equipment, the windows cannot be opened from the inside if the vehicle is locked from the outside.

Indicator lamp in the driver door

 **Please refer to  and  at the start of the chapter on page 87.**

The central locking system indicator lamp is located in the driver door.

The indicator lamp shows the status of the central locking system for around 30 seconds after the vehicle has been locked.

A red LED flashes for approximately 2 seconds in short intervals.

The status of the central locking system is then indicated for around 28 seconds:

Vehicle with SAFELOCK (depending on equipment)

- The vehicle has been locked with SAFE-LOCK if the red LED flashes at long intervals.
- If the red LED light unit does not light up, the vehicle is locked but without SAFE-LOCK.

Vehicle without SAFELOCK

- The vehicle is locked if the red LED flashes at long intervals.

The LED flashes at slow intervals after approximately 30 seconds.

Things to note

If the red LED light unit lights up continuously, there is a fault in the central locking system or anti-theft alarm.

Automatic locking and unlocking

 **Please refer to  and  at the start of the chapter on page 87.**

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the settings for central locking can be made in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system.

Automatic locking (Auto Lock)

The vehicle locks itself automatically at speeds above approximately 15 km/h (9 mph). The indicator lamp  in the central locking button will light up yellow when the vehicle is locked.

Automatic unlocking (Auto Unlock)

All vehicle doors and the boot lid are automatically unlocked if one of the following conditions applies:

- In an accident where the airbags have been triggered.
 - Or:** the electric parking brake is engaged and the ignition is switched off.
 - Or:** on vehicles with automatic transmission: the parking lock  is engaged and the ignition is switched off.
- **Or:** the vehicle is stationary and the  button has been pressed → page 89.



Automatic unlocking gives emergency responders access to the vehicle. 

Central locking button

 **Please refer to  and  at the start of the chapter on page 87.**

The central locking button is located in the driver door.

Central locking buttons



Lock the vehicle.



Unlock the vehicle.

 The central locking button functions with the ignition switched on or off only when all doors are closed.

If the vehicle has been locked from outside with the vehicle key, the central locking buttons do not work.

Locking and unlocking the vehicle from inside

Please note the following when using the central locking button  to lock the vehicle from the inside:

- If all doors and the boot lid are closed and locked, the  indicator lamp in the button lights up yellow.
- The anti-theft alarm will **not** be activated.

The doors can be opened from the inside by pulling the door release handle. The  indicator lamp in the button goes out. The unopened doors and the boot lid remain locked and cannot be opened from the outside.

An open door will not be locked. 

Opening and closing the sliding doors manually

📖 Please refer to ⚠️ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 87.

Opening the sliding door from the outside

1. Pull the handle on the unlocked sliding door and open the door fully → ⚠️.

Opening the sliding door from the inside

1. Pull the door release lever on the unlocked sliding door and open the door fully → ⚠️.
2. *Transit*: Press the  button underneath the door release lever so the door gently springs open.

Closing the sliding door

1. *Vehicles without power closing*: pull the door handle or door release lever and push the sliding door closed with a little force. Ensure that the sliding door is completely closed → ⚠️.
2. *Vehicles with power closing*: pull the door handle or door release lever and push the sliding door closed with a little force until power closing closes it automatically → ⚠️.

⚠️ WARNING

If the sliding door is not fully opened it could close suddenly. This could lead to severe injuries.

- Always open and close the sliding doors fully.

⚠️ WARNING

On vehicles with power closing: automatic closing of the sliding door can cause serious injuries.

- When closing the sliding door, make sure that the area around the door is clear.

ⓘ NOTICE

Vehicle without tank flap collision protection: if the tank flap is open it could be damaged when the left-hand sliding door is opened.

- Make sure that the tank flap is closed before opening the left-hand sliding door.

ⓘ The closing process can be interrupted at any time by pulling the door handle or door release lever.



Electric childproof lock

📖 Please refer to ⚠️ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 87.



Fig. 59 In the driver door: button for adjusting the electric childproof lock.

The electric childproof lock prevents the sliding doors being opened from the inside.

You can unlock a locked sliding door from the inside when the childproof lock is switched on by pulling the door release lever. The door can then be opened from the outside. The electric childproof lock remains active, i.e. you still cannot open the door from the inside.

Switching the electric childproof lock on and off

1. *Switching on*: Operate the touch panel → Fig. 59.

Switching off: Operate the touch panel again.

The ⓘ indicator lamp in the touch panel lights up yellow when the childproof lock is active.

Fault message in the Infotainment system or on the instrument cluster display

A fault message is displayed in the Infotainment system or on the instrument cluster display.

1. Press the electric childproof lock button again.

2. If the fault message does not disappear, go to a suitably qualified workshop and have the electric childproof lock checked.

⚠ WARNING

When the electric childproof lock is activated, the door cannot be opened from the inside. This may mean that people lock themselves in the vehicle. In an emergency, they may not be able to leave the vehicle independently or to help themselves.

- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle when the doors are locked.

⚠ WARNING

If children, people requiring assistance or animals are left unattended in the vehicle, they could be exposed to very high or low temperatures. There is a risk of serious injury or death.

- Never leave children, people requiring assistance or animals unattended in the vehicle.

Opening the sliding doors manually (mechanical manual opening)

📖 **Please refer to ⚠ and ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 87.**



Fig. 60 Inside of the sliding door: removing the cover.

Opening sliding doors manually Cargo (depending on equipment)

1. Remove the plug in the inner trim of the sliding door and pull → Fig. 60.

The sliding door opens.

⚠ WARNING

A sliding door that is opened or closed manually moves very quickly, does not engage in the open position and can cause severe injuries.

- Open and close the sliding door carefully, particularly on uphill and downhill gradients.
- Always close the sliding door immediately.



Manual opening is not available for vehicles with flexible partition.

SAFELOCK

📖 **Please refer to ⚠ and ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 87.**

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, the vehicle may have a SAFELOCK mechanism.

If the vehicle is locked, SAFELOCK deactivates the door release levers and central locking button so that it becomes more difficult to break into the vehicle. The doors can no longer be opened from the inside → ⚠.

Activating SAFELOCK

1. Press the  button on the vehicle key within 2 seconds.
2. *On vehicles with Keyless Entry:* touch the sensor on the outside of the door handle within 2 seconds → page 83.

The vehicle is locked. SAFELOCK was activated.

Deactivating SAFELOCK

The SAFELOCK can be deactivated in one of the following ways:

- Press the  button on the vehicle key again within 2 seconds.

- On vehicles with Keyless Entry: touch the sensor on the outside of the door handle again within 2 seconds → page 83.
- Switch on the ignition.

— **Or:** deactivate the interior monitor and the anti-tow alarm → page 94.

The vehicle is locked. SAFELOCK was not activated.

Depending on the equipment level, before locking the vehicle, temporarily deactivate the interior monitoring and the anti-tow alarm in the **Vehicle Settings** menu in the Infotainment system.

There may be an indication of the activated SAFELOCK in the display of the instrument cluster.

The following applies when SAFELOCK is deactivated:

- The vehicle can be unlocked and opened from the inside using the door release lever.
- The anti-theft alarm is active.
- The interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm are deactivated.

WARNING

The doors can no longer be opened from the inside once the SAFELOCK is activated. Careless or unsupervised use of SAFELOCK can lock people in the vehicle interior and cause serious injuries in the event of an emergency.

- Never leave anybody in the vehicle if the vehicle has been locked using the vehicle key.

 If the driver door is mechanically unlocked with the vehicle key, only the driver door is unlocked and not the complete vehicle. All doors are released – but not unlocked – and the central locking button activated only when the ignition is switched on.

Load compartment closing

 **Please refer to  and  at the start of the chapter on page 87.**

Button in the driver door

The button for the load compartment locking function  in the driver door locks the load compartment.

You can only unlock the vehicle with the  button if the ignition is switched on and if all of the load compartment doors are closed.

The  button does not work if the vehicle has been locked with the vehicle key.

The following information applies when using the  button to lock the load compartment:

- The yellow indicator lamp in the button lights up.
- When the ignition is switched off, the unlock button  in the driver's door does not unlock the load compartment. As soon as the ignition is switched on, the load compartment can be unlocked again using the unlock button.
- The anti-theft alarm is **not** activated.
- You cannot open the doors and the boot lid from the outside.
- The rear doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by pulling the door release levers.

Button on the vehicle key

The  button on the vehicle key locks the passenger compartment and simultaneously unlocks the load compartment.

When the  button is used to lock the driver's cab:

- The anti-theft alarm in the driver's cab is **not** activated.
- ◀ — It is not possible to open the driver and passenger doors.
- The driver and passenger doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by pulling the door release levers.
- You can open the doors and the boot lid from the outside and inside. ▶

Troubleshooting

 **Please refer to  and  at the start of the chapter on page 87.**

Indicator lamp lights up continuously

The red LED for the central locking system in the driver door flashes at short intervals and then lights up continuously.

There is a fault in the locking system.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop and have the system checked.

Direction indicators do not flash

The direction indicators do not flash as confirmation when the vehicle is locked.

1. Check to make sure that all the doors, the boot lid and the bonnet are closed.
2. If the direction indicators still do not flash, go to a suitably qualified workshop to have the system checked.

Vehicle locks itself automatically

The vehicle will lock itself again automatically after around 45 seconds if all the following conditions apply:

- The vehicle was unlocked using the vehicle key or Keyless Entry.
- The boot lid was not opened.
- No door was opened.
- The ignition was not switched on.

Response when locking the vehicle with a second vehicle key

Keyless Entry: the vehicle key inside the vehicle is disabled for starting the engine as soon as the vehicle is locked from outside with a second vehicle key. However, an emergency start is possible.

1. To enable the vehicle key inside the vehicle for an engine start, press the  button on the vehicle key inside the vehicle → page 150.

Locking the vehicle after airbags have been triggered

The entire vehicle is unlocked if the airbags are activated during an accident. Depending on the extent of the damage, the vehicle can be locked as follows after an accident:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock.
3. Open and close any vehicle door.
4. Lock the vehicle.

Or: press the central locking button in the driver door → page 80.

It is no longer possible to lock the sliding doors after an airbag has been triggered. Consult a suitably qualified workshop to restore the locking function.

Automatic deactivation of the sensors

The sensors will be disabled in the following circumstances:

- The vehicle is not unlocked or locked for an extended period.
- A sensor has been triggered an excessive number of times.

Reactivating the sensors:

1. Unlock the vehicle with the  button in the vehicle key.

NOTICE

Please note that the sensors in the door handles can be activated by a powerful jet of water or steam if a valid vehicle key is simultaneously within its operating range. The windows could open as a result and moisture could enter the vehicle interior. This could lead to the vehicle interior being damaged.

- Never direct the jet of a high-pressure or steam cleaner directly at the sensors in the door handles.

 It may not be possible to lock or unlock the vehicle using Keyless Entry if the 12-volt vehicle battery or button cell in the vehicle key is weak or discharged. The vehicle can be locked or unlocked manually → page 87.

 If there is no valid vehicle key in the vehicle or if it is not detected, a corresponding display will be shown on the instrument cluster display. This may occur if the vehicle key is disrupted by another radio signal or is covered by another item such as an aluminium suitcase → page 150. <

Anti-theft alarm

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, the vehicle may have an anti-theft alarm.

The anti-theft alarm is activated automatically when the vehicle is locked using the vehicle key.

If the vehicle is not opened with a valid vehicle key, the anti-theft alarm is triggered and emits acoustic and visual warning signals for up to 5 minutes.

When does the system trigger an alarm?

- If the 12-volt vehicle battery is disconnected.
- When a door that was unlocked mechanically with the vehicle key is opened.
- When the bonnet is opened.
- When opening the boot lid.
- If the ignition is switched on using an invalid key.
- If there is movement inside a vehicle with interior monitoring.
- If a vehicle with anti-tow alarm is lifted or towed.
- If a vehicle with anti-tow alarm or interior monitoring is transported on a car ferry or by rail, for example.
- If a device is connected to the diagnostic connection when the anti-theft alarm is active.
- If the connection to a trailer connected to the anti-theft alarm is interrupted.

 The anti-theft alarm will not function correctly if the 12-volt vehicle battery is weak or discharged.

Switching off the alarm

1. Unlock the vehicle using the unlocking button  on the vehicle key.
A short alarm lasting around one second may sound.
2. *On vehicles with Keyless Entry:* grasp the door handle when the vehicle key is in the unlocking range.
3. Switch on the ignition.

To switch on the ignition, place the vehicle key in the area provided for it when performing an emergency start → page 154.

 Depending on equipment, the alarm can be switched off by unlocking when approaching. 

Interior monitoring and anti-tow alarm

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the vehicle may have an interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm.

If movements are detected in the interior of a locked vehicle, the interior monitoring system will trigger an alarm.

The anti-tow alarm will trigger an alarm if lifting of the vehicle is detected.

Switching on interior monitoring and anti-tow alarm

1. Lock the vehicle.

The interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm are also activated when the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

Depending on equipment, functioning of the interior monitoring system may be impaired if a net partition is used.

Temporarily deactivating interior monitoring and anti-tow alarm

Depending on equipment, interior monitoring and the anti-tow alarm can be deactivated temporarily in the **Opening and closing** submenu → page 34 in the Infotainment system. Alternatively, the interior monitoring and anti-tow alarm can also be deactivated temporarily with the vehicle key. To do this, press the locking button on the vehicle key twice within 2 seconds. The interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm are then deactivated until the vehicle is locked again.

The interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm can also be switched off in the exit menu. The ignition must be switched off.

To avoid false alarms, deactivate interior monitoring and the anti-tow alarm in the following situations:

- If there are people or animals in the vehicle interior.
- If the vehicle is to be loaded onto another vehicle, transported or towed away.
- If the vehicle is to be parked in a car wash or a two-storey garage.

Camping mode of the interior monitoring system

The interior monitoring system can be deactivated and set to camping mode in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system or in the exit menu → page 34 or → page 34.

The interior monitoring system remains deactivated until it is activated in the vehicle settings of the Infotainment system or the vehicle is driven at a speed of more than around 15 km/h (around 9 mph).

False alarm risks of the interior monitoring system

Fault-free operation of the interior monitoring system is possible only if the vehicle is fully closed. Observe legal requirements.

A false alarm can occur in the following situations:

- If one or more windows are fully or partially open.
- If lightweight items such as loose pieces of paper or items hung from the interior mirror are left in the vehicle.
- If the vibration alarm of a mobile telephone is switched on.

 Permanent deactivation of the interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm is not possible.

 Only the anti-theft alarm will be activated if doors or the boot lid are still open when the anti-theft alarm is activated. The interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm will be activated only after the doors and boot lid have been closed.

 The SAFELOCK function will also be deactivated if the interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm are switched off.

Boot lid

Introduction

The boot lid is unlocked and locked together with the doors.

In vehicles with Keyless Entry, the boot lid is unlocked automatically when the vehicle is opened → page 83.

A symbol in the instrument cluster display indicates if the boot lid is not closed properly.  **Do not drive on!** Close the boot lid → page 95.

This symbol is also visible when the ignition is switched off and will go out a few seconds after the vehicle has been locked when all doors and lids are closed.

WARNING

Incorrect and unsupervised unlocking, opening or closing of the boot lid can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Open or close the boot lid only when there is no-one in the movement path of the boot lid.
- Always keep the boot lid closed while the vehicle is in motion.
- Close and lock the boot lid and all doors when the vehicle is not in use.
- Check that the closed boot lid is flush with the surrounding body parts.

WARNING

Temperatures inside a locked vehicle can reach extremes of heat or cold, according to season. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially in the case of small children.

- Ensure that no one remains in the vehicle.
- Never leave children playing unattended in or around the vehicle, especially when the boot lid is open. Children could climb into the load compartment, shut the boot lid and trap themselves inside.

WARNING

It may not always be apparent that the boot lid is unlocked when a loaded load

carrier is attached to it. If unlocked, the boot lid may open suddenly while the vehicle is in motion. This can cause serious injuries.

- Check that the closed boot lid is flush with the surrounding body parts.

WARNING

If there is a large amount of snow or a heavy load on the boot lid, the boot lid may lower by itself and cause serious injuries due to the additional weight.

- Never open the boot lid if it is covered by a large amount of snow or a load is attached to it, e.g. a load carrier.
- Remove the snow or load before opening the boot lid.

WARNING

If the boot lid is not closed correctly, this can cause the rear window to shatter and lead to serious injuries.

- Never close the boot lid by pressing with your hand on the rear window.

NOTICE

If the boot lid is opened or closed where there is insufficient clearance, this may result in damage.

- Check whether there is enough clearance before opening or closing the boot lid, e.g. in garages.

NOTICE

Incorrect use of the opening mechanism can damage the component and make it impossible to close the boot lid.

- Never use the opening mechanism to hold or fix a load.

NOTICE

Incorrect use of the rear window wiper can damage the component and lead to the component being torn off.

- Never use the rear window wiper to hold or fix a load.

NOTICE

Incorrect use of the gas struts or rear spoiler can damage the components and lead to the components being torn off.

- Never use the gas struts or rear spoiler to hold or fix a load.

Opening and closing the boot lid manually

 **Please refer to  and  at the start of the chapter on page 95.**

Opening the boot lid manually

1. Press the  button to unlock the boot lid.

The doors remain locked.

2. Open the boot lid using the handle until it is held in a holding position at the limit stop.

Closing the boot lid manually

1. Grab the loop on the boot lid. Carefully lower the boot lid with the loop until the boot lid can be grasped from outside.
2. *Vehicles without power closing:* press the boot lid down from outside until it engages in the lock → .

Vehicles with power closing: press the boot lid down from outside until it is automatically closed by the power closing function → .

3. Check to make sure that the boot lid is securely engaged.

The boot lid is also locked by means of the central locking system.

If the boot lid is open or not correctly closed, this is indicated on the instrument cluster display.

WARNING

Serious injuries can occur if the boot lid is opened or closed incorrectly or without due care and attention.

- When opening the boot lid, make sure the boot lid is moved fully up.

- When closing the boot lid, make sure that no-one has their hands in the direct path of the boot lid as it moves.

i If the boot lid is not opened within a few minutes after unlocking, it automatically locks again.

i The gas struts cannot always automatically lift the open boot lid at outside temperatures below 0°C (+32°F). Guide the boot lid up by hand if necessary. <

Troubleshooting

Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 95.

All direction indicators flash four times

The vehicle key used last is still in the vehicle.

1. Remove the key and lock the vehicle.

Boot lid is stiff

At outside temperatures around freezing point, the opening mechanism cannot always lift the partially opened boot lid automatically.

1. Guide the boot lid further upwards by hand. <

Wing doors

Introduction

The wing doors are unlocked and locked together with the doors.

A symbol in the instrument cluster display indicates that the wing doors are not closed properly. **Do not drive on!** Close the wing doors → ⚠.

This symbol is also visible when the ignition is switched off and will go out a few seconds after the vehicle has been locked when all doors and lids are closed.

⚠ WARNING

Always take care when unlocking, opening or closing the wing doors otherwise

you could cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Open or close the wing doors only when there is no-one in their movement path.
- Always keep the wing doors closed while the vehicle is moving so that no poisonous exhaust fumes can enter the vehicle interior.
- Close and lock the wing doors and all doors when the vehicle is not in use. Ensure that no one remains in the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

If children, persons requiring assistance or animals are left unattended in the vehicle, they can accidentally set the vehicle in motion or be exposed to very high or low temperatures. There is a risk of accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never leave children, people requiring assistance or animals unattended in the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

If the wing doors are not closed correctly, this can cause the windows of the wing doors to shatter and lead to serious injuries.

- Never close the wing doors by pressing with your hand on the rear window.

⚠ WARNING

A wing door which is being held open by the door arrester may close in strong winds or if the vehicle is on a slope. This could lead to serious injuries.

- Always hold the door handle firmly when opening and closing wing doors.

ⓘ NOTICE

The opening and closing path of the wing doors is dangerous and can cause injuries.

- Open or close the wing doors only when there is no-one in the movement path. <

Opening and closing the wing doors

📖 Please refer to ⚠️ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 97.

Opening wing doors

1. Always open the left-hand wing door first until it clicks into place.
2. Pull the lever on the front of the right wing door.
3. Open the wing door until it clicks into place.

Disengaging the door arresters

1. Open the wing doors as far as they will go.
2. Press the yellow operating button to unhook the door arrester.

The yellow operating button is located on the door arrester.

Closing the wing doors

1. Always swing in the right wing door first until it engages in position.
2. Then swing in the left wing door until it engages in position.
3. The door arrester hooks back into place automatically when the wing doors are closed.

⚠️ WARNING

A wing door that is not properly closed could open suddenly while the vehicle is in motion. This could lead to severe or fatal injuries.

- Stop immediately and close the wing door.
- After closing the wing door, always check that it is properly engaged in the lock carrier. The closed wing door must be flush with the surrounding body panels.

Opening the wing doors manually

📖 Please refer to ⚠️ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 97.

Manually opening wing doors from the inside

1. Depending on the vehicle equipment, remove the plug from the interior trim of the left-hand wing door.
2. Feel for the release lever in the opening and press it to the left.

The wing door opens.

📘 In some vehicles, there is a rubber stopper. Carefully lever it out with the screwdriver from the vehicle toolkit. <

Windows

Opening and closing windows

The buttons for operating the windows are located in the driver door → page 11.



Open windows: press the button.

Close windows: pull the button.

The windows can still be operated using the buttons several minutes after the ignition has been switched off, provided that the driver door and front passenger door are not opened.

One-touch opening and closing

One-touch opening and closing makes it possible to fully open and close the windows. The individual buttons do not have to be held down to do this.

- To start one-touch closing, pull the button for the appropriate window briefly up into the second position.
- To start one-touch opening, press the button for the appropriate window briefly down into the second position.
- To stop one-touch operation, press or pull the button for the appropriate window again.

Global opening and closing

The windows can be opened and closed from outside the vehicle using the vehicle key when the ignition is switched off:

Depending on the country, the windows can only be opened from the outside with the vehicle key.

1. Press and hold the locking or unlocking button on the vehicle key.

Or: press the window regulator switch in the driver door for a few seconds.

2. *In vehicles with Keyless Entry:* hold your finger on the locking sensor in the door handle for several seconds until the windows are closed. The vehicle key must also be within the operating range.

When all windows have been closed, all direction indicators will flash once as confirmation.

3. To interrupt this function: let go of the locking or unlocking button on the vehicle key.

Or: release the window regulator switch.

Or: remove your finger from the sensor.

Settings for global opening can be adjusted in the **Vehicle settings** menu in the Infotainment system.

WARNING

Careless or unsupervised use of the electric windows can cause serious injuries.

- Open or close electric windows only when there is no-one in the operating path of the windows.
- Always take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle.
- Please note that the windows can still be opened or closed using the buttons in the doors for a short time after the ignition has been switched off.
- When transporting children on the rear bench seat, the rear electric windows should always be deactivated so that they cannot be opened or closed.

WARNING

When the vehicle is locked, the windows can no longer be opened and this makes it impossible to exit the vehicle interior. In an emergency situation, this can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle when the vehicle is locked.

WARNING

Improper use of the electric windows can cause crush injuries to the body.

- Never allow children to play with the electric windows.
- Always make sure that your vehicle is in view when using the convenience opening and closing function.

NOTICE

If it starts to rain or snow when the windows are open, this can soak the interior equipment of the vehicle and restrict the functions of the controls or damage them.

- Close all windows if it starts to rain or snow.

NOTICE

The electric windows are equipped with a roll-back function. It can occur that automatic closing is interrupted and the window opens again even if there is no apparent obstacle.

- Keep pulling the window regulator switch until the window has closed completely.

 One-touch opening and closing and the roll-back function will not work if there is a fault in the electric windows. Go to a suitably qualified workshop.

 Global opening of the windows using the vehicle key in the door lock is possible only if the vehicle was unlocked previously with the vehicle key.

 Global opening and closing only works when one-touch opening and closing is activated for all electric windows.

 Some settings can be saved in the personalisation user accounts and

thus change automatically when a user account is changed.

Electric window roll-back function

The roll-back function of the electric windows can reduce the risk of crush injuries when the windows are closed.

If a window cannot close properly due to stiff movement or an obstacle, the window will open again immediately → ⚠.

1. Check to see why the window has not closed.
2. Try to close the window again.

If closing of the window is interrupted again, the roll-back function will be deactivated for several seconds.

If the window still cannot be closed, it will stop at the corresponding position → ⚠. The window will close without roll-back function if the button is pulled again within a few seconds → ⚠.

Closing windows without roll-back function

1. Attempt to close the window again within a few seconds by holding the window regulator switch. The roll-back function is then deactivated.

The roll-back function will be activated again if the closing operation takes longer than a few seconds. The window will then stop if movement is again stiff or if there is an obstacle and opens automatically again.

2. Please go to a suitably qualified workshop if the window still cannot be closed.

⚠ WARNING

Closing the electric windows without the roll-back function can lead to severe injuries.

- Always take care when closing the windows.
- Close windows only when there is no one in the operating path.

- Please note that the roll-back function does not prevent fingers and parts of the body being trapped against the window frame.



The roll-back function is also activated if the windows are closed using convenience closing.

Troubleshooting

One-touch opening and closing are not working

One-touch opening and closing is deactivated if the 12-volt vehicle battery has been disconnected or discharged while the windows were not fully closed. The function must then be reset:

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Close all windows and doors.
3. Pull up the button for the window and hold it in this position for a few seconds.
4. Let go of the button, then pull it up again and hold it in this position.

One-touch opening and closing is now ready for operation again.

The automatic electric window functions can be reactivated either individually or for several windows at the same time.

Window cannot be closed

1. Check whether there is an obstacle in the movement path.
2. Try to close the window again within a few seconds by pulling and holding the button.

The roll-back function is then deactivated for a small operating range of the closing path. The roll-back function will be activated again if the closing operation takes longer than a few seconds.

The window will then stop if movement is again stiff or if there is an obstacle and opens automatically again.

1. If the fault persists, the system should be checked by a suitably qualified workshop.

Touch panels do not react as expected

Moisture, dirt and grease can impede the functioning of the touch panels.

1. Always keep touch panels clean and dry.

Steering wheel

Adjusting the steering wheel position

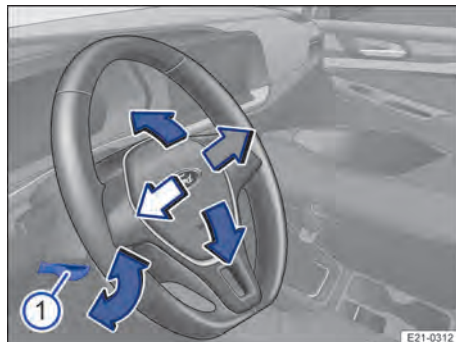


Fig. 61 Below the steering wheel in the steering column trim: lever for adjustment of the steering wheel position.

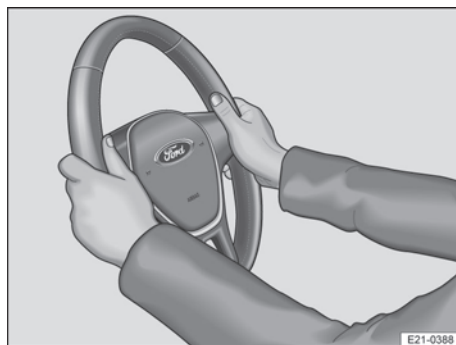


Fig. 62 On the steering wheel: 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position.

Adjust the steering wheel position before setting off and only when the vehicle is stationary → ⚠.

1. Push the lever down → Fig. 61 ①.
2. Adjust the steering wheel so that you can hold it with both hands at its circumference at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions with your arms slightly bent → Fig. 62.
3. Push the lever → Fig. 61 ① up firmly until it is flush with the steering column trim → ⚠.

WARNING

Incorrect use of the steering column position adjustment and incorrect adjustment of the steering wheel can cause serious or fatal injuries.

- After adjusting the steering wheel, always move the lever up firmly. This prevents the steering wheel from moving accidentally while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is in motion. If you determine that adjustment is necessary when driving, stop the vehicle safely and adjust the steering wheel to the correct position.
- The steering wheel must always point towards the chest and not towards the face. This ensures that the driver front airbag provides maximum protection in the event of an accident.
- While driving, always keep both hands on the outside of the steering wheel at the *9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions*. This reduces the risk of injury if the driver front airbag is triggered.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or in any other manner, e.g. at the hub of the steering wheel. If the driver front airbag is triggered, you could receive severe injuries to the arms, hands and head.

Seats and head restraints

Front seats

Introduction

The following section describes the options for adjusting the front seats. Always ensure that your sitting position is correct
→ page 48.

WARNING

Driving with an incorrect sitting position due to incorrectly adjusted seats can lead to serious injuries.

- Always adjust the front seats to the correct sitting position before any journey and ensure that all passengers have fastened their seat belts correctly.
- Push the front passenger seat as far back as possible.

WARNING

Incorrect adjustment of the seats can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Adjust the seats only when the vehicle is stationary. The seats could change position unexpectedly if you attempt to reposition them while the vehicle is in motion so that you lose of control of the vehicle as a result. Furthermore, an incorrect sitting position is adopted while adjusting the seat.
- Adjust the height and angle of the front seats or move them forwards and backwards only when there is no-one in the adjustment range of the seats.
- The adjustment range of the seats must not be restricted by any items.
- The adjustment and locking areas of the seats must not be soiled.

WARNING

Improper use of seat covers or protective covers may lead to the electrical seat controls being operated accidentally and the front seats moving unexpectedly while the vehicle is moving. You could lose control over the vehicle. This could result in serious injury and accidents. Furthermore, this may result in damage to

the electrical components in the front seats.

- Never fit seat or protective covers on the electric controls.
- Do not fit seat covers or protective covers over the seats unless they have been expressly approved for use in the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Cigarette lighters in the vehicle could be damaged or accidentally lit. This could lead to serious burns and other injuries.

- Before adjusting the seats, always make sure that there is no cigarette lighter on or near the movable parts of the seat.

ⓘ NOTICE

Sharp edges can damage the seats.

- Do not touch the seats with sharp-edged objects. Sharp objects, such as zips, rivets on clothing or belts, may damage surfaces. Open Velcro fasteners can also cause damage.

Mechanically adjusting the front seat

📖 **Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 102.**

The following section contains a description of all controls. The number of controls may vary depending on the version of the seat.

The controls are mirrored for the right-hand front seat.

The seat may have a combination of mechanical and electrical controls.



Fig. 63 On the left front seat: Controls (variant 1).

- ① Pull the lever to push the front seat forwards or backwards. The front seat must engage after the lever has been released.
- ② Operate the lever to adjust the lumbar support.
- ③ Take your weight off the backrest and turn the handwheel to adjust it.
- ④ If necessary, move the lever up or down several times to adjust the seat height.

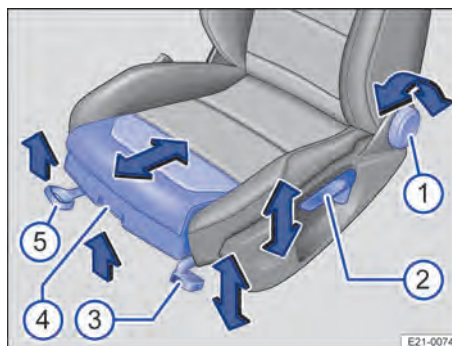


Fig. 64 On the left front seat: Controls (variant 2).

- ① Take your weight off the backrest and turn the handwheel to adjust it.
- ② If necessary, move the lever up or down several times to adjust the seat height.
- ③ Push or pull the lever as often as required to adjust the angle of the seat cushion.

- ④ Raise the handle and slide the seat cushion forwards or backwards.
- ⑤ Pull the lever to push the front seat forwards or backwards. The front seat must engage after the lever has been released.

i It may not be possible to adjust the seat electrically if the charge level of the 12-volt vehicle battery is too low.

i Starting the engine will interrupt the seat adjustment procedure.

Electrically adjusting the front seat

Please refer to ▲ and ❶ at the start of the chapter on page 102.

The controls are mirrored for the right-hand front seat.

The seat may have a combination of mechanical and electrical controls.

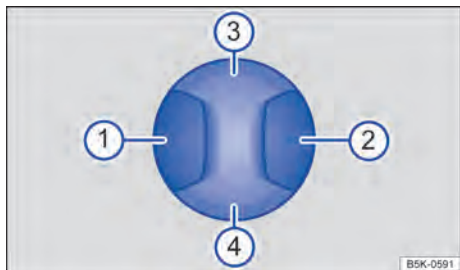


Fig. 65 Switch on the front left seat: adjusting the lumbar support.

- ❶ Move the curve of the lumbar support forwards.
- ❷ Move the curve of the lumbar support back.
- ❸ Move the curve of the lumbar support up.
- ❹ Move the curve of the lumbar support down.

❶ NOTICE

Improper use can damage the electric components in the front seats.

- Do not kneel on the front seats and do not apply point loads to the seat cushion and backrest.

Folding the front passenger seat forwards and backwards

Please refer to ▲ and ❶ at the start of the chapter on page 102.

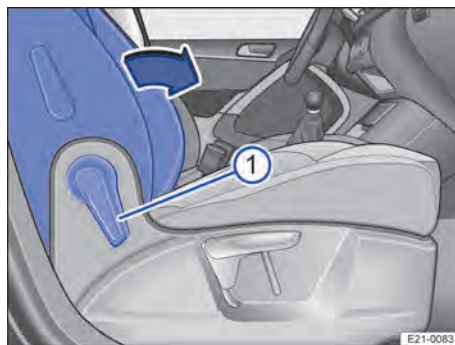


Fig. 66 Front passenger seat: folding the backrest forwards.

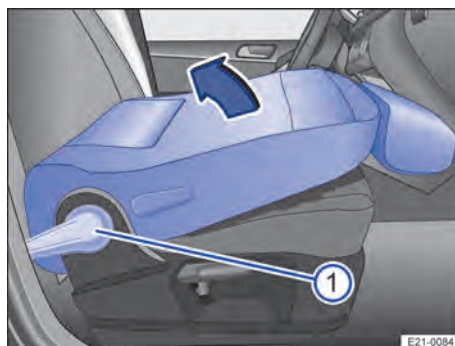


Fig. 67 Front passenger seat: folding the backrest backwards.

The front passenger seat backrest can be folded forwards to a horizontal position (depending on vehicle equipment).

The front passenger front airbag must be switched off if any items are to be trans-

ported on the front passenger seat when folded forwards → page 56.

Folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards

1. Remove any items from the front passenger seat cushion → .
2. Lower the front passenger seat down as far as possible.
3. Push the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
4. Push the head restraint all the way down.
5. Pull the lever → Fig. 66 ① forwards to unlock the front passenger seat backrest.
6. Fold the front passenger seat backrest forwards in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 66 until it is horizontal.

When it is folded down, the front passenger seat backrest must engage securely into place.

Folding back the front passenger seat backrest

1. When folding back, check that there are no items or body parts near the hinges.
2. To fold it back, press the lever → Fig. 67 ① down to release the front passenger seat backrest again.
3. Fold back the front passenger seat backrest in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 67 until it reaches the upright position.

When it is folded up, the front passenger seat backrest must engage securely into place.

WARNING

Injuries could be caused if the front passenger seat backrests are folded forwards and backwards carelessly.

- Fold the front passenger seat backrest forwards and backwards only when the vehicle is stationary.
- While folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards, always ensure that there are no people, animals or objects in its path.

- The front airbag must be switched off and the PASSENGER AIRBAG indicator lamp **OFF**  will light up for as long as the front passenger seat backrest is folded forwards.
- When folding forwards and backwards, keep all hands, fingers, feet and other body parts away from the seat hinges and seat release mechanism.
- Floor mats or other objects must be kept away from the area of the hinges. Floor mats or other objects could get caught in the hinges on the front passenger seat backrest. This could cause the front passenger seat backrest to fail to engage securely when you return it to the upright position.
- When being folded back, the front passenger seat backrest must be securely locked in the upright position. If the front passenger seat backrest is not locked properly it could move suddenly and cause severe injuries.

WARNING

The open seat anchors and hinges of the folded front passenger seat backrest could cause serious injuries in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or accident.

- Never transport adults, children, animals or loads on the front passenger seat when the front passenger seat backrest is folded forwards.
- If the front passenger seat backrest is folded forwards, then you must use only the outer rear seat behind the driver in the second row of seats. This also applies to children in child seats.

WARNING

Objects that are not secured, or are secured incorrectly, can cause serious injuries in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident. This applies particularly if objects are struck by the airbag when activated and then flung through the vehicle interior.

- Always stow all objects in the vehicle securely. Observe legal requirements when doing this.

- The front airbag must be switched off and the PASSENGER AIRBAG indicator lamp **OFF** will light up for as long as the front passenger seat backrest is folded forwards.

Rear seats

Introduction

The following section describes the options for adjusting the rear seats. Always ensure that the correct sitting position is adjusted → page 48.

⚠ DANGER

Some components of the rear seats contain button cells and are accessible when the rear seats are folded forward or removed. Swallowing a button cell can result in serious or even fatal injuries within a very short time.

- Always keep children away from rear seats when they are folded forward or removed.
- Seek immediate medical attention if you believe someone may have swallowed a button cell.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrectly adjusted rear seats increase the risk of serious injuries in the event of an accident.

- Before all journeys, make sure that the rear seats are adjusted so that all occupants are sitting upright and with the seat belts fastened correctly.
- The rear seats must be adjusted only when there is no one in the adjustment area of the rear seats.

⚠ WARNING

If you adjust the rear seats while the vehicle is in motion, you will assume an incorrect sitting position. The rear seats may also move unexpectedly while the vehicle is in motion. In an accident, there is then an increased risk of serious injuries.

- Adjust the rear seats only when the vehicle is stationary.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the seat functions or incorrect removal and fitting of the rear seats can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Keep hands, fingers, feet and other body parts away from the moving parts and adjustment range of seats.
- All rear seats must always be fitted in their retainers and must be securely engaged.
- All backrests must be in an upright position and securely locked in place while the vehicle is in motion so that the protective action of the seat belts for the rear seats is guaranteed. If a seat is occupied and the backrest has not engaged securely into place, the seat occupant and backrest will move forwards in the event of a sudden braking or driving manoeuvre or during accidents.
- Floor mats or other objects must be kept away from the area of the hinges. Floor mats or other objects could get caught in the hinges on the front passenger seat backrest. This could cause the front passenger seat backrest to fail to engage securely when you return it to the upright position.
- You should not transport adults, children, loads or animals on these seats if the backrest is folded forward or is not engaged securely into place.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the rear centre armrest can cause serious injuries.

- The rear centre armrest must always be folded up while the vehicle is in motion.
- The centre seat on the rear bench seat must never be used when the centre armrest is folded down – neither by adults nor by children or animals.
- Never transport an adult, child or animal on the centre armrest.

⚠ WARNING

Cigarette lighters in the vehicle could be damaged or accidentally lit. This could lead to serious burns and other injuries.

- Before adjusting the seats, always make sure that there is no cigarette lighter on or near the movable parts of the seat.

! NOTICE

Incorrect use or removal and fitting of the rear seats can damage the vehicle.

- Ensure that the seat belt is not trapped or damaged when folding back the backrest.
- While fitting and removing the rear seats, make sure that the seat feet are not soiled or damaged.

! NOTICE

Sharp edges can damage the seats.

- Do not touch the seats with sharp-edged objects. Sharp objects, such as zips, studs on clothing, and belts, can damage surfaces. Open Velcro fasteners can also cause damage.

! NOTICE

Objects in the adjustment area of the rear seats can cause damage to the seat system.

- Remove all objects in front of, behind or on the rear seats before making seat adjustments.

 If seats are subsequently replaced or retrofitted, the seatbelt status indicator must be activated by a suitably qualified workshop → page 50.

Adjusting the backrest on the second row of seats

 Please refer to ,  and  at the start of the chapter on page 106.

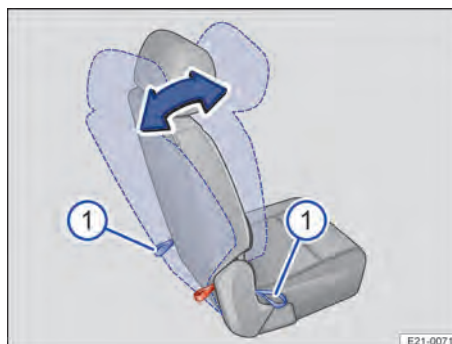


Fig. 68 Second row of seats: adjusting the angle of the backrest.

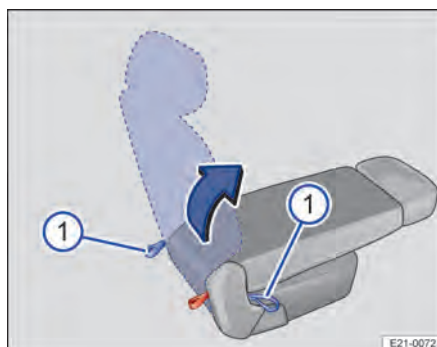


Fig. 69 Second row of seats: folding backrest forward and back.

The seats in the second row are divided into a single seat and a two-seat bench. The two backrests can be adjusted independently of each other.

Adjusting the backrest

1. Apply pressure to the backrest with one hand and at the same time pull one of the corresponding loops behind the seat or at the side of the seat forwards → Fig. 68 ①.
2. Adjust the backrest to the required position with your hand, pressing against the spring pressure.

3. Release the loop and engage the backrest in position by pushing it forwards and backwards gently.

The backrest is engaged securely if the red mark → Fig. 70 (arrow) on the loop is **not** visible → ⚠.

Folding the backrest forwards

1. If necessary slide the front seats forwards.
2. Remove items from the floor area in front and behind the rear seat.
3. Push the head restraints all the way down → page 48.
4. Pull one of the loops → Fig. 69 ① behind the seat or at the side of the seat forwards and hold. Fold the backrest forward a little and release the loop.
5. Fold the backrest down further until the backrest engages securely.

The backrest is engaged securely if the red mark → Fig. 70 (arrow) on the loop is **not** visible → ⚠.

Folding the backrest backwards



Fig. 70 Second row of seats: marking indicating that the seat backrest is not engaged properly.

1. Pull one of the loops behind the seat or at the side of the seat forwards and hold → Fig. 69 ①. Fold the backrest up a little and release the loop.
2. Fold the backrest further back until the backrest engages securely.
3. After folding back, check that the backrest has engaged securely. The backrest

is engaged securely if the red mark → Fig. 70 (arrow) on the loop is **not** visible → ⚠.

4. Adjust the head restraint → page 48.

⚠ WARNING

Serious injuries can be caused if a backrest is not securely engaged.

- When folding the rear seat backrest forward, always make sure that no adults, children or animals are in its path.
- Never fold the rear seat backrest forwards or backwards while the vehicle is in motion.
- Ensure that each rear seat backrest engages securely, otherwise the seat belts for the rear seats will not offer maximum protection. This applies to the centre seat of the rear bench seat in particular. If a seat is occupied and the corresponding rear seat backrest has not clicked securely into place, the seat occupant and rear seat backrest may move forwards in the event of a sudden braking or driving manoeuvre or during accidents.
- The backrest is not properly secured if you can see the red marking on the loop. Always make sure that the red mark is never visible when the seat backrest is in the upright position.
- If the rear seat backrest is folded forwards or is not engaged securely into place, these seats must not be used to transport adults, children, loads or animals.

⚠ NOTICE

Damage to the vehicle or to other objects could be caused if the rear seat backrest is folded forwards and backwards in an uncontrolled way or without due care.

- Before folding the rear seat backrests forwards, always adjust the front seats so that the rear head restraints or rear seat cushions do not collide with the front seats.
- Before folding down the rear seat backrest, always make sure that there are no objects located in its path.

Folding seats in the second row forwards and backwards

📖 Please refer to ⚠️, ⚠️ and ⚠️ at the start of the chapter on page 106.

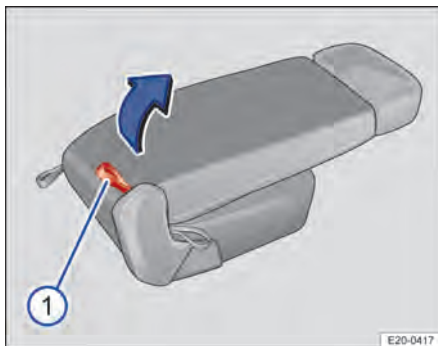


Fig. 71 Second row of seats: Fold seat forward.

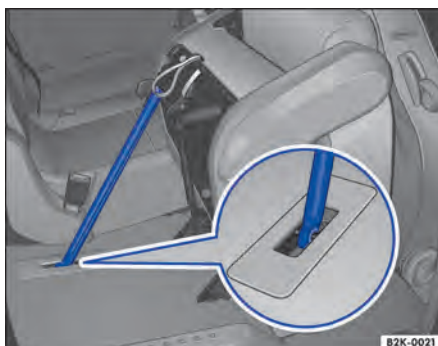


Fig. 72 Second row of seats: secure the seat folded forward with the rod.

The seats in the second row are divided into a single seat and a two-seat bench. The seat and the bench seat can be folded down to increase the size of the load compartment.

Folding seat forward

1. Fold the respective backrest forwards and engage it securely → page 107.
2. Pull the corresponding red loop → Fig. 71 ① on the back of the seat and fold the seat forwards.

3. Release the securing rod from the bracket and push the rod firmly into the seat anchoring until the securing rod engages → Fig. 72.

Folding seat back

1. Unhook the rod from the seat anchoring point.
2. Secure the rod in the retainer under the seat.
3. Fold the complete seat back until it engages.
4. Fold back the backrest → page 107.

⚠️ WARNING

Injuries could be caused if the seats are folded forwards and backwards carelessly.

- The seat must always be supported by the rod when folded forwards.

⚠️ NOTICE

Improper folding of the seats can cause damage to the seats.

- Close the drink holder between the front seats before folding the two-seat bench forwards.

Removing and installing seats in the second row

📖 Please refer to ⚠️, ⚠️ and ⚠️ at the start of the chapter on page 106.

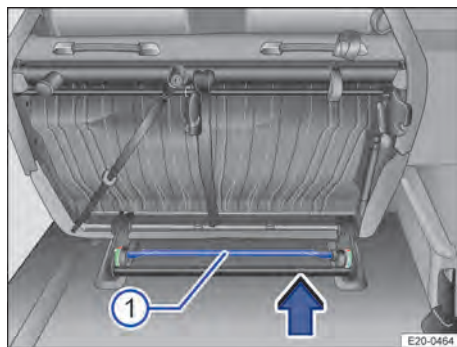


Fig. 73 Second row of seats: Removing the two-seat bench.

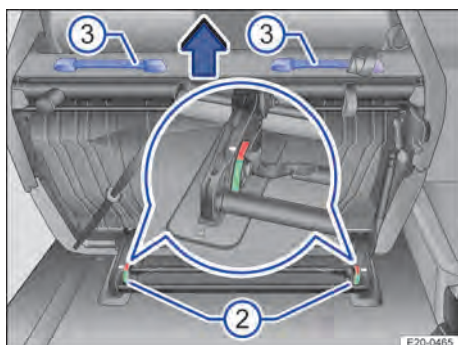


Fig. 74 Second row of seats: Removing the two-seat bench.

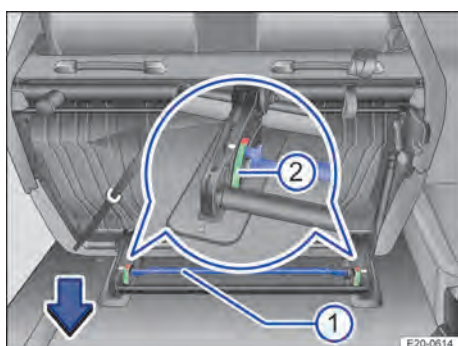


Fig. 75 Second row of seats: Installing the two-seat bench.

The seats in the second row are divided into a single seat and a two-seat bench. The seat and the bench seat can be removed separately to increase the size of the load compartment.

Removing the seat

1. Fold the backrest forwards → page 107.
2. Fold the seat forwards → page 109.
3. Pull the rods → Fig. 73① in the direction of the arrow until both locking marks → Fig. 74② are in the red area.

The seat is released.

4. Use the carry grips to remove the seat by lifting it out of the catch ③.

Fitting the seat

1. Fit seat in the retainers.

2. Press the rods → Fig. 75① downwards in the direction of the arrow until both locking marks ② are in the green area.

The seat is locked in position.

3. Fold the seat back → page 109.

4. Fold back the backrest → page 107.

⚠ WARNING

Injuries could be caused if the seats are removed and installed carelessly.

- The lock indicator shows the seat is securely engaged. The seat is not securely engaged if at least one of the lock indicators is in the red area. Always check that both lock indicators are in the green area when the seat is installed.

Folding the backrest of the third row of seats forwards and backwards

📖 Please refer to ⚠, ⚡ and ⌚ at the start of the chapter on page 106.



Fig. 76 Third row of seats: Folding backrests forwards.

- ① release lever.
- ② Loop.

Folding the backrest forwards

1. Push the head restraint all the way down → Fig. 76 (arrows).
2. Pull the release lever ① fully to the rear to release the backrest.

3. Guide the backrest down by hand.

Do not transport any passengers (adults or children) on the seat with a folded-down backrest in the third row.

Folding the backrest backwards

1. Pull the loop ② on the backrest to fold the seat backwards.
Or: Fold the backrest back by hand from the vehicle interior.
2. After pushing back, check that the backrest has engaged securely. The red marking on the release lever ① must no longer be visible → ⚠.
3. Adjust the head restraint → page 48.

⚠ WARNING

An insecure backrest can cause severe injuries.

- A red marking on the release lever indicates that the backrest is not engaged. Always make sure that the red mark is never visible when the seat backrest is in the upright position.

Removing and fitting seats in the third row of seats

📖 Please refer to ⚠, ⚠ and ⌚ at the start of the chapter on page 106.

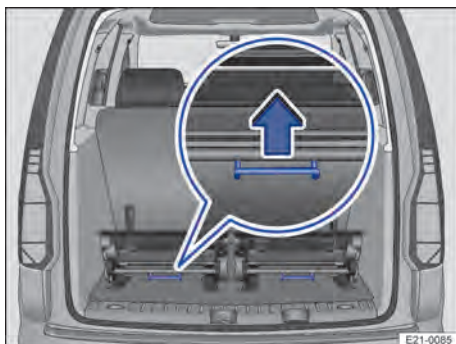


Fig. 77 Third row of seats: Removing the seats.

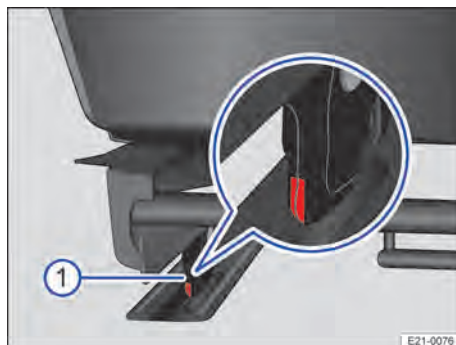


Fig. 78 Third row of seats: Floor locking mechanism indicator.

The seats in the third row are designed for use on a particular side of the vehicle. They must not be installed on the opposite side.

Removing the seat

1. Fold the backrest forwards → page 110.
2. Pull the lever underneath the seat upwards → Fig. 77 (close-up) to release the seat.
3. Lift the seat forward slightly to detach it from the locking mechanism on the floor.
4. Reach into the recessed areas on the left and right sides of the seat and remove the seat.

Fitting the seat

1. Insert the seat into the mounts in the floor.
2. Press the seat into the mounts until it engages audibly.
The seat is engaged securely if the red mark on the floor locking mechanism → Fig. 78 ① is **not** visible → ⚠.
3. Fold back the backrest → page 110.

⚠ WARNING

Injuries could be caused if the seats are removed and installed carelessly.

- The red markings on the floor locking mechanism indicate that the seat is not engaged. Please ensure that the red markings are never visible when the seats are installed.

Head restraints

Introduction

The following section shows the options for adjusting and removing the head restraints. Always ensure that the correct sitting position is adjusted → page 48. Every seat is fitted with a head restraint. The head restraints on the front seats have been developed specifically for the front seats. The rear head restraints are developed for the respective seats or seat rows depending on the equipment. Therefore you should not install the head restraints in any other positions.

If a seat is occupied, select the correct head restraint setting for the respective head restraint. If a seat is unoccupied, the respective head restraint can be pushed down as far as it will go.

There are notches in the rods of the head restraints which enable them to engage in different positions. Only correctly mounted head restraints can engage in the notches in the adjustment area. To prevent accidental removal of the head restraints after installation, stops are fitted at the top and bottom of the adjustment area.

Correct head restraint setting

Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same height as the top of the head, but not lower than eye level. Position the back of your head as close to the head restraint as possible.

Head restraint setting for shorter people

Push the head restraint all the way down, even if the head is then underneath the top edge of the head restraint. There may be a small gap between the head restraint and backrest in the lowest position.

Head restraint setting for taller people

Push the head restraint up as far as it will go.

WARNING

Driving without head restraints or with incorrectly adjusted head restraints increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the

event of an accident or sudden driving or braking manoeuvre.

- If a seat is occupied, the head restraint for that seat must always be fitted and adjusted correctly.
- If a seat is occupied, adjust the head restraint corresponding to the size of the person sitting on the seat.
- Never adjust the head restraint when the vehicle is in motion.

NOTICE

If you do not remove and fit the head restraints properly, this can result in damage.

- When removing or fitting head restraints, make sure that they do not hit the roof, the front seat backrest or other parts of the vehicle. This will prevent damage from occurring.

Adjusting the head restraints

Please refer to  and  at the start of the chapter on page 112.

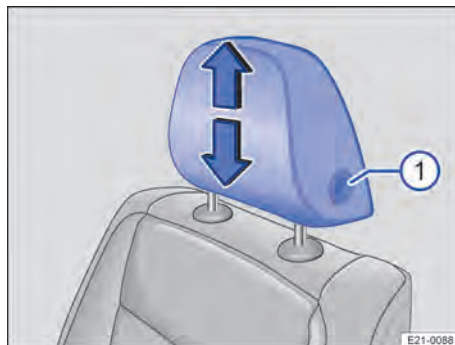


Fig. 79 First row of seats: adjusting the head restraints.

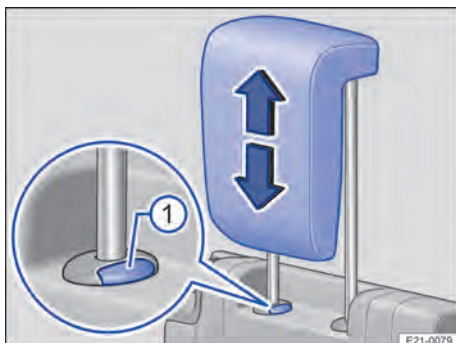


Fig. 80 Third row of seats: adjusting the head restraints.

Adjusting the height (first row of seats only)

1. Push the head restraint up or down while pressing and holding the button → Fig. 79 ①.

The head restraint must click securely into position.

Adjusting the height (second row of seats)

1. Move the head restraint up or down. The height of the head restraint can be adjusted individually by means of soft detents.

The head restraint must click securely into position.

Adjusting the height (third row of seats)

1. Move the head restraint all the way up or down.
2. The head restraint will only click into place in the uppermost position.
3. To release the head restraint from the locked position, press the → Fig. 80 ① button and lower the head restraint.

Removing and installing front head restraints

📖 Please refer to ⚠ and ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 112.

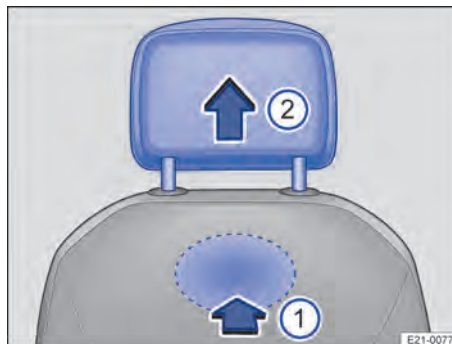


Fig. 81 On the rear of the front seats: removing the head restraint.

Removing the front head restraints

1. Lower the head restraint if necessary → page 112.
2. To unlock the head restraint, feel for the recess in the marked area on the rear of the backrest and use a finger to press it in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 81 ①.
3. For seats with a stowage area in the backrest, press the recess by pushing a long object through the hole in the upper part under the rubber strap on the stowage area → ①.
4. Pull the head restraint out fully in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 81 ②.

Fitting the front head restraints

1. Position the head restraint correctly over the head restraint guides and then insert into the guides of the corresponding seat backrest.
2. Slide the head restraint all the way down until the guide pins click into place.
3. Adjust the head restraint so a correct sitting position can be assumed.

! NOTICE

Sharp objects can damage the seat cushion and scratch the stowage area in the backrest.

- Always use a blunt object to remove the head restraint in vehicles with a stowage area in the backrest.

i Ask a qualified workshop to remove and install the head restraints in the first row of seats.

Removing and fitting the rear head restraints

! Please refer to **!** and **i** at the start of the chapter on page 112.

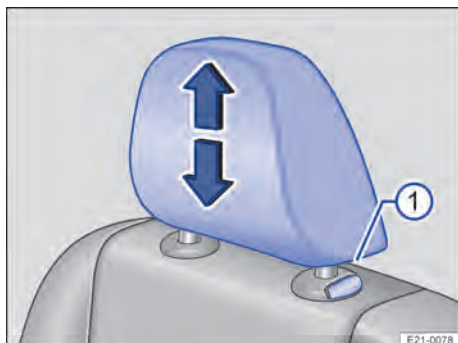


Fig. 82 Second row of seats: removing the head restraints.

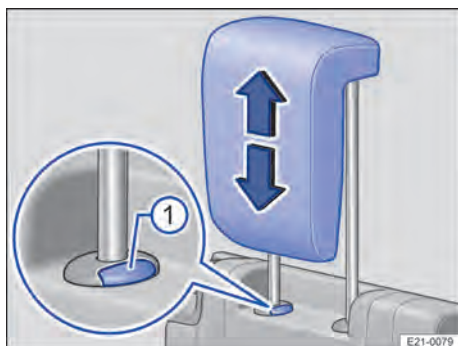


Fig. 83 Third row of seats: removing the head restraints.

Removing the rear head restraints

- If necessary, fold the backrest forward slightly → page 107, → page 110.
- Push the head restraint all the way up.
- Pull the head restraint out fully while pressing the button
→ Fig. 82 **i** or → Fig. 83 **i**.
- Fold the rear seat backrest back if necessary and allow it to engage securely
→ page 107, → page 110.

Fitting the rear head restraints

- Position the head restraint correctly over the head restraint guides and then insert into the guides of the corresponding seat backrest.
- Slide the head restraint all the way down until the guide pins click into place.
- Adjust the head restraint so a correct sitting position can be assumed and allow it to engage.

Seat functions

Centre armrest

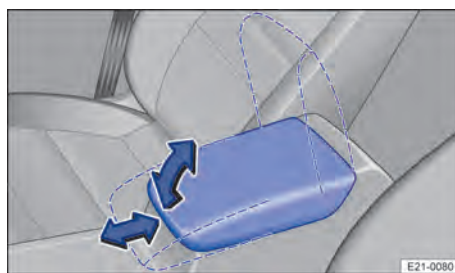


Fig. 84 Between the front seats: centre armrest.

You can adjust the longitudinal position and the height of the centre armrest.

Adjusting the centre armrest

1. *Lift:* pull the centre armrest gradually upwards in the direction of the arrow
→ Fig. 84.
2. *Lower:* pull the centre armrest all the way up. Then lower the centre armrest.

3. *Adjust in longitudinal direction:* slide the centre armrest forwards or backwards → Fig. 84.

⚠ WARNING

When fully open or not completely closed, the front centre armrest can restrict the freedom of movement of the driver's arms and therefore cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always keep stowage compartments closed while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never transport an adult, child or animal on the centre armrest. An incorrect seating position can cause serious injury.

Flexible partition

The flexible partition is a combination of bench seat and partition. The bench seat can be folded up to increase the cargo area.

The load retention net must always be attached when the flexible partition is set up. On vehicles with long wheelbase, the load retention net must also be attached in the bench seat position → page 289.

The load retention net must be stowed before adjusting the flexible partition. → page 289, → ①

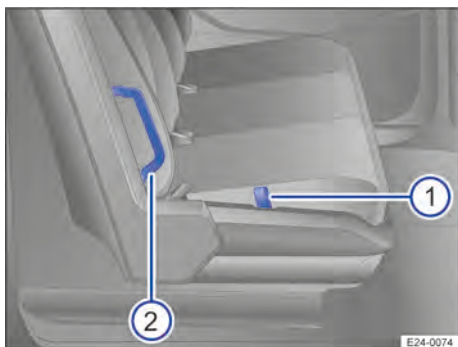


Fig. 85 Flexible partition in bench seat position.

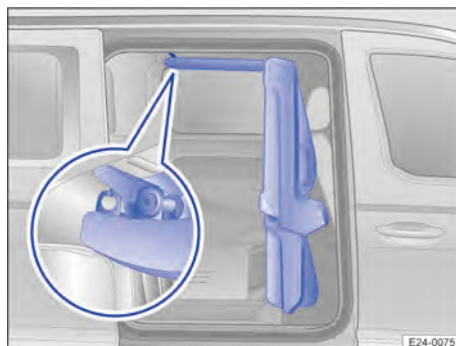


Fig. 86 Flexible partition in set up position.

Setting up the partition

The backrests of the first row of seats must be in upright position.

1. Pull and hold the loop → Fig. 85 ①.
2. Pull the bench seat forwards using the handle → Fig. 85 ②.

The partition must audibly engage in position. Red and green markings are visible on the loop.

3. Press the upper rear part of the partition wall upwards with the palm of your hand until the holder → Fig. 86 (close-up) engages with a click.

Setting up the bench seat

1. Pull the upper rear part of the partition downwards until the holder is released → Fig. 86 (close-up).
2. Pull and hold the loop → Fig. 85 ①.
3. Pull the bench seat backwards using the handle → Fig. 85 ② and press down.

The bench seat must engage in position. The red markings on the loops on the left and right sides of the bench seat must no longer be visible → ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Using the flexible partition incorrectly can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Keep hands, fingers, feet and other body parts away from the movement and adjustment areas of the flexible partition.

- Never carry out adjustment or removal and installation while driving, as this could cause the rear seats to move unexpectedly. Furthermore, an incorrect seating position is adopted while adjusting the seat.
- Only make adjustments when there is nobody in the adjustment area of the flexible partition.
- Floor mats or other objects must be kept away from the area of the hinges. Floor mats or other objects can get caught in the hinges. This could cause the flexible partition to fail to engage securely when you return it to the seat position.

⚠ WARNING

Severe injuries can be caused if a seat row is not engaged securely.

- The bench seat is not properly engaged if the red marking on the loop is visible. Always check that the red marking on both sides is never visible when the flexible partition is in the bench seat position.

📢 NOTICE

Improper use of the seat functions can damage the vehicle.

- Ensure that the seat belt is not trapped or damaged when folding back the backrest.
- Make sure that there are no objects in the path of the flexible partition, e.g. the load retention net.

Lights

Vehicle lighting

Switching direction indicators on and off

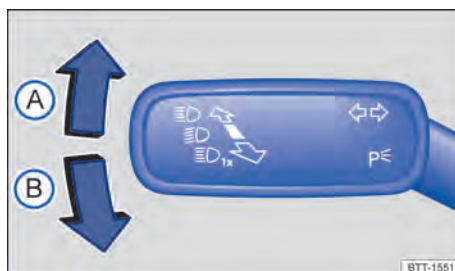


Fig. 87 On the left-hand side of the steering column: direction indicator and high beam lever.

- Ⓐ Activate right direction indicator ➡.
- Ⓑ Activate left direction indicator ⬅.

Switching direction indicators on and off

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Move the lever from the centre position to the desired position → Fig. 87.
3. To switch off the direction indicator, move the lever to the basic position.

Go to a suitably qualified workshop and have the vehicle checked if the acoustic signal does not sound when a direction indicator is switched on.

Convenience direction indicator

1. Push the lever up or down to the pressure point and then release.

The direction indicator flashes three times.

To cancel the convenience direction indicator signal, immediately move the lever in the opposite direction up to the pressure point and then release it.

You can activate and deactivate the convenience direction indicator function in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system → page 34.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of direction indicators, failure to use direction indicators, or forgetting to switch off a direction indicator can confuse other road users. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Always activate the direction indicator in good time when changing lanes and performing overtaking or turning manoeuvres.
- Always switch off the direction indicator once the lane change or overtaking or turning manoeuvre has been completed.



The hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off.

Switching lights on and off

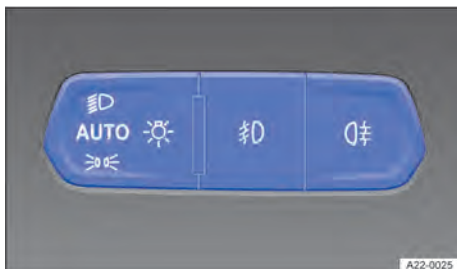


Fig. 88 Next to the steering wheel: touch panel for switching on the exterior lighting.

Switching lights on

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Tap the function button as often as required until the corresponding indicator lamps light up.



The low beam head lamps are switched on. The indicator lamp lights up green.



Automatic lighting control: running lights are switched on or off depending on the brightness level → → page 123.



Parking lamps switched on, the indicator lamp lights up green. The automatic lighting control function **AUTO** is activated from a speed of around

10 km/h (around 6 mph) or when a distance of around 100 m (around 328 ft) has been covered.

- Display only in instrument cluster: **Light is switched off.** The automatic lighting control function **AUTO** is activated from a speed of around 10 km/h (around 6 mph) or when a distance of around 100 m (around 328 ft) has been covered.

Switching off the lights

1. Switch off the ignition.

AUTO The orientation lighting can be switched on → page 122.



Parking lamps or continuous parking lamp on both sides of the vehicle switched on. The indicator lamp lights up green.

- Display only in instrument cluster: **Light is switched off.**

Daytime running lights

The daytime running lights can increase the visibility of the vehicle in traffic during the day.

The daytime running lights are switched on each time the ignition is switched on (when brightness is detected).

The daytime running lights cannot be switched off or on manually as from a speed of around 10 km/h (around 6 mph) or a distance covered of around 100 m (around 328 ft).

ⓘ NOTICE

The headlamps may ice up at very low outside temperatures. Improper cleaning may damage the vehicle.

- Do not use excessively hard or abrasive cleaning tools.
- Thaw ice with a suitable de-icing agent.

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle lighting is not switched on according to the weather conditions, the road will not be illuminated sufficiently. Other road users may then have difficulty seeing the vehicle or may not see it at all. This could cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always switch on low beam when it is dark or raining and in poor visibility.
- Regularly check that all lights and direction indicators are working properly.

⚠ WARNING

The parking lamps or daytime running lights are not bright enough to illuminate the road ahead and to ensure that other road users are able to see you. The rear lights will not be switched on with the daytime running lights. The vehicle cannot be seen by other road users in darkness, precipitation and poor visibility without the tail lights switched on. This could cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always switch on low beam when it is dark or raining and in poor visibility.

⚠ WARNING

The automatic lighting control **AUTO** only provides support; the driver is responsible for making sure the vehicle lights are switched on correctly. Automatic lighting control **AUTO** switches the low beam head lamps on and off only when there is a change in brightness level. An insufficiently illuminated road can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Switch the low beam head lamps on manually if required by the weather conditions, e.g. in the event of fog.

i To illuminate the surroundings better when manoeuvring, the cornering lights are switched on for both sides of the vehicle when reverse gear is engaged.

Switching high beam on and off

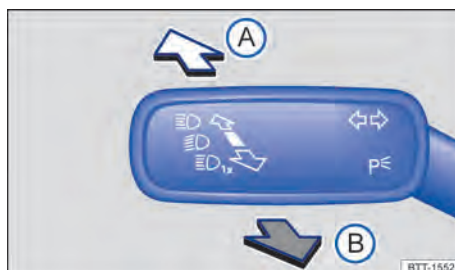


Fig. 89 On the left-hand side of the steering column: direction indicator and high beam lever.

- Ⓐ Switch on the high beam .
- Ⓑ Operate the headlamp flasher or switch off the high beam.

The blue  indicator lamp lights up in the instrument cluster when the high beam headlamps or headlamp flasher are switched on.

Switching on high beam

1. Switch on the ignition and low beam.
2. Push the lever forwards from the centre position → [Fig. 89](#).

Switching off high beam

1. Pull the lever back from the centre position → [Fig. 89](#).

Switching the headlamp flasher on and off

1. Pull the lever back from the centre position and hold → [Fig. 89](#).

Release the lever to switch off.

Automatic Main Beam Control

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, Automatic Main Beam Control may be available → page 119.

⚠ WARNING

Using the high beam incorrectly can distract and dazzle other road users. This could cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Use high beam only if other road users cannot be distracted or dazzled.

Automatic Main Beam Control (Adaptive Headlamps)

Automatic Main Beam Control automatically dips the headlamps when oncoming vehicles and vehicles driving in front are detected. Automatic Main Beam Control also recognises illuminated areas such as towns and deactivates the high beam while driving through them.

Within the limits of the system, the high beam is automatically switched on or off depending on ambient and traffic conditions and on the driving speed → .

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, Automatic Main Beam Control can be activated and deactivated in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system → page 34.

Switching on Automatic Main Beam Control

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Switch on automatic lighting control **AUTO**.
3. Tap the direction indicator and high beam lever forwards twice from its basic position.

The  indicator lamp in the instrument cluster display lights up white when Automatic Main Beam Control is active. When Automatic Main Beam Control is switched on, the  indicator lamp for main beam lights up blue in the instrument cluster.

Switching off Automatic Main Beam Control

1. Switch off automatic lighting control **AUTO**.
Or: if Automatic Main Beam Control is switched on and active, pull back the direction indicator and high beam lever.
Or: if Automatic Main Beam Control is switched on and not active, tap the direction indicator and high beam lever forward.

Manual high beam is now switched on. To switch off manual high beam, pull the direction indicator and high beam lever backwards.

Or: switch off the ignition.

System limitations

The high beam must be manually switched off under the following conditions, as it is not switched off by Automatic Main Beam Control in time or at all:

- In poorly lit streets where there are highly-reflective signs.
- When encountering other road users with insufficient lighting, such as pedestrians or cyclists.
- In the case of crossing traffic at right-angled junctions.
- In tight bends, brows of hills or depressions in the land or half-hidden oncoming traffic.
- With oncoming traffic on streets with a central barrier where the driver can see clearly over the central barrier e.g. truck drivers.
- In fog, snow or heavy rain.
- In dusty or sandy areas.
- Damage to the windscreen in the area of the camera window.
- If the camera window is misted up, dirty, covered by a sticker, snow or ice.
- If the camera is broken or the power supply is interrupted.

WARNING

Automatic Main Beam Control may not be able to recognise all driving situations correctly and may not work properly in certain situations. Automatic Main Beam Control only provides support; the driver is responsible for making sure the vehicle lights are switched on correctly. Incorrect use of the high beam headlamps can distract and dazzle other road users. This could cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always check the lighting yourself and adjust it to suit the light, visibility and traffic conditions.

- Switch off high beam manually if other road users could be dazzled.

WARNING

If the camera window is dirty, covered or damaged, the function of Automatic Main Beam Control may be impaired. This also applies if changes are made to the vehicle's lighting system, for example if additional headlamps are fitted. This could cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Clean the camera window at regular intervals, and keep it clean and free from snow and ice.
- Do not cover the camera window.
- Check the windscreen in the area of the camera window for damage at regular intervals.

1. Check the lighting and change the appropriate bulb as required → page 323.
2. If the fault persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

Fault in rain and light sensor

In light switch position **AUTO**, the vehicle lighting is not switched on or off automatically.

1. Switch the ignition on and off.
2. If the fault persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

 In cold or damp weather, condensation may build up briefly on the interior of the headlamps, tail lamps and direction indicators. This is normal and does not affect the service life of the lighting system of your vehicle.

Troubleshooting

Indicator lamp for direction indicator

The indicator lamp flashes green.

If a direction indicator on the vehicle has failed, the indicator lamp will start flashing twice as fast.

1. Check the lighting and change the appropriate bulb as required → page 323.
2. If the fault persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

Indicator lamp for trailer direction indicator

The indicator lamp flashes green.

The indicator lamp goes out if a trailer direction indicator or all trailer lights stop working.

1. Check the lighting and change the appropriate bulb as required → page 323.
2. If the fault persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

Exterior drive lighting not working

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

Exterior drive lighting not working partially or completely.

Fog lamps

Switching on and off the fog lamps

Switching on the front fog lamps

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press the  button → page 117.

The indicator lamp  in the button lights up green.

Switching off the front fog lamps

1. Press the button again.

 If the front fog lamps are switched on with switched-off lights, switched-on parking lamps  or switched-on automatic lighting control **AUTO**, the low beam head lamps will be switched on independently of the ambient brightness.

Switching the rear fog lamp on and off

The rear fog lamp can only be switched on when the ignition is switched on → page 117.

Switching on the rear fog lamp

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Press the  button → page 117.

The  indicator lamp in the button lights up, and the  indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up yellow.

Switching off the rear fog lamp

1. Press the button again.

 If the fog lamps are switched on with switched-off lights **OFF**, switched-on parking lamps  or switched-on automatic lighting control **AUTO**, the low beam headlights will be switched on independently of the ambient brightness.

 In vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket: the vehicle's rear fog lamp is not switched on if a trailer with rear fog lamp is electrically connected to the vehicle.

parking light so that the engine can still be started – but after 2 hours at the earliest.

If the battery capacity is not sufficient for the side lights or parking light to remain switched on for 2 hours, the 12-volt vehicle battery can be discharged to such an extent that it is no longer possible to start the engine → .

WARNING

Accidents and serious or even fatal injuries can occur if the vehicle is parked without sufficient illumination, as other road users might have difficulty seeing the vehicle, or may not see it at all.

- Always park the vehicle safely and with sufficient lighting.
- Observe any applicable country-specific legal requirements.
- Switch on the parking light on the right or left side if possible if illumination of the vehicle for several hours is necessary.

Parking lamps

Switching the side lights on and off

Side lights

If the  side lights are switched on, both headlights light up with side lights together with parts of the tail light clusters, the number plate lighting and the buttons in the centre console and the dash panel. The automatic lighting control function is activated from a speed of around 10 km/h (around 6 mph) or when a distance of around 100 m (around 328 ft) has been covered.

If the vehicle is not locked from outside when the ignition is switched off, the continuous parking light on both sides of the vehicle switches on automatically after around 10 minutes to reduce 12-volt vehicle battery discharge → page 121.

Automatic switch-off of side lights and parking lights

The vehicle will detect a weak 12-volt vehicle battery and switch off the side lights or

Switching parking lamps on and off

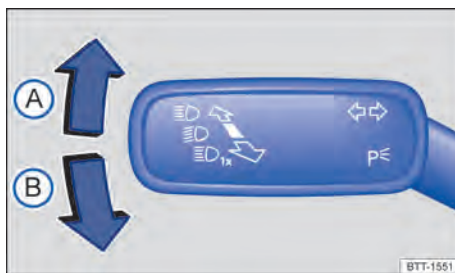


Fig. 90 On the left-hand side of the steering column: direction indicator and high beam lever.

- (A) Right-hand parking lamp is switched on.
- (B) Left-hand parking lamp is switched on.

Switching on parking lamp on one side of the vehicle

When the parking lamps are switched on, the headlamp with parking lamp and parts

of the tail lamp cluster on the corresponding side of the vehicle light up. The activation duration of the one-sided parking lamp is generally double that of the continuous parking lamp on both sides:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Move the direction indicator and high beam lever from the centre position to the required position → Fig. 90.

Switching on continuous parking lamp on both sides of the vehicle

Both headlamps with parking lamps and parts of the rear light cluster light up if the continuous parking lamp on both sides of the vehicle is switched on.

1. Switch on the parking lamps .
2. Switch off the ignition.
3. Lock the vehicle from outside.

Automatic switch-off of parking lamps

The vehicle will detect a weak 12-volt vehicle battery and switch off the parking lamps so that the engine can still be started – but after 2 hours at the earliest.

If the battery capacity is not sufficient for the parking lamps to remain switched on for 2 hours, the 12-volt vehicle battery can be discharged to such an extent that it is no longer possible to start the engine → .

WARNING

Accidents and serious or fatal injuries can occur if the vehicle is parked without sufficient illumination, as other road users might have difficulty seeing the vehicle, or may not see it at all.

- Always park the vehicle safely and with sufficient lighting.
- Observe any applicable country-specific legal requirements.
- If the vehicle lighting is required for several hours, switch on the right or left parking lamp if possible.

Coming Home and Leaving Home function (orientation lighting)

The Coming Home and Leaving Home function lights up the area immediately surrounding the vehicle when you get in or out of the vehicle in darkness.

The Coming Home and Leaving Home function is controlled automatically by a light sensor.

The switch-off delay can be set and the function activated or deactivated in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system → page 34.

Activating the Coming Home function

1. Switch off the ignition.

The Coming Home lights are switched on when automatic lighting control **AUTO** is switched on and the light sensor detects darkness.

The switch-off delay starts when the last vehicle door or the boot lid is closed.

Deactivating the Coming Home function

1. Automatically after the set switch-off delay has elapsed.

Or: automatically if a vehicle door or the boot lid is still open approximately 30 seconds after switch-on.

Or: press the light switch as often as necessary until the setting **OFF** is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Or: switch on the ignition.

Activating the Leaving Home function

1. Unlock the vehicle when automatic lighting control **AUTO** is switched on and the light sensor detects darkness.

Deactivating the Leaving Home function

1. Automatically after the switch-off delay.

Or: lock the vehicle.

Or: press the light switch as often as necessary until the setting **OFF** is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Or: switch on the ignition.

Light functions

Static cornering light

When the low beam head lamps are switched on, a cornering light is switched on when turning slowly or driving around very tight bends.

 When reverse gear is engaged, the cornering light on both sides of the vehicle switches on to provide better illumination of the surrounding area when manoeuvring.

Automatic lighting control

When the automatic lighting control **AUTO** is switched on, the vehicle lighting and the instrument and switch lighting will switch on under the following conditions:

- The light sensor has detected darkness.
- The windscreen wipers have been switched on for an extended period.

When the lights are switched on, the indicator lamp **AUTO** lights up yellow → page 117.

The automatic lighting control is merely an aid and will not always be able to detect all driving situations.

In vehicles with a corresponding equipment level, the switch-on time of the automatic headlights can be set in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system → page 34.

Headlamp range control

Headlamp range control can be used to adjust the low beam light cone to the vehicle load level. This gives the driver the best visibility possible and means that oncoming traffic will not be dazzled → .

The headlamp range can be adjusted in the Infotainment system, depending on the equipment.

Manual headlamp range control

Adjusting in the Infotainment system:

1. Tap the **(Vehicle)** function button.
2. Tap the **(Headlamps)** function button.
3. Tap the **(Headlamp range control)** function button.
4. Tap the required setting value (typical vehicle load level).

Settings in the Infotainment system

0	Front seats occupied and load compartment empty.
2	All seats occupied and load compartment empty.
4	All seats occupied and load compartment fully laden. Towing a trailer with a low drawbar load.
6	Only the driver seat occupied and load compartment fully laden. Towing a trailer with maximum drawbar load.

Dynamic headlamp range control

The headlamp range cannot be adjusted manually if the vehicle has dynamic headlamp range control. The headlamp range is automatically adapted to suit the vehicle load level as soon as the headlamps are switched on → .

WARNING

Heavy objects in the vehicle can change the ride height so that the headlamps dazzle and distract other road users. This could cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always adapt the light cone to the load level of the vehicle to avoid dazzling other road users.

⚠ WARNING

Failure or malfunction in the headlamp range control can cause the headlamps to dazzle or distract other road users. This could cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Have the headlamp range control checked by a suitably qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Switching over headlights for driving abroad (travel mode)

If you have to drive a right-hand drive vehicle in a left-hand drive country, or vice versa, the dipped beam of vehicles with dynamic cornering light may dazzle oncoming traffic. For this reason, the headlight alignment of vehicles with this equipment can be adjusted in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system (travel mode) → page 34.

It is not necessary to adjust the headlights on vehicles without a dynamic headlight range control. Contact a suitably qualified workshop for further information.

i Travel mode may only be used for a short period. Please contact a suitably qualified workshop for a permanent alteration.

Acoustic warnings if lights are not switched off

When the ignition has been switched off and the driver door is opened, acoustic warnings will sound under the following conditions:

- If the parking light is switched on.
- If the parking lamps are switched on.
- If the rear fog lamp is switched on.

No acoustic warning will be given as a reminder that a light is still switched on when leaving the vehicle when the orientation lighting is switched on → page 122.

Interior lighting

Instrument and switch lighting

The brightness of the instrument and switch lighting can be adjusted in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system, depending on the vehicle equipment → page 34.

The brightness setting is automatically adjusted to the changing light conditions in the vehicle.

In vehicles without an adjustment function, the instrument and switch lighting comes on permanently.

When automatic lighting control **AUTO** is switched on, a sensor will switch the low beam and the lighting in the instruments and switches on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

Interior lights and reading lights



Fig. 91 In the roof console: touch-sensitive reading lights.

Tap the corresponding symbol:

-  Switch interior lights on and off or dim lights.
-  Function switched off: depending on equipment, the interior lights are switched on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked, a door is opened or the ignition is switched off.

Touch-sensitive reading lights with manual dimming function

There may be touch-sensitive reading lights in the roof console and above the seat rows, depending on the vehicle equip-

ment → Fig. 91. The respective reading light can be switched on or off by touching the light surface.

In order to activate the manual dimming function, keep touching the light surface until the desired brightness level is reached.

Glove box and load compartment lighting

The corresponding light will be switched on or off when the glove box or boot lid is opened or closed.

 The lights switch off when the vehicle is locked or after a few minutes once the ignition has been switched off. This prevents the 12-volt battery from discharging. <

Vision

Wipers

Operating the wiper lever

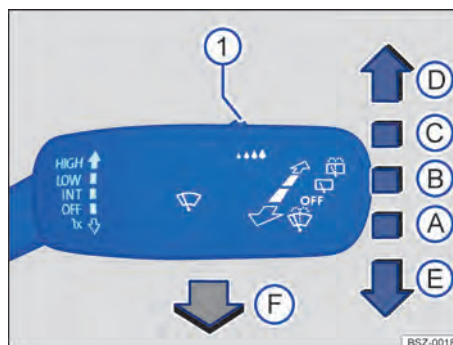


Fig. 92 On the right of the steering column:
Operating the front windscreen wipers

- A OFF** Wipers switched off.
- B INT** Interval wipe for the windscreen, or rain sensor mode. The interval wipe for the windscreen depends on the speed of the vehicle. The wipers will wipe more frequently as the vehicle moves faster.
- C LOW** Slow wipe.
- D HIGH** Fast wipe.
- E 1x** Flick wipe – wipes briefly. Push and hold the lever down for longer to wipe more quickly.
- F**  Wash and wipe system for cleaning the windscreen with the lever pulled. The automatic air conditioning system will switch to air recirculation mode for approximately 30 seconds to prevent the smell of the washer fluid from entering the vehicle interior.
- 1**  Switch for wipe intervals (vehicles without rain and light sensor) or adjusting the sensitivity of the rain and light sensor.

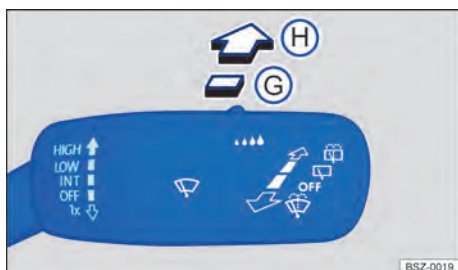


Fig. 93 On the right of the steering column:
Operating the rear window wiper.

- G**  Interval wipe for the rear window. The windscreen wiper will wipe the window approximately every 6 seconds.
- H**  Wash and wipe system for cleaning the rear window with the lever pushed.

The wipers function only when the ignition is switched on and the bonnet or boot lid are closed.

WARNING

Without adequate anti-freeze, the washer fluid may freeze onto the windscreen and obscure your view. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- At winter temperatures, use the window washer system only when adequate anti-freeze has been added.
- Never use the windscreen washer system at winter temperatures before the windscreen has been heated by the ventilation system.

WARNING

Worn or dirty wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries.

- Always change wiper blades if they are damaged or worn and are thus unable to clean the window properly → page 322.

NOTICE

Improper handling of the wipers may cause damage to the window as well as the wiper blades and the windscreen wiper motor.

- Before driving off and before switching on the ignition, check that the wiper lever is in the basic position.
- Remove any snow and ice from the wipers and windows.
- Always carefully detach frozen wiper blades from the window.
- Do not switch on the wipers when the window is dry.

i When switched on, the wipers will temporarily be switched to the next setting down when the vehicle is stationary.

i If the vehicle is parked during cold weather, the service position of the windscreen wiper may be helpful in order to be able to release the wiper blades better from the windscreen → page 321.

Wiper function

Window wipe/wash system for cleaning the windscreen or rear window

The window wipe/wash system cleans the windscreen or rear window with the wipers and washer fluid. To ensure that the system functions correctly in all weather conditions, sufficient anti-freeze must be added to the washer fluid → page 346.

NOTICE

Washer fluid without sufficient anti-freeze can freeze in the water-carrying hoses and washer fluid reservoir at low temperatures. This can result in damage to the washer fluid pump.

- Always use washer fluid with sufficient anti-freeze.

Automatic activation of the rear window wiper

The rear window wiper is switched on automatically if the windscreen wipers are switched on and reverse gear is engaged. Automatic activation when reverse gear is

engaged can be activated and deactivated in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system → page 34.

Heated washer jets

The heating defrosts frozen washer jets. The heating output is automatically regulated when the ignition is switched on, depending on the ambient temperature. Only the washer jets are heated and not the hoses carrying washer fluid.

Rain/light sensor

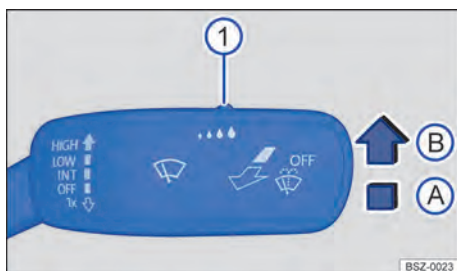


Fig. 94 On the right of the steering column: wiper lever.

- ① Switch for setting the sensitivity of the rain and light sensor.
- Ⓐ The rain and light sensor is deactivated.
- Ⓑ The rain/light sensor is active, automatic wipe when necessary.

When the rain/light sensor is activated, it automatically controls the frequency of the wiper intervals, depending on the intensity of the rain.

Activating and deactivating the rain/light sensor

1. Push the lever to the desired position → Fig. 94.

The automatic wipe function can be activated and deactivated in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system → page 34.

If the automatic wipe function is deactivated in the Infotainment system, the intervals are set at fixed levels.

Adjusting the sensitivity of the rain/light sensor

The sensitivity of the rain and light sensor can be adjusted manually using the switch in the wiper lever → Fig. 94 ① → ⚠.

- For high sensitivity, set the switch to the right position.
- For low sensitivity, set the switch to the left position.

⚠ WARNING

The rain and light sensor cannot always sufficiently detect all precipitation and activate the wipers. If visibility is restricted, this can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- If necessary, switch on the wipers manually if the water on the windscreen restricts the field of vision.

Troubleshooting



Washer fluid level too low

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

1. Fill up the washer fluid reservoir as soon as possible → page 346.



Fault in wipers

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

1. Switch the ignition on and off.
2. If the fault persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.



Fault in rain and light sensor

The wipers are not switched on automatically if it rains during rain/light sensor operation.

1. Switch the ignition on and off.
2. If the fault persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

Changes in the response of the rain and light sensor

Possible causes for faults and misinterpretations relating to the sensitive surface of the rain and light sensor → page 8 include:

— **Damaged wiper blades:** a film of water or smears caused by damaged wiper blades can increase the time the wipers are switched on, can shorten the length of the intervals between wipes or cause the wipers to run quickly and continuously.

— **Insects:** insects hitting the windscreen surface can cause the wipers to be activated.

— **Salt deposits:** in winter, salt deposits can cause the wipers to continue to wipe the windscreen when it is almost dry.

— **Soiling:** dry dust, wax, windscreen coatings (lotus effect), or detergent deposits (from an automatic car wash) can cause the rain and light sensor to become less sensitive and react too slowly, or prevent it from reacting at all. Clean the sensitive surface of the rain and light sensor at regular intervals and inspect the wiper blades for damage → page 402.

— **Crack in the windscreen:** a wipe cycle will be triggered if the rain and light sensor is switched on when the windscreen is impacted by a stone. The rain/light sensor will then register the reduction in sensitivity of the surfaces and adjust accordingly. Depending on the size of the stone impact, the response of the rain/light sensor may change.

We recommend that you use an alcohol-based glass cleaner to remove wax and polish.

 The wipers will try to wipe away any obstacles that are on the window. The wipers will stop moving if the obstacle blocks their path. Remove the obstacle and switch the wipers back on again. 

Mirrors

General safety notes

You can use the exterior mirrors and the interior mirror to observe traffic behind you and adjust driving style accordingly.

For safety reasons, it is important that the driver positions the exterior and interior mirrors correctly before starting a journey.

Looking in the exterior mirrors and the interior mirror does not allow the driver to see the entire area around the side and rear of the vehicle. The area that cannot be seen is known as the blind spot. Objects and other road users may also be located in the blind spot.

WARNING

Adjusting the exterior and interior mirrors while driving may cause the driver to become distracted. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Adjust the exterior mirrors and interior mirror only when the vehicle is stationary.
- Always ensure that the mirrors are positioned correctly and that the rear view is not restricted by ice, snow, condensation or any other objects.

WARNING

The fields of view of the exterior mirrors and interior mirror do not cover the entire area around the vehicle at the sides and rear. There may be objects and other road users in these blind spots. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- When parking, changing lane, overtaking or turning, always pay careful attention to the area around the vehicle.

WARNING

Curved mirrors (convex or aspheric) enlarge the field of vision and can make objects in the mirror seem smaller and further away than they actually are. This leads to an inaccurate estimation of the distance from vehicles following behind, e.g. when changing lanes. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Whenever possible, use the interior mirror to check the exact distance between your vehicle and following traffic or other objects.
- Make sure that you have a good view to the rear of the vehicle.

WARNING

Automatic anti-dazzle mirrors contain an electrolyte fluid which could leak if the

mirror is broken. Contact with this fluid can cause irritation to the skin, eyes and respiratory organs, especially in people who suffer from asthma or similar illnesses. This can cause serious injuries.

- If you have swallowed electrolyte fluid, rinse your mouth immediately with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless instructed to do so by a doctor. Seek medical assistance immediately.
- Immediately make sure that there is a sufficient supply of fresh air and get out of the vehicle or, if this is not possible, open all windows and doors.
- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolyte fluid, wash the affected area immediately with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes and seek medical attention.
- If your shoes or clothes come into contact with the electrolyte liquid, wash it off immediately with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes. Clean shoes and clothes thoroughly before wearing them again.

! NOTICE

If the glass of an automatic anti-dazzle mirror is broken, electrolyte fluid can leak from the mirror. This fluid corrodes plastic surfaces.

- Remove any fluid that has leaked out as quickly as possible, e.g. with a wet sponge.

Interior mirror



Fig. 95 On the windscreen: automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror.

- ① Sensor for incident light from the rear.
- ② Sensor for incident light from the front.

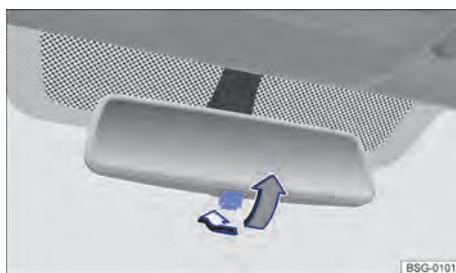


Fig. 96 On the windscreen: manual anti-dazzle interior mirror.

Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror

When the ignition is switched on, the sensors measure the incident light from the rear → Fig. 95 ① and from the front ②.

Depending on the values measured, the interior mirror dims automatically.

If the incident light on the sensors is hindered or interrupted, e.g. by a sun blind or other hanging objects, the automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror will not function or will not function correctly. Mobile navigation devices attached to the windscreen or near the interior automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror can also influence the sensors → .

The automatic anti-dazzle function will be deactivated in some situations, e.g. when reverse gear is engaged.

Manual anti-dazzle interior mirror

- Basic position: the lever on the lower part of the mirror is pointing towards the windscreen.
- Pull the lever back to select the anti-dazzle function → Fig. 96.

WARNING

The illuminated display of a mobile navigation system can interfere with operation of the automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror. As a result, the interior mirror cannot be used to check the exact distance between your vehicle and following traffic or other objects. This can result in accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Switch off the mobile navigation system in such cases.

Exterior mirrors



Fig. 97 In the driver door: rotary knob for the exterior mirrors

The exterior mirror functions for left-hand drive vehicle are described below. Position **L** corresponds to the exterior mirror on the driver's side and position **R** to the exterior mirror on the front passenger side. The mirrored procedure must be followed for right-hand drive vehicles.

Electrically adjustable exterior mirrors

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Turn the rotary knob in the driver door to the desired symbol → Fig. 97.
3. To adjust the exterior mirror, press the knob in the direction of the arrow to the front, rear, right or left.



Fold exterior mirrors into the body electrically → . The exterior mirrors can be folded in up to a speed of around 50 km/h (around 30 mph).



Switch on the exterior mirror heating.

L

Adjust the exterior mirror on the driver side.

R

Adjusts the right exterior mirror.

0

Neutral position. The exterior mirror cannot be adjusted and all functions are switched off.

Depending on the model, electrical controls can be combined with mechanically adjustable exterior mirrors.

Activating the exterior mirror functions

The following exterior mirror functions must be activated once in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system → page 34.

Synchronised mirror adjustment

Synchronous mirror adjustment means that the right-hand exterior mirror is also adjusted at the same time when you adjust the left-hand exterior mirror.

1. Turn the rotary knob to position **L**.
2. Adjust the exterior mirror on the driver side. The right-hand exterior mirror will be adjusted at the same time (synchronised).
3. To correct the adjustment of the right exterior mirror if necessary: turn the ro-

tary knob to position **R** and adjust the right exterior mirror.

Folding in the exterior mirrors while parking

The exterior mirrors fold in or out automatically when the vehicle is locked or unlocked from the outside. This requires the rotary knob to be in the position **L**, **R** or **O**.

The exterior mirrors remain folded in if the rotary knob for the electrically adjustable exterior mirrors is in the position **O**.

⚠ WARNING

If the exterior mirrors are folded out or in without paying due attention, fingers can be trapped between the exterior mirror and the mirror base. This can cause serious injuries.

- Fold the exterior mirrors in or out only when there is no obstruction in the path of the mirror.

! NOTICE

Exterior mirrors may be damaged if they are not folded in when driving through a car wash.

- Always fold in the exterior mirrors.

! NOTICE

Folding in the electrically adjustable exterior mirrors mechanically can lead to increased wear or damage the electric drive.

- Do not fold electrically adjustable exterior mirrors in or out by hand.

 You should switch off the exterior mirror heating when it is no longer needed. Fuel is otherwise wasted.

 In the event of a fault, the electric exterior mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the outer edge of the mirror.

 The vehicle aerials are located in the exterior mirrors. If any metallic chrome-plated trim, such as chrome-plated design caps, is retrofitted to the exterior mirrors, you may experience problems with the radio, mobile telephone and navigation services or they may lose the ability to transmit and receive signals completely. <

Sun blind

Sun visors

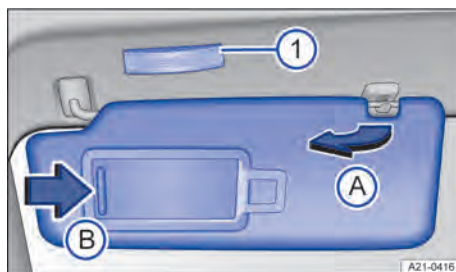


Fig. 98 In the roof at the front: Sun visor

- ① Light.
- A Pull out of the holder.
- B Slide the cover open.

Adjustment positions for the driver and front passenger sun visors:

1. Folded down over the windscreen.
2. Pull out of the bracket and swing over towards the door → Fig. 98 A.

Illuminated vanity mirror

With the sun visor folded down, there may be a vanity mirror behind a cover.

1. Slide the cover open in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 98 B.

The light → Fig. 98 ① will go out when the vanity mirror cover is pushed back or the sun visor is folded back up.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with the sun visors folded down and the sun blinds pulled out can reduce your view of the road. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Sun visors should always be folded away and sun blinds should always be retracted if they are not being used. <

Heating and air conditioning system

Automatic Climate Control

Overview of automatic Climate Control

The automatic Climate Control system heats, cools and dehumidifies the air. Automatic mode can be used to automatically control the air temperature, air distribution and air volume.

The Climate Control block is displayed continuously at the bottom edge of the screen in the Infotainment system. You can find the currently set temperature there, for example.

Some functions of the Climate Control system depend on the vehicle equipment level.

Using the Climate Control system efficiently

The Climate Control system will work most effectively if the vehicle interior is kept closed. If heat has built up in the vehicle interior, cooling can be accelerated by briefly airing the vehicle.

Display of active functions

Functions that are switched on are indicated by illuminated symbols on the sensor fields, as well as function buttons highlighted in colour on the Infotainment system.

Adjusting functions in the Climate Control block

You can exchange some functions in the Climate Control block in the Infotainment system.

1. Tap and hold the function in the Climate Control block.
2. Select the desired Climate Control function from the displayed overview.

⚠ WARNING

Iced-up, snow-covered or misted-up windows severely restrict visibility. This increases the risk of collisions and acci-

dents, which can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Ensure that all windows are free of ice, snow and condensation.
- Adjust the heating, Climate Control and rear window heating to prevent the windows from misting up → page 145.
- Only set off once all windows are clear.
- Use air recirculation mode for a short period only. Condensation could otherwise form on the windows very quickly so that visibility is greatly reduced.
- Switch off the air recirculation mode as soon as it is no longer required.



Switching automatic Climate Control on and off

In the Climate Control menu: top edge of the screen



Switch automatic Climate Control on and off.

If the Climate Control system is switched off, **OFF** is displayed at the bottom edge of the screen in the Infotainment system.



Automatic mode of the automatic Climate Control

In the Climate Control menu

AUTO The set air temperature is kept constant. The volume of air and air distribution are controlled automatically. Automatic mode switches itself off when the blower speed is adjusted manually. Automatic mode of the automatic Climate Control system is also switched on if a **Comfort** function is activated → page 135.

Selecting a Climate Control profile

You can adjust the blower speed in automatic mode by means of the Climate Control profiles.

1. Open the Climate Control menu in the Infotainment system.

2. Tap  to switch on automatic mode of the automatic Climate Control system.
3. Tap  again and select the desired climate control profile in the pop-up window.

Auto Air Refresh

In the Climate Control menu



Auto Air Refresh can reduce the amount of pollutants and also allergens that enter the vehicle interior.

When Auto Air Refresh is switched on, the Climate Control system's air recirculation mode is maximised as far as is permitted by the risk of window fogging depending on the interior humidity and outside temperature. The air recirculation mode is automatically regulated and features continuous adjustment in order to prevent fatigue of the vehicle occupants.

Manual air conditioning system

Overview of manual Climate Control

The manual Climate Control system heats, cools and dehumidifies the air.

Some functions of the Climate Control system and menus in the Infotainment system depend on the vehicle equipment.

Using the Climate Control system efficiently

The Climate Control system will work most effectively if the vehicle interior is kept closed. If heat has built up in the vehicle interior, cooling can be accelerated by briefly airing the vehicle.

Display of active functions

Illuminated symbols on the buttons indicate that the function is switched on.

Colour-coded function buttons display an activated function in the Climate Control menu in the Infotainment system.

WARNING

Iced-up, snow-covered or misted-up windows severely restrict visibility. This increases the risk of collisions and accidents, which can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Ensure that all windows are free of ice, snow and condensation.
- Adjust the heating, Climate Control and rear window heating to prevent the windows from misting up → page 145.
- Only set off once all windows are clear.
- Use air recirculation mode for a short period only. Condensation could otherwise form on the windows very quickly so that visibility is greatly reduced.
- Switch off the air recirculation mode as soon as it is no longer required.

Switching manual Climate Control on and off

In the Climate Control menu: top edge of the screen



Switch manual Climate Control on and off.

Heating and fresh air system

Overview of the heating and fresh air system

The heating and fresh air system warms up and supplies fresh air to the vehicle interior. The heating and fresh air system does not cool down the vehicle interior.

Some functions of the heating and fresh air system and menus in the Infotainment system depend on the vehicle equipment.

Display of active functions

Illuminated symbols on the buttons indicate that the function is switched on.

Colour-coded function buttons display an activated function in the Climate Control menu in the Infotainment system.

⚠ WARNING

Iced-up, snow-covered or misted-up windows severely restrict visibility. This increases the risk of collisions and accidents, which can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Ensure that all windows are free of ice, snow and condensation.
- Adjust the heating, Climate Control and rear window heating to prevent the windows from misting up → page 145.
- Only set off once all windows are clear.
- Use air recirculation mode for a short period only. Condensation could otherwise form on the windows very quickly so that visibility is greatly reduced.
- Switch off the air recirculation mode as soon as it is no longer required.

Switching the heating and fresh air system on and off

In the Climate Control menu: top edge of the screen



Switch the heating and fresh air system on and off.

Climate Control menu in the Infotainment system



Open the Climate Control menu by means of a button on the upper centre console.

CLIMA Open the Climate Control menu via the air conditioning block in the Infotainment system.

The Climate Control menu contains the functions for air distribution, for example → page 135.

Some functions and menus depend on the vehicle equipment level.

Climate Control system operating conditions

The Climate Control system operating conditions are highlighted in colour:

■ Cooling.

■ Heating.

Settings submenu



Depending on equipment, you will find additional convenience features in the **Climate Control settings** submenu:

- Switches automatic air recirculation mode on → page 135.
- Allow automatic supplementary heating → page 139.
- Switch on automatic windscreen heating on → page 139.
- Switch on seat heating automatically at the start of the journey → page 137.
- Switch on steering wheel heating automatically at the start of the journey → page 138.

Temperature control

In the Infotainment system: lower screen edge



Adjust the temperature using the touch sliders on the Infotainment system. The temperature settings are displayed continuously at the bottom of the screen in the Infotainment system.

The fresh air can be heated in vehicles equipped with a heating and fresh air system. The heating and fresh air system does not cool down the vehicle interior.

In the Climate Control menu or in the air conditioning block



The air is cooled and dehumidified in cooling mode.



Switch maximum cooling output on and off.
Air recirculation mode is automatically switched on and the automatic Climate Control system directs air to the upper body.



Adopt temperature settings of driver side for all seats.

Air distribution and blower speed

Vents

Vents can be found in the following locations in the vehicle:

- Driver side.
- Front passenger side.
- Front centre console.
- Rear centre console.

! NOTICE

Foodstuffs, medicines and objects that are sensitive to heat or cold can be damaged or made unusable by the air flowing out of the vents.

- Never leave food, medicines or other temperature-sensitive objects in front of the vents.

! NOTICE

Objects that are inserted into the vents can damage the vents.

- Do not insert any objects into the vents.

Air distribution functions in the Climate Control menu

! WARNING

A lacking fresh air supply can lead to restricted visibility due to misted-up windows and to fast driver fatigue due to the stale air. This can lead to collisions and accidents and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Never switch off the blower for an extended period.
- Use air recirculation mode for a short period only.
- Switch off the air recirculation mode as soon as it is no longer required.



Adjust the blower speed with the touch slider.



Direct air towards upper body.



Direct air into the footwell.



Direct air onto the windscreen.

Air distribution functions in the Comfort Climate Control menu

Automatic mode of the Climate Control system is also switched on if a **Comfort** function is activated. The **Comfort** functions remain switched on for a short time. Automatic mode remains switched on after this time elapses.



Clear ice and condensation from the windscreen.



Direct warm air into the footwell.



Direct warm air onto the steering wheel.



Direct cool air into the footwell.



Direct fresh air from the outside into the vehicle interior.



Briefly increase the cooling system output.

Defrost function

On the touch panel in the upper centre console



The defrost function clears the windscreen of ice and condensation. The air is dehumidified and the blower is set to a high speed.

Air recirculation mode

When air recirculation mode is switched on, no fresh air enters the vehicle interior →



Switch air recirculation mode on and off in the Climate Control menu.

When does air recirculation mode switch off?

Air recirculation mode switches itself off automatically if one of the following conditions is met:

- The defrost function is switched on.
- A sensor detects that condensation might form on the vehicle's windows.

WARNING

A lacking fresh air supply can lead to restricted visibility due to misted-up windows and to fast driver fatigue due to the stale air. This can lead to collisions and accidents and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Use air recirculation mode for a short period only.
- Switch off the air recirculation mode as soon as it is no longer required.

NOTICE

Tobacco smoke can leave a residue on the evaporator of the Climate Control system and the enhanced air filter with activated carbon, producing a lasting unpleasant odour.

- To prevent lasting unpleasant odours, do not smoke in the vehicle when air recirculation mode is switched on.

 **Automatic Climate Control:** When reversing the vehicle or when the window wipe/wash system is being used, the air recirculation mode will switch on to prevent odours from entering the vehicle interior.

Roof ventilator

The roof ventilator directs air from the front area to the rear of the vehicle interior. The roof ventilator does not have a separate fresh air intake.

Opening the roof ventilator settings

REAR Menu for the rear seats.

1. Open the Climate Control menu in the Infotainment system.

2. Tap **REAR** to open the menu for the rear seats.

Switching the roof ventilator on and off

1. Tap .

Air is directed permanently into the rear area of the vehicle interior when the roof ventilator is switched on, even when the blower is set to minimum power.

Roof ventilator automatic mode

AUTO The blower speed is controlled automatically. Automatic mode switches itself off when the blower speed is adjusted manually. The blower speed in automatic mode can be controlled via the climate profiles.

 If the roof ventilator runs for a long period with the engine switched off, the 12-volt vehicle battery will discharge. Drive the vehicle for an appropriate distance in order to recharge the 12-volt vehicle battery. 

Seat heating

Overview of seat heating

When the engine is running, the front seats can be electrically heated in three settings → .

Temperature settings of the seat heating

 The seat heating operating conditions are shown in red in the Infotainment system.

 Seat heating switched off.

 Seat heating switched on at highest temperature setting.

When should the seat heating be switched off?

Switch off the seat heating if one of the following conditions applies:

- A person with reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature is sitting on the seat → .
- The seat is not occupied.

- A child seat is installed on the seat.
- Objects are covering the seat cushion, e.g. protective covers, jackets, blankets or bags.
- The seat cushion is damp or wet.
- The temperature in the vehicle interior or the outside temperature is above +25°C (+77 °F).

WARNING

Magnetic fields are produced during operation of the seat heating. These magnetic fields can affect active medical implants, e.g. pacemakers, in isolated cases.

- If you have a medical implant, you should consult your doctor or the implant manufacturer before operating the seat heating.
- Also make the other vehicle occupants aware of this.

WARNING

Anyone experiencing reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature due to medication, paralysis or chronic illness (e.g. diabetes) could sustain burns on the back, buttocks and legs when using the seat heating. These burns may take a long time to heal or may never heal fully.

- Never use the seat heating if you have reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature and leave the “Automatic seat heating at the start of a journey” function switched off → page 138.
- Consult a doctor if you have questions about your own state of health.

WARNING

Wet seat covers can cause a malfunction in the seat heating and increase the risk of burns.

- Ensure that the seat cushion is dry before using the seat heating.
- Do not sit on the seat in soaking wet clothing.
- Do not place soaking wet objects or clothing on the seat.
- Do not spill any liquids on the seat.

NOTICE

The heater elements of the seat heating can be damaged by point loads and insulating materials.

- Do not kneel on the seats and do not apply any other point loads to the seat cushion and backrest.
- Do not load the seat cushion and backrest with pointed objects.
- Switch off the seat heating if insulating materials are fitted on the seat, e.g. a protective cover or child seat.
- Use the seat heating only if the seat is equipped with the original seat covers.
- If odours develop, switch off the seat heating immediately and have it checked by a suitably qualified workshop. <

Operating the seat heating function

 **Please refer to  and  at the start of the chapter on page 136.**

1. Tap  at the bottom of the screen to switch on the seat heating with the highest temperature setting.
2. To adjust the temperature setting, tap  repeatedly.
3. To switch off the seat heating, tap  repeatedly until  is displayed.

Or: to switch the seat heating on or off, tap the touch sliders under the Infotainment system on the driver or front passenger side with two fingers.



To save fuel, switch off the seat heating as soon as possible.

The seat heating switches on and off automatically

If you start the engine again within approximately 10 minutes, the most recent driver seat temperature setting is switched on automatically. The most recent temperature setting is also switched on automatically for the passenger seat when it is occupied.

The seat heating on the front passenger seat switches itself off automatically if the

front passenger leaves the seat while the seat heating is switched on and the engine is running. The display on the Infotainment system will change to  after around 2 seconds. The seat heating on the front passenger seat switches itself on again automatically if the front passenger sits down again while the engine is still running. <

Automatic seat heating at the start of a journey

 **Please refer to  and  at the start of the chapter on page 136.**

The function depends on the vehicle equipment and is only available in vehicles with automatic Climate Control.

1. Open the Climate Control menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Tap  to open the **Climate Control settings** submenu.
3. Activate the **Seat heating** checkbox.
When the engine is started, the seat heating is switched on automatically depending on the outside temperature. <

Steering wheel heating

The steering wheel heating works when the engine is running.



Switch the steering wheel heating on and off in the Climate Control menu.



Switch the steering wheel heating on and off on the multifunction steering wheel.

Temperature settings of the steering wheel heating

The steering wheel heating operating states are shown in colour in the Infotainment system and on the instrument cluster display. The  symbol is coloured red at the highest temperature setting.



Highest temperature setting of the steering wheel heating.

Operating the heated steering wheel

1. Open the Climate Control menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Tap  to switch on the steering wheel heating at the highest temperature setting.
Or: tap  on the multifunction steering wheel.
3. To adjust the temperature setting, tap  repeatedly.
4. To switch off the steering wheel heating, tap  repeatedly until the symbol is coloured white.

Steering wheel heating switches on automatically

The most recent temperature setting is switched on automatically if you switch on the engine again within approximately 10 minutes.

Switching on steering wheel heating automatically at the start of the journey

1. Open the Climate Control menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Tap  to open the **Climate Control settings** submenu.
3. Activate the **Steering wheel heating** checkbox.

After starting the engine, the steering wheel heating is automatically switched on depending on the outside temperature and temperature of the steering wheel.

Switching on the steering wheel heating automatically with the **Comfort** function



Direct warm air onto the steering wheel.

When you switch on the **Comfort** function  in the Climate Control menu, the steering wheel heating will be switched on automatically with the highest temperature setting. The steering wheel heating will remain switched on after the time elapses.

If the steering wheel heating is already switched on before you switch on the **Comfort** function , the already adjusted tem-

perature setting of the steering wheel heating will remain selected.

Steering wheel heating switches off automatically

The steering wheel heating switches itself off automatically if one of the following conditions is met:

- The power consumption is too high.
- There is a fault in the steering wheel heating system.

Windscreen heating

The windscreen heating functions when the engine is running.



Switch the windscreen heating on and off on the touch panel in the upper centre console.

The windscreen heating switches itself off depending on the outside temperature or after around 8 minutes at the latest.

Automatic windscreen heating

The windscreen heating is switched on automatically if there is a risk of condensation forming on a window.

1. Open the Climate Control menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Switch the automatic windscreen heating on or off with  **Automatic windscreen heating**.

 Automatic windscreen heating is also active when the Climate Control system is switched off.

Windscreen heating using the defrost function

The windscreen heating will be switched on automatically when the defrost function is switched on and a sensor detects that condensation may form on the windscreen.

Windscreen heating switches off automatically

The windscreen heating switches itself off automatically if one of the following conditions is met:

- The power consumption is too high.

- There is a fault in the Climate Control system.
- The specified time has elapsed.

Rear window heating

The rear window heating works when the engine is running.



Switch the rear window heating on and off in the upper centre console.

The rear window heating switches off automatically after around 10 minutes at the latest.

NOTICE

Stickers that are affixed over the heating conductors of the rear window heating on the inside of the rear window or objects that are in contact with the inside of the rear window can damage the rear window heating.

- Do not stick any stickers over the heating conductors of the rear window heating.
- Fill the load compartment only up to a height where no objects are in contact with the rear window.



To save fuel, switch off the rear window heating as soon as possible.

Automatic supplementary heating function

Switching the automatic supplementary heating function on and off

The automatic supplementary heating function is available depending on the vehicle equipment. With this function, an additional heating component can help to heat up the vehicle interior more quickly.

1. Open the Climate Control menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Tap  to open the **Climate Control settings** submenu.
3. Tap **Automatic supplementary heater**.

The heating component is switched on automatically depending on the outside

temperature and switches itself off again automatically after a certain time.

Vehicles with auxiliary heater (depending on equipment)

When the engine has been started, the auxiliary heater can continue operation as a supplementary heater. The following conditions must be met for this:

- The **Automatic supplementary heater** function is switched on in the Climate Control menu.
- The outside temperature is lower than +5°C (+41°F).

The automatic supplementary heating function is switched off automatically after a certain time.

Auxiliary heater and ventilation

Introduction

The auxiliary heater and ventilation system can be used to heat the vehicle interior in the winter and ventilate it in the summer. It is able to clear ice, condensation and a thin layer of snow from the windscreen. The auxiliary heater is supplied with fuel from the vehicle fuel tank and can be operated when the vehicle is stationary with the ignition switched off. The auxiliary ventilation system is powered by the 12-volt vehicle battery.

Some functions and menus in the Infotainment system depend on the vehicle equipment.

Auxiliary heater mode (Automatic Climate Control only)

When the auxiliary heater is switched on, the vehicle automatically sets the operating mode Heating or Ventilation depending on the outside temperature and the temperature set in the automatic Climate Control block.

At high outside temperatures, the auxiliary ventilation system directs fresh air into the vehicle and prevents the accumulation of heat.

Auxiliary heater exhaust system

The emissions generated by the auxiliary heater are removed via an exhaust pipe fitted underneath the vehicle. The exhaust pipe must not be blocked by snow, mud or any objects.

DANGER

Among the emissions from the auxiliary heater is carbon monoxide, which is an odourless and colourless poisonous gas. Carbon monoxide can cause people to lose consciousness. It can also cause death.

- Never switch on the auxiliary heater and leave the auxiliary heater running if the vehicle is located in enclosed or unventilated spaces.
- Never program the auxiliary heater so that it is switched on and runs in unventilated or enclosed spaces.

WARNING

Parts of the auxiliary heater exhaust system become very hot. This can cause fires.

- Park the vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass.
- Switch off the auxiliary heater before refuelling.

NOTICE

Foodstuffs, medicines and objects that are sensitive to heat or cold can be damaged or made unusable by the air flowing out of the vents.

- Never leave food, medicines or other temperature-sensitive objects in front of the vents.

Switching the auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation on and off

Please refer to , , and at the start of the chapter on page 140.

The auxiliary heater and ventilation can be operated when the ignition is switched on or off.

Opening the Auxiliary heater menu



Aux. heat. menu in the Infotainment system.

1. Open the app overview in the Infotainment system.
2. Tap .

Switching on the auxiliary heater



Immediate heating function in the **Aux. heat.** menu in the Infotainment system or in the Exit menu → page 34.



Button on the remote control → page 142.

You can also switch on the auxiliary heater automatically for a planned departure time → page 141.



When the auxiliary heater is switched on, the yellow LED for the auxiliary heater lights up in the instrument cluster.

The auxiliary heater will not switch on if the charge level of the 12-volt vehicle battery is low or the fuel tank is empty.

Switching off the auxiliary heater manually



Immediate heating function in the **Aux. heat.** menu in the Infotainment system or in the Exit menu → page 34.

- OFF** Button on the remote control → page 142.

Auxiliary heater switches off automatically

The auxiliary heater switches itself off automatically if one of the following conditions is met:

- The programmed departure time is reached or the set running time has elapsed → page 141.
- The yellow fuel gauge indicator lamp lights up → page 31.
- The charge level of the 12-volt vehicle battery is too low.

The auxiliary heater runs on for a short time after it is switched off manually or automatically so that the remaining fuel in the system can be burnt off.



Operating noises can be heard when the auxiliary heater is switched on.



The 12-volt vehicle battery will discharge if the auxiliary heater or auxiliary ventilation is run several times over an extended period. Drive the vehicle for an appropriate distance in order to recharge the 12-volt vehicle battery.



If you park on a downhill slope with very little fuel in the tank when the fill level is just above reserve level, the fuel gauge may be inaccurate and lead to functional restrictions of the auxiliary heater.

Programming the auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation

Please refer to , , and at the start of the chapter on page 140.

The auxiliary heater can be programmed in the Infotainment system.

Setting the running time of the auxiliary heater

1. Open the **Auxiliary heater** menu.
2. Tap to open the **Settings** menu.
3. Set the desired running time.

The set running time applies when the auxiliary heater is switched on with the immediate heat function or using the remote control.

The maximum running time of the auxiliary heater is 120 minutes.

When the vehicle is at a standstill, the auxiliary heater can be activated up to three times in succession with a running time of 60 minutes, for example. A complete heating operation with the maximum possible running time of 120 minutes can be performed only once in full when the vehicle is stationary. The auxiliary heater then prematurely switches itself off automatically or can no longer be switched on. In order to switch on the auxiliary heater again, you must first move the vehicle by a distance of around 30 m (around 100 ft) at a speed of at least walking pace.

Setting desired temperature

You may only be able to set the desired temperature of the auxiliary heater with the automatic Climate Control, depending on the equipment.

1. Open the **Auxiliary heater** menu.
2. Tap .
3. Set the desired temperature by means of  and .

Programming departure time

Depending on the vehicle equipment, departure times can only be set for the automatic Climate Control.

1. Before programming, check that the date and time set in the vehicle are correct → page 34.
2. Open the **Auxiliary heater** menu.
3. Tap one of the memory locations for **Departure**.
4. Set the planned departure time.
5. Tap .
6. To switch on the timer, activate the checkbox.

On the basis of the programmed departure time, the vehicle automatically calculates the start time for heating or ventilation to the currently set temperature depending on the outside temperature.

The earliest programmed departure time is shown in the exit menu in the In-

formation system and can be switched on or off there → page 34.

Programming check



If a departure time has been activated, the yellow LED in the instrument cluster will light up for approximately 10 seconds after the ignition is switched off.

DANGER

Among the emissions from the auxiliary heater is carbon monoxide, which is an odourless and colourless poisonous gas. Carbon monoxide can cause people to lose consciousness. It can also cause death.

- Never program the auxiliary heater to switch on and run when the vehicle is in an unventilated or enclosed space.

Remote control for the auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation

Remote control of the auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation

With the remote control, the fuel-operated auxiliary heater or auxiliary ventilation system can be switched on and off from outside the vehicle.



Fig. 99 Remote control for the auxiliary heater.

Switching the auxiliary heater on and off using the remote control

1. *Switching on:* Press the  button for around 1 second → Fig. 99.
2. *Switching off:* Press the  button for around 1 second → Fig. 99.

LED in the remote control

The LED indicates various operating states after you press a button → Fig. 99 ②.



Lights up green: auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation switched on.



Flashes steady green: switch-on signal not received. Move closer to the vehicle.



Flashes irregularly green: auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation operation blocked.

Operation of the auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation will be blocked if one of the following conditions applies:

- The fuel tank is almost empty.
 - The voltage of the 12-volt vehicle battery is too low.
 - There is a system fault.
1. The vehicle is being refuelled.
 2. Drive the vehicle for an appropriate distance in order to recharge the 12-volt vehicle battery.
 3. If the fault persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.



Lights up red: auxiliary heater switched off.



Flashes steady red: switch-off signal not received. Move closer to the vehicle.



Flashes or lights up orange: the button cell in the remote control is weak. replacing the button cell.

Range

The remote control has a range of several hundred metres when the button cell is fully charged and under ideal conditions.

- Keep a distance of at least 2 m (7 ft) between the remote control and the vehicle.
- Avoid obstacles between the remote control and vehicle.
- Hold the remote control with the aerial → Fig. 99 ① pointing vertically upwards.
- Do not cover the aerial.

Poor weather conditions, nearby buildings or a weak button cell will significantly reduce the range.

DANGER

Among the emissions from the auxiliary heater is carbon monoxide, which is an odourless and colourless poisonous gas. Carbon monoxide can cause people to lose consciousness. It can also cause death.

- Never switch on the auxiliary heater and leave the auxiliary heater running if the vehicle is located in enclosed or unventilated spaces.
- Never program the auxiliary heater so that it is switched on and runs in unventilated or enclosed spaces.

WARNING

Parts of the auxiliary heater exhaust system become very hot. This can cause fires.

- Park the vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass.
- Switch off the auxiliary heater before refuelling.

NOTICE

The remote control contains electronic components which can be damaged by moisture, strong vibrations and direct sunlight.

- Protect the remote control from moisture, excessive vibration and direct sunlight.

Replacing the button cell in the remote control

The button cell in the remote control has to be replaced if the LED lights up or flashes orange or does not light up.



Fig. 100 Remote control: battery compartment cover.



Fig. 101 Remote control: changing the button cell.

Replacing the button cell

1. Insert a suitable tool, e.g. a screwdriver, in the recesses on the housing of the remote control in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 100.
2. Use the tool to lever off the battery compartment cover in an upward direction until the housing catches are released.
3. Carefully push the battery compartment cover in the direction of the arrow

→ Fig. 100 and remove the battery compartment cover.

4. To remove the button cell, carefully insert a screwdriver, for example, in the recess on the button cell.
5. Carefully lever up the button cell with the screwdriver until the button cell is released from the battery compartment and remove the button cell.
6. Insert a new button cell of the same type so that it engages in the battery compartment. Observe the information on the inside of the battery compartment cover about the polarity and type of the button cell.
7. Carefully push the battery compartment cover onto the remote control housing in the opposite direction of the arrow and press lightly until the battery compartment cover engages.

⚠ DANGER

If button cell batteries are swallowed or get into the wind pipe, this will lead to serious or even fatal injuries due to suffocation or internal burns within a very short space of time.

- Seek immediate medical assistance if you suspect that someone has swallowed a button cell.
- Do not use the remote control if you cannot close the battery compartment cover.
- Always keep the remote control and key ring with button cells out of the reach of children.

⚠ NOTICE

Using unsuitable button cells can damage the remote control.

- Replace a discharged button cell only with a new button cell of the same voltage rating, size and specification.
- Make sure that the button cell is inserted properly so that the polarity is consistent.

 Dispose of discharged button cells in an environmentally-friendly way.

 The button cell in the remote control may contain perchlorate. Observe the legal requirements for disposal.

Troubleshooting

Cooling mode or the heating cannot be switched on or its function is restricted

Cooling mode  works only when the engine is running and at ambient temperatures above +3°C (+38°F).

The heating and defrost function are more effective when the engine is warm.

When the engine is very hot and in extreme outside temperatures, operation of cooling mode , the heating and the defrost function may be restricted.

- Switch on the blower.
- Check the fuse of the Climate Control system → page 328.
- Replace the enhanced air filter with activated carbon.
- If the fault persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

NOTICE

If the Climate Control system is not working and is nevertheless still operated, this can cause secondary damage.

- If the Climate Control system does not cool or heat the air, switch it off immediately.
- Have the Climate Control system checked by a suitably qualified workshop.

Condensation on the windows

Condensation may form on the windows if they are colder than the ambient temperature and the air is humid. Cold air can absorb less moisture than warm air, which is why condensation frequently forms on windows in cold weather.

1. Keep the air intake in front of the windscreen free from ice, snow and leaves to improve the heating or cooling output → page 400.
2. Do not cover the air vents in the rear of the load compartment so that air can flow through the vehicle from the front to the rear.
3. Switch on the defrost function → page 135.

The wrong unit of temperature has been set

You can change the unit of measurement for all temperature displays in the vehicle using the Infotainment system.

1. Open the app overview.
2. Open the **Settings** menu.
3. Select the **Units** menu option.

Water or water vapour under the vehicle

If the humidity and temperature outside the vehicle are high, condensation can drip off the evaporator in the cooling system and form a pool underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak.

If the outside humidity is high and the outside temperature low, condensation may evaporate when the auxiliary heater is running. If this is the case, steam may appear underneath the vehicle. The vehicle is not damaged.

The auxiliary heater cannot be switched on

When the vehicle is at a standstill, the auxiliary heater can be activated up to three times in succession with a running time of 60 minutes, for example. A complete heating operation with the maximum possible running time of 120 minutes can be performed only once in full when the vehicle is stationary. The auxiliary heater then prematurely switches itself off automatically or can no longer be switched on. In order to switch on the auxiliary heater again, you must first move the vehicle by a distance of around 30 m (around 100 ft) at a speed of at least walking pace.

If you park on a downhill slope with very little fuel in the tank when the fill level is just above reserve level, the fuel gauge may be inaccurate and lead to functional restrictions of the auxiliary heater.

The 12-volt vehicle battery will discharge if the auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation are run several times over an extended period.

1. Drive the vehicle for an appropriate distance in order to recharge the 12-volt vehicle battery.

Noises when the auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation are switched on

Operating noises when the auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation are switched on are normal and do not indicate a malfunction.

Touch panels do not react as expected

Moisture, dirt and grease can impede the functioning of the touch panels.

1. Always keep touch panels clean and dry.

Driving

Steering

Information on steering

The power steering must be locked every time you leave the vehicle to make it more difficult for the vehicle to be stolen.

Steering

- ◀ The power steering automatically adjusts itself to the vehicle speed, steering wheel torque and steering wheel angle. The power steering works only when the engine is running. The steering still functions when Auto StartStop intervenes and switches off the engine.

You will need considerably more strength than normal to steer the vehicle if the power steering is reduced or has failed completely.

Mechanical steering column lock

The steering column is locked mechanically in vehicles with an ignition lock:

1. Stop the vehicle and engage the parking lock **P** as required.
2. Remove the vehicle key.
3. Turn the steering wheel slightly until you hear the steering lock engage.

To unlock the steering column:

1. Turn the steering wheel slightly to relieve the steering lock.
2. Insert the vehicle key into the ignition lock.
3. Hold the steering wheel in this position and turn the ignition on.

Electronic steering column lock

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Depending on equipment: engage the parking lock **P**.
3. Switch off the ignition and then open the driver door.

The steering column is locked.

If you do not want the steering column to be locked, first open the driver door and then switch off the ignition. The steering

column will remain unlocked as long as the vehicle is not locked.

⚠ WARNING

Depending on equipment, the power steering only functions when the engine is running. If the power steering is not working, the ability to steer is greatly reduced due to the stiff steering wheel. This can lead to a loss of vehicle control, accidents, serious injuries and death.

- Never allow the vehicle to roll if the engine is switched off.

⚠ WARNING

It is no longer possible to steer the vehicle if the electronic steering column lock engages. This can lead to a loss of vehicle control, accidents, serious injuries and death.

- Never switch off the ignition while the vehicle is in motion.

Troubleshooting

🚨 Steering fault

The warning lamp lights up or flashes red.

There is a fault in the electromechanical power steering or electronic steering column lock.

If the warning lamp lights up red, the steering may be stiff because the electromechanical steering has failed or it may not be possible to guarantee safe operation of the electromechanical power steering.

🛑 Do not drive on!

1. Seek expert assistance.

🚨 Steering fault

The indicator lamp lights up or flashes yellow.

The power steering is harder or more sensitive than usual.

1. Move the steering wheel to and fro to each steering lock.
2. Re-start the engine and drive a short distance slowly.

3. Observe the messages on the instrument cluster display.
4. If the warning lamp stays lit, the system should be checked by a suitably qualified workshop.

Pedals

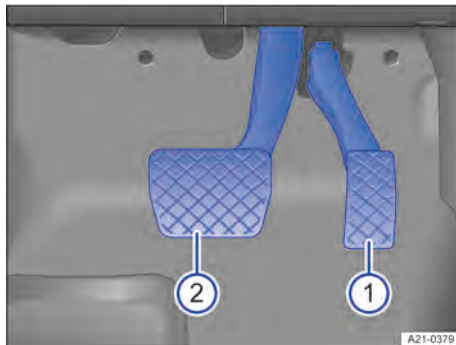


Fig. 102 In the footwell: pedals in vehicles with an automatic transmission.

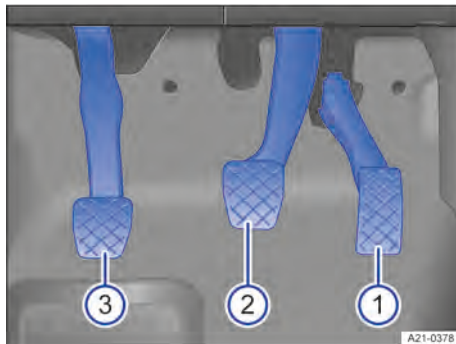


Fig. 103 In the footwell: pedals in vehicles with a manual gearbox.

- ① Accelerator.
- ② Brake pedal.
- ③ In vehicles with a manual gearbox: Clutch pedal

⚠ WARNING

Objects in the driver footwell can hinder pedal operation. This can lead to loss of

control of the vehicle and increase the risk of serious or fatal injuries.

- Make sure that all pedals can always be operated without any hindrance.
- The floor mats must always be properly secured in the footwell.
- No additional floor mats or other floor coverings should be placed over the fitted floor mat.
- Use only floor mats that are suitable for your vehicle.
- Make sure that no objects can enter the driver footwell while the vehicle is in motion.
- If there are any objects in the footwell, remove them when the vehicle is parked.
- Wear shoes that provide good grip for your feet when using the pedals.

WARNING

In order to bring the vehicle to a standstill, a longer brake pedal travel is required if a brake circuit fails. A longer braking distance can result in accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Continue pressing the brake pedal and press the pedal with more force than usual if the braking power is reduced.

Brakes

Information on the brakes

Running in brake pads

New brake pads cannot generate the full braking effect during the first around 200 km to 300 km (around 100 mi to 200 mi) and must first be bedded in → page 148. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by applying more pressure to the brake pedal. During the run-in period, the braking distance is longer when the brakes are depressed fully or during emergency braking than with brake pads that have been fully bedded in. In the run-in period, the brakes should not be depressed fully and situations should be avoided that create a heavy

load on the brakes, e.g. when driving up close to the vehicle ahead.

Brake pad wear

The rate of wear of the brake pads depends to a great extent on the conditions under which the vehicle is operated and the way in which the vehicle is driven. If the vehicle is used for regular urban or short trips and is driven with a sporty driving style, the brake pads must be regularly checked by a suitably qualified workshop.

Other influences on the brakes

When driving with wet brakes, for example after driving through water, after heavy rainfall or after washing the vehicle, the braking effect may be delayed as the brake discs will be wet, or possibly iced up (in winter). The brakes must be “dried” as quickly as possible by careful braking at higher speed. Make sure that no following vehicle and no other road user is put at risk as a result of this action → .

Any salt layer accumulating on the brake discs and pads will delay the braking effect and increase the braking distance. If the brakes on the vehicle have not been applied for a long time on roads that have been gritted with salt, the layer of salt must be reduced through careful braking → .

Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the brake pads are facilitated through long periods of inactivity, low mileage and low load levels. If the brake pads have been hardly used, or if they are at all corroded, we recommend that the brake discs and brake pads be cleaned by braking strongly several times from high speed. Please ensure that no other vehicles and no road users are put at risk as a result of this action → .

The braking effect may be delayed when if the vehicle is driven longer distances off-road. The brake pedal may not react immediately when depressed. In this case, the brake pedal must be pressed again immediately. The normal braking effect can be maintained or restored by applying the brake gently at regular intervals. Please ensure that no other vehicles and no road users are put at risk as a result of this action → .

WARNING

Driving with worn brake pads or with a faulty brake system can lead to loss of control over the vehicle, accidents and also serious or fatal injuries.

- If you have reason to believe that the brake pads are worn or the brake system is faulty, go to a suitably qualified workshop immediately and have the brake system checked and have any worn brake pads replaced.

WARNING

New brake pads cannot generate the full braking effect during the first around 300 km (around 200 mi) and must first be bedded in. Inadequate braking efficiency can increase the risk of accidents. This can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Increase the pressure on the brake pedal if there is a noticeable reduction in braking efficiency.
- Drive with particular care when driving with new brake pads in order to reduce the risk of accidents, serious injuries and loss of control of the vehicle.
- Never drive too close to other vehicles when bedding in new brake pads, and never create driving situations that will place a heavy load on the brakes.

WARNING

Constant braking will cause the brakes to overheat. This can significantly reduce the braking performance, increase the braking distance and, in certain circumstances, cause the brake system to fail completely. This can lead to loss of control of the vehicle, accidents and also serious or fatal injuries.

- Never “ride” the brake pedal. Do not overuse the brake pedal.

WARNING

When driving downhill the brakes are placed under particular strain and become hot very quickly. Overheated brakes reduce the braking effect and considerably increase the braking distance. This can lead to loss of control of the vehicle, accidents and also serious or fatal injuries.

- Before driving down a long, steep gradient, reduce your speed by selecting a lower gear on the manual gearbox or automatic transmission.
- Use the braking effect of the engine to reduce the load on the brakes.
- Before starting your journey, make sure that the air supply to the brakes is not covered, e.g. by non-standard or damaged front spoilers.

WARNING

Wet brakes or brakes coated with ice or road salt react more slowly and require longer braking distances. This can lead to loss of control of the vehicle, accidents and also serious or fatal injuries.

- Test the brakes carefully.
- Carry out a few cautious applications of the brakes to dry them and clean off any coating of ice and salt when visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions permit.

WARNING

The braking effect may be delayed if the vehicle is driven longer distances off-road. The brake pedal may not react immediately when depressed. This can lead to loss of control of the vehicle, accidents and also serious or fatal injuries.

- Apply the brakes carefully at regular intervals when driving longer distances.
- Press the brake pedal again immediately if it does not react immediately when depressed.
- When driving off-road, always adapt your driving style to the road conditions and anticipate the situation ahead.

WARNING

If the vehicle is driven at a high speed, the driver may have to exert more force to achieve sufficient braking efficiency. Inadequate braking efficiency can increase the risk of accidents and lead to serious or fatal injuries.

- Never exceed the maximum permitted speed.

- Always observe the current rules of the road and speed limits and drive with an anticipatory driving style.

i If the front brake pads are tested, the rear brake pads should be tested at the same time. Regularly check the thickness of the brake pads through the openings in the rims or from the underside of the vehicle. If necessary, remove the wheels to carry out a comprehensive check. Consult a suitably qualified workshop for additional information.

Troubleshooting

Brake system fault

The warning lamp lights up red.

A text message may also be displayed.

Do not drive on!

1. Seek expert assistance immediately and have the brake system checked.

Brake pad wear indicator

The indicator lamp lights up yellow. The brake pads are worn.

1. Immediately consult a suitably qualified workshop and have the system checked.
2. Have all brake pads checked and renewed as necessary.

and **Brakes too hot**

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

An acoustic warning may also be given. A text notification may also be shown on the instrument cluster display.

1. Stop at the next opportunity.
2. Engage the parking lock **P**.
3. Keep the vehicle stopped with the electric parking brake switched on and ignition switched on, until a further text message appears.
4. Then go to a suitably qualified workshop and have the system checked.

Unusual noises when braking

If you hear scratching or squeaking noises each time you brake, this is an indication that your brake pads on the front and rear axle are worn.

1. Immediately consult a suitably qualified workshop and have the system checked.
2. Have all brake pads checked and renewed as necessary.

◀ **If the braking performance of the vehicle changes**

If the brake pads are worn or if you establish that the vehicle is no longer braking in the usual way, e.g. sudden lengthening of the stopping distance, proceed as follows:

1. Immediately consult a suitably qualified workshop and have the system checked.
2. Have all brake pads checked and renewed as necessary. ▶

Starting the engine

Electronic immobiliser

The immobiliser helps to prevent the engine from being started and driven with an unauthorised vehicle key.

There is a chip in the vehicle key. If there is a valid vehicle key in the vehicle interior the immobiliser is automatically deactivated with this.

Vehicles with ignition lock

There is a chip in the vehicle key which is used to automatically deactivate the immobiliser when a valid vehicle key is inserted into the ignition lock. The electronic immobiliser is activated automatically as soon as the vehicle key is removed from the ignition lock → page 151.

Vehicles with starter button

There is a chip in the vehicle key which is used to automatically deactivate the immobiliser when a valid vehicle key is located in the vehicle interior. The electronic immobiliser is activated automatically as

soon as the ignition is switched off
→ page 152.

i The engine can only be started using a genuine Ford vehicle key with the correct code. Coded vehicle keys are available from a qualified workshop.

Ignition lock

When there is no vehicle key in the ignition lock, the steering column lock may be activated.

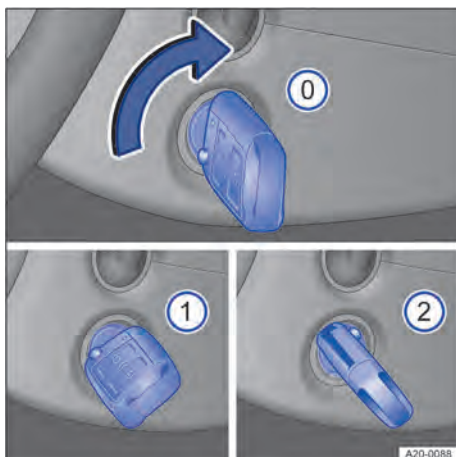


Fig. 104 To the right of the steering wheel: positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock.

Vehicle key positions → Fig. 104

- ① Ignition switched off. The vehicle key can be removed.
- ② Ignition switched on. Steering column lock can be released.
- ③ *Vehicles with automatic transmission:* when the indicator lamp  lights up green, press the brake pedal. Start the engine. Release the vehicle key as soon as the engine starts. When released, the vehicle key moves back to position ①.

Ignition switched on warning

If the ignition is switched on and the driver door is opened, an acoustic warning tone sounds.

The warning is a reminder that the ignition must be switched off before leaving the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle key is left unattended in the vehicle, children or unauthorised persons could lock the doors and the boot lid, start the engine or switch on the ignition and thus operate electrical equipment, such as the electric windows. This can result in accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always switch off the engine and take all vehicle keys with you when you leave the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

If children, people requiring assistance or animals are left unattended in the vehicle, they could accidentally set the vehicle in motion or be exposed to very high or low temperatures. There is a risk of accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never leave children, people requiring assistance or animals unattended in the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle key is removed from the ignition lock while the vehicle is in motion, the steering lock may engage and you will no longer be able to steer the vehicle. This can result in accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Never remove the vehicle key from the ignition if the vehicle is in motion.
- Always completely unfold the key bit of the vehicle key and lock it in this position.
- Attach only light objects to the vehicle key, which weigh less than around 100 g (around 3.5 oz).

i *Vehicles with automatic transmission:* The vehicle key can only be removed from the ignition lock when the parking lock **P** is engaged.

Starter button



Fig. 105 In the lower section of the centre console: starter button for starting the engine.

The starter button replaces the ignition lock (Press & Drive).

Vehicles with a manual gearbox: You start the engine by pressing the starter button with the clutch pedal depressed.

Vehicles with automatic transmission: You start the engine by pressing the starter button with the brake pedal depressed. The vehicle can be activated only if there is a valid vehicle key in the vehicle.

Depending on equipment, operational readiness is indicated by the starter button flashing.

When leaving the vehicle, the electronic steering column lock will be activated when the ignition is switched off and the driver door is opened → page 150.

Switching the ignition on and off

Vehicles with an automatic transmission:

1. Press the starter button once without pressing the brake pedal → .

Vehicles with a manual gearbox:

1. Press the starter button once without pressing the clutch pedal.

Automatic ignition switch-off

If the combustion engine has been switched off by Auto StartStop and the driver is detected as absent by the vehicle, the ignition will switch off automatically after a certain period of time.

Engine restart function

If no valid vehicle key is detected in the vehicle interior once the engine has been switched off, the engine can be restarted within approximately 5 seconds. A corresponding message appears on the instrument cluster display.

After this time, the engine cannot be restarted without a valid vehicle key in the vehicle interior.

WARNING

The engine will start immediately if the brake or clutch pedal is pressed when the ignition is switched on. This can lead to unintentional vehicle movements and cause serious injuries.

- Avoid pressing the brake or clutch pedal when switching on the ignition if you do not want to start the engine.

WARNING

If the vehicle key is left unattended in the vehicle, children or unauthorised persons could lock the doors and the boot lid, start the engine or switch on the ignition and thus operate electrical equipment, such as the electric windows. This can result in accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle.

WARNING

If children, people requiring assistance or animals are left unattended in the vehicle, they could accidentally set the vehicle in motion or be exposed to very high or low temperatures. There is a risk of accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never leave children, people requiring assistance or animals unattended in the vehicle.

WARNING

An unattended vehicle that is ready to drive can move unintentionally. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Never leave the vehicle unattended when the vehicle's drive system is activated.

- When parking or leaving the vehicle, always ensure that the ignition is switched off, the parking lock **P** is engaged and that the electric parking brake is switched on.
- When leaving the vehicle always ensure that all doors, windows, the boot lid and bonnet are completely closed and locked.

 Before leaving the vehicle, always switch off the ignition manually and observe any information shown on the instrument cluster display.

 Leaving the vehicle stationary for long periods with the ignition switched on can discharge the 12-volt vehicle battery and prevent the hybrid drive from activating.

 Leaving the vehicle stationary for long periods with the ignition switched on can discharge the 12-volt vehicle battery so that the engine can no longer be started. <

Starting the engine

Vehicles with ignition lock:

1. Switch on the ignition → page 151.
2. *Vehicles with a diesel engine:* When the diesel engine is being pre-heated, the indicator lamp  lights up in the instrument cluster.
3. Depress and hold the brake pedal until the electric parking brake has switched off.
4. *Vehicles with a manual gearbox:* Fully depress the clutch pedal until the engine has been started. Shift the gear stick to a neutral position.
5. *Vehicles with automatic transmission:* Engage the neutral position **N** or the parking lock **P**.
6. Turn the vehicle key further in the ignition lock – do not depress the accelerator.
7. Release the vehicle key once the engine has started.

Vehicles with starter button:

1. Press the starter button once.

The ignition is switched on.

2. Depress and hold the brake pedal until the electric parking brake has switched off.
3. *Vehicles with a manual gearbox:* Fully depress the clutch pedal until the engine has been started. Shift the gear stick to a neutral position.
4. press the starter button → page 152 without depressing the accelerator. There must be a valid vehicle key in the vehicle before the engine can be started.
5. *Vehicles with a diesel engine:* When the diesel engine is being pre-heated, the indicator lamp  lights up in the instrument cluster.
6. Release the starter button once the engine has started.

WARNING

Toxic gases can enter the vehicle interior if the engine is started in unventilated or closed spaces. This can cause serious injuries and lead to death by suffocation.

- Never start the engine in unventilated or closed spaces or allow it to run in unventilated or closed spaces, e.g. in garages.

WARNING

Hot components and exhaust gases can ignite combustible or explosive materials located nearby. This can lead to fires and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Never start the engine or allow the engine to run if oil, fuel or other highly flammable service fluids are close to the vehicle or are leaking from the vehicle.
- Never use start boosters.

WARNING

A vehicle that is left unattended when the vehicle's drive system is activated can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running, particularly if a gear or position has been selected.

WARNING

Careless or unsupervised use of the vehicle key can lead to accidents or injuries.

- Always take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle. Children or third parties could lock the vehicle, start the engine, switch on the ignition or operate electrical equipment such as the electric windows.

NOTICE

Incorrect vehicle handling can increase component wear (e.g. on the engine or starter) or lead to damage.

- Avoid restarting the engine while the vehicle is in motion or directly after switching off the engine.
- When the engine is cold, avoid high engine speeds, driving at full throttle and overloading the engine.
- Please note that the density of air decreases with increasing altitude and this may make it more difficult to start the engine.

NOTICE

Unburnt fuel can damage the catalytic converter.

- Do not tow or push the vehicle to start it.

NOTICE

Vehicles with ignition lock: Incorrect vehicle handling can increase component wear, e.g. on the starter, or lead to damage.

- Never use the starter with a gear selected for driving or tow-starting if the engine does not start, e.g. when the fuel tank is empty.
- Refill fuel if necessary → page 308 or obtain jump starting assistance → page 333.
- If the engine does not start, seek expert assistance.

 Do not warm up the engine by running it while the vehicle is stationary. Instead, pull off as soon as there is good visibility through the windows. This helps the engine reach operating temperature faster and reduces emissions.

 Larger electrical consumers are switched off temporarily when the engine is started.

 If there is no vehicle key in the vehicle or if it is not detected, a message will be shown on the instrument cluster display. This may occur if the vehicle key is disrupted by another radio signal or is covered by another item such as an aluminium suitcase.

 The engine cannot be started with the starter button if the button cell in the vehicle key is weak or flat, for example. In this case, use the emergency start function.

 When a cold engine is started, there may be increased running noise for a short time due to the operating conditions. This is quite normal, and no cause for concern.

 At outside temperatures of less than around +5°C (around +41°F), smoke fumes may be produced under a vehicle with a diesel engine if the fuel-powered supplementary heater is switched on. 

Troubleshooting



Engine management system fault

The warning lamp lights up red.

There is a fault in the engine management system.

The vehicle's drive power may be limited or lost entirely.

It may not be possible to continue your trip, or only to a limited extent.



Do not drive on!

1. Park the vehicle safely.
2. Observe the text on the instrument cluster.
3. Seek expert assistance and have the engine management system checked.



Engine management system fault

The warning lamp lights up red.

A text message is displayed on the digital instrument cluster display and an acoustic warning sounds.

The function of the accelerator is impaired and the drive power is reduced.

 Do not drive on!

1. Park the vehicle safely as soon as possible.
2. Seek expert assistance.

 Engine management system fault

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

The drive power of the vehicle may be limited.

1. The text message **Error: drive system. Please visit workshop.** is displayed in the instrument cluster.
2. Have the engine checked immediately by a suitably qualified workshop.

 Engine management system fault

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

The power has been limited to prevent components of the engine management system from overheating.

- The text message **Error: drive system. Performance is restricted.** is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- You can drive on with reduced drive power.

The drive power limitation will be lifted in the following cases:

- The engine management system components are no longer in a critical temperature range.

 Engine speed limited

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

The engine speed has been limited to prevent the engine from overheating.

The engine speed is shown on the instrument cluster display.

The engine speed limitation will be cancelled again in the following cases:

- Engine is no longer in a critical temperature range.

- Foot is taken off the accelerator.

 together with engine speed limitation due to fault in the engine management system

The indicator lamps light up yellow.

Engine speed limitation is activated due to a fault in the engine management system.

The drive system power may be limited.

1. Make sure that the displayed engine speed is not exceeded.
2. Have the engine checked by a suitably qualified workshop as soon as possible.

 Glow plug system

Vehicles with a diesel engine:

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

When the diesel engine is being pre-heated, the indicator lamp lights up in the instrument cluster for a few seconds.

No valid vehicle key recognised



Fig. 106 In the centre console: emergency start function.

Vehicles with Keyless Entry:

A corresponding display will appear in the instrument cluster.

If the button cell in the vehicle key is weak or discharged, it is possible that the vehicle key will not be recognised.

In this case it is necessary to perform an emergency start:

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Place the vehicle key in the rear drink holder in the centre console and press the starter button → [Fig. 106](#).
3. The ignition is switched on automatically, and in some cases the engine is started.

Engine cannot be started

A corresponding message will be displayed in the instrument cluster if an unauthorised vehicle key is used or there is a system fault.

1. Use an authorised vehicle key.
2. If the malfunction persists, seek the services of a qualified technician.



Switching off the engine

Switching off the engine

Vehicles with ignition lock

1. Bring the vehicle to a standstill → .
2. Park the vehicle.
3. Switch off the ignition.
4. Observe the messages that appear on the instrument cluster display.

Vehicles with starter button

1. Bring the vehicle to a standstill → .
2. Park the vehicle.
3. Briefly press the starter button. If the engine cannot be switched off, carry out the emergency switch-off procedure.
4. Observe the messages that appear on the instrument cluster display.

Warning when leaving the vehicle

In order to indicate that the vehicle is capable of rolling when leaving the vehicle, an acoustic warning signal sounds when the driver door is opened and corresponding warning messages appear on the display of the instrument cluster.

Water vapour in cold and rainy conditions

If the vehicle is parked after driving in cold and rainy conditions, water vapour may

emerge from the radiator grille for a short time. The formation of water vapour on hot engine components is normal and does not constitute a technical defect.

WARNING

An unattended vehicle that is ready to drive can move unintentionally. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Never leave the vehicle unattended when the vehicle's drive system is activated.
- Always switch off the ignition and engage the parking lock **P** before exiting the vehicle.
- Always switch on the electric parking brake when you park or leave the vehicle.
- When leaving the vehicle always ensure that all doors, windows, the boot lid and bonnet are completely closed and locked.

WARNING

When the engine is switched off, certain vehicle systems do not function or function only to a restricted extent, e.g. brake servo or power steering. As a result, more force has to be used for steering and more pressure has to be applied to the brake pedal to stop the vehicle. If the vehicle is in motion, this can cause loss of control over the vehicle, accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never switch the engine off while the vehicle is in motion.

WARNING

The airbags and belt tensioners do not function when the engine is switched off. This can result in accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never switch the engine off while the vehicle is in motion.

WARNING

When the ignition is switched off, the steering lock may activate and you will no longer be able to steer the vehicle. If the vehicle is in motion, this can cause loss of

control over the vehicle, accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never switch off the ignition while the vehicle is in motion.

WARNING

The components of the exhaust system become very hot and can ignite highly flammable materials, e.g. undergrowth, leaves, dry grass or spilt fuel. This can lead to a fire and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Always park the vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with highly flammable materials underneath the vehicle.
- Never apply additional underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, heat shields or particulate filter.

WARNING

If vehicle keys are left unattended in the vehicle, children or unauthorised persons could lock the doors and the boot lid, start the engine and thus operate electrical equipment, e.g. the electric windows. This can result in accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always take all vehicle keys with you when you leave the vehicle.

WARNING

If children, people requiring assistance or animals are left unattended in the vehicle, they could accidentally set the vehicle in motion or be exposed to very high or low temperatures. There is a risk of accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never leave children, people requiring assistance or animals unattended in the vehicle.

NOTICE

If the vehicle has been driven at high load for a long period, the engine can overheat when it is switched off.

- Allow the engine to run in neutral position for approximately 2 minutes before switching it off.

 **Vehicles with ignition lock:** In vehicles with an automatic transmission, the vehicle key can be removed from the ignition lock only if the parking lock **P** is engaged.

 After the engine is switched off, the radiator fan in the bonnet space may run on for some minutes, even if the ignition is switched off or the vehicle key has been removed. The radiator fan will switch itself off automatically. 

Troubleshooting

Engine cannot be switched off

Vehicles with Keyless Entry: The engine cannot be switched off by briefly pressing the starter button.

In this case it is necessary to perform an emergency switch-off procedure.

1. Press the starter button twice within a few seconds or press and hold once.

The engine switches itself off automatically → page 152. 

Auto StartStop

Auto StartStop

Functional description

The Auto StartStop system automatically switches the engine off when the vehicle is coming to a stop and when stationary.

The engine always restarts automatically if required for the vehicle and the detected situation.

Indicator lamps

If the  indicator lamp lights up, the Auto StartStop system is available and automatic engine stop is active.

The Auto StartStop system is not available

if the  indicator lamp lights up → .

Conditions for an automatic engine restart

- When you take your foot off the brake pedal or press the accelerator.
- If the temperature in the vehicle interior substantially increases or decreases.
- If the vehicle rolls on.
- If the electric voltage of the 12-volt vehicle battery drops.

Switching on Auto StartStop

The function is automatically activated every time the ignition is switched on.

Vehicles with a manual gearbox:

1. Disengage the gear and release the clutch pedal when the vehicle is coming to a stop, or when it is stationary.
The engine is stopped.
2. Depress the clutch pedal to restart the engine.

Vehicles with automatic transmission:

1. To stop, press and hold the brake pedal.
The engine switches off shortly before the vehicle reaches a complete standstill or when the vehicle is stationary.
2. Take your foot off the brake pedal or depress the accelerator to restart the engine.

Conditions that may prevent the engine from switching off automatically

- The driver is not wearing their seat belt.
- The driver door is open.
- The bonnet is open.
- The temperature of the vehicle interior is not within the preset temperature range or the humidity level is too high.
- The defrost function of the Climate Control system is switched on.
- The charge level of the 12-volt vehicle battery is insufficient.
- The temperature of the 12-volt vehicle battery is too low or too high.
- The vehicle is on a steep uphill or downhill gradient.
- The steering wheel is turned too sharply.
- The windscreen heating is switched on.

- Reverse gear is selected.
- Park Assist is active.

When the conditions for automatic engine switch-off are fulfilled only while the vehicle is stationary, the engine can also switch off subsequently, e.g. after the defrost function is switched off.

Conditions that require a manual engine start

The engine must be started manually in the following conditions:

- If the driver door is opened.
- If the bonnet is opened.

Manually activating and deactivating Auto StartStop

Auto StartStop can be deactivated and activated manually via the Infotainment system.

The function is automatically activated every time the ignition is switched on.

Deactivate Auto StartStop manually:

1. In the menu selection in the Infotainment system, tap the **(Vehicle)** function button.
2. Tap the **(Status)** function button.
3. Tap the **(StartStop)** function button.

When Auto StartStop is deactivated, the **(StartStop)** function button has a blue background.

Activate Auto StartStop manually:

1. In the menu selection in the Infotainment system, tap the **(Vehicle)** function button.
2. Tap the **(Status)** function button.
3. Tap the **(StartStop)** function button.

If Auto StartStop has switched the engine off, the engine will start again immediately as soon as the system is deactivated with the **(StartStop)** function button.

Auto StartStop operation with Adaptive Cruise Control

The engine will be switched off after Adaptive Cruise Control has brought the vehicle to a standstill with an active braking intervention.

In the following cases, the engine will restart when Adaptive Cruise Control is active:

- If the accelerator is depressed.
- When Adaptive Cruise Control has resumed speed control and distance indication.

⚠ WARNING

The engine can start suddenly if Auto StartStop is activated when working in the bonnet space. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Always deactivate Auto StartStop when working in the bonnet space.

⚠ WARNING

When the ignition is switched off, certain vehicle systems do not function or function only to a restricted extent (e.g. brake servo or power steering). As a result, more force has to be used for steering and more pressure has to be applied to the brake pedal to stop the vehicle. If the vehicle is in motion, this can cause loss of control over the vehicle, accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never switch off the ignition while the vehicle is in motion.

⚠ WARNING

The airbags and belt tensioners do not function when the ignition is switched off. This can result in accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never switch off the ignition while the vehicle is in motion.

⚠ WARNING

When the ignition is switched off, the steering lock may activate and you will no longer be able to steer the vehicle. If the vehicle is in motion, this can cause loss of control over the vehicle, accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never switch off the ignition while the vehicle is in motion.

! NOTICE

If the Auto StartStop system is used in very high outside temperatures over a long peri-

od, the 12-volt vehicle battery can be damaged.

- Avoid using Auto StartStop at very high outside temperatures.

i In some cases, it may be necessary to restart the engine manually. Observe any corresponding message on the instrument cluster display → ⚠.

i Always deactivate the Auto StartStop system manually when driving through water. <

Troubleshooting

Engine no longer starts automatically

Vehicles with eco-coasting function: If the engine no longer starts automatically, the warning **Error: Vehicle energy system**.

Please visit workshop may appear on the instrument cluster display.

1. Start the engine manually → page 153.
2. Deactivate Auto StartStop manually → page 157.
3. Go to a suitably qualified workshop and have the system checked. <

Manual gearbox

Manual gearbox: selecting a gear

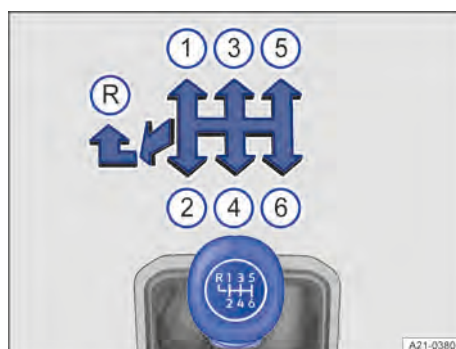


Fig. 107 Gear shift pattern of a 6-speed manual gearbox

Depending on the vehicle specification, your vehicle may have a 5-speed manual gearbox.

Selecting a forward gear

The positions of the individual gears are shown on the gear lever → Fig. 107.

1. Fully depress and hold the clutch pedal.
2. Move the gear lever to the required position → ⚠.
3. Release the clutch to engage.

In some countries, it is necessary to fully depress the clutch pedal to start the engine.

Selecting reverse gear

1. Reverse gear should only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.
2. Fully depress and hold the clutch pedal → ⚠.
3. Press down the gear lever and push fully to the left and then forwards into the reverse gear position → Fig. 107 Ⓜ.
4. Release the clutch to engage.

Shifting down

You should always shift down gear-by-gear to the next lower gear when shifting down while the vehicle is in motion. The engine revs should not be too high when doing this → ⚠. Damage to the clutch and the gearbox could occur if, at high speeds or high engine revs, one or more gears are skipped when shifting down gear, even if the clutch is not released when doing this → Ⓜ.

⚠ WARNING

When a gear is engaged and the clutch pedal released, the vehicle will start moving immediately if the engine is running. This also applies when the electric parking brake has been switched on. Unintentional vehicle movements can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never engage reverse gear while the vehicle is in motion.

⚠ WARNING

Fast acceleration or switching off TCS can lead to a loss of traction and skidding on

slippery roads, e.g. in wet or icy conditions or on dirty road surfaces. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle and lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Accelerate quickly only if visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions permit, and other road users are not put at risk due to the acceleration and driving style.
- Always adapt your driving style to suit the traffic flow.

⚠ WARNING

Shifting gears incorrectly to gears that are too low can lead to a loss of control over the vehicle and cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always select a suitable gear for the current driving situation.

ⓘ NOTICE

Serious damage to the clutch and gearbox could occur if the gear lever is shifted to a gear that is too low or if the clutch pedal is pressed and held and the clutch is not engaged when travelling at high speeds or at high engine speeds.

- Always select a suitable gear for the current driving situation.
- Avoid pressing the clutch unnecessarily or for too long.

ⓘ NOTICE

If the manual gearbox is not used correctly, this can lead to damage or premature wear.

- Do not rest your hand on the gear lever when driving. The pressure from your hand is passed onto the selector forks in the gearbox.
- Ensure that the vehicle has come to a full stop before engaging reverse gear.
- Always depress the clutch pedal fully when changing gear.
- Do not hold the vehicle by “riding” the clutch on a hill with the engine running.



Changing up a gear early will help to save fuel and minimise engine noise.



Troubleshooting



Clutch slipping

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

Clutch does not transmit the entire engine torque.

1. If necessary, remove foot from clutch pedal.



Clutch overheated

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

An acoustic warning may also be given
→ page 159.

The clutch can overheat, for example if the vehicle pulls off regularly, travels at a “crawl” for long periods, or in stop and go traffic.

Overheating is indicated by the warning lamp and in some cases by additional warning lamps and a text message in the instrument cluster display.

— Driving can be continued.



Clutch is faulty

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

The clutch is faulty.

1. **Drive on carefully!**
2. Go to a suitably qualified workshop.
Failure to do so could result in considerable damage to the clutch.

Automatic transmission

Automatic transmission: selecting a gear selector position

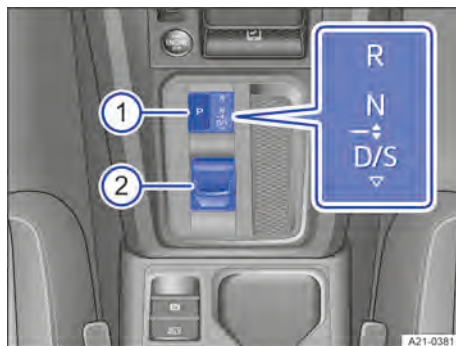


Fig. 108 In the centre console: selector lever for the automatic transmission with button for parking lock.

- ① Button for parking lock.
- ② Selector lever.

The selected position is shown on the instrument cluster display and on the lower part of the centre console when the ignition is switched on → Fig. 108.

The gear shift pattern is shown on the instrument cluster display when the brake is applied or when a position is engaged.

◀ P – Engaging the parking lock

1. Press the button  → Fig. 108 ①.

The drive wheels are blocked. May only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.

If the engine is switched off in gear selector position **D/S** or **R**, the gearbox automatically engages the parking lock **P** to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.

The roll-away protection and the parking lock **P** are activated if the engine is switched off in neutral position **N** or if it is detected that the vehicle has not been exited correctly. The roll-away protection must be deactivated if the vehicle should remain capable of rolling → page 210.

R – Reverse gear

Reverse gear is selected. May only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.

N – Neutral

The transmission is in the neutral position. No force is transmitted to the wheels and the braking effect of the engine is not available.

D/S – Standard forward driving position

Position D: Normal programme

All forward gears are shifted up and down automatically. The timing of the gear shift is determined by the engine load, your individual driving style and the speed of the vehicle.

Gear selector position S: Sport program.

To make full use of the engine's power reserves, the forward gears are automatically shifted up and down earlier than in gear selector position **D**. The timing of the gear shift is determined by the engine load, your individual driving style and the speed of the vehicle.

Change between gear selector positions **D** and **S** as follows:

1. Tap the selector lever to the rear
→ [Fig. 108 ②](#).

The selector lever will always move back to the centre position.

Changing position

Select the next position:

1. Move the selector lever forward or back to the first pressure point.

The selector lever returns to its starting position.

Skip a gear selector position, e.g. shift directly from position **D** to position **R**:

1. Move the selector lever beyond the pressure point to the desired position.

The selector lever returns to its starting position.

⚠ WARNING

Selecting the wrong position can cause you to lose control of the vehicle and lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never press the accelerator when engaging a gear selector position.
- Never select reverse gear **R** or engage the parking lock **P** when the vehicle is in motion.

⚠ WARNING

The vehicle will start moving if the brake pedal is released when the engine is running and position **D/S** or **R** is engaged. This can lead to unintentional vehicle movements and cause accidents and serious injuries.

- The driver must never leave the driver seat when the vehicle's engine is running and a gear position has been selected.
- If the engine is running and the selector lever is in gear selector position **D/S** or **R**, hold the vehicle on the foot brake.
- Always switch on the electric parking brake and move the selector lever to position **P** if it is necessary to leave the vehicle with the engine running.

⚠ WARNING

Selecting the wrong position can cause you to lose control of the vehicle and lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never depress the accelerator when selecting a position.
- Never select reverse gear **R** or engage the parking lock **P** when the vehicle is in motion.

⚠ WARNING

If you leave the vehicle on uphill gradients in selector lever position **N**, the vehicle will roll downhill even if the engine is switched on. This can result in accidents and severe injuries.

- Never leave the vehicle in selector lever position **N**.

! NOTICE

If the electric parking brake is not switched on when the vehicle is stationary and the brake pedal is released when the parking lock **P** is engaged, the vehicle may move a few centimetres (inches) forwards or backwards. This can result in damage to the vehicle.

- Always switch on the electric parking brake first before releasing the brake pedal.

i If you accidentally shift to **N** while driving, immediately take your foot off the accelerator. Wait for the engine to reach idling speed in the neutral position. Only engage a position once this has occurred.

Changing gear with an automatic transmission



Fig. 109 Steering wheel with paddles.

In vehicles with an automatic transmission, the gears can also be shifted up and down manually.

It is possible to switch from gear selector positions **D** and **S** to the manual shift program by pulling a paddle → [Fig. 109](#).

The manual shift program is switched on temporarily from gear selector position **D**.

The manual shift program is switched on permanently from gear selector position **S**.

The gear that is currently selected will be maintained when the manual shift program is selected. This applies until the system changes gear automatically when the limit speed is reached.

As soon as the transmission has switched to the manual shift program, this will be shown on the instrument cluster display with **M**.

If the engine is switched off while the transmission is in the manual shift program, the transmission will activate the parking lock **P**. The vehicle is then secured against rolling away.

Operating the automatic transmission with the paddles

- To shift up a gear, pull the right paddle towards the steering wheel → [Fig. 109](#).
- To shift down a gear, pull the left paddle towards the steering wheel.
- To engage the lowest gear, pull the left paddle towards the steering wheel and hold it. The gear selection display then changes to **D**.

Exiting the manual shift program:

- Automatically after 5 seconds if the manual shift program was activated from gear selector position **D**.
- **Or:** to engage gear selector position **D**, press the selector lever backwards and release it again.
- **Or:** pull the right-hand paddle towards the steering wheel for about 3 seconds, then release it again.

i When accelerating, the transmission automatically shifts up to the next gear shortly before the maximum permitted engine speed is reached.

i When shifting down a gear manually, the transmission will not change gear until the engine can no longer be overrevved.

Driving with an automatic transmission

The transmission changes the forward gears up and down automatically.

Driving down hills

The steeper the downhill gradient, the lower the gear that must be selected. Lower gears increase the braking effect of the engine. Never allow the vehicle to roll down mountains or hills in the neutral position **N**.

1. Reduce your speed.
2. Shift down using the paddles on the steering wheel → page 163.

Stopping and pulling away on uphill gradients

The steeper the incline, the lower the gear that is required.

If you wish to stop the vehicle or pull away when driving uphill you should use the Auto Hold function → page 214.

Kickdown function

The kickdown function enables maximum acceleration in selector lever positions **D** and **S** or in the manual shift program.

If the accelerator pedal is depressed fully, the transmission will automatically shift to a lower gear, depending on the speed and engine revs. This will make use of the full vehicle acceleration → .

The transmission does not shift up to the next gear until the engine reaches the maximum engine speed for the gear.

Launch Control

Launch Control allows maximum acceleration from a standing start.

1. Switch off TCS → page 168.
2. Depress and hold the brake pedal with your left foot.
3. Engage gear selector position **S** or switch to the manual shift program → page 163.
4. With your right foot, depress the accelerator until the engine speed reaches approximately 3,200 rpm.
5. Take your left foot off the brake → . The vehicle will start with maximum acceleration.
6. Switch TCS back on after acceleration.

WARNING

Fast acceleration or switching off TCS or ESC or activation of ESC Sport can lead to loss of traction and skidding. On slippery roads in particular, e.g. in wet or icy conditions or on dirty road surfaces, this can lead to loss of control over the vehicle, accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always adapt your driving style to the traffic flow.
- Only use kickdown or fast acceleration if visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions permit, and other road users are not put at risk due to the acceleration and the driving style.
- After acceleration, switch TCS or ESC back on again, or switch ESC Sport off again.

WARNING

Constant braking will cause the brakes to overheat. This can reduce the brake effect significantly, increase the braking distance, and even cause a complete brake system failure in certain circumstances. This can result in accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never “ride” the brake pedal. Do not overuse the brake pedal.

NOTICE

The transmission is not lubricated if the vehicle rolls with the engine switched off. The automatic transmission could overheat and be damaged.

- If you stop the vehicle on an incline while a position is selected, do not attempt to stop it from rolling back by depressing the accelerator.
- Never allow the vehicle to roll in the gear selector position **N**, particularly if the engine is switched off.

NOTICE

If the brake pads “rub” due to light pressure on the brake pedal, this will increase wear.

- Never let the brakes “rub” by applying light pressure to the brake when it is not necessary to brake.

Troubleshooting

The engine will not start

The indicator lamp lights up green.

Brake pedal was not depressed, e.g. when trying to engage another position with the selector lever.

1. To select a position, press the brake pedal.

See also Electric parking brake
→ page 210.

Transmission in emergency mode

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

An acoustic warning may also be given.
A text notification may also be shown on the instrument cluster display.

There is a fault in the system and the automatic transmission is operating in an emergency mode. It is not possible to engage reverse gear in some cases.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop immediately.

Danger of rolling away! P not possible

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

An acoustic warning may also be given.
A text notification may also be shown on the instrument cluster display.

There is a fault in the system and the parking lock cannot be engaged.

1. When the vehicle is parked, check whether the electric parking brake is switched on.
2. Seek expert assistance.

Selector lever fault

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

An acoustic warning may also be given.
A text notification may also be shown on the instrument cluster display.

There is a fault in the selector lever.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop.

Gearbox overheated

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

An acoustic warning may also be given.
A text notification may also be shown on the instrument cluster display.

The automatic transmission can become too hot as a result of frequently moving off on uphill gradients, for example → ①.

1. Stop at the next opportunity and allow the transmission to cool down with engaged parking lock P and running engine.
2. If the indicator lamp does not go out, switch on the electric parking brake and leave the vehicle standing.
3. Seek expert assistance. Failure to do so could result in considerable damage to the transmission.

Transmission malfunction

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

An acoustic warning may also be given.
A text notification may also be shown on the instrument cluster display.

There is a fault in the transmission.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop.

Transmission faulty

The warning lamp lights up red.

An acoustic warning may also be given.
A text notification may also be shown on the instrument cluster display.

There is a serious fault in the transmission.

Do not drive on!

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.
2. Engage the parking lock.
Or: switch on the electric parking brake.
3. Seek expert assistance.

Gearbox overheated

The warning lamp lights up red.

An acoustic warning may also be given.
A text notification may also be shown on the instrument cluster display.

The automatic transmission can become too hot as a result of moving off frequently on uphill gradients, for example.

STOP Do not drive on!

1. Allow the transmission to cool down with engaged parking lock **P** and running engine → page 166.
2. If the indicator lamp does not go out, switch on the electric parking brake and leave the vehicle standing.
3. Seek expert assistance. Failure to do so could result in considerable damage to the transmission.

Manual release of the parking lock

If the power fails in the vehicle, e.g. due to a flat 12-volt vehicle battery, and the vehicle has to be pushed or towed, the selector lever lock must be released manually.

1. Seek expert assistance.

Vehicle does not move even though position is engaged

If the vehicle will not move in the required direction, the system may have selected the position incorrectly.

1. Depress the brake pedal and reselect the position.
2. If the vehicle still does not move in the required direction, there is a system fault. Seek expert assistance and have the system checked.

⚠ WARNING

If the parking lock **P** is released and the electric parking brake is switched off, the vehicle can start moving unexpectedly when on uphill and downhill gradients. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Never release the parking lock **P** when the electric parking brake is switched off.

⚠ NOTICE

If the vehicle rolls for an extended period or at high speed with the engine switched off and in gear selector position **N**, the automatic transmission will be damaged.

- Do not allow the vehicle to roll for an extended period or at high speed with the

engine switched off and in gear selector position **N**, e.g. when being towed.

⚠ NOTICE

If the transmission becomes too hot or overheats, this can lead to increased wear or damage to the component.

- Avoid moving-off operations and driving at walking pace as long as the transmission is overheated.
- Drive faster than around 20 km/h (around 12 mph) or park the vehicle in a safe place immediately when a warning is displayed for the first time indicating that the transmission has overheated.
- Park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and switch off the engine if the text message and acoustic warning are repeated around every 10 seconds.
- Allow the transmission to cool down.
- Continue driving only when the acoustic warning is no longer emitted.

Brake support systems

Information on brake support systems

The brake support systems can assist the driver in critical driving or braking situations. The driver is responsible for driving safety → ⚠.

- Continue to brake with the necessary force when a brake support system is performing a control intervention.
- Steer the vehicle if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

Brake support systems are not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operate only within the limits of the respective system. Driving fast on icy, slippery or wet roads as well as driving too close to the vehicle in front can have an adverse effect on vehicle stability and lead you to lose control over the vehicle. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries or even death.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Ensure that your speed and driving style are always appropriate for the current visibility, weather and road/traffic conditions. Never take any safety risks.
- Keep the footwell under the pedals clear so that the brake pedal can move freely.
- Always use suitable tyres because driving stability depends on the grip of the tyres.

- The ESC, ABS and TCS can function properly only if all four wheels are fitted with the same tyres.
- If there is a fault in the ABS, the ESC, TCS and EDL will also stop working.

The status of the brake functions is checked automatically when the ignition is switched on. The indicator lamps light up briefly and then go out again. If an indicator lamp remains lit up, there is a fault → page 168. Go to a suitably qualified workshop immediately.

WARNING

The effectiveness of ESC can be significantly reduced if other components and systems that affect driving dynamics are not serviced properly or are not functioning properly. This applies in particular to changes to the suspension and wheel and tyre combinations that have not been approved. This can result in accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Have modifications to your vehicle carried out only by a suitably qualified workshop.
- Always use suitable tyres because driving stability depends on the grip of the tyres.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)



ESC control intervention to reduce the risk of skidding and improve driving stability → .
The indicator lamp flashes yellow.

Traction Control TCS



TCS control intervention to prevent the wheels from spinning. The indicator lamp flashes yellow.

Traction Control reduces the drive output if wheelspin occurs and adapts the output to suit road surface conditions. Traction Control makes it easier to pull away, accelerate and drive up hills.

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking during braking so that the vehicle can still be steered → .

Brake assist system (BAS)

BAS can help to reduce the stopping distance. If the driver depresses the brake pedal quickly in an emergency braking situation, the brake assist system will increase the braking force.

If you reduce the pressure on the brake pedal, the brake assist system will switch off the brake servo function.

Electronic differential lock (EDL)

EDL brakes a spinning wheel automatically and distributes the drive force to the other drive wheels.

The EDL switches off automatically under unusually heavy loads to prevent the brake from overheating. The EDL switches back on again automatically as soon as the brake has cooled down.

Post Impact Braking

In the event of a collision, Post Impact Braking can help the driver to reduce the risk of skidding, and the danger of secondary collisions, through automatic braking.

The Post Impact Braking system functions only for impacts that are detected as a collision by the airbag control unit.

The vehicle is braked automatically if the required systems have not been damaged in the collision and have remained functional.

Prerequisite for automatic braking:

- ✓ The driver does not press the accelerator.

Electronic brake pressure distribution system (EBD)

The EBD regulates the braking force between the front axle and the rear axle also outside of ABS control. Overbraking of the rear axle is avoided and the vehicle remains stable during braking.

Electromechanical brake servo

The EBS supports the driver's foot movement when the ignition is switched on, and boosts the pressure applied to the brake pedal by the driver → . In the event of a braking intervention by a driver assistance system, e.g. when Adaptive Cruise Control is regulating or during emergency braking, the brake pedal can move automatically.

The brake pressure boost will reduce gradually after you switch off the ignition. Messages are displayed on the instrument cluster display if the vehicle is still held by means of the brake pedal. The brake servo function is restricted in this case.

Secure the stationary vehicle against rolling away → page 209.

WARNING

Driving without the brake servo or with restricted brake servo function can considerably increase the braking distance. This can lead to accidents with serious or fatal injuries.

- Never switch the engine or ignition off while the vehicle is in motion.
- Press the brake pedal with more force if the brake servo is not working or if the vehicle is being towed.
- Keep the footwell under the pedals clear so that the brake pedal can move freely.

WARNING

The effectiveness of systems can be adversely affected if components and systems are retrofitted, e.g. by second stage manufacturers. On vehicles with add-ons or modifications, the correct operation of system can then be impaired or adjusted. This can lead to accidents with serious or fatal injuries.

- Have the second stage manufacturer confirm that the systems are functioning properly.

Switching Traction Control on and off

Driving situations

Traction Control (TCS) can be switched off in situations where insufficient traction is achieved:

- When driving in deep snow or on loose surfaces.
- When rocking the vehicle backwards and forwards to free it from mud.

When the driving situation no longer exists, Traction Control should be switched back on fully.

Switching Traction Control on and off

1. Open the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system → page 34.
2. Open the brake settings.
3. Switch Traction Control on or off in the selection.

 OFF Traction Control switched off manually. The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

Troubleshooting

Electromechanical brake servo failure

Do not drive on!

The indicator lamp lights up red.

A text message may also be displayed. Press the brake pedal firmly as the braking distance will increase due to the lack of brake servo.

1. Seek expert assistance immediately.

Electromechanical brake servo fault

Indicator lamp lights up yellow.

A text message is displayed for a few seconds.

The brake pedal may pulsate when pressed. The brake pedal must be pressed more firmly as the braking distance will increase due to the reduced brake servo.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop.



Anti-lock brake system failure or fault

Indicator lamp lights up yellow.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop.
The vehicle can be braked without the anti-lock brake system.



ESC fault

Indicator lamp lights up yellow. ESC has been switched off.

1. Switch the ignition on and off.
2. Drive a short distance at a speed of around 15 - 20 km/h (around 9 - 12 mph) if necessary.
3. If the indicator lamp continues to light up, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

Noises of the brake support systems

The brake pedal may move or noises may occur while the brake support systems are regulating.

1. Continue to apply the necessary amount of brake pressure, and steer the vehicle when required.



WARNING

If the brake warning lamp lights up together with the indicator lamp, the control function of the ABS may have failed. This can cause the rear wheels to lock when you brake. This may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and can result in accidents with serious or fatal injuries.

- Drive at reduced speed to the nearest qualified workshop to have the brake system checked.
- Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres.



WARNING

If the indicator lamp does not go out or comes on while the vehicle is in motion,

the ABS is not working properly. The vehicle can be stopped using the normal brakes only. Any restriction of the ABS can cause accidents and may result in vehicle damage and serious or fatal injury.

- Go to a suitably qualified workshop.

Driving on uphill gradients

Hill Start Assist

The Hill Start Assist function actively holds the vehicle when pulling away on an uphill gradient.

Activating Hill Start Assist

Hill Start Assist is activated automatically in the following situations:

Vehicles with a manual gearbox:

The following conditions must be met simultaneously:

- On an incline, the stationary vehicle must be held in position with the foot brake until you are ready to move off.
- The engine is running “smoothly”.
- Fully depress the clutch pedal and shift into first gear if you want to drive forwards up a hill or into reverse gear if you want to reverse up a hill.

1. In order to start moving, remove your foot from the brake pedal, then release the clutch pedal (clutch engages) and press the accelerator simultaneously.

The brake will be gradually released as the clutch is engaged. If the accelerator is not immediately depressed, the brake disengages autonomously after a few seconds.

Vehicles with automatic transmission:

The following conditions must be met simultaneously:

- On an incline, the stationary vehicle must be held in position with the foot brake until you are ready to move off.
- The engine is running “smoothly”.
- Drive position **D** or reverse gear has been selected.

1. To start moving, remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the accelerator immediately.

The brake will gradually be released as the vehicle pulls away → .

Deactivating Hill Start Assist

Hill Start Assist is deactivated immediately in the following situations:

- As soon as one of the conditions listed above is not fulfilled.
- If the driver door is opened.
- If the engine is not running smoothly or there is an engine fault.
- If the engine is switched off or has stalled.
- *Vehicles with automatic transmission:* If the neutral position **N** is engaged.
- When a gear or gear selector position facing down the hill is selected.

CAUTION

If you do not drive off immediately after releasing the brake pedal, the vehicle may roll backwards. This can lead to injuries or damage.

- In this case, press the brake pedal immediately or switch on the electric parking brake.
- Press the brake pedal for a few seconds before driving off if you want to prevent the vehicle from rolling backwards when driving off in heavy traffic on an incline.



Information on driving

General driving tips

Think ahead when driving

The average fuel consumption will increase if you do not adopt a steady driving style. Keeping a close eye on the traffic can help to avoid frequent acceleration and braking. Keeping a sufficient distance from the vehicle in front will help you to think ahead when driving.

Avoid driving at full throttle

The rolling and air resistance increase at excessively high speeds. This in turn increases the force needed to move the vehicle. Never make use of the vehicle's top speed.

Observe the tyre pressures

A low tyre pressure does not just mean greater wear, but also increases the rolling resistance of the tyres and thus the average $\emptyset$ consumption. Use optimised rolling resistance tyres.

Adjust the tyre pressure according to the vehicle load:

- Observe the information on the tyre pressure sticker → page 367.
- Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator → page 373.
- Tyre Pressure Monitoring System → page 377.

Use low viscosity engine oils

Fully synthetic engine oils with low viscosity reduce frictional resistance in the engine and spread better and more quickly, especially for cold starts.

WARNING

The engine power may be reduced at increasing altitude due to the lower air density. Reduced engine power can lead to accidents, e.g. when overtaking. This can result in severe or fatal injuries.

- Always adapt your speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather and road or traffic conditions.

WARNING

Lack of attention in road traffic can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always observe the current rules of the road and speed limits and drive with an anticipatory driving style.
- Take regular breaks on long journeys – at least every two hours.

WARNING

Alcohol, drugs, medication and narcotics can severely impair perception, reaction times and driving safety. This could cause you to lose control of the vehicle. This

could cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Do not drive under the influence of alcohol, drugs, medication or narcotics.

Running in a new engine

A new combustion engine has to be run in during the first 1,500 km (around 1,000 miles). All moving parts should be given the time to get used to running together. During the first few operating hours, the combustion engine has higher internal friction than it does later.

Up to around 1,000 km (around 600 mi):

- Avoid strong acceleration.
- Do not load the combustion engine with more than 2/3 of the maximum engine speed.
- Do not drive with a trailer attached.

Between around 1,000 km and 1,500 km (around 600 mi to 1,000 mi):

1. Gradually increase speed and engine speed.

The style of driving during the first around 1,500 km (around 1,000 miles) also affects the engine quality. Even after this time – and especially with a cold engine – drive the vehicle at moderate speeds in order to reduce engine wear and to increase the mileage that the engine can cover.

Do not drive at engine speeds that are too low. Always shift down gear if the engine is not running smoothly.

New tyres → page 364 and brake pads → page 148 must be run in carefully.

 If the new combustion engine is run in gently, its service life will be increased and its engine oil consumption reduced.

Gear-change indicator



Fig. 110 On the instrument cluster display: gear-change indicator.

- (A) Currently selected gear.
- (B) Recommended gear.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the instrument cluster display may indicate the gear which should be selected to reduce fuel consumption while the vehicle is in motion → Fig. 110.

Vehicles with an automatic transmission:
The transmission must be in Automatic Transmission mode.

No recommended gear is indicated if the most suitable gear is already selected. The currently selected gear is displayed.

Information on “cleaning” the particulate filter

The engine management system recognises when the particulate filter is becoming clogged and supports regeneration of the particulate filter by recommending the most suitable gear when driving. This may mean driving with an increased engine speed → page 317.

CAUTION

The gear-change indicator is designed only to assist the driver and is not a substitute for the full attention and responsibility of the driver. Accidents and injuries can occur if an unsuitable gear is selected for the driving situation.

- Always select the correct gear for the respective driving situation, e.g. when overtaking or driving downhill.

 Driving in the correct gear can help to reduce fuel consumption.

i If the clutch pedal is pressed on vehicles with manual gearbox or the automatic transmission position is left on vehicles with automatic transmission, the gear-change indicator display will disappear.

Economic driving style

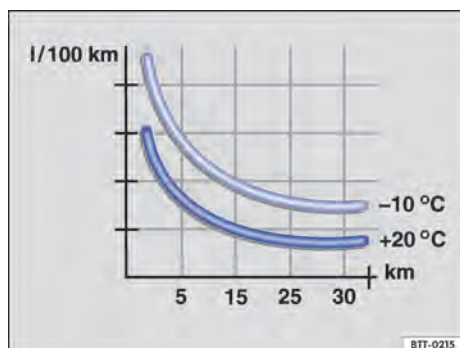


Fig. 111 Fuel consumption in litres per 100 km at two different outside temperatures.

Adopting the correct driving style can reduce the average fuel consumption, overall environmental impact and wear of the engine, brakes and tyres. A few tips are provided below which will help you protect the environment and also save money.

Change gears in an energy-saving way

Changing up a gear early at engine speeds of 2,000 rpm saves energy. Do not drive gears to the limit and avoid high revs.

- *Vehicles with a manual gearbox:* change from first to second gear immediately after moving off.
- *Vehicles with an automatic transmission:* Accelerate slowly and avoid using the kickdown function.
- Observe the gear-change indicator → page 171.
- Use the **ECO** driving profile if possible.

Reduce idling

Pull away immediately with low engine speeds. If you are stopped for a long period,

do not allow the engine to idle but switch it off, e.g. when in a traffic jam or at a railway crossing.

In vehicles with an activated Auto Start-Stop system, the engine can switch off automatically when the vehicle is stopping and when the vehicle is stationary.

Refuel moderately

A full fuel tank increases the weight of the vehicle. A fuel tank that is half to three quarters full is sufficient for urban trips in particular.

Avoid short trips

A cold engine has very high average fuel consumption. They do not reach optimum operating temperature until the vehicle has travelled a few kilometres (miles). The average fuel consumption is above average at very low ambient temperatures, e.g. in winter → Fig. 111. Plan trips economically and combine short trips.

Carry out regular maintenance

Regular maintenance is an essential prerequisite for economical driving and increases the service life of the vehicle.

Do not drive with unnecessary loads in the vehicle

You can reduce the average fuel consumption by clearing out the load compartment before setting off, for example by removing empty beverage crates or unused child seats.

To keep the air resistance of your vehicle as low as possible, remove any add-on parts and equipment once you have finished using them.

Save energy

The alternator is driven by the engine and generates electrical power for convenience features such as the Climate Control system, window heating and ventilation. Saving electrical power is easy, e.g.:

- Open the windows and doors before driving at high outside temperatures and drive for a short distance with a window open. Only then switch the Climate Control system on.

- Switch off the convenience consumers when they have fulfilled their purpose.

WARNING

Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

NOTICE

If the vehicle rolls down mountains or hills in neutral position **N**, the transmission is not lubricated. The automatic transmission could overheat and be damaged.

- Do not allow the vehicle to roll in neutral position **N**, particularly if the engine is switched off.



You can obtain further information on correct maintenance and spare parts that are particularly energy-efficient, e.g. new tyres, from a suitably qualified workshop.



On vehicles that are equipped with Active Cylinder Management (ACT) engine cylinders can be deactivated automatically in driving situations with a low power requirement. When a cylinder is deactivated, no fuel is injected into that cylinder, which leads to an overall reduction in fuel consumption.

Driving a loaded vehicle

For good vehicle handling when driving a loaded vehicle, please observe the following:

- Stow the entire load securely → page 283.
- Accelerate particularly cautiously and carefully.
- Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres.
- Brake earlier than in normal driving.
- If necessary, refer to information about the roof load carrier → page 305.
- If applicable, observe the information about driving with a trailer → page 297.

- If applicable, observe the information about driving with a bicycle carrier → page 303.

WARNING

Shifting loads can severely impair the vehicle's stability and driving safety and lengthen the braking distance in the event of braking hard or emergency braking. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Secure objects properly to prevent them from sliding.
- Use suitable straps when securing heavy objects.
- Securely engage the rear seat backrests and, if applicable, the reclining rear seats.

Driving with the boot lid or rear doors open

Driving with an open boot lid or open rear doors is particularly dangerous. To reduce the amount of any toxic exhaust gases entering the vehicle, secure all objects and the open boot lid or open rear doors properly and take suitable measures.

Make sure you observe any legal requirements when driving with an open boot lid or open rear doors.

WARNING

Driving with an unlocked or open boot lid or unlocked or open rear doors can cause serious injuries.

- Always drive with the boot lid and rear doors closed.
- Always stow all objects in the load compartment securely. Loose objects can fall out of the load compartment and injure road users who are driving behind.
- Always drive carefully and ensure that you think ahead.
- Avoid any abrupt or sudden driving and braking manoeuvres as this could cause the open boot lid or open rear doors to move unpredictably.

- Any objects protruding from the load compartment must be marked to ensure that they are visible to other road users. Comply with any legal requirements.
- If items protrude out of the load compartment, never use the boot lid or rear doors to jam or hold them in position.
- If you have to drive the vehicle with the boot lid or rear doors open, remove any load carriers and loads from the boot lid and rear doors.

WARNING

Poisonous exhaust fumes can get into the vehicle interior when the boot lid or rear doors are open. This can result in loss of consciousness, carbon monoxide poisoning, serious injury and accidents.

- You should always drive with the boot lid or rear doors closed in order to prevent toxic gases from entering the vehicle.
- If you have to drive with an open boot lid or open rear doors in exceptional circumstances, comply with the following instructions to reduce the amount of toxic exhaust fumes entering the vehicle:
 - Close all the windows.
 - Switch off the air recirculation mode of the heating and fresh air system or Climate Control system.
 - Open all vents in the dash panel.
 - Switch the blowers for the heating and fresh air system, or for the Climate Control system, to the highest setting.

NOTICE

The vehicle height, and possibly the length, are different when the boot lid or rear doors are open. This can damage your vehicle or other vehicles.

- Pay attention to the increased vehicle dimensions when manoeuvring.
- Do not open the boot lid or rear doors in confined spaces.

Driving through water on roads

Please follow these rules to help prevent damage to your vehicle when driving through water, for example if the road is flooded:

- Check the depth of the water before driving through it. The water level must be no higher than the lower edge of the vehicle body → .
- Do not drive faster than walking speed.
- Never stop the vehicle, reverse or switch off the engine while in water.
- Oncoming vehicles will create waves that could increase the water level for your vehicle to such an extent that it is not safe to drive through the water.
- Always deactivate the Auto StartStop system manually when driving through water.

WARNING

After driving through water, mud, slush etc., the brakes may react slowly and the braking distance will be increased as the brake discs and pads will be wet, or possibly iced up in winter.

- Dry the brakes and clean off any coating of ice and salt with a few cautious applications of the brake. Do not endanger any other road users or go against legal requirements when doing this.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden braking manoeuvres directly after driving through water.

NOTICE

If you drive through water, parts of the vehicle, e.g. electronics, could sustain severe damage or corrode.

- Never drive through salt water.
- Immediately rinse all vehicle parts that have come into contact with salt water using fresh water.
- Protect electronic components from contact with water.

Using the vehicle in other countries and continents

quirements in other countries and continents. <

The vehicle has been manufactured specifically for a particular country and complies with the registration regulations that applied in that country at the time of vehicle production.

If you want to use the vehicle abroad for a short period, all relevant information and instructions should be followed → page 49.

If the vehicle is going to be sold in another country or used in another country for an extended period, the legal requirements applicable in that country must be observed.

In some cases, certain equipment will have to be fitted or removed and functions deactivated. The service scope and service types could also be affected. This is particularly important if the vehicle is driven in another climate region for a long period of time.

The factory-fitted Infotainment system may not work abroad because different frequency bands are used in different countries.

WARNING

The density of air decreases with increasing altitude. The lower air density can result in a reduction in engine power and vehicle components may be damaged if the vehicle is driven for an extended period at very high altitudes. A reduction in the engine power can lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries, e.g. when overtaking.

- Consult a suitably qualified workshop before driving abroad, particularly if the vehicle will be driven at altitudes of more than 3,000 m (around 9,843 ft) above sea level.

 Ford is not responsible for any vehicle damage caused by low-quality fuel, inadequate servicing work or lack of genuine parts.

 Ford cannot be held responsible if the vehicle does not comply with or only partly complies with the relevant legal re-

Driver assist systems

Information on sensors

Introduction

Depending on equipment, the vehicle has various driver assistance systems that increase comfort and convenience when driving. Some of these driver assistance systems use sensors or cameras for operation (also referred to as “sensors” in general below). These are visible to you in some cases and in other cases not.

The sensors and cameras detect the vehicle surroundings optically and using ultrasound or radar waves.

Installed sensors

Depending on equipment, the following sensors may be installed:

- Radar sensors at the front of the vehicle.
- Radar sensors in the rear of the vehicle.
- Camera behind the windscreen.
- Ultrasound sensors in the front of the vehicle.
- Ultrasound sensors in the rear of the vehicle.

 You can find information on the respective component locations in the vehicle overviews → page 8.

WARNING

Driver assistance systems are not a substitute for the full concentration of the driver and function only within the limits of the respective systems. The driver assistance systems cannot detect all driving situations and may warn or react with a delay or not at all or may warn or react in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries or even death.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.

- Pay attention to the limits of the sensors and the system limits of the individual systems.
- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Be prepared at all times to override or cancel automatic interventions.
- Observe the information on the instrument cluster display and respond according to the displays, if permitted by the traffic situation.
- Do not use the driver assistance systems if you suspect there is a problem or damage.



Limits of the sensors

 Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 176.

Limits of the radar sensors

Driver assistance systems that use radar sensors can react unexpectedly, with a delay or not at all in the following situations:

- Driving in adverse weather conditions, e.g. heavy rain, snow or heavy spray.
- Driving through road works, tunnels or toll stations.
- Driving on twisting roads, e.g. mountain roads.
- Ahead of crests and dips in the road.
- Driving offroad.
- Driving in multi-storey car parks.
- Driving on roads with embedded metal objects, e.g. railway tracks.
- Driving on roads with loose chippings.
- In complex driving situations, e.g. at traffic islands.
- If components in the area of the radar sensors are exposed to external force, e.g. after a rear-end collision.
- The radar sensors are covered, dirty, misaligned or damaged.

Limits of the camera behind the windscreen

Driver assistance systems that use the camera behind the windscreen sensors can react unexpectedly, with a delay or not at all in the following situations:

- Ahead of crests and dips in the road.
- Driving through road works
- Driving offroad.
- Driving in adverse weather conditions, e.g. heavy rain, snow, fog or heavy spray, and on poor roads.
- When the sun is low in the sky, in darkness or with glare from oncoming vehicles.
- The camera is temporarily unavailable due to prolonged exposure to direct sunlight or high ambient temperatures.
- The camera window is covered, dirty or damaged.
- The camera is misaligned.

Delayed response

If the sensor system is exposed to environmental conditions that impair sensor functioning, the driver assistance systems may detect this only after a certain delay. For this reason, any restrictions to functions may be displayed only after a delay at the start of the journey and when driving.

Limits in certain driving situations

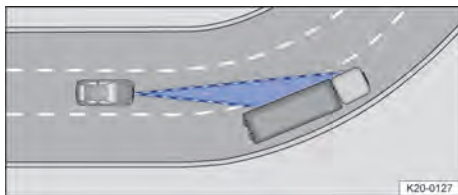


Fig. 112 Driving through bends.

The sensor system always measures straight ahead. In tight bends, vehicles may therefore be incorrectly detected or vehicles driving ahead not detected.



Fig. 113 Narrow vehicle.

Vehicles that are driving outside the sensor range in close proximity to your vehicle, such as motorbikes, may not be detected.

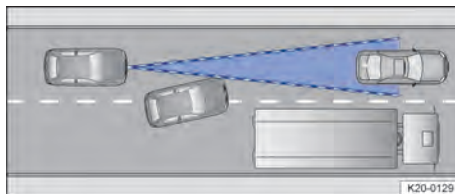


Fig. 114 Vehicle changes lane.

Vehicles that change into your lane directly in front of your vehicle may not be detected. This also applies to vehicles with bodies or attachments that project beyond the vehicle.

Specific system limits

In addition to the limits of the sensors, each driver assistance system has additional functionally related system limits. Please also observe these:

- Predictive speed limiter → page 182.
- Eco Coach → page 184.
- Adaptive Cruise Control → page 187.
- Automatic Emergency Braking → page 195.
- Lane-Keeping System → page 199.
- Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring → page 201.
- Driver State Assist → page 204.
- Blind Spot Assist → page 206.
- Advanced Traffic Sign Display → page 40. <

Troubleshooting

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 176.**



No or restricted sensor visibility in forward direction

Parts of the sensor system in the front of the vehicle are not available or are only available to a limited extent. The yellow symbol and a text message are displayed for a few seconds.

- The sensor areas are dirty or the visibility of the sensor system is affected by the weather, e.g. impaired by snow, detergent residue or coatings. Clean the sensor areas at the front of the vehicle and on the windscreen → page 400.
- The sensor areas are impeded by add-on parts, number plate holders with trim frames or stickers. Keep the area around the sensors clear → page 406.
- The sensors are misaligned or damaged, e.g. as a result of damage to the front of the vehicle or the windscreen. Check whether damage is visible → page 406.
- Painting work or structural modifications have been carried out on the front of the vehicle or the windscreen → page 407.
- Fault or malfunction. Switch off and restart the engine.
- Once the cause of the problem has been rectified, some driver assistance systems will initially remain unavailable. Drive a short distance until the indicator lamp goes out and the driver assistance systems are operational again. If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

 If the sensor visibility is restricted, driver assistance systems may not be available or may only be available to a limited extent. Observe the other indicator lamps for the driver assistance systems → page 17.

 Depending on the malfunction, additional information may be displayed in the vehicle status → page 34.

Cruise Control

Introduction

The Cruise Control system helps to maintain a speed set by the driver.

Speed range

Cruise Control is available when driving forwards at speeds of approx. 20 km/h (around 15 mph) and above.

Driving with the Cruise Control system

You can exceed the stored speed at any time, e.g. to overtake. Control is interrupted for the duration of the acceleration manoeuvre and is then resumed with the stored speed.

Displays

When Cruise Control is switched on, the instrument cluster display shows the stored speed and the status of the Cruise Control system.

One of the following indicator lamps will light up depending on the driving situation:



Cruise Control switched on, system control active.



Cruise Control switched on, system control not active.

If no speed is stored, the instrument cluster display shows --- instead of the speed.

Changing gear

Cruise Control is interrupted as soon as you press the clutch pedal and is resumed automatically after the gear change.

Driving downhill

The vehicle cannot maintain the stored speed in all driving situations. Always be prepared to brake the vehicle.

1. Shift down before extended downhill stretches.

In this way you will make use of the engine braking effect and relieve the load on the brakes.

⚠ WARNING

If traffic does not allow you to drive at a constant speed while at a safe distance from the vehicle in front, using the Cruise Control system can lead to accidents and serious injuries or even death.

- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. The driver is responsible for the vehicle speed at all times.
- Never use the Cruise Control system in heavy traffic, if the distance to the vehicles in front is insufficient, on steep or winding roads, on slippery road surfaces e.g. due to snow, ice, wet roads, loose chippings, or on flooded roads.
- Never use the Cruise Control system when driving offroad or on unpaved road surfaces.

Operating the Cruise Control system

📖 **Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 178.**



Fig. 115 Left-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel.

Switching on

1. Press the **Ⓜ** button on the left-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel repeatedly until Cruise Control is selected.

2. Press the **OK** button on the right-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel or wait for a short time.

No speed is stored. No control yet.

Starting control

1. While driving, press the **SET** button.

The Cruise Control system stores and regulates the current speed.

Adjusting the speed

You can adjust the stored speed while the Cruise Control system is regulating the speed:

+ 1 km/h (1 mph): Press the **RES** button.

- 1 km/h (1 mph): Press the **SET** button.

+ 10 km/h (5 mph): Press the **+** button.
Pressing it for the first time switches to the next highest 10 km/h or 5 mph interval:

- 10 km/h (5 mph): Press the **-** button.
Pressing it for the first time switches to the next lowest 10 km/h or 5 mph interval:

Press and hold the corresponding button to continuously change the stored speed.

The vehicle adapts the current speed by accelerating or braking.

Cancelling control

1. Briefly press the **Ⓜ** button.

Or: depress the brake pedal.

The speed is stored in the memory.

Resuming control

1. Press the **RES** button.

The Cruise Control system resumes operation with the stored speed and regulates the speed again.

⚠ WARNING

There is a risk of an accident if you unintentionally resume a stored speed or if the stored speed is too high for the current road, traffic and weather conditions. This can lead to serious injuries or death.

- Check whether the stored speed is suitable for the current road, traffic and

weather conditions before you resume cruise control.

- Switch off the Cruise Control system when you do not need it.

Troubleshooting

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 178.

🔧! Cruise Control fault

Malfunction. The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

1. Switch off the Cruise Control system and go to a suitably qualified workshop.

Control is cancelled automatically

- You have kept the clutch depressed for an extended period.
- The vehicle has exceeded the stored speed for an extended period.
- The driver has not selected a position for driving forwards.
- Brake support systems, e.g. TCS or ESC, have performed a control intervention.
- The vehicle was braked by the Automatic Emergency Braking system.
- If the problem persists, switch off the Cruise Control system and go to a suitably qualified workshop.

Speed Limiter

📖 Introduction

The Speed Limiter helps you to stop exceeding a selected speed.

Speed range

The Speed Limiter is available when driving forwards at speeds of approx. 30 km/h (around 20 mph) and above.

Driving with the Speed Limiter

You can interrupt the Speed Limiter function at any time by fully depressing the ac-

celerator beyond the point of resistance. As soon as the stored speed is exceeded, the green indicator lamp will flash and an acoustic warning may sound. The speed is stored in the memory.

The speed control function switches back on automatically as soon as the speed drops back below the stored speed.

Displays

When the Speed Limiter is switched on, the instrument cluster display shows the stored speed and the status of the Speed Limiter.

One of the following indicator lamps will light up depending on the driving situation:



Speed Limiter switched on, system control active.



Speed limiter switched on, control not active.

Driving downhill

The vehicle cannot maintain the stored speed in all driving situations. Always be prepared to brake the vehicle.

1. Shift down before extended downhill stretches.

In this way you will make use of the engine braking effect and relieve the load on the brakes.



WARNING

Using the Speed Limiter in adverse weather conditions is dangerous and can cause accidents and serious injuries or even death.

- Ensure that your speed is always appropriate for the current visibility, weather and road/traffic conditions. The driver is responsible for the vehicle speed at all times.
- Do not drive at full throttle if it is not required.
- Never use the Speed Limiter on slippery roads (e.g. affected by aquaplaning, snow, ice or leaves).
- In order to avoid unintentional control interventions, switch off the Speed Limiter when you do not need it.

Operating the Speed Limiter

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 180.



Fig. 116 Left-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel.

Switching on

1. Press the **MODE** button on the left-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel repeatedly until the Speed Limiter is selected.
2. Press the **OK** button on the right-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel or wait for a short time.

The Speed Limiter is switched on. No control yet.

Starting control

1. While driving, press the **SET** button.
The current speed is stored as the maximum speed.

Adjusting the speed

You can adjust the stored speed:

- + 1 km/h (1 mph):** Press the **RES** button.
- 1 km/h (1 mph):** Press the **SET** button.
- + 10 km/h (5 mph):** Press the **+** button.
Pressing it for the first time switches to the next highest 10 km/h or 5 mph interval:
- 10 km/h (5 mph):** Press the **-** button.
Pressing it for the first time switches to the next lowest 10 km/h or 5 mph interval:

Press and hold the corresponding button to continuously change the stored speed.

Cancelling control

1. Briefly press the **MODE** button.
The speed is stored in the memory.

Resuming control

1. Press the **RES** button.

Troubleshooting

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 180.

! LIM Speed Limiter not available

Fault or malfunction. The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

1. Switch off and restart the engine.
2. If the problem persists, switch off the Speed Limiter and go to a suitably qualified workshop.

Control is cancelled automatically

- The ESC is switched off.
- The brakes have overheated. Leave the brakes to cool and check them again.
- If the problem persists, switch off the Speed Limiter and go to a suitably qualified workshop.

For safety reasons, the Speed Limiter switches itself off completely only when you release the accelerator once or switch off the system manually.

Predictive speed limiter

📖 Introduction

The predictive speed limiter automatically adapts a maximum speed that you have stored to detected speed limits.

The predictive speed limiter is an extension of the Speed Limiter and makes use of

Traffic Sign Recognition and the navigation data provided in the Infotainment system.

The predictive speed limiter is dependent on the vehicle equipment and is not available in all countries.

WARNING

The predictive speed limiter is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. The predictive speed limiter cannot detect all applicable speed limits and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries or even death.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is responsible for the stored vehicle speed at all times.
- Observe the system limits → page 182.
- Ensure that your speed is always appropriate for the current visibility, weather and road/traffic conditions.
- Keep the navigation data up-to-date.
- Always observe the maximum speed limit.
- Please note that the speeds regulated by the system do not necessarily correspond to your driving style.

 Please also observe the safety-relevant information on the Speed Limiter.

 The system also uses navigation data even if the vehicle does not have a navigation system. Keep the navigation data up-to-date → page 270. If you have any questions, please contact a suitably qualified workshop.

Limits of the predictive speed limiter

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 181.**

In addition to the system limits of Traffic Sign Recognition → page 40, the predictive

speed limiter has the following additional, system-related limits:

- The predictive speed limiter detects only traffic signs that show a speed limit.
- Traffic signs that indicate a speed limit indirectly, e.g. place-name signs, will be detected only on the basis of the navigation data.
- If a speed limit is announced on the basis of the navigation data but is not detected by the Traffic Sign Recognition function, the announced speed will be reset to the last-stored speed.
- The predictive speed limiter is not available for detected speed limits below around 30 km/h (around 20 mph). A corresponding text message is shown on the instrument cluster display in this case.

Joining and leaving motorways

- When you join a motorway, the recommended speed or permitted maximum speed will automatically be stored as the speed, depending on country.
- The predictive speed limiter will be deactivated when you leave the motorway.

Function limitations

In the following situations, it is possible that the predictive speed limiter will not change the stored speed or will change it with a delay or in an unexpected way:

- There is a fault in the Traffic Sign Recognition system.
- The navigation data is out-of-date.
- You are driving without route guidance.
- You leave the route calculated by the navigation system.
- ◀ — The vehicle position cannot be determined correctly due to imprecise GPS data. ▶

Activating the predictive speed limiter

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 181.

1. Open the Assist systems menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Select the speed limiter.
3. Switch on the reaction to the permitted speed.
4. Switch on the speed limiter and start control → page 181.

Driving with the predictive speed limiter

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 181.

Displays



The system has detected a speed limit on the route.



The system has stored the detected speed limit and performs control interventions accordingly.

Cancelling speed adaptation

If you do not want to adopt an announced speed, you can cancel speed adaptation:

— Press the **RES** button.

Or: if the announced speed is lower than the currently saved speed, release the accelerator twice and press again.

The last-stored speed is resumed again.

— Press the **SET** button.

The current speed is adopted.

— Press the **Q** button.

System control is interrupted.

Bringing forward speed adaptation

As soon as a higher speed than the currently stored speed is announced in the instrument cluster display, you can bring forward speed adaptation:

— Press the **+** button.

Or: release the accelerator twice and then press it again.

Adjusting the announced speed

+ 10 km/h (5 mph): Press the **+** button.
Pressing it for the first time switches to the next highest 10 km/h or 5 mph interval:

- 10 km/h (5 mph): Press the **-** button.
Pressing it for the first time switches to the next lowest 10 km/h or 5 mph interval:

◀ If you adjust the announced speed excessively, predictive control will be terminated.



If a speed limit is detected, the predictive speed limiter will adjust the stored speed even if the Speed Limiter is not regulating.



If the current speed significantly exceeds a speed limit detected by the Traffic Sign Recognition function, a warning will appear on the instrument cluster display. ▶

Troubleshooting

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 181.

A message is displayed that the speed limiter with predictive control is currently not available or is not available in your country

1. If this message is displayed for an extended period and the speed limiter with predictive control is available in your country, go to a suitably qualified workshop.



Depending on the malfunction, additional information may be displayed in the vehicle status → page 23, → page 34. ▶

Eco Coach

The Eco Coach function helps the driver to drive with an anticipatory driving style and to save energy by providing situation-dependent information.

The Eco Coach function uses the navigation data of the Infotainment system and the sensors of the driver assistance systems. When you drive with route guidance, Eco Coach also takes into account the entered route. The most probable route is used when you drive without route guidance.

The Eco Coach function is dependent on the equipment level and is not available in all countries.

Driving with Eco Coach

When you are approaching a speed limit or a route to be followed, the  symbol and information about the type of event are shown in the display of the instrument cluster.

You use the coasting function and therefore save energy as soon as you take your foot off the accelerator.

If the accelerator is not pressed, Eco Coach also supports deceleration for a vehicle driving in front without any displayed message. The system does not use the vehicle brake. When you are driving downhill, the system also cannot sufficiently brake the vehicle in all driving situations.

You can override Eco Coach interventions at any time by accelerating or braking.

Displays

Depending on the driving situation, the following symbols are shown on the instrument cluster display:



Remove foot from accelerator.



Vehicle ahead.



Junction ahead.



Motorway exit ahead.



Roundabout ahead.



Left-hand bend ahead.



Right-hand bend ahead.



Downhill gradient ahead.



Speed limit ahead, example.

Switching on and off

You can switch the Eco Coach on and off in the Assist systems menu of the Infotainment system.

Eco Coach will be automatically deactivated temporarily in the following cases:

- When driving with Adaptive Cruise Control.
- When driving with Cruise Control.



However, Eco Coach displays may still be shown, depending on the situation and driving behaviour.

When the reason for deactivation is no longer present, the Eco Coach is reactivated, provided it is switched on in the Infotainment system.

WARNING

Eco Coach is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. Eco Coach cannot detect all driving situations and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries or even death.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather and road or traffic conditions.

- Please note that traffic signs on the road and traffic regulations always have priority over driving recommendations.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Introduction

Adaptive Cruise Control maintains a speed that you have set. If the vehicle approaches a vehicle in front, Adaptive Cruise Control automatically adapts the speed so that a distance you have selected is maintained.

Is the vehicle equipped with Adaptive Cruise Control?

If you can select Adaptive Cruise Control with the  button on the left-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel, the vehicle is equipped with Adaptive Cruise Control.

Speed range

You can set a speed between 20 km/h (15 mph) and 210 km/h (130 mph). This speed range may differ in certain countries.

Driving with Adaptive Cruise Control

You can override Adaptive Cruise Control at any time. Control will be cancelled if you brake. If you accelerate, the system will be interrupted for the duration of the acceleration process and will then resume with the set speed.

Control by the Adaptive Cruise Control system is less dynamic when towing a trailer.

Driver intervention prompt



If the automatic deceleration by Adaptive Cruise Control is not sufficient or the system limits are reached, the Adaptive Cruise Control system will display a message on the instrument cluster requesting you to brake additionally. In addition, the red warning lamp lights up and an acoustic warning is given. Take control of the vehicle and be prepared to apply the brakes!

WARNING

Adaptive Cruise Control is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. Adaptive Cruise Control cannot detect all driving situations and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries or even death.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Observe the system limits → page 187.
- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Take control of the vehicle immediately if a driver intervention prompt appears on the instrument cluster display or if Adaptive Cruise Control does not reduce the speed sufficiently.
- Apply the brakes if the vehicle starts rolling unintentionally, e.g. after a driver intervention prompt.

Special driving situations

 Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 185.

The functions described below depend on the vehicle equipment and are not available in all countries.

Predictive Cruise Control

If the vehicle is equipped with the Traffic Sign Recognition function and an Infotainment system with navigation, the Adaptive Cruise Control can predictively adapt the vehicle speed to detected speed limits and the course of the road ahead.

Overtaking

If you indicate left (left-hand traffic: indicate right) to overtake, Adaptive Cruise Control can accelerate the vehicle and thus reduce the distance from the vehicle in front. The system will not exceed the speed you have stored.

If Adaptive Cruise Control has not detected a vehicle in front once you have changed lanes, the vehicle will accelerate up to the selected speed.

Pulling in

If you use the convenience turn signal to change lanes and a relevant object is detected there, the vehicle can decelerate even before you steer. Adaptive Cruise Control can thus provide support when pulling in behind a slower object.

If you do not change lanes, the vehicle accelerates back to the previously set speed after a few seconds. You can also cancel the control by indicating in the opposite direction or by depressing the brake or accelerator. The function is available on motorways or multi-lane country roads from around 80 km/h (around 50 mph).

Stop-and-go traffic

Adaptive Cruise Control can brake the vehicle to a standstill and hold it stationary. Adaptive Cruise Control remains active and the instrument cluster display shows **Adaptive Cruise Control ready to start** for a few seconds.

Vehicles with Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring: You can extend this time by continuing to hold the steering wheel.

As long as Adaptive Cruise Control remains active, the vehicle will move off again automatically as soon as the vehicle in front moves off and if no obstacle is detected.

Extending or reactivating the period in which the vehicle is ready to pull away:

1. Press the **(RES)** button.

Or: *Vehicles with Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring:* take hold of the steering wheel again.

Pulling away when Adaptive Cruise Control is no longer ready and the vehicle in front is already a long way ahead:

1. Press the **(RES)** button.

Or: depress the accelerator briefly.

Adaptive Cruise Control is not active in the following cases:

- The vehicle is stationary for several minutes.

- The driver door is opened.
- The ignition is switched off.

WARNING

If the message **Adaptive Cruise Control ready to start** is shown on the instrument cluster display and the vehicle in front moves off, your vehicle will move off automatically. In some cases, obstacles in the vehicle's path may not be detected. This can result in serious injury and accidents.

- Always check the road every time the vehicle starts to pull away and brake the vehicle if necessary.

Inside Overtaking Prevention System



Fig. 117 In the instrument cluster display: slower vehicle detected in the left-hand lane (illustration).

Vehicles with Inside Overtaking Prevention System: If Adaptive Cruise Control detects a slower vehicle in the left-hand lane (left-hand traffic: in the right-hand lane), Adaptive Cruise Control will brake the vehicle gently within the system limits and can therefore prevent a prohibited overtaking manoeuvre. The function is active from speeds of around 80 km/h (around 50 mph).

Vehicles without Inside Overtaking Prevention System: Cancel control when driving on a multi-lane road if vehicles in the overtaking lane are driving more slowly. <

System limits of Adaptive Cruise Control

📖 **Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 185.**

Limits of the sensors

The Adaptive Cruise Control detects driving situations by means of the radar and ultrasound sensors in the front of the vehicle and the camera behind the windscreen. The range of the radar sensors is up to around 160 m (around 520 ft).

⚠ WARNING

Using Adaptive Cruise Control in driving situations outside the system limits may lead to accidents and serious injuries and also violations of the relevant legal requirements.

- Pay attention to the limits of the sensor system → page 176 and cancel control in the specified situations.

Objects that cannot be detected

Adaptive Cruise Control only detects vehicles moving in the same direction as your vehicle. The following are not detected:

- Persons
- Animals
- Crossing or oncoming vehicles
- Other stationary obstacles

Stationary vehicles

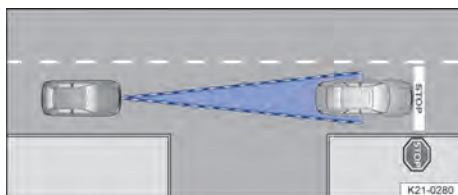


Fig. 118 Stationary vehicle.

Adaptive Cruise Control reacts to stationary vehicles to a limited extent up to a speed of around 60 km/h (approx. 37 mph), provided a stationary vehicle is detected as such and your own vehicle can be comfortably braked behind the stationary vehicle within the system limits of the Adaptive Cruise Control system. Adaptive Cruise Control

does not perform emergency braking → Fig. 118.

The function which enables your vehicle to react to stationary vehicles comes with some equipment levels and is not available in all countries. <

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control on and off

📖 **Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 185.**



Fig. 119 Left-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel.

Switching on

1. Press the  button on the left-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel repeatedly until the Adaptive Cruise Control is selected.
2. Press the  button on the right-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel or wait for a short time.

Adaptive Cruise Control is switched on.

Starting control

If you switch from Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring to Adaptive Cruise Control and the Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring was controlling the vehicle, control remains active for the vehicle. Adaptive Cruise Control is active.

Otherwise you must start control:

1. Press the  button while driving forwards.

Adaptive Cruise Control stores the current speed and maintains the set distance. If the current speed is outside the defined speed range, Adaptive Cruise Control will set the minimum speed when driving more slowly than the limit or maximum speed when driving faster than the limit.

Relevant braking support systems are also activated → page 168.

Depending on the driving situation, the following indicator lamps light up:



Adaptive Cruise Control is active, no vehicle detected ahead.



Adaptive Cruise Control is active, vehicle detected ahead.



Adaptive Cruise Control is not performing a control intervention, no vehicle detected ahead.



Adaptive Cruise Control is not performing a control intervention, vehicle detected ahead.

Cancelling control

1. Briefly press the **[RES]** button.

Or: depress the brake pedal while driving.

The indicator lamp corresponding to the driving situation lights up grey, the speed and distance remain stored.

If a relevant braking support system is deactivated, control is automatically cancelled → page 168.

Resuming control

1. Press the **[RES]** button.

Adaptive Cruise Control adopts the last stored speed and distance. The instrument cluster display shows the set speed and the indicator lamp corresponding to the driving situation lights up.

Adjusting Adaptive Cruise Control

Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 185.

Adjusting the distance



Fig. 120 On the display of the digital instrument cluster: set distance ①, Adaptive Cruise Control is controlling the vehicle (illustration).

You can set the distance in five steps from very small to very large:

1. Press the **[F]** button.
2. Press the **[+]** or **[-]** button.

Or: press the **[F]** button repeatedly until the required distance is set.

The instrument cluster display shows the chosen distance setting → Fig. 120

①. Note the country-specific regulations regarding the minimum distance.

Depending on equipment and country, control always starts at the level that the respective user had set at the end of the last trip.

Adjusting the speed

Using the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel, you can adjust the stored speed within the specified speed range as follows:

- + 1 km/h (1 mph):** Press the **[RES]** button only when Adaptive Cruise Control is active.
- 1 km/h (1 mph):** Press the **[SET]** button only when Adaptive Cruise Control is active.
- + 10 km/h (5 mph):** Press the **[+]** button. Pressing it for the first time switches

to the next highest 10 km/h or 5 mph interval:

- 10 km/h (5 mph):** Press the  button. Pressing it for the first time switches to the next lowest 10 km/h or 5 mph interval:

Press and hold the button to continuously change the stored speed.

WARNING

Adaptive Cruise Control cannot detect all driving situations correctly. If you do not maintain the minimum distance to a vehicle in front or if the difference in speed between that vehicle and your own vehicle is so great that the braking action of the Adaptive Cruise Control is insufficient, you are in danger of colliding. This can lead to serious injuries or death.

- Always be prepared to brake the vehicle yourself.
- Press the accelerator to override Adaptive Cruise Control. Adaptive Cruise Control will not brake automatically in this case.
- Observe any country-specific regulations regarding the minimum distance between vehicles.
- Maintain a larger gap in wet weather, snow or poor visibility.

Adjusting the control behaviour

You can decide how sporty the response of Adaptive Cruise Control should be:

1. Select the desired gearbox program in the Assist systems menu of the Infotainment system.

Deactivating Distance Indication

1. Press the  button on the left-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel repeatedly until **Cruise Control** is selected.
2. Press the  button on the right-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel or wait for a short time.

Distance Indication is deactivated. The vehicle maintains only the set speed.

One of the following indicator lamps will light up depending on the driving situation:



Cruise Control switched on, system control active.



Cruise Control switched on, system control not active.



Troubleshooting

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 185.**



Adaptive Cruise Control not available

The indicator lamp lights up yellow. A message will also appear on the instrument cluster display.

- The radar sensors are dirty. Clean the radar sensors → page 402.
- The view of the radar sensors has been impaired by the weather, e.g. by snow, or cleaning agent residue or coatings. Clean the radar sensors → page 402.
- The view of the radar sensors is obstructed by add-on parts, trim frame for licence plate holders or stickers. Keep the area around the radar sensors clear → page 406.
- The radar sensors have been displaced or damaged, e.g. due to damage to the front of the vehicle. Check whether damage is visible → page 406.
- Fault or malfunction. Switch off and restart the engine.
- Painting work or structural modifications have been performed on the front of the vehicle.
- If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

Adaptive Cruise Control is not working as expected

- The radar sensors are dirty. Clean the radar sensors → page 402.
- The ultrasound sensors are dirty, covered or damaged. Clean the ultrasound sensors → page 400.

Keep the area around the ultrasound sensors clear and check whether any damage is visible → page 406.

- The system limits have been exceeded → page 187.
- The brakes have overheated, control was cancelled automatically. Leave the brakes to cool and check them again.
- If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

 Depending on the malfunction, additional information may be displayed in the vehicle status → page 34.

Control cannot be started

Make sure the following conditions are met:

- A position has been selected for driving forward.
- The brake lights on the vehicle are working.
- The brake lights on the electrically connected trailer are in working order.
- ESC is not performing a control intervention.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.

Unusual noises during automatic braking

This is normal and is not a fault.

Touch panels do not react as expected

Moisture, dirt and grease can impede the functioning of the touch panels.

1. Always keep touch panels clean and dry.

Predictive cruise control

Introduction

The predictive cruise control adapts the vehicle speed to detected speed limits and the course of the road ahead, e.g. bends, junctions, roundabouts.

Predictive cruise control is an extension of ACC and uses the Traffic Sign Recognition function and the navigation data of the Infotainment system.

The predictive cruise control function is dependent on the equipment level and is not available in all countries.

WARNING

The predictive cruise control system is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. The predictive cruise control system cannot detect all applicable speed limits and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries or even death.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is responsible for the stored vehicle speed at all times.
- Observe the system limits → page 191.
- Ensure that your speed is always appropriate for the current visibility, weather and road/traffic conditions.
- Keep the navigation data up-to-date.
- Always observe the maximum speed limit.
- Please note that the speeds regulated by the system do not necessarily correspond to your driving style.

 Also observe the system limits and the information for ACC.

<  The system also uses navigation data even if the vehicle does not have a navigation system. Keep the navigation data up-to-date → page 270. If you have any questions, please contact a suitably qualified workshop. <

System limits of predictive cruise control

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 190.**

In addition to the system limits of the Traffic Sign Recognition function and ACC, the predictive cruise control function is subject to the following additional, system-related limitations:

- The predictive cruise control function detects only traffic signs that show a speed limit. In particular, predictive cruise control does not take into account any rights of way or traffic lights.
- Traffic signs that indicate a speed limit indirectly, e.g. place-name signs, will be detected only on the basis of the navigation data.
- Traffic signs with sub-plates containing a restriction that applies only at certain times, for example, will be taken into account only if they are included in the navigation data and if they are recognised by the Traffic Sign Recognition system.
- Predictive cruise control is not available on roads which are not recorded in the navigation data or not recorded with sufficient accuracy.
- If a speed limit is announced on the basis of the navigation data but is not detected by the Traffic Sign Recognition function, the announced speed will be reset to the last-stored speed.
- Predictive cruise control cannot take over at speeds below the minimum speed.
- The predictive cruise control system cannot detect the intention to turn off in the following situations, for example:
 - A dashed road lane marking was detected on the side on which you have set the direction indicator.
 - You have not operated the direction indicator for long enough.

Function limitations

In the following situations, it is possible that the predictive cruise control will not

change the speed or will change it with a delay or in an unexpected way:

- There is a fault in the Traffic Sign Recognition system. No speed limit is shown in the instrument cluster display.
- Traffic signs are not detected or are not detected correctly.
- The navigation data is out-of-date.
- You are driving without route guidance.
- You leave the route calculated by the navigation system.
- The vehicle position cannot be determined correctly due to imprecise GPS data.
- The intention to turn off was not detected or was incorrectly recognised as such.
- You have indicated an intention to turn off too late.

Activating predictive cruise control

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 190.**

You can adjust the settings for the events to which the vehicle should react:

- Reaction to the road layout.
- Reaction to the permitted speed.

In the Infotainment system:

1. Open the Assist systems menu.
2. Select Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).
3. Adjust the setting as desired.

If you have activated at least one event, predictive cruise control is automatically switched on when ACC is switched on.

Driving with predictive cruise control

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 190.**

Driving with route guidance

When you drive with route guidance, the predictive cruise control will adapt the speed to the entered route.

Driving without route guidance

When you drive without route guidance, the predictive cruise control will adapt the speed to the most probable route.

Indicating the intention to turn off

If you indicate the intention to turn off by setting the direction indicator, the predictive cruise control can brake the vehicle at the next possible turn-off – irrespectively of whether you are driving with or without route guidance.

Displays

A corresponding message is shown in the instrument cluster display as soon as the system has detected a speed limit or is going to reduce the speed based on the route.

 Speed limit ahead, example.

 Speed regulation due to speed limit, example.

 Lifting of a speed limit ahead.

 Speed regulation due to cancellation of the speed limit.

 Roundabout ahead.

 Speed regulation due to a roundabout.

 Junction ahead.

 Speed regulation due to a junction.

 Left-hand bend ahead.

 Speed regulation due to a left-hand bend.

 Right-hand bend ahead.

 Speed regulation due to a right-hand bend.

When automatic speed control is assumed due to a speed limit, the detected speed is stored as the new desired speed. In the case of control due to a road characteristic ahead, the vehicle will accelerate back up to the previously stored speed afterwards.

Cancelling speed adaptation

If you do not want to adopt an announced speed, you can cancel speed adaptation:

— Press the **RES** button.

The last-stored speed is resumed again.

— Press the **SET** button.

The current speed is adopted.

— Press the  button.

Control is cancelled.

Bringing forward speed adaptation

As soon as a higher speed than the currently stored speed is announced in the instrument cluster display, you can prioritise speed adaptation:

1. Press the  or  button.

Or: press the accelerator and accelerate.

The vehicle will then accelerate to the detected speed.

Adjusting the announced speed

The announced speed can be adjusted only in the case of speed regulation due to a speed limit.

+ 10 km/h (5 mph): Press the  button.

The first time it is pressed, it jumps to the next higher ten (km/h) or five (mph) increment.

- 10 km/h (5 mph): Press the  button.

The first time it is pressed, it jumps to the next lower ten (km/h) or five (mph) increment.

If you adapt the announced speed excessively, predictive cruise control will be terminated.

 If a speed limit is detected, the predictive cruise control function will adjust the stored speed even if ACC is deactivated. However, speed regulation will not take place.

i When a speed limit is lifted on a motorway, the target speed is automatically saved as the desired speed. If, however, a higher speed has previously been stored on a motorway without a speed limit, this will be adopted instead of the recommended speed.

Troubleshooting

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 190.

A message is displayed that predictive cruise control is currently not available or is not available in your country

1. If this message is displayed for an extended period and predictive cruise control is available in your country, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

i Depending on the malfunction, additional information may be displayed in the vehicle status → page 34.

Automatic Emergency Braking

📖 Introduction

The Automatic Emergency Braking system can detect imminent frontal collisions and issue corresponding warnings. The system can also assist when braking and initiate automatic braking.

The Automatic Emergency Braking system can help to avoid accidents, but is not a substitute for the full concentration of the driver.

The Automatic Emergency Braking system functions only within the system limits. The warning times vary depending on the traffic situation and driver behaviour.

Functions

The Automatic Emergency Braking system includes the following additional functions

depending on vehicle equipment and country:

- Pedestrian Detection.
- Cyclist Detection.
- Evasive Steer Assist.
- Junction Assist.
- Front Cross Traffic Assist.

The listed functions are automatically active when the Automatic Emergency Braking system is switched on.

Detectable objects

The Automatic Emergency Braking system can detect the following objects:

- Vehicles.
- Bicycles and motorcycles.
- Pedestrians.

Driving with the Automatic Emergency Braking System

You can cancel the automatic braking interventions by steering or pressing the accelerator.

You can cancel automatic steering interventions by counter-steering.

Automatic braking

The Automatic Emergency Braking system can brake the vehicle to a complete stop. The vehicle will not remain stationary. Depress the brake pedal!

The brake pedal will feel harder during an automatic braking manoeuvre.

⚠ WARNING

The Automatic Emergency Braking system is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. The Automatic Emergency Braking system cannot detect all driving situations and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries or even death.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Observe the system limits → page 195.

- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- You should consider cancelling the automatic interventions by the Automatic Emergency Braking system if appropriate.
- If the Automatic Emergency Braking system issues a warning, brake the vehicle immediately if the traffic allows or avoid the obstacle.
- If you are unsure about the functions that are available in your vehicle depending on the vehicle equipment level and country, please enquire at a suitably qualified workshop before starting your trip.

Warning levels and braking intervention

📖 Please refer to ⚠️ at the start of the chapter on page 193.

Speed ranges

Automatic Emergency Braking provides assistance in the following maximum speed ranges:

- Reaction to vehicles: around 5 km/h (around 3 mph) to around 250 km/h (around 155 mph).
- Reaction to bicycles and motorcycles: around 5 km/h (around 3 mph) to around 250 km/h (around 155 mph).
- Reaction to pedestrians: around 5 km/h (around 3 mph) to around 85 km/h (around 53 mph).

The assistance may include an advance warning, an urgent warning and automatic braking or a braking intervention. A distance warning may also be displayed.

Influencing factors

Whether and in what speed range the Automatic Emergency Braking system reacts to the specified objects depends on the following factors:

- Type of object.
- Direction of travel of the object.

- Speed of the object.
- Speed of the vehicle.

The operating range may therefore be restricted if the vehicle approaches an object very quickly and there is therefore little time for a reaction.

In addition, not all warning levels are used in all situations. Depending on speed, there may not be an advance warning or an urgent warning, for example. Instead, automatic braking may take place immediately in order to ensure optimum protection for the object.

Distance warning



The Automatic Emergency Braking system detects when safety is endangered due to driving too close to the vehicle in front.

The indicator lamp lights up. Increase the distance.

Advance warning



The Automatic Emergency Braking system detects a possible collision and prepares the vehicle for possible emergency braking.

An acoustic warning sounds and the red warning lamp lights up. Brake or take evasive action!

Urgent warning

If you do not react to the advance warning, the system may initiate a short braking jolt in order to draw attention to the increasing collision risk. Brake or take evasive action!

Automatic braking

The Automatic Emergency Braking system can brake the vehicle automatically in several stages with increasing braking force. The reduced speed may help to minimise the severity of an accident.

Braking intervention

If the system detects that you are braking insufficiently when there is a risk of collision, the Automatic Emergency Braking system can increase the braking force and help prevent a collision. The braking intervention takes place only for as long as you press the brake pedal hard.

System limits of the Automatic Emergency Braking system

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 193.**

Limits of the sensors

The Automatic Emergency Braking system detects driving situations by means of the radar sensors in the front of the vehicle and the camera behind the windscreen.

 Observe the limits of the sensor system → page 176. Always pay due attention and intervene yourself if necessary.

After starting the vehicle



The Automatic Emergency Braking system is not available or its functions are restricted immediately after the vehicle is started. During this time, the white indicator lamp lights up in the display of the instrument cluster.

Objects that cannot be detected

The Automatic Emergency Braking system cannot react – or will react with a delay – in the case of the following objects:

- When pedestrians and cyclists are not detected, for example because they are partially or fully hidden.
- Animals

In addition, Automatic Emergency Braking cannot react or will react with a delay in the case of the following objects, depending on equipment and country:

- Oncoming vehicles.
- Crossing vehicles.
- Oncoming pedestrians or cyclists.

Function limitations

In addition to the situations described in the section on the limits of the sensors, the Automatic Emergency Braking system may not react or may react with a delay or when not desired in the following situations, for example:

- Reversing.
- If ESC is performing a control intervention or is faulty.

- If several brake lights on the vehicle are defective.
- If there is a fault in at least one brake light on a trailer or bicycle carrier with an electrical connection to the vehicle.
- If the vehicle accelerates strongly or the accelerator is fully depressed.
- In unclear traffic situations, e.g. vehicles ahead are braking heavily or turning off.
- When driving into and out of tunnels.
- If there is a fault in the Automatic Emergency Braking system.

Switching off the Automatic Emergency Braking system

The Automatic Emergency Braking system is not suitable for use in the following situations due to the limitations of the system and must be switched off → :

- If the vehicle is utilised in a capacity beyond usage on public roads, e.g. offroad or racing tracks.
- If the vehicle is being towed or is loaded onto another vehicle.
- If add-on parts cover the radar sensors or camera.
- If the camera or radar sensors are faulty.
- If components in the area of the radar sensors are exposed to external force, e.g. after a rear-end collision.
- If the windscreen is damaged in the area of the camera window.
- If the vehicle is cleaned in a tunnel car wash.
- In the event of multiple unwanted interventions.

WARNING

If you use the Automatic Emergency Braking system in the situations mentioned, this can result in accidents and serious injuries or even death.

- Switch off the Automatic Emergency Braking system in the described situations.

Front Cross Traffic Assist

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 193.

Front Cross Traffic Assist can prevent the vehicle from colliding with a crossing vehicle when entering a junction, for example.

If there is a risk of a collision when driving out of an exit or driving into a junction, Front Cross Traffic Assist can issue a visual and acoustic warning and brake the vehicle. This can reduce the risk of an accident.

Displays

At low speeds, the Parking Sensors display shows detected crossing traffic by means of coloured segments.

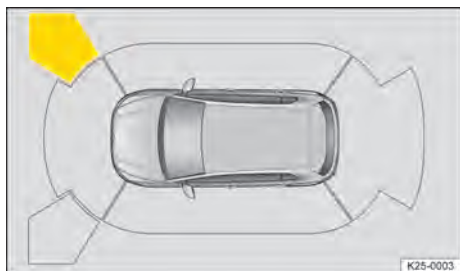


Fig. 121 On the Infotainment system: Front Cross Traffic Assist display (illustration).

 Yellow display segment: Front Cross Traffic Assist has detected crossing traffic. Pay attention and be ready to brake.

 Red display segment: Front Cross Traffic Assist has detected a possible collision with crossing traffic. Brake!

Depending on the driving situation, coloured direction arrows are additionally shown in the **Driver assistance** main display in the instrument cluster display. These indicate the direction from which the crossing traffic is approaching.

Speed range

Front Cross Traffic Assist is available in a speed range from 0 km/h (0 mph) up to around 65 km/h (around 40 mph).

Limits

Front Cross Traffic Assist does not react to road users who are hidden by structures or by other road users. Road users that emerge from a place where they are hidden may be detected with a delay.

Always also observe the fundamental system limits of the Automatic Emergency Braking system → page 195. <

Evasive Steer Assist

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 193.

The Evasive Steer Assist function can help to steer the vehicle around an obstacle in critical driving situations.

If you steer to avoid an obstacle after an urgent warning, Evasive Steer Assist can help you. Evasive Steer Assist brakes individual wheels and intervenes to correct your steering wheel angle while you steer the vehicle.

Speed range

Evasive Steer Assist is available in a speed range from around 30 km/h (around 20 mph) up to a maximum speed of around 150 km/h (around 90 mph).

Limits

Evasive Steer Assist does not react to crossing objects and animals. Always also observe the fundamental system limits of the Automatic Emergency Braking system → page 195. <

Junction Assist

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 193.

Junction Assist can prevent the vehicle from colliding with oncoming road users when turning off.

If there is a risk of the vehicle colliding with an oncoming vehicle in the adjacent lane when turning, Junction Assist can brake your vehicle. The vehicle can then be kept in its own lane and a collision avoided.

Speed range

Junction Assist is available at speeds of up to approximately 30 km/h (around 20 mph).

Limits

Junction Assist is available only if you have activated the direction indicator and turned the steering wheel to start the turning manoeuvre. However, after changing from right-hand traffic to left-hand traffic or vice versa, Junction Assist is available only after some time.

Junction Assist does not react to persons, animals, crossing vehicles or objects that are not detected as a vehicle. Always also observe the fundamental system limits of the Automatic Emergency Braking system → page 195.

Using the Automatic Emergency Braking system

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 193.

The Automatic Emergency Braking system and all equipment- and country-specific functions are automatically switched on when you switch on the ignition.



However, Automatic Emergency Braking is not available or only partially available as long as the white indicator lamp is lit up.

We recommend that the Automatic Emergency Braking system and all equipment- and country-specific included functions are switched on at all times. Exceptions:
→ page 195.

Switching on and off

You can switch Automatic Emergency Braking on and off manually when the vehicle is stationary.

On the display of the instrument cluster:

1. Press the **VIEW** button on the right side of the multifunction steering wheel repeatedly until the Driver assistance view is shown in the main display area.
2. Press the **Δ** or **▽** buttons on the right side of the multifunction steering wheel to display the list of Driver assistance systems on the right side.

Or: depending on equipment, press the **OK** button to display the list of Driver assistance systems on the right side.

3. Select Autonomous Emergency Braking using the **Δ** or **▽** buttons and switch on or off with **OK**.

In the Infotainment system:

1. Open the Assist systems menu.
2. Switch the Automatic Emergency Braking system on or off in the corresponding submenu.



If you switch off the Automatic Emergency Braking system, all the included equipment- and country-specific functions are also switched off. The yellow indicator lamp lights up in the instrument cluster display.

The yellow indicator lamp also lights up if Automatic Emergency Braking has been automatically deactivated, e.g. because towing of the vehicle has been detected.

Setting

If Automatic Emergency Braking is switched on, you can adjust the following settings in the Assist systems menu of the Infotainment system:

- Switch the distance warning function on and off; the setting from the previous journey is set by default.
- Switch Evasive Steer Assist on and off.

- Switch Junction Assist on and off.
- Switch Front Cross Traffic Assist on and off.



Troubleshooting

Please refer to at the start of the chapter on page 193.

Automatic Emergency Braking starting up

The indicator lamp lights up white.

- The Automatic Emergency Braking system is temporarily not available or only available to a limited extent. The Automatic Emergency Braking system is available after driving straight ahead for a short time, and the indicator lamp goes out. When the vehicle is not in motion, the indicator lamp may light up continuously.

Automatic Emergency Braking not available or availability restricted

The indicator lamp lights up yellow. A message will also appear on the instrument cluster display.

- The camera window or radar sensors are dirty. Clean the radar sensor and windscreen → page 400.
- The view of the radar sensors or camera is impaired due to the weather conditions, e.g. snow, or due to detergent deposits or coatings. Clean the radar sensor and windscreen → page 400.
- The view of the radar sensors is obstructed by add-on parts, trim frames for licence plate holders or stickers. Keep the area around the radar sensor clear → page 406.
- The view of the camera is impaired by add-on parts or stickers. Keep the area around the camera window clear → page 406.
- The camera or radar sensors have been displaced or damaged, e.g. due to damage to the front of the vehicle or the windscreen. Check whether damage is visible → page 406.

- The camera was deactivated due to a high ambient temperature or prolonged exposure to direct sunlight. Automatic Emergency Braking will be available again when the camera is available again.

- Painting work or structural modifications have been performed on the front of the vehicle.

- If the problem persists, switch off the Automatic Emergency Braking system and go to a suitably qualified workshop.

The Automatic Emergency Braking system does not function as expected or is triggered unnecessarily several times

- The sensors are not working correctly. Check remedies for sensors that are not available or whose availability is restricted → page 198, *Automatic Emergency Braking starting up*.
- The system limits have been exceeded → page 195.
- Low sun or darkness.
- If the problem persists, switch off the Automatic Emergency Braking system and go to a suitably qualified workshop.

Touch panels do not react as expected

Moisture, dirt and grease can impede the functioning of the touch panels.

1. Always keep touch panels clean and dry.



Lane-Keeping System

Introduction

Within the system limits, the Lane-Keeping System helps the driver to stay in lane. The function is not designed to keep the vehicle in lane automatically, nor is it suited to this purpose.

If your vehicle moves too close to a recognised road lane marking, the Lane-Keeping System will warn the driver with a corrective steering intervention. The corrective

steering intervention can be overridden by the driver at any time.

Speed range

When road lane markings can be detected, the Lane-Keeping System is ready to intervene at speeds above around 65 km/h (around 40 mph) (system status active).

WARNING

The Lane-Keeping System is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. The Lane-Keeping System cannot detect all driving situations and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries or even death.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for staying in lane.
- Observe the system limits → page 199.
- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Your hands should always be on the steering wheel so that you can steer at any time.
- Steer the vehicle to override any unwanted intervention immediately.
- Observe the information on the instrument cluster display and respond according to the prompts, if permitted by the traffic situation.

System limits of the Lane-Keeping System

 Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 198.

Limits of the sensors

The Lane-Keeping System detects the road lane markings by means of the camera behind the windscreen.

 Pay attention to the limits of the camera → page 176. Always pay due attention and intervene yourself if necessary.

Road lane markings not recognised, or not recognised correctly

The Lane-Keeping System cannot recognise all lane markings correctly. If road lane markings are not detected or are incorrectly detected as such, this can result in no system assistance being provided or undesired interventions by the Lane-Keeping System. In addition to the situations described in the section on the camera limits, this can also happen in the following situations, for example:

- If there are no road lane markings present.
- If your driving style is very dynamic.
- When you are not driving on motorways or good country roads.
- On poor roads or if there are road structures or objects.
- In the event of reflections and glare effects.

Always pay due attention and intervene yourself if necessary and immediately override an undesired system intervention. Switch off the Lane-Keeping System temporarily if necessary.

Lane-Keeping System not ready to perform control interventions

The Lane-Keeping System is not ready to perform control interventions under the following conditions (passive system status):

- The driving speed is less than around 60 km/h (around 35 mph) or more than around 215 km/h (around 135 mph).
- The Lane-Keeping System has not detected a road lane marking.
- If the lanes are too narrow or in tight bends.
- Temporarily if the driving style is very dynamic.
- If the driver vigorously steers the vehicle to override a system intervention.
- If the Automatic Emergency Braking system performs a control intervention.

The Lane-Keeping System is not ready to perform control interventions on at least one side in the following situations:

- If the direction indicator is switched on in the direction of the planned lane change.
- On the inside of a bend that you are intentionally driving through well to the inside.

Interference

⚠ WARNING

The effectiveness of systems can be adversely affected if components and systems are retrofitted, e.g. by body builders. On vehicles with add-ons or modifications, the correct operation of system can then be impaired or adjusted. There is a risk of accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Have the second stage manufacturer confirm that the systems are functioning properly.

Driving with the Lane-Keeping System

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 198.

Switching on and off

Depending on country, the Lane-Keeping System is always switched on when the ignition is switched on. You can also switch the Lane-Keeping System on and off manually and view the current activation status.

On the display of the instrument cluster:

1. Press the **VIEW** button on the right side of the multifunction steering wheel repeatedly until the Driver assistance view is shown in the main display area.
2. Press the **Δ** or **▽** buttons on the right side of the multifunction steering wheel to display the list of Driver assistance systems on the right side.

Or: depending on equipment, press the **OK** button to display the list of Driver assistance systems on the right side.

3. Select the Lane-Keeping System using the **Δ** or **▽** buttons and switch on or off with **OK**.

In the Infotainment system:

1. Open the Assist systems menu.
2. Switch the Lane-Keeping System on or off in the corresponding submenu.



If you switch the Lane-Keeping System off, the yellow indicator lamp will light up in the instrument cluster, depending on country.



If there is a system fault, the Lane-Keeping System can switch itself off automatically.

Displays

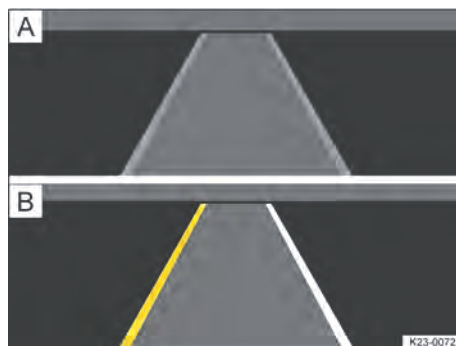


Fig. 122 On the instrument cluster display: displays of the Lane-Keeping System (illustration).

- A** Grey line: road lane marking detected. The system is not ready to intervene on the side shown.
- B** Yellow line: road lane marking detected. System regulates on the side displayed. White line: road lane marking detected. The system is ready to intervene on the side shown.

With some equipment levels, additional details about the road lane marking may also be shown on the instrument cluster display, e.g. dotted lane markings.

Depending on the driving situation, the following indicator lamps light up:

 System switched on, passive and not ready to perform control interventions.

 System active and ready to intervene on at least one side.

 System is actively intervening on the shown side (corrective steering intervention).

 If the Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring is actively performing a control intervention, there is no steering intervention and there is no display from the Lane-Keeping System.

Driver intervention prompt

If there is no steering activity, a corresponding display is shown on the instrument cluster display and acoustic warnings sound.

If you do not react to this, Driver State Assist will be activated, depending on the vehicle equipment.

Independently of the steering activity, a corresponding display is also shown on the instrument cluster display in combination with acoustic warnings if a corrective steering intervention is performed for an extended time.

Steering wheel vibration

You can select the **Steering wheel vibration** option in the Assist systems menu of the Infotainment system. In this case, the steering wheel will vibrate if the vehicle drives across a detected road lane marking when the Lane-Keeping System is active.

Troubleshooting

 Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 198.

Lane-Keeping System not available

The indicator lamp lights up yellow. A message will also appear on the instrument cluster display.

- The camera window is dirty. Clean the windscreen → page 400.

- The view of the camera is impaired due to the weather conditions, e.g. snow, or due to detergent deposits or coatings. Clean the windscreen → page 400.

- The view of the camera is impaired by add-on parts or stickers. Keep the area around the camera window clear → page 406.

- The camera has been displaced or damaged, e.g. due to damage to the windscreen. Check whether damage is visible → page 406.

- The camera was deactivated due to a high ambient temperature or prolonged exposure to direct sunlight. The Lane-Keeping System will be available again when the camera is available again. Switch off and restart the engine.

- Fault or malfunction. Switch off and restart the engine.

- If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

 It may take several seconds before a system error is detected once the ignition is switched on.

 If the Lane-Keeping System is not available, Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring is also not available.

The system behaves differently than expected

1. Do not attach any objects to the steering wheel.

Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring

Introduction

Within the system limits, Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring allows the vehicle to maintain a distance from the vehicle in front that has been preselected by the driver and stay in the preferred position within the lane (Lane Centring).

Is the vehicle equipped with Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring?

If you can select Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring with the  button on the left-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel, the vehicle is equipped with Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring.

Speed range

You can set a speed between 20 km/h (15 mph) and 210 km/h (130 mph). This speed range may differ in certain countries.

System limits of Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring

Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring detects driving situations using the same sensors as Adaptive Cruise Control and the Lane-Keeping System.

 Observe the system limits and messages relating to the Adaptive Cruise Control and Lane-Keeping System. Always pay due attention and intervene yourself if necessary.

Driving with Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring

The Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring function automatically controls the speed and steers the vehicle. Within the system limits, Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring can also brake the vehicle behind a stopping vehicle in front to a standstill and then drive off again automatically.

You can override control by Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring at any time. Control will be cancelled if you brake. If you accelerate, Distance Indication is interrupted for the duration of the acceleration process; Lane Centring remains active. This applies up to a speed of around 250 km/h (around 155 mph).

Displays

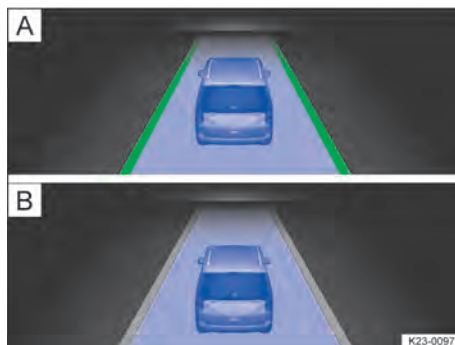


Fig. 123 On the instrument cluster display: displays when control is active (illustration)

- A** Green line: Lane Centring active.
- B** Grey line: Lane Centring passive.

With some equipment levels, additional details of any lane boundaries may also be displayed, such as dashed road lane markings and road users driving in front.

One of the following indicator lamps will light up in the instrument cluster depending on the driving situation:

-  Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring active, Distance Indication and Lane Centring active.
-  Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring passive, Distance Indication active, Lane Centring passive.
-  Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring deactivated, no control.

Driver intervention prompt

If you take your hands off the steering wheel, the system requests you to take over steering of the vehicle after a few seconds with a display on the instrument cluster display and acoustic warnings.

If you do not react, Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring will be deactivated.

Alternatively, Driver State Assist will be activated, depending on the vehicle equipment. If Driver State Assist is not available, Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring will be deactivated.

⚠ WARNING

Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring cannot detect all driving situations and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries or even death.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Observe the system limits of Adaptive Cruise Control → page 187 and the Lane-Keeping System → page 199.
- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Your hands should always be on the steering wheel so that you can steer at any time.
- Take control of the vehicle immediately if a driver intervention prompt appears on the instrument cluster display or if Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring does not reduce the speed sufficiently.
- Apply the brakes if the vehicle starts rolling unintentionally, e.g. after a driver intervention prompt.

Operating Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 201.



Fig. 124 Left-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel.

Switching on

1. Press the  button on the left-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel repeatedly until the Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring is selected.
2. Press the **OK** button on the right-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel or wait for a short time.

Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring is switched on.

Starting control

If you switch from Adaptive Cruise Control to Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring, the vehicle will change to the following system statuses in Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring mode, depending on the driving situation:

— If Adaptive Cruise Control is controlling the vehicle, Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring maintains the current speed and preset distance from the vehicle in front (passive system status).

If road lane markings are detected, the vehicle is simultaneously kept in lane by steering movements (active system status).

— If Adaptive Cruise Control is not controlling the vehicle, Adaptive Cruise Control

with Lane Centring will be switched on but will remain deactivated.

You must start control if you were previously driving with another assist system or if Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring remains deactivated after switching on:

1. Press the **SET** button.

Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring switches to active or passive system status depending on the driving situation.

The indicator lamp corresponding to the driving situation lights up on the instrument cluster display.

Cancelling control

1. Briefly press the **RES** button.

Or: depress the brake pedal.

The set distance remains stored.

Adjusting other settings

Further operation of Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring corresponds to operation of Adaptive Cruise Control → page 188.

Troubleshooting

📖 **Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 201.**

Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring is not available or is not working as expected

The indicator lamp lights up yellow. A message will also appear on the instrument cluster display.

- There is a fault in the sensor system. Check the causes and possible remedies described in the information on Adaptive Cruise Control → page 189 or the Lane-Keeping System → page 201.
- Fault or malfunction. Switch off and restart the engine.
- The system limits have been exceeded.
- If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

Take over steering.

The indicator lamp lights up white and a message is shown on the instrument cluster display. You have let go of the steering wheel for a few seconds.

1. Take hold of the steering wheel and take over control of the vehicle.

Take over steering immediately

The warning lamp lights up red and a message is shown on the instrument cluster display. An acoustic warning sounds or the steering wheel vibrates, depending on the driving situation. You have let go of the steering wheel for an extended time or the system limits have been reached.

1. Take hold of the steering wheel immediately and take over control of the vehicle.

Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring switches itself off

— Vehicles without Driver State Assist:

- ◀ You have let go of the steering wheel for an extended time.
- Fault or malfunction. Switch off and restart the engine.
- If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

Control is cancelled unexpectedly

- You have operated a direction indicator. <

Driver State Assist

Introduction

Driver State Assist can detect driver inactivity and automatically keep the vehicle in lane or also brake it to a stop if necessary. The system can therefore actively contribute to preventing an accident or mitigating the consequences of an accident.

System limits of Driver State Assist

Driver State Assist detects driving situations using the same sensors as Adaptive Cruise Control and the Lane-Keeping System.

WARNING

Driver State Assist is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. Driver State Assist cannot detect all driving situations and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. In addition, Driver State Assist may not always independently prevent accidents. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries or even death.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Observe the system limits of Adaptive Cruise Control → page 187 and the Lane-Keeping System → page 199.
- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- If the vehicle behaves differently than expected, cancel the intervention of Driver State Assist.

Driving with Driver State Assist

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 204.**

Prerequisites

Driver State Assist is always switched on after the ignition is switched on and is ready to intervene if the following prerequisites are met:

- Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring or the Lane-Keeping System is switched on.
- The system has detected at least one road lane marking on the left or right of the vehicle.



If there is a system fault, Driver State Assist is not available.

Driver intervention prompt

Driver State Assist requests an inactive driver to take over control of the vehicle by means of acoustic warnings and a braking jolt. In addition, a message is shown on the instrument cluster display and the volume of the Infotainment system is reduced.

System intervention

One of the following warning lamps lights up in the instrument cluster display, depending on the driving situation:



System performing control intervention, Lane Centring active.



System performing control intervention, Lane Centring passive.

You can cancel the control intervention at any time by accelerating strongly, braking or steering, depending on the traffic situation.

Other road users are warned as follows while Driver State Assist is actively controlling the vehicle:

- The hazard warning lights are switched on after a short time.
- The vehicle horn sounds, depending on speed.

If the remaining stopping distance is sufficient, the vehicle will brake to a standstill if necessary.

The following actions take place as soon as the vehicle is stationary:

- The electric parking brake is switched on.
- The gear selector position **P** is engaged.
- The doors are unlocked.
- The interior lighting is switched on.
- An emergency call will be made, depending on the vehicle equipment → page 77. 

Troubleshooting

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 204.



Driver State Assist not available

Fault or malfunction. The indicator lamp lights up yellow. A message will also appear on the instrument cluster display.

1. Switch off and restart the engine.
2. If the problem persists, switch off Driver State Assist and go to a suitably qualified workshop.

The system is triggered in an undesired way or behaves differently than expected

Fault or malfunction.

- Switching off the Lane-Keeping System.
- Do not use Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring.
- Go to a suitably qualified workshop and have the system checked.

Touch panels do not react as expected

Moisture, dirt and grease can impede the functioning of the touch panels.

1. Always keep touch panels clean and dry.

Blind Spot Assist

Introduction

Blind Spot Assist assists the driver in recognising the traffic situation behind the vehicle.

Radar sensors behind the rear bumper cover monitor the area behind the vehicle. The system measures the distance and speed difference in relation to other vehicles and informs the driver by means of visual signals in the housings of the exterior mirrors.

Use Blind Spot Assist only on paved roads.

Speed range

When switched on, Blind Spot Assist is active from speeds of around 15 km/h (around 9 mph). Blind Spot Assist is deactivated at a vehicle speed below around 10 km/h (around 6 mph).

⚠ WARNING

Blind Spot Assist is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. Blind Spot Assist cannot recognise all driving situations or all objects in the surroundings and may possibly not react or may react with a delay or when not desired. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries or even death.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks and lane changes.
- Observe the system limits → page 206.
- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Your hands should always be on the steering wheel so that you can steer at any time.
- Observe the signals in the exterior mirror housings and on the instrument cluster display, and respond to the prompts.

System limits of Blind Spot Assist

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 206.

Limits of the sensors

Blind Spot Assist detects driving situations using the radar sensors in the rear area.



Observe the limits of the radar sensors → page 176 and always pay due attention.

Function limitations

In addition to the situations described in the section on the limits of the sensor system, Blind Spot Assist may not interpret

the traffic situation correctly in the following situations, for example:

- When driving in the middle of two lanes.
- When road lanes are not the same width.
- Where there are special roadside structures, e.g. high or offset crash barriers.

In addition, Blind Spot Assist does not detect stationary vehicles.

Restricted visibility

It may be hard to see the display in the exterior mirror in direct sunlight.

Calibration

The radar sensors calibrate themselves once during the first kilometres after vehicle delivery and after sensor repairs. The sensor range may be restricted during the calibration phase.

Driving with Blind Spot Assist

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 206.**

Switching on and off

Blind Spot Assist is always switched on when the ignition is switched on. You can also switch Blind Spot Assist on and off manually and view the current activation status.

On the display of the instrument cluster:

1. Press the **VIEW** button on the right side of the multifunction steering wheel repeatedly until the Driver assistance view is shown in the main display area.
2. Press the **Δ** or **▽** buttons on the right side of the multifunction steering wheel to display the list of Driver assistance systems on the right side.

Or: depending on equipment, press the **OK** button to display the list of Driver assistance systems on the right side.

3. Select Blind Spot Assist using the **Δ** or **▽** buttons and switch on or off with **OK**.

In the Infotainment system:

1. Open the Assist systems menu.

2. Switch Blind Spot Assist on or off in the corresponding submenu.

When the system is switched on, the yellow indicator lamp  in the exterior mirror housing lights up once briefly.

 If there is a system fault, Blind Spot Assist can switch itself off automatically.

Automatic deactivation

If you use the factory-fitted towing bracket and have set up the necessary electrical connection, Blind Spot Assist switches off automatically. Once a trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle and the driver pulls away, a message appears in the instrument cluster display to inform the driver that the Blind Spot Assist has been deactivated. After you have disconnected the electrical connection, Blind Spot Assist is switched back on.

If the towing bracket is not factory-fitted, you must manually switch off Blind Spot Assist and then switch it back on again.

Displays in the exterior mirror



Fig. 125 In the exterior mirror housing: visual displays of Blind Spot Assist.

 Flashing: a vehicle is detected in the blind spot and the direction indicator is set in the direction of the detected vehicle.

 Lit up: your vehicle is being overtaken or you are overtaking another vehicle with a speed difference of up to around 15 km/h (around 9 mph).

No display will be shown if the overtaking manoeuvre is much faster.

The quicker another vehicle approaches, the earlier it will cause the display in the exterior mirror housing to light up.

Blind Spot Assist “Plus”

If the vehicle is equipped with the Lane-Keeping System and the system is switched on, it performs a corrective steering intervention to warn you when changing lanes during a potentially critical situation (information level/warning level). The steering intervention also occurs when you operate the direction indicator for the corresponding direction. If you override the steering intervention, the steering wheel vibrates to give an additional warning. For this, steering wheel vibration must be activated in the Assist systems menu in the Infotainment system.

Brightness

The brightness of the visual display will automatically adapt to the light levels.

Depending on the equipment, you can adjust the basic brightness of the display in the Assist systems menu in the Infotainment system. Blind Spot Assist is not active during the setting procedure.

Troubleshooting

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 206.**



Fault in Blind Spot Assist system

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster display lights up yellow. The yellow central warning lamp  also lights up.

1. The boot lid or at least one rear door is open. If possible, close the boot lid or rear doors.
2. Fault or malfunction. Switch off and restart the engine.
3. If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

No sensor visibility, fault message, system switches itself off

- Clean the radar sensors and remove any stickers or accessories from the radar sensors or bumper → page 402.
- Check for any visible damage.
- If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

The system behaves differently than expected

- The radar sensors are dirty. Clean the radar sensors → page 402.
- The radar sensors are covered by water.
- The view of the radar sensors is impaired by the weather, e.g. by snow, or by dirt, cleaning agent residue or coatings. Clean the radar sensors → page 402.
- The system limits have been exceeded → page 206.
- The vehicle is damaged in the area of the radar sensors, e.g. caused by parking collisions. Check for any visible damage → page 406.
- The view of the radar sensors is impaired by add-on parts, bicycle carrier systems or stickers. Keep the area around the radar sensors clear → page 406.
- Painting work has been performed or structural modifications have been made in the area of the radar sensors, at the rear of the vehicle or on the running gear.
- Adhesive tinted window films have been added to the side windows after delivery.
- If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

Touch panels do not react as expected

Moisture, dirt and grease can impede the functioning of the touch panels.

1. Always keep touch panels clean and dry.

Parking and manoeuvring

Stopping the vehicle

Parking the vehicle

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
On vehicles with a manual gearbox, either *fully* depress or disengage the clutch.
2. With an automatic transmission, engage the parking lock **P**.
3. Switch on the electric parking brake.
4. On uphill and downhill slopes, turn the steering wheel so that the vehicle will roll against the kerb if it starts to move.
5. Stop the engine and switch off the ignition.
The  indicator lamp in the instrument cluster display lights up red → .
6. If the vehicle has a manual gearbox, engage 1st gear on level ground and on uphill gradients or reverse gear on downhill gradients and release the clutch pedal.
7. Release the brake.
8. Turn the steering wheel slightly if necessary to engage the steering lock.
9. Get out of the vehicle → . Pay attention to other road users.
10. Take all vehicle keys with you and lock the vehicle.

WARNING

If the vehicle is not parked properly it can roll away even on a slight gradient. There is a risk of accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the electric parking brake is switched on and that the  indicator lamp lights up red in the instrument cluster display.
- Always follow the described sequence when parking the vehicle.

WARNING

If children, people requiring assistance or animals are left unattended in the vehicle,

they could accidentally set the vehicle in motion or be exposed to very high or low temperatures. There is a risk of accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never leave children, people requiring assistance or animals unattended in the vehicle.

Parking spaces and surrounding area

To avoid damage and dangerous situations, always park the vehicle in a suitable parking space → .

NOTICE

The vehicle can slip away on uneven, loose, slippery or icy surfaces and may not be held securely even if the electric parking brake is switched on. This could result in damage to the vehicle.

- Always park the vehicle on a level and suitable surface.

NOTICE

Low-lying vehicle components such as bumpers, spoilers and parts of the running gear can collide with obstacles protruding from the ground when driving over them. The vehicle may be damaged.

- Drive carefully over drives, ramps, kerbs, borders and dips.

Manoeuvring in a parking space

You can manoeuvre the vehicle in a parking space at low speed if you have already opened the door and unfastened the seat belt.

- ✓ The Auto Hold function was switched off.

1. Operate the foot brake and switch off the electric parking brake.
2. Shift to gear selector position **D/S** or **R**.
3. Manoeuvre the vehicle carefully.
4. Before getting out, switch on the electric parking brake and engage the parking lock **P** → .

NOTICE

If you leave the vehicle incorrectly, the electric parking brake may switch on automatically only with a delay. The vehicle may

move slightly. An obstacle that is very close can damage the vehicle.

- Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the electric parking brake is switched on and that the (P) indicator lamp lights up red in the digital instrument cluster.

Rear seat reminder

The function depends on the vehicle equipment.

When the ignition is switched off, a text message in the Infotainment system reminds you not to leave any passengers behind in the rear seats → ⚠.

If a rear door was used before the journey, a text message is also displayed in the instrument cluster and an acoustic warning may sound. The acoustic warning can be activated and deactivated using the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system.



Rear seat reminder muted.

Operating the electric parking brake



Fig. 126 In the centre console: button for the electric parking brake.

The electric parking brake secures the vehicle to prevent it from rolling away. The vehicle can be braked in an emergency.

Switching on

1. When the vehicle is stationary, pull and hold the button for the electric parking brake (P) → Fig. 126.

(P) The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up red when the electric parking brake is switched on.

The indicator lamp in the (P) → Fig. 126 button lights up yellow.

Switching off

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Depress the brake pedal and press the (P) → Fig. 126 button.

The indicator lamp in the (P) button and the red indicator lamp (P) in the instrument cluster go out.

Automatic switch-on if the driver does not leave the vehicle correctly

In vehicles with automatic transmission, the electric parking brake may switch itself on automatically if it is detected that the driver has not left the vehicle correctly → ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle is not parked properly it can roll away even on a slight gradient. This can result in accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always follow the described sequence when parking the vehicle.
- Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the electric parking brake is switched on and that the indicator lamp (P) lights up red on the instrument cluster when the ignition is switched off.

Automatic switch-off when driving off

If the driver door is closed and a gear selector position is then engaged and the accelerator pressed, the electric parking brake will release automatically upon moving off → ⚠.

Manual gearbox: on vehicles with manual gearbox, the electric parking brake switches off when the clutch is depressed fully.

⚠ WARNING

If the accelerator is unintentionally pressed when the electric parking brake is engaged, the electric parking brake may release. The vehicle starts to move. This can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- If the vehicle is to be kept stationary, do not press the accelerator when the engine is running and a gear is engaged.

Moving off on uphill gradients with increased vehicle weight

If higher engine power is required when moving off on a gradient, the electric parking brake can be prevented from switching off automatically for a maximum of 30 seconds by pulling the  button.

This makes pulling away with a heavy trailer load easier.

1. Select a gear position.
Manual gearbox: engage a gear.
2. Press the accelerator.
3. Pull the  button.
4. Release the button when sufficient engine power is available.
The electric parking brake is switched off.

Holding force on steep gradients

If the slope of the parking location is too steep, it may not be possible for the vehicle to be held continuously.

- (P) The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster display flashes red and a text message is displayed.

1. Park the vehicle in another parking space with less of a gradient.

The vehicle is not held securely until the  indicator lamp lights up continuously.

Deactivating the roll-away protection

Manual gearbox: this function is not available.

In certain situations, for example, for towing or in a car wash, the vehicle must remain able to roll and the electric parking brake must not activate automatically. For this, the roll-away protection can be temporarily deactivated in selector lever position **N** → .

Prerequisites

- ✓ Vehicle is stationary.
- ✓ Ignition is switched on.
- ✓ Electric parking brake was switched off.

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Select neutral position **N**.
3. Confirm the text message **The roll-away protection will be deactivated.** in the Infotainment system.
4. To activate the roll-away protection again, press the brake pedal and engage a gear selector position.

Or: switch the ignition off and then back on again.

The automatic text message when the neutral position **N** is engaged can be deactivated in the vehicle settings in the Infotainment system. The roll-away protection can also be deactivated in this menu.

ⓘ NOTICE

If the electric parking brake is automatically switched on in an automatic car wash or when towing away, the vehicle may be damaged.

- Deactivate the roll-away protection in these situations.
- Leave the vehicle key in the vehicle. Otherwise, the ignition will switch off automatically and the roll-away protection will be activated again.

Using a car wash

- To prevent the electric parking brake from switching on automatically, deactivate the roll-away protection in the Infotainment system.
- Manual gearbox: to prevent the electric parking brake from switching on automatically, press the brake pedal and press and hold the  button until the ignition has been switched off.

Emergency braking function

The emergency braking function should be used only in those situations where the vehicle

hicle cannot be stopped using the foot brake → .

1. Pull and hold the  button → Fig. 126.
2. The vehicle brakes strongly. An acoustic signal sounds at the same time.

The electric parking brake is switched on when the vehicle comes to a stop.

WARNING

The electric parking brake is not designed to brake the vehicle, as this increases the braking distance. This can result in accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always use the foot brake and never the electric parking brake to brake the vehicle, except in an emergency.

 Noises may be audible when the electric parking brake is switched on or off. This can also be the case with an automatic test.

Troubleshooting

Electric parking brake fault

The warning lamp  lights up red. A text message is displayed.

There is a system fault. The electric parking brake does not switch on completely or does not switch off when driving.

Do not drive on!

1. Switch the ignition off and then back on again.
2. Operate the  button again.

The vehicle is safely parked if the  indicator lamp lights up red in the digital instrument cluster without any other warning lamp lighting up.

Red warning lamp remains lit

1.  **Do not drive on!**
2. Park the vehicle on flat ground if possible and secure against rolling away by engaging the parking lock **P**.
3. Seek expert assistance.

Electric parking brake fault

The yellow indicator lamp  lights up continuously. A text message is displayed.

There is a system fault.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop.

/ **Button for electric parking brake faulty or not working properly**

When the button for the electric parking brake is operated, the  indicator lamp flashes red and the yellow warning lamp lights up continuously.

The button may be faulty or it is operated for longer than around 30 seconds.

1. If the button was operated for too long, hold the vehicle with the brake pedal and release the button.
2. To park the vehicle safely, switch on the electric parking brake again and check whether the indicator lamp lights up continuously.

Or: if the fault is still displayed, engage a gear.

3. If the button is faulty, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

The electric parking brake is working but does not switch itself off

— The 12-volt vehicle battery is discharged.

Vehicle blocks when moving off with clutch pedal and gear engaged

The electric parking brake does not switch itself off.

Manual gearbox: the vehicle was parked with an engaged gear. After starting the engine, the driver moves off with the engaged gear and allows the clutch to engage. The electric parking brake does not switch off automatically and the vehicle blocks when moving off.

1. Hold the vehicle with the foot brake and disengage the gear.
2. From neutral position **N**, select first or reverse gear and repeat the moving-off procedure.

Exit Warning

If another road user is approaching from the rear, the Exit Warning system issues a warning about obstacles when the doors are opened.

How the system works



Fig. 127 In the exterior mirror housings: display of the Exit Warning system (illustration).

Radar sensors behind the rear bumper cover monitor the area behind the vehicle. When cyclists are approaching, for example, the indicator lamps in the housing of the exterior mirror light up yellow → Fig. 127.

If the door is opened, the indicator lamps first flash briefly and a warning signal sounds → ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

The Exit Warning is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and works exclusively within the system limits. For stationary, slow-moving or very fast approaching objects, the indicator may not light up or may not light up in time. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- When opening doors, pay attention to the vehicle surroundings, e.g. pedestrians or cyclists.

Prerequisites

- ✓ Vehicle is stationary.

- ✓ The function was switched on in the Infotainment system.

The Exit Warning system remains active for approximately 3 minutes after the ignition is switched off or the doors are opened for the first time.

1. Switch on the ignition to activate the function again.

Switching on and off

Depending on the country, the Exit Warning system is always switched on when the ignition is switched on.

1. Tap the  function button in the Infotainment system.

The menu for parking systems is opened.

2. Tap the  function button.
3. Switch the Exit Warning system on or off.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the Exit Warning can be switched on or off in the vehicle settings.

 Depending on country, this setting can be saved in the user accounts of the personalisation function and can therefore change automatically when the user account is changed.

Calibration

The radar sensors calibrate themselves once during the first kilometres after vehicle delivery and after sensor repairs. The sensor range may be restricted during the calibration phase.

Driving with a trailer

If a trailer is electrically connected to a factory-fitted towing bracket, the Exit Warning system is switched off. After disconnecting the electrical trailer connection, the Exit Warning system is automatically switched on again.

The Exit Warning system must be switched off and on manually if a non-factory-fitted towing bracket is used.



Auto Hold function



Fig. 128 In the centre console: button for Auto Hold.

The Auto Hold function secures the vehicle against rolling away when stationary, without the vehicle having to be held by the foot brake.

The vehicle has the Auto Hold function depending on the vehicle equipment.

Prerequisites

- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ The driver is in the vehicle.

When the gearbox is in neutral, the Auto Hold function does not switch on or will switch off. The vehicle cannot be kept held securely → ⚠.

Switching on

1. Press the **AUTO HOLD** button → Fig. 128.

The indicator lamp in the **AUTO HOLD** button lights up yellow.

Auto Hold is ready for use, but the vehicle is not necessarily stationary → ⚠.

The Auto Hold function remains switched on when the ignition is switched on again.

Keeping the vehicle stationary with the Auto Hold function

1. Bring the vehicle to a standstill using the brake with the Auto Hold function switched on → page 209.

2. *Manual gearbox*: either keep the clutch fully depressed or shift to neutral.
3. Release the brake.

The vehicle is being kept stationary by the Auto Hold function → ⚠.

AUTO HOLD The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster lights up green when the Auto Hold function is active.

On vehicles with analogue instrument cluster: the green  indicator lamp lights up.

The hold function stops if the vehicle is driven off or if the prerequisites for the Auto Hold function are not met.

Switching off

1. Press the **AUTO HOLD** button → Fig. 128.

The indicator lamp in the **AUTO HOLD** button goes out.

The electric parking brake switches on automatically to stop the vehicle securely.

However, the electric parking brake will **not** switch on if the brake pedal is pressed when the Auto Hold function is switched off → ⚠.

Switching off the Auto Hold function temporarily using the button

When manoeuvring, it may be necessary to turn the Auto Hold function off once temporarily to enable the vehicle to roll more easily.

1. With the engine switched on, depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the  button.

The Auto Hold function is switched off.

The Auto Hold function will be reactivated as soon as the brake pedal is depressed when the vehicle has come to a standstill.

WARNING

The Auto Hold function is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and works exclusively within the system limits. The vehicle cannot be held securely under all circumstances, for example on slopes or slippery surfaces. If you do not

pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Make sure that the indicator lamp for the Auto Hold function on the instrument cluster display lights up if the vehicle is to be held securely.
- Never leave the vehicle while the engine is running, even if the Auto Hold function is active.

! NOTICE

In car washes where the vehicle is towed, an active Auto Hold function can lock the wheels. This could lead to vehicle damage.

- Switch off the Auto Hold function before driving into a car wash.

Information on the parking systems

Safety information

Limits of sensors and cameras

There are various sensors and cameras on the vehicle which detect and monitor the area around the vehicle by means of ultrasound, radar waves and optical systems. The various parking systems use different combinations of the sensors. Common to all sensors is the fact that they are subject to technical and physical limits → ⚠.

- Some objects may not be detected under certain circumstances, e.g. trailer drawbars, thin bars, fences, posts, trees, very low or high obstacles, as well as open or opening boot lids → ⓘ.
- Environmental and weather conditions, e.g. heavy rain, snowfall, severe temperature changes, can impair operation.
- The detection ranges of the parking systems have blind spots in which obstacles and people are not registered.
- In some cases, dirt or ice and water on the sensors and cameras could be registered as an obstacle or impair detection

of objects. The sensor visibility may be impaired by dirt and snow or also residue from cleaning agents or coatings
→ page 402.

- External sources of sound and certain surfaces on objects and clothing may influence the sensors' signals. In certain circumstances, the systems will be unable to detect or properly detect people and objects.
- It may be difficult or impossible to see objects such as narrow posts or railings on the screen because of its low resolution or poor light conditions.
- The cameras show only two-dimensional images on the screen. The lack of depth of field means that potholes and protruding objects on the ground may only be detected with difficulty, or may not be detected at all.

⚠ WARNING

The parking systems is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operate only within the limits of the respective system. The parking systems cannot detect all driving situations and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries or even death.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- When parking, always look in the direction of travel and observe the vehicle surroundings.
- Pay special attention to small children, animals and objects when parking.
- Do not allow the parking system displays to distract you from the traffic around you.
- Please note that the parking system may not react if an obstacle is approached too fast and will then not issue a warning.
- Ensure that your speed and driving style are always appropriate for the current visibility, weather and road/traffic conditions.

! NOTICE

The vehicle can be damaged by obstacles when manoeuvring in parking spaces without kerb borders.

- Observe a safety distance of around 50 cm (around 20 in) from walls and buildings.

 Practise using the parking systems in a traffic-calmed area or car park to familiarise yourself with the systems and their functions.

Prerequisites

General information

The following prerequisites must be met so that the sensors and cameras are best able to detect the surroundings of the vehicle and display this information on the Infotainment system:

- ✓ The doors are closed.
- ✓ Exterior mirrors are not folded in.
- ✓ The sensors or cameras are not covered by add-on parts or trim frames for licence plates.
- ✓ The surrounding area has a flat surface.
- ✓ Vehicle does not have a heavy load at the rear or on one side.
- ✓ Engine running.
- ✓ Brake support systems are switched on → page 166.

 The parking function and the acoustic warnings will be deactivated if other functions are operated on the Infotainment system during a parking operation.

Finding a suitable parking space

Active Park Assist has system-related limits. For example, if you are on a tight bend, Active Park Assist cannot help you to park the vehicle or drive out of parking spaces.

To ensure that a suitable parking space can be displayed and detected correctly, the following prerequisites must be met:

- ✓ The length and width of the parking space must be larger than the vehicle

dimensions and offer sufficient space for manoeuvring.

- ✓ Distance when driving past the parking space: 0.5 to 2 metres (1.6 ft to 6.5 ft).
- ✓ The speed when driving past the parking space should not exceed 40 km/h (25 mph) for parallel parking spaces or 20 km/h (12 mph) for perpendicular parking spaces.
- ✓ For parking spaces parallel to the road, the length of the parking space measures at least vehicle length + 0.8 metres (2.6 ft) and for parking spaces perpendicular to the road, the width of the parking space measures at least vehicle width + 0.95 metres (3 ft).
- ✓ Speed when parking: maximum 7 km/h (4 mph). Automatic braking intervention can occur.

The parking manoeuvre can be continued after the automatic brake intervention.

Automatic brake intervention occurs a maximum of once per move. A parking manoeuvre will be terminated if a speed of approximately 7 km/h (4 mph) is exceeded.

Automatic braking intervention

The automatic braking intervention of a parking system is designed to reduce the possible damage due to a collision if an obstacle is detected during the parking manoeuvre.

Depending on the equipment level, the vehicle has parking systems with a manoeuvring or emergency braking function → .

! WARNING

The automatic braking intervention function is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. In some driving situations, the automatic braking intervention may be restricted or undesired or there may be no intervention at all. If you

do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries or even death.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Use the foot brake to brake the vehicle in a hazardous situation before an obstacle.
- React promptly to the warnings issued by the parking systems, e.g. parking sensors.

When is the automatic braking intervention available?

- ✓ A parking system was switched on.
- ✓ Parking Sensors: manoeuvre braking is activated in the Infotainment system.
- ✓ An obstacle is detected by the system.
- ✓ The vehicle does not exceed a maximum speed of around 10 km/h (6 mph) when manoeuvring.

The automatic braking intervention does not take place if the Parking Sensors have been activated automatically when driving forwards → page 220.

What happens when an automatic braking intervention takes place?

-  Automatic braking intervention by manoeuvre braking. Hold the vehicle with the foot brake.
-  Automatic braking intervention by Cross Traffic Alert. Hold the vehicle with the foot brake.

A text message may also be shown on the Infotainment system or instrument cluster display, depending on the vehicle equipment.

Manoeuvre braking of the parking sensors

The manoeuvre braking function is automatically activated every time the ignition is switched on.

Manoeuvre braking can be deactivated temporarily in the Parking Sensors settings in the third-generation Infotainment system.

 Manoeuvre braking deactivated.

Things to note for trailer towing

If an electrically connected trailer is hitched to the factory-fitted towing bracket, the following restrictions apply → page 297:

- The manoeuvre braking function is deactivated automatically.

The parking system must be manually deactivated for trailer towing if a non-factory-fitted towing bracket is used.

 If the automatic braking intervention occurs too frequently, switch off the parking system, e.g. when driving off-road or driving into a garage.

 If the manoeuvre braking function of the Parking Sensors has intervened, the function is inactive for 5 metres in the same direction of travel or is operational again after a change in the direction of travel.

 The parking manoeuvre is terminated after emergency braking by Active Park Assist.

 After Cross Traffic Alert has performed emergency braking, another automatic braking intervention may only take place after 10 seconds.

 The automatic braking intervention function is deactivated when doors are open. 

Troubleshooting

The parking system is not responding as expected

This could have various causes:

- The prerequisites for system operation are not met → page 216.
- The sensors or the camera are dirty or iced-up → page 402.
- The ultrasound signal is subject to interference from external noise sources, e.g. pneumatic drill or cobblestones.
- Changes have been made to the paintwork or structural modifications have been made in the area of the sensors or

the camera, e.g. on the vehicle front end or the running gear.

- Only the scanned area to the front of the vehicle is shown on the Infotainment system display in vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket and a trailer with an electrical connection to the vehicle.
- The vehicle is damaged in the area around the sensors or the camera, e.g. caused by parking collisions.
- The detection range of the sensors or camera is blocked by add-on parts, e.g. bicycle carriers.

Fault displays

1. Also observe the text messages in the instrument cluster display and the Infotainment system.

NOTICE

If the parking system is still used even though there is a fault, this can lead to vehicle damage.

- If a fault occurs in the parking system, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

No sensor or camera view, or the parking system has been switched off

The sensor area is switched off permanently if a sensor fails. The affected sensor area can be displayed by the  symbol and a grey image segment  in the Infotainment system. The parking system is switched off completely if necessary.

If there is a fault in the Parking Sensors, an acoustic signal will sound for several seconds when it is switched on. A text notification may also be shown on the instrument cluster display.

1. Check whether one of the listed causes is present.
2. Switch the system on again once you have rectified the source of the fault.
3. If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

Active Park Assist is active and the vehicle brakes

In some countries, Active Park Assist can assist the driver with an automatic braking

intervention in certain situations
→ page 216.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and certain conditions, e.g. weather, load or inclination of the vehicle, Active Park Assist can automatically brake the vehicle before an obstacle. Following this intervention, the driver must depress the brake pedal.

The parking manoeuvre is ended if an automatic braking intervention occurs.

Active Park Assist is active and the parking manoeuvre is automatically cancelled

Active Park Assist automatically cancels a parking procedure if one of the following criteria is met:

- The  function button is pressed.
- The driver intervenes using the steering wheel.
- The driver door is opened.
- The time limit or number of manoeuvres for parking are exceeded.
- TCS is switched off or is taking corrective action.
- There is a fault in the system.

Start the parking procedure again
→ page 225.

Active Park Assist is active and supports steering movements when the vehicle is stationary

If Active Park Assist attempts to turn the steering wheel when the vehicle is stationary, the white symbol  appears on the instrument cluster display.

1. Depress the brake pedal.

Active Park Assist parks inaccurately after a wheel change

If Active Park Assist parks inaccurately after a wheel change (e.g. vehicle is too far away or too close to the kerb), it may be necessary for the system to adopt the new wheel circumferences.

1. Drive a longer distance with the vehicle, including curves.

Active Park Assist learns the new wheel circumferences automatically. 

Parking sensors

Introduction

The Parking Sensors assist the driver when manoeuvring and parking.

How the system works

The Parking Sensors at the front and rear of the vehicle detect the distance from an obstacle → page 8.

The Parking Sensors warn about an obstacle by means of colour segments on the Infotainment system screen and acoustic signals → Fig. 129. The closer the vehicle drives towards an obstacle, the closer the segment will move towards the vehicle as shown on the display → ⚠.

An automatic braking intervention can take place if the driver does not react when an obstacle is approaching → page 216.

⚠ WARNING

The parking sensors are not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operate only within the limits of the respective system. The parking sensors may possibly not detect some obstacles and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- React promptly to the visual and acoustic warnings of the parking sensors.
- Use the foot brake to brake the vehicle before an obstacle.

! NOTICE

Visual and acoustic warnings are given only for obstacles in the vehicle path. The collision area has been reached when the penultimate segment is displayed on the Parking Sensors screen or a continuous acoustic warning sounds, if not before. There is a risk of damage to the vehicle.

- Always brake the vehicle in good time before an obstacle.

! NOTICE

With some equipment levels, distances to obstacles in the side areas are also displayed. An obstacle entering these areas from the outside will not be displayed. This may result in damage to the vehicle.

- Drive the vehicle a few metres forwards or backwards in order to scan and display the side areas in full.

Displays



Fig. 129 On the Infotainment system: obstacle detection and steering wheel angle for Parking Sensors (illustration).

-  Red-coloured image segment: close obstacle. **Vehicle is at risk. Brake.**
-  Yellow-coloured image segment: obstacle in the vehicle path. **Vehicle is at risk. Adjust the steering wheel angle.**
-  Grey-coloured image segment: obstacle outside the path of the vehicle or faulty sensor area.
-  Manoeuvre braking deactivated or faulty.
-  Mute acoustic signals.

Settings for the Parking Sensors

Additional settings for the Parking Sensors are possible in the Infotainment system, e.g. automatic activation when driving forward, manoeuvre braking or volume of the acoustic signals.

1. Tap the touch control  for parking functions or the  function button for the parking menu in the Infotainment system.
2. Tap the  function button in the Infotainment system.

3. Select a setting, e.g. automatic activation when driving forwards or manoeuvre braking.

Driving with a trailer

The rear and side Parking Sensors are not switched on if a trailer is electrically connected:

- No warnings are given for obstacles.
- The manoeuvre braking function is also automatically deactivated.

 Some Parking Sensors settings, e.g. the volume of the acoustic signals, can be stored in the personalised user accounts. The settings change automatically when the user account is changed.

Switching the Parking Sensors on and off

 **Please refer to  and  at the start of the chapter on page 219.**

Switching on

1. Select reverse gear.

Or: tap the touch control for parking functions  or the  function button on the Infotainment system. Then tap the  or  function button on the Infotainment system if necessary.

Or: vehicle rolls backwards.

Switching off

1. Disengage an engaged reverse gear.
2. Then tap the home button  or the  function button in the upper area of the Infotainment system.

Or: switch on the electric parking brake.

The Parking Sensors also switch off if the vehicle is driven forwards at higher speed.

Automatic activation when driving forwards

The function can be activated and deactivated in the Parking Sensors settings in the Infotainment system.

The Parking Sensors are switched on automatically when an obstacle is encountered

in the front area, such as in heavy traffic, or when driving into a garage.

1. Tap the touch panel for parking functions  to close the Parking Sensors display again.

Or: tap the home button  or  function button on the third-generation Infotainment system.

 No automatic braking intervention takes place → page 216.

Automatic activation is available again under the following conditions:

- The vehicle was accelerated to over a speed of around 15 km/h (around 9 mph) and then slowed down below this speed again.
- **Or:** the ignition is switched off then back on again.
- **Or:** a position was selected from the parking lock position **P**.

Or: switch on the electric parking brake. 

Troubleshooting

 **Please refer to  and  at the start of the chapter on page 219.**

No sensor visibility or Parking Sensors fault

The sensor area is switched off permanently if a sensor fails. The  symbol indicates the affected sensor area in the Infotainment system.

If there is a fault in the Parking Sensors, an acoustic signal will sound for several seconds when it is switched on. A text message may also be displayed.

If necessary, the Parking Sensors are switched off completely and the symbol is displayed.

1. Check whether there is a fault in the parking system due to an external cause.
2. Switch the system on again once you have rectified the source of the fault.
3. If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

Manoeuvre braking restricted or unavailable

A text message is displayed.

The automatic braking intervention occurs unexpectedly or unusually. If the function is switched off, there is no automatic braking intervention.

1. Check sensors on the vehicle for damage or dirt, and clean if necessary.
→ page 402
2. Switch the ignition off and then back on again.
3. If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

Rear view camera system

Introduction

The Rear View Camera in the rear of the vehicle makes it easier for the driver to see behind the vehicle and provides support for parking manoeuvres.

How the system works

The Rear View Camera shows the area behind the vehicle on the Infotainment system screen. Depending on the operating mode and equipment level, orientation lines aid the view to the rear → .

WARNING

The Rear View Camera is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and works exclusively within the system limits. Using images from the camera to estimate the distance from persons or obstacles can be inaccurate. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Note that camera lenses can enlarge and distort the field of view.

 In the camera image, the orientation lines are shown by the system regardless of the vehicle surroundings. No automatic detection of obstacles by cameras takes place. Drivers must judge for themselves whether the vehicle will fit into the parking space.

 If a trailer is connected to the factory-fitted towing bracket, all the orientation lines for the rear area are hidden in the camera image.

 You should practise parking with the Rear View Camera in a traffic-calmed area or car park with good visibility and weather conditions, so that you can familiarise yourself with the system, orientation lines and guiding functions in a safer environment.

 No orientation lines will be shown when the boot lid is open on vehicles where the camera is installed in the boot lid.

Switching the Rear View Camera on and off

 Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 221.

Switching on

1. Select reverse gear.

Or: press the touch control for parking functions  on the Infotainment system or  → page 12 and then tap the  function button on the Infotainment system.

Switching off

1. Disengage an engaged reverse gear.
2. Tap the  touch control.

The Rear View Camera also switches itself off if the vehicle is driven forwards at higher speed.

Driving into a parking space (rear view camera system with parking mode selection)

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 221.

Displays

Depending on equipment, the following views are available for the rear view camera system:



Perpendicular parking: guidelines are displayed to help with reverse parking perpendicular to the side of the road.



Crossing traffic: shows a wide-angle view of the area behind the vehicle and the side areas.



Trailer or off-road support: shows the area behind the vehicle with an enhanced zoom factor and guidelines (depending on vehicle equipment).



Red line: boundary or vehicle safety clearance.



Yellow lines: vehicle path depending on the steering angle.



Green horizontal lines: boundaries.



Enlarge the image area.

Parking mode: parking perpendicular to the road

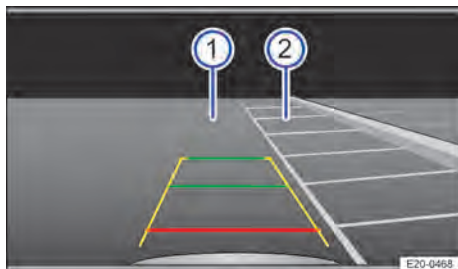


Fig. 130 Infotainment system: selecting a parking space.

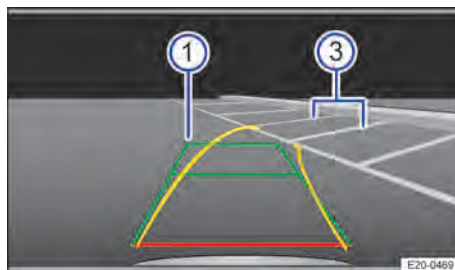


Fig. 131 Infotainment system: driving towards the selected parking space.

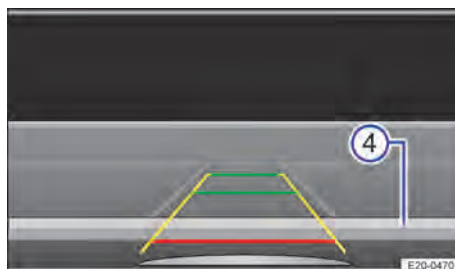


Fig. 132 Infotainment system: aligning vehicle in the parking space.

- ① Road.
- ② Parking space.
- ③ Lateral boundaries of selected parking space.
- ④ Rear limit of the parking space.

Driving into a parking space

1. Before driving past the selected parking space, tap the touch control for parking functions → page 12 or the function button on the Infotainment system.
2. Then tap the function button on the Infotainment system.
3. To select the parking mode, tap the function button on the Infotainment system.
4. Position the vehicle in front of the parking space → Fig. 130 ②.
5. Steer the vehicle so that the yellow lines lead into the parking space. The green and yellow lines must be aligned with the side limit lines → Fig. 131 ③.
6. Stop when the red line reaches the rear boundary → Fig. 132 ④.

i The system displays the orientation lines irrespective of the area surrounding the vehicle. There is no automatic obstacle detection. Drivers must judge for themselves whether the vehicle will fit into the parking space.

Parking mode: trailer support

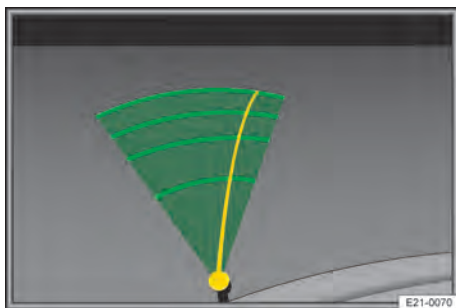


Fig. 133 Infotainment system: trailer support (illustration).

In vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket, the trailer support function can be used when approaching a trailer drawbar.

1. To select the parking mode, tap the  function button.

The rear view camera system shows the vehicle's towing bracket in the lower part of the image. Coloured guiding lines help with the manoeuvring process → Fig. 133:

-  Green lines: distance to towing bracket.
-  Yellow line: pre-calculated direction of the towing bracket depending on the angle of the steering wheel.

Troubleshooting

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 221.**

Fault in rear view camera system image

The camera image is unclear, flickers or has been blocked.

There may be a technical fault.

1. If the camera image is unclear, clean the rear view camera system → page 402.

Or: check whether there is a fault in the parking system due to an external cause → page 217.

2. If the problem persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. 

Active Park Assist

Introduction

Active Park Assist shows parking spaces that are suitable for parking and assists the driver when driving into and out of parking spaces.

Active Park Assist is an extended function of the Parking Sensors.

Active Park Assist steers the vehicle into a parking space, while the driver operates the accelerator and brake and changes gear → page 215.

WARNING

Active Park Assist is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. Active Park Assist cannot detect all driving situations and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries or even death.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Use the foot brake to slow the vehicle in a hazardous situation.

Available functions

- Displaying a suitable parking space.
- Selecting a parking mode
- Driving into suitable parallel and bay parking spaces,
- Driving out of a parallel parking space.

Please also observe the text messages in the instrument cluster display and the Infotainment system.

⚠ WARNING

If another function is operated on the Infotainment system when manoeuvring with the parking system, all active parking functions, including the acoustic warnings, will be switched off. No warnings are then given about a collision and no preventive interventions take place. This can result in accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Do not operate any other function in the Infotainment system while manoeuvring.

📢 NOTICE

Active Park Assist uses parked vehicles, the kerb and other objects as guidance. If there are obstacles that are close to the ground, this can result in damage to components located low down on the vehicle such as tyres and wheel rims.

- Pay attention to obstacles that are close to the ground when parking.
- Brake and end the parking manoeuvre if necessary.

📢 NOTICE

Any equipment that has been retrofitted to the vehicle, e.g. a bicycle carrier, can prevent Active Park Assist from functioning properly and may cause damage.

- Do not use Active Park Assist if add-on parts are fitted on the vehicle.

i Practise using Active Park Assist in a traffic-calmed area or a car park in order to familiarise yourself with the system and its functions.

i Active Park Assist **cannot** be activated if the vehicle detects an electrically connected trailer → page 297.

i When carrying out parking manoeuvres, the vehicle may be braked if the driver accelerates too strongly.

i Active Park Assist switches itself off if the driver door, sliding door or the boot lid are open.

Looking for a parking space

📖 Please refer to ⚠ and 📢 at the start of the chapter on page 223.

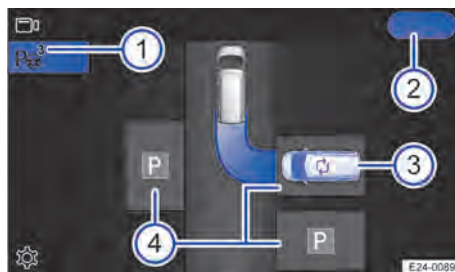


Fig. 134 Infotainment system: selecting a parking space (illustration).

- ① Number of parking spaces.
- ② Available parking mode.

Looking for a parking space

1. Tap the touch control  → page 12 or the  function button on the third-generation Infotainment system.
2. Observing the traffic around you, drive slowly past a row of parked vehicles. Active Park Assist automatically searches for possible parking spaces. The number of found parking spaces is shown on the function button  or  for Active Park Assist → Fig. 134 ①.
3. Active Park Assist automatically selects a parking space and shows this as the preferred parking space (blue vehicle) in the third-generation Infotainment system → Fig. 134 ②.
4. Decelerate to a stop and press and hold the brake pedal.

Changing the parking space

If several parking spaces along the road are displayed, you can switch to another parking space.

1. Tap the desired parking space on the third-generation Infotainment system screen → Fig. 134 ④.

A new preferred parking space is displayed (blue vehicle).

Loading a new parking space selection

1. If available, tap the  symbol on a parking space → Fig. 134 ③.

A new parking view is displayed.

 Active Park Assist can be activated subsequently. If a suitable parking space was driven past before, it is displayed.

 If Active Park Assist is not activated, any detected parking spaces → Fig. 134 ① may be shown in the Parking Sensors display.

7. To ensure the best possible parking result, always wait until Active Park Assist has finished turning the steering wheel at the end of the parking manoeuvre → .
8. If necessary, carry out several parking manoeuvres.
9. When the parking procedure has been completed, a text message will be displayed on the Infotainment system and an acoustic signal will sound.
Park the vehicle safely.

WARNING

The steering wheel is turned quickly during manoeuvring. Reaching into the steering wheel can cause serious injuries.

- Take over steering only when the system requests you to do so.
- Take over steering in a hazardous situation.

Driving into a parking space

 Please refer to  and  at the start of the chapter on page 223.

Prerequisites

- ✓ Active Park Assist has been activated.
- ✓ A parking space has been found and selected.
- ✓ Vehicle is in the starting position and the vehicle path is displayed on the third-generation Infotainment system.

Driving into a parking space

1. Hold the vehicle with the brake.
2. Tap **START** in the Infotainment system.
Or: select reverse gear **R** for a parking space at the rear of the vehicle.
3. Observe the Infotainment system displays.
4. Accelerate carefully.
5. When the text message **Steering intervention active. Check surroundings!** is displayed, Active Park Assist is correcting the current parking procedure.
If an acoustic signal sounds or a text message is displayed in the Infotainment system, brake the vehicle.
6. If a change of direction is required, a text message is displayed in the Infotainment system. Change gear selector position or gear accordingly.

 The lane that is displayed in the Infotainment system during a parking process is a schematic representation. It does not correspond to the actual parking procedure performed by Active Park Assist.

Driving into a parking space after starting to park

In a difficult parking situation in which the driver has started driving into a space but has not completed the manoeuvre, Active Park Assist can take control of the parking procedure and guide the vehicle into the parking space.

Prerequisites

- ✓ Active Park Assist is not activated.
 - ✓ The front or rear of the vehicle has been driven into a parking space.
1. Hold the vehicle with the brake pedal.
A detected parking space is shown on the  function button in the third-generation Infotainment system.
 2. To switch to Active Park Assist, tap the touch control for parking functions  in the upper part of the centre console or the  function button for the parking menu in the third-generation Infotainment system.

3. Tap **START** to start the process of driving into a parking space.

Or: select reverse gear to reverse.

4. Observe the Infotainment system displays.

i The parking manoeuvre can be restarted if the driver cancels a parking manoeuvre with reversing and activates Active Park Assist again.

7. Brake the vehicle if an acoustic signal sounds or a request to drive forwards appears on the third-generation Infotainment system.

A text message on the third-generation Infotainment system and an acoustic signal indicate that the manoeuvre for driving out of the parking space has been completed.

◀ Take over steering of the vehicle → ⚠.

Driving out of a parking space

📖 Please refer to ⚠ and ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 223.

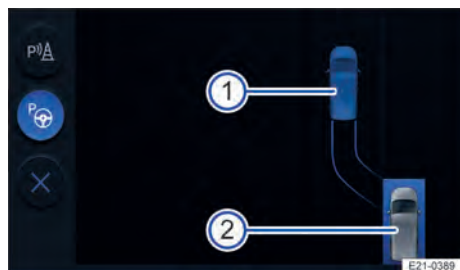


Fig. 135 Infotainment system: procedure for driving out of a parking space (illustration).

- ① Target position.
- ② Vehicle in the parking space.

1. Start the engine.
2. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
3. Activate Active Park Assist → page 225.
4. Press the direction indicator lever for the side of the street where the parking space is that you want to get out of.
5. Tap the **START** function button on the Infotainment system screen or engage reverse gear.

The procedure for driving out of a space starts and the vehicle takes over steering.

Observe the displays and prompts on the third-generation Infotainment system.

6. Accelerate carefully if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

When driving out of a parking space, there is a danger that the vehicle could drive into moving traffic. This can lead to an accident and to serious or fatal injuries.

- Drive the vehicle out of the parking space only when permitted by the traffic situation.

i The lane that is displayed in the Infotainment system during a parking process is a schematic representation. It does not correspond to the actual parking procedure performed by Active Park Assist. ◀

Troubleshooting

📖 Please refer to ⚠ and ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 223.

Active Park Assist cancels parking manoeuvre automatically

Active Park Assist will cancel the parking manoeuvre if one of the following situations occurs:

- is pressed.
- The driver intervenes using the steering wheel.
- The driver door is opened.
- The time limit or number of manoeuvres for parking are exceeded.
- The TCS is switched off or is taking corrective action.
- There is a fault in the system.

1. Start the parking procedure again.

Active Park Assist is active and supports steering movements when the vehicle is stationary

If Active Park Assist attempts to turn the steering wheel when the vehicle is stationary, the white symbol  appears on the instrument cluster display.

1. Depress the brake pedal.

Active Park Assist parks inaccurately after a wheel change

If Active Park Assist parks inaccurately after a wheel change (e.g. vehicle is too far away or too close to the kerb), it may be necessary for the system to learn the wheel circumferences again.

1. Drive a longer distance with the vehicle, including curves.

Active Park Assist learns the new wheel circumferences automatically.

Pro Trailer Backup Assist

Introduction

Pro Trailer Backup Assist helps the driver when reversing or manoeuvring the vehicle when towing a trailer.

Pro Trailer Backup Assist steers a trailer and is operated by pushing and pulling the switch for setting the exterior mirror. The driver controls the accelerator, gear changes and brake → .

Pro Trailer Backup Assist determines the required data using the Rear View Camera.

System limits

Please note the following to ensure the system works correctly:

- The camera is clean and free from snow and ice.
- The camera is free from stickers and other objects.
- The drawbar is not covered.
- The boot lid is closed.

WARNING

Risk of vehicle damage. Pro Trailer Backup Assist does not use the vehicle environment for reference and does not detect any obstacles in the surrounding area.

- Check whether there is sufficient space to manoeuvre the trailer.
- Observe the movement of the trailer and cancel the manoeuvre if necessary in order to avoid damage. On rare occasions the trailer may behave differently even when Pro Trailer Backup Assist is operated correctly.
- Do not rely solely on the instrument cluster displays.

 Practise using Pro Trailer Backup Assist in a traffic-calmed area or in a car park in order to familiarise yourself with the system and its functions.

 If there is no driver interaction within approximately three minutes, the manoeuvre is terminated and Pro Trailer Backup Assist is ended.

Prerequisites

 Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 227.

Synchronising the trailer

The drawbar length must be re-determined every time the trailer is changed. If the same trailer is always used, the drawbar length must only be determined once.

1. Perform turning and cornering manoeuvres with the trailer. The more varied the turning and cornering manoeuvres, the more manoeuvring options Pro Trailer Backup Assist will detect for the vehicle and trailer.

There is a maximum of four limit positions for the angle display: approx. 30°, 45°, 60° and 75°.

The more accurately it can determine the length of the drawbar, the more angles are available when manoeuvring.

1. Attach the one- or two-axle trailer and connect electrically to the vehicle.
2. Perform as many different turning and cornering manoeuvres with the trailer as possible.

i In the case of trailers with a very wide drawbar or if there are attachments on the drawbar, it is possible that a braking intervention will occur before the maximum angle is reached.

Prerequisites

- ✓ Trailer with a maximum of two rigid axles is attached and electrically connected.
- ✓ Driver door and boot lid or rear doors are closed.
- ✓ The drawbar must not be covered.
- ✓ The vehicle and trailer are stationary.
- ✓ Engine running.
- ✓ Vehicle is stationary.
- ✓ ESC is switched on.
- ✓ Exterior mirrors are not folded in.

NOTICE

Pro Trailer Backup Assist is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. Pro Trailer Backup Assist provides support when manoeuvring a trailer and does not detect any obstacles in the area around the vehicle. In rare cases, the trailer may move differently than set. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Always pay close attention to the movements of the trailer and cancel the manoeuvre yourself if necessary.
- Do not rely solely on the instrument cluster displays.
- Use the foot brake to slow the vehicle in good time when an obstacle is encountered.

i For technical reasons, Pro Trailer Backup Assist cannot always detect

trailers with an LED tail lamp cluster correctly.



Manoeuvring the vehicle and trailer

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 227.

Switching on

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Select reverse gear.
3. Tap the **P** function button in the Infotainment system.
4. Tap the  function button.

The  symbol will light up if the function is active.

5. Tap **START**.

The manoeuvring operation can be started.

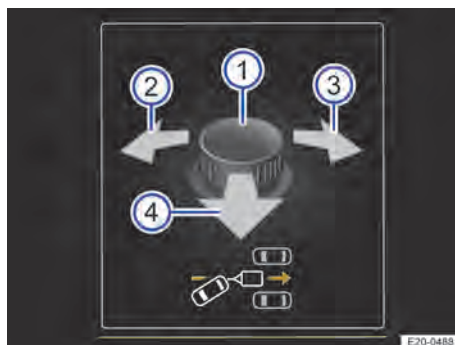


Fig. 136 On the instrument cluster display: adjusting the angle of the trailer using the rotary knob for the exterior mirrors.

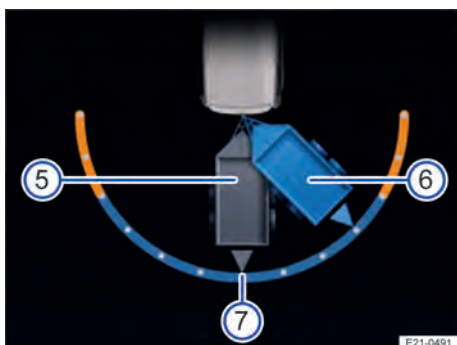


Fig. 137 On the instrument cluster display: adjusting the direction of travel of the trailer.

- ① Rotary knob for adjusting the exterior mirror position.
- ② Align the trailer to the left.
- ③ Align the trailer to the right.
- ④ Reverse the vehicle and move the trailer towards the target position.
- ⑤ Current trailer position.
- ⑥ Target trailer position.
- ⑦ Zero position on the angle display.

1. Check whether the requirements for Pro Trailer Backup Assist are met → page 227.

2. Release the steering wheel → ⚠.

3. Tilt the rotary knob in the driver door until the desired direction is reached → Fig. 136 ①.

A diagram showing the current position of the trailer appears on the instrument cluster display for orientation purposes → Fig. 137 ⑤.

4. Accelerate slowly and reverse the vehicle. Observe the surrounding area → ⚠.

5. Use the rotary knob to correct the angle to the left ② or right ③ if necessary.

Or: pull the rotary knob to the rear to drive in the direction of the trailer ④.

The ⚡ symbol indicates that the vehicle is being steered straight ahead and in the direction of the trailer.

6. Manoeuvre the vehicle until the required position is reached.

The manoeuvring operation has been completed when a corresponding message is displayed on the instrument cluster. An acoustic signal may also sound.

Automatic braking intervention

An automatic braking intervention may occur and the function may be cancelled in the following situations:

- Speed of approximately 6–8 km/h (3–5 mph) is exceeded.
- Steering interventions by driver.
- Diver door is open.

The driver is responsible for braking in time → ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

The steering wheel is turned quickly during manoeuvring. Reaching into the steering wheel can cause serious injuries.

- Take over steering only when the system requests you to do so.
- Take over steering in a hazardous situation.
- Trailer Backup Assist has system-related limits. In some situations the automatic brake intervention can only work in a limited way or not at all.

i The exterior mirrors cannot be adjusted while Pro Trailer Backup Assist is active.

i The vehicle cannot be driven at speeds above around 6 km/h (around 4 mph) while Pro Trailer Backup Assist is active.

Cross Traffic Alert

Cross Traffic Alert monitors crossing traffic when reversing out of a parking space or manoeuvring.



Fig. 138 Illustration of Cross Traffic Alert: monitored area around the vehicle leaving the parking space.

Radar sensors behind the rear bumper cover monitor the rear and side areas of the vehicle.

The driver is warned about the obstacle in the case of approaching moving objects → Fig. 138, → ⚠. A warning signal sounds and, depending on the vehicle equipment, the obstacle area is displayed in colour on the third-generation Infotainment system or a warning lamp lights up together with a text message on the instrument cluster.



Obstacle detected.

An automatic braking intervention can take place if the driver does not react → page 216.

i If the Parking Sensors are deactivated, no feedback can be given to the driver. Cross Traffic Alert is also temporarily deactivated.

⚠ WARNING

Cross Traffic Alert is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. Not all approaching objects may be detected, e.g. pedestrians or rapidly approaching objects. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries or even death.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.

- Pay attention to the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle when driving out of a parking space.
- React promptly to the visual and acoustic warnings of Cross Traffic Alert.

Switching on and off

1. To select the function in the instrument cluster, press the  button on the steering wheel.

Or: depending on equipment, open the **Parking and manoeuvring** menu in the vehicle settings of the Infotainment system.

2. Switch Cross Traffic Alert on or off.



This setting can be saved in the user accounts of the personalisation function and can therefore change automatically when the user account is changed.



Fig. 139 On the Infotainment system screen: Cross Traffic Alert display.



Red image segment: close obstacle. The vehicle is at risk. Brake!



Yellow image segment: obstacle in the vehicle path. The vehicle is at risk. Adjust the steering angle.

Calibration

The radar sensors calibrate themselves once during the first kilometres after vehicle delivery and after sensor repairs. The sensor range may be restricted during the calibration phase.

Driving with a trailer

If a trailer is electrically connected, Cross Traffic Alert cannot be activated. After disconnecting the trailer connection, Cross Traffic Alert is reactivated after switching the ignition off and then back on again.

Cross Traffic Alert must be switched off manually if a non-factory-fitted towing bracket is used.

Practical equipment

< Stowage

Introduction

Only use stowage compartments to stow light or smaller objects.

WARNING

Loose objects may be flung through the vehicle interior in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre. This can lead to loss of control over the vehicle and cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Stow objects only in closed stowage compartments.
- Always keep stowage compartments closed while the vehicle is in motion.
- The coat hooks in the vehicle should only be used for lightweight clothing weighing max. 2.5 kg (approx. 5.5 lbs).
- Never leave any heavy, hard or sharp objects in the pockets of clothing.

WARNING

If the glove box is open while driving, objects could be flung through the vehicle interior. This can lead to loss of control over the vehicle and cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always keep the glove box closed while the vehicle is in motion.

WARNING

Any lighters in the vehicle could be damaged or lit without being noticed as a result of high surface temperatures, for example. This could lead to serious burns and other injuries.

- Before closing stowage areas or compartments always make sure that there is no lighter in the way.
- Never stow lighters in stowage areas or compartments or on other surfaces in the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

While driving, in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or in the event of an accident, objects located in the drink holder can be flung about the vehicle and hot drinks spilled. This can cause serious injuries and serious scalding.

- Place only soft, break-proof and closed containers in the drink holder.
- Never place hot drinks in a drink holder.
- Make sure that only drinks of the appropriate size are placed in the drink holder. Drinks must always be stored securely in the drink holder.

⚠ WARNING

Closed drink bottles can explode in the vehicle in extreme heat or burst in extremely cold temperatures and cause serious injuries.

- Never leave closed drink bottles in an extremely hot or extremely cold vehicle for extended periods.

ⓘ NOTICE

Objects kept in the vehicle could be damaged or could cause damage to the vehicle when exposed to strong sunlight or the effects of heat or cold.

- Do not stow any temperature-sensitive objects, food or medicines inside the vehicle.
- Please note that objects made of translucent materials, e.g. transparent suction pads on the windows, concentrate sunlight.

Drawers

📖 Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 231.

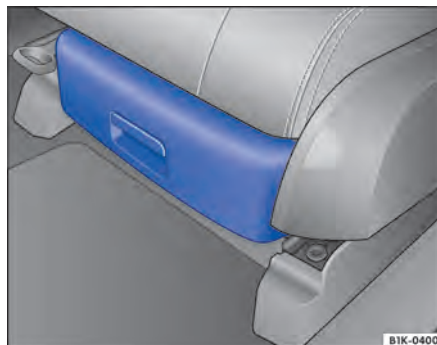


Fig. 140 Under the front seat: Drawer

There may be a drawer under each of the front seats.

Opening or closing the drawer

1. To open press the button in the drawer grip and open the drawer.
2. To close, push the drawer under the front seat until it clicks into place.

⚠ WARNING

If the drawer is overloaded, it may open by itself and the objects contained in it may fall out. An open drawer or objects that fall out in the driver's footwell can hinder the correct operation of the pedals. This can result in accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Always keep the drawer closed while the vehicle is in motion.
- Load the drawer with a maximum of 1.5 kg (around 3.3 lbs).

Folding table

📖 Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 231.

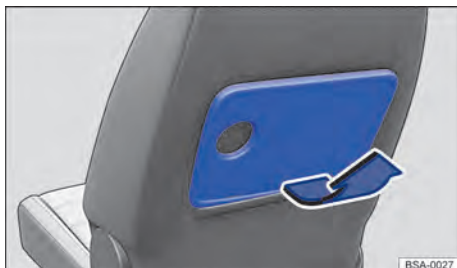


Fig. 141 Front seat: setting up the folding table.

The folding table can be engaged in several positions and has an integrated drink holder.

1. To set up the folding table, press the release button on the lower edge of the table and pull upwards in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 141 until it clicks into place.
2. To fold it down, press the release button again and push the folding table down until it clicks into place.

⚠ WARNING

The folding table can cause injuries if it is left open when driving.

- Always fold up the folding table while the vehicle is in motion.

Cigarette lighter



Fig. 142 In the lower part of the centre console: cigarette lighter (depending on vehicle equipment).

A cigarette lighter is located in the lower part of the centre console.

1. With the ignition switched on, press in the knob on the cigarette lighter.
2. Wait for the button to pop out.
3. Pull out and use the cigarette lighter.
4. Insert the cigarette lighter back into the socket.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the cigarette lighter or ashtray could cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.

- The cigarette lighter must always be used properly.
- Never leave children unsupervised in the vehicle. The cigarette lighter can be used when the ignition is switched on.
- Never place paper or other items that may cause a fire in the ashtray.



The cigarette lighter socket can also be used as a 12-volt socket.

Sockets and charging facilities for mobile devices

📖 Introduction

Electrical equipment can be connected to the sockets in the vehicle.

The electrical devices must be in good condition. Do not use faulty devices.

⚠ DANGER

Contact with the high voltage in the electrical system, e.g. sockets, can cause electric shocks, serious burns and death.

- Do not spill any liquids over the socket.
- Do not plug any adapters or extension cables into the 230-volt socket with earthing contact. Otherwise the built-in child lock will disengage and power will be supplied to the socket.
- Never insert any items made of conducting materials, e.g. screwdrivers, into the contacts of the 230-volt socket with earthing contact.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the sockets and connected electrical accessories can cause fires and serious or fatal injuries.

- Switch off electrical devices immediately and disconnect them from the power supply if the electrical devices become too warm.
- Please note that sockets and devices connected to them can also be used when the ignition is switched off, e.g. by children in the vehicle.

📢 NOTICE

Using the wrong electrical devices or electrical devices that are not approved or not connected correctly can cause damage to the vehicle and electronics.

- Never connect electrical devices that supply electric power, such as solar panels or a battery charger, to the 12-volt socket for charging.
- Use only electrical devices that have been approved in accordance with current guidelines concerning electromagnetic compatibility.
- Do not use faulty devices.
- In order to avoid damage due to voltage fluctuations, always switch off any electrical devices before switching the ignition on or off and before starting the engine. When Auto StartStop automatically switches off and restarts the engine, it is not necessary to switch off any connected electrical devices.
- Observe the operating instructions of the electrical devices.



Do not leave the engine to run when the vehicle is stationary.



Using electrical consumers with the engine switched off and the ignition switched on will drain the 12-volt battery.



Unshielded devices can cause interference in the Infotainment system and vehicle electronics.

Sockets in the vehicle

📖 Please refer to ⚠, ⚡ and 📢 at the start of the chapter on page 233.

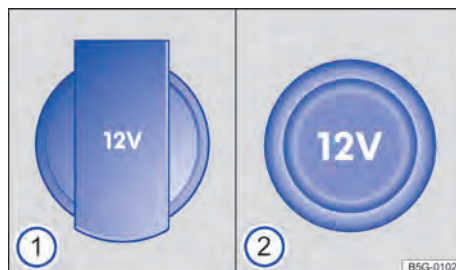


Fig. 143 12-volt socket with cover flap ①, 12-volt socket with pull-out cover ②.



Fig. 144 On the rear centre console or on the partition to the load compartment: 230-volt socket with earthing contact with cover flap (illustration).

Maximum power rating

Electrical socket	Maximum power rating
12-volt	120 watts
230-volt	300 watts (450 watts peak power)

If two or more devices are connected at the same time, the overall power consumption of all connected electrical devices must never exceed 300 watts → page 235.

The maximum power rating of the individual sockets should never be exceeded. The power rating of each device is stated on its type plate.

12-volt socket

The sockets also work when the ignition is switched off → page 235.

Using electrical appliances with the engine switched off and the ignition switched on will drain the battery.

To avoid damage caused by voltage fluctuations, switch off connected electrical equipment before switching the ignition on or off.

12-volt sockets can be found in the following locations in the vehicle:

- Stowage compartment in the dash panel → page 12.
- Centre console → page 14.
- In the load compartment or in front of the third row of seats.

NOTICE

The fuse can blow as a result of extended operation of the 12-volt sockets at maximum power.

- Never use the 12-volt sockets at maximum power for longer than 10 minutes.
- Always use only one 12-volt socket with maximum power.

230-volt socket with earthing contact

The 230-volt socket with earthing contact can be found in the following locations in the vehicle → Fig. 144:

- On the partition between the passenger area and load compartment.
- On the rear centre console.

The socket is activated automatically as soon as a plug is connected when the engine is running. If there is sufficient energy in the system, the socket can also be used when the engine is off → page 235.

Connecting electrical equipment

1. Open the cover and insert the plug all the way into the socket to release the integrated child socket protection.

Electricity will not flow until the child socket protection has been unlocked.

LED display on the socket:

Constant green light The child lock is disengaged. The socket is ready for use.

Flashing green light: The ignition is switched off but there is sufficient energy available to continue to supply the socket with power for up to 10 minutes. If you remove the plug during this time, the socket switches off and cannot be used again until the ignition is switched back on.

Flashing red light There is a malfunction such as a shutoff due to excess current or temperature.

Temperature switch-off

The inverter in the 230-volt socket with earthing contact will switch off automatically if the temperature exceeds a specific value. The switch-off function prevents the connected device from overheating when the power consumption is too high or if the ambient temperature is too high. The 230-volt socket with earthing contact cannot be used again until after the cool-down phase.

To use the 230-volt socket with earthing contact again after the cool-down phase, disconnect the plug of a connected device and then plug it in again. This helps prevent the connected electrical devices being switched on accidentally.

DANGER

Contact with the high voltage in the electrical system, e.g. sockets, can cause electric shocks, serious burns and death.

- Do not spill any liquids over the sockets.
- Do not plug any adapters or extension cables into the 230-volt socket with earthing contact.
- Never insert any items made of conducting materials, e.g. screwdrivers, into the contacts of the 230-volt socket with earthing contact.
- Do not connect any lamps which use neon tubes.

! NOTICE

The vehicle sockets can be damaged if they are not used correctly. This can result in damage to the electronics and vehicle.

- Only connect devices to the socket with a voltage that matches the voltage of the socket.
- Do not plug any very heavy devices or plugs, such as mains adapters, directly into the socket.

i If devices with a high starting current are prevented from being switched on, this may be due to the integrated overcurrent cut-out function. In this case, disconnect the power supply from the electrical device and connect again after waiting approximately 10 seconds.

i Unshielded devices can cause interference in the Infotainment system and vehicle electronics.

i Functional problems may occur with some devices when they are connected to the 230-volt socket with earthing contact due to the lower power output (wattage).

Charging facilities for mobile devices

📖 Please refer to ⚠, ⚡ and ⌚ at the start of the chapter on page 233.

Mobile devices can be charged in the vehicle either via the installed USB-C connections or wirelessly.

Charging via USB-C ports

The following USB-C ports may be available in the vehicle:



Identification of a USB port for data transfer and charging function.



Identification of a USB port for charging function only.

Available charging power

Voltages of up to 20 V are made available via the USB port. These voltages permit a charging power of up to 45 W.

Depending on equipment, the following charging profiles can be supported by the USB ports:

- Legacy Charging (2.5 W).
- BC1.2 (7.5 W).
- USB-C Charging (15 W).
- USB Power Delivery (up to 45 W).

The charging power actually used by the connected device depends on the following:

- Supported charging profiles.
- Device charge level.
- Device temperature.
- Charging cables used.

i In the case of dual USB ports, the charging power can be split between the two ports.

Wireless charging function

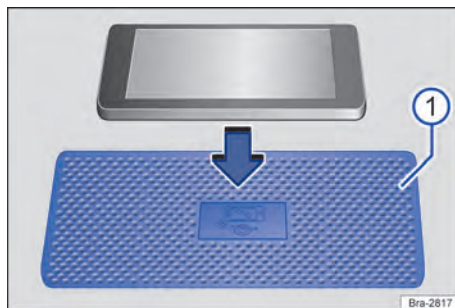


Fig. 145 Shelf with lining mat for the wireless charging function (illustration).

The wireless charging function comes with some equipment levels and is not available in all countries.

The wireless charging function enables wireless energy transmission by electromagnetic induction over a short distance for Qi-capable mobile telephones.

The shelf with lining mat for the wireless charging function is located in the area of the centre console and is designed for only one Qi-certified mobile telephone.

In some vehicles, the lining mat has a telephone symbol which marks the centre position → Fig. 145 ①. The symbol on the lining mat may look different in some vehicles.

The charging capacity is 5 W.

Qi standard

The Qi standard enables wireless charging of suitable Qi-certified mobile telephones. Consult the operating manual for the mobile telephone to find out if it is compatible with the Qi standard. The manufacturer of the mobile telephone can provide further information on compatibility, if necessary.

There may be charging restrictions with mobile telephones that are not Qi-certified.

Charging a mobile telephone wirelessly

Prerequisites

- ✓ The optimum operating temperature in the vehicle for wireless charging is between -40°C and +35°C.
- ✓ The mobile telephone is not larger than the marked shelf area and has Qi certification.

1. Remove all foreign material from the stowage compartment before charging.
2. After removing the protective cover and any other foreign material, place the mobile telephone in the centre of the shelf area with the display facing upwards and so that its entire surface is flat on the area.

The charging process will start automatically.

3. Follow the operating manual for the mobile telephone.

The Infotainment system will provide information about the start of the charging operation and, where applicable, about any foreign objects with metallic components that are detected in the stowage compartment.

Depending on the equipment, the charging function can be deactivated manually in the Infotainment system.



If the ambient temperature in the vehicle is outside the temperature range

of -40°C to +35°C, the charging process may be interrupted or the charging time extended.

Wireless charging will function normally again as soon as the ambient temperature in the vehicle is within the temperature range.

Symbol meanings

The number of Qi symbols displayed in the Infotainment system varies depending on the equipment.



The blue battery symbol with the on/off switch symbol indicates that wireless charging is switched off.



The blue battery symbol indicates that the mobile telephone is being charged.



The red battery symbol indicates that wireless charging is not possible.

Depending on equipment, it is possible to tap the Qi symbol for explanations on the status and to switch on wireless charging if necessary.

Stowage compartment cover

Depending on equipment and country, the stowage compartment for the wireless charging function has a cover.

The cover can avoid distractions caused by the mobile telephone, such as incoming messages.

1. Place the mobile telephone in the stowage compartment.
2. Keep the cover closed when driving so that the mobile telephone display is fully covered → ⚠.



WARNING

Notifications on the mobile telephone display can distract the driver and increase the risk of a serious accident.

- Only ever place one suitable mobile telephone – Qi-capable where applicable – without its protective cover on the shelf in the stowage compartment.
- Remove any items that prevent the cover from closing.

- Keep the cover closed at all times while the vehicle is in motion.

WARNING

Metallic objects on the shelf can become very hot. This can cause burns or fires.

- Do not place any metal objects or items with metallic components on the wireless charging pad.
- Remove any foreign objects immediately.

NOTICE

If cards or objects with a magnetic stripe or chip are placed on the shelf for the wireless charging function, this may damage the data stored on them.

- Do not place any ID, bank and credit cards etc. with a magnetic stripe or chip on the shelf for the wireless charging function.

wireless charging function, this may damage the data stored on them.

Depending on equipment, an error message with the red Qi symbol may be displayed on the Infotainment system. It is then not possible to use the wireless charging function.

1. Remove ID cards, bank cards and credit cards with magnetic stripe or chip from the lining mat. The error message closes automatically.

You can then charge the mobile telephone again using the wireless charging function.

 If the mobile telephone becomes too hot on the lining mat, it may switch off for safety reasons. It is then not possible to use the wireless charging function.

1. Remove the mobile telephone from the lining mat and allow it to cool down in another stowage compartment.

You can then charge the mobile telephone again using the wireless charging function.

Troubleshooting

 **Please refer to ,  and  at the start of the chapter on page 233.**

Mobile telephone is not charged

A message about a foreign object in the stowage compartment may be displayed on the Infotainment system.

An unfavourable position of the mobile telephone on the lining mat can impair the charging function. This can already be the case in the event of small changes in position, e.g. due to vibrations.

The position of the mobile telephone must be corrected to re-establish the correct charging function.

1. Align the mobile telephone centrally on the shelf.

The charging function can also be impaired by metal and above all magnetic parts of a mobile telephone or its protective cover.

1. Turn the mobile telephone by around 180° and align on the shelf with the display still facing upwards.

If cards or objects with a magnetic stripe or chip are placed on the lining mat for the

Data transmission

Cyber security

Cyber security refers to measures designed to reduce the risk of unauthorised access by malware or an internet attack on vehicle functions, data and control units. Above all connectivity components in the vehicle are affected by unlawful access or internet attacks.

Connectivity components are control units for data transmission, interfaces, and media and diagnostic connections via which information and data are exchanged between the vehicle and external devices or the Internet.

Connectivity components are equipped with security mechanisms designed to minimise the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle systems.

The connectivity components include the following in particular:

- Diagnostic socket.
- Modem.
- Mobile phone interface.
- Mobile Apps.
- NFC radio technology.
- Bluetooth® interface.
- USB port.
- SD card slot.
- SIM card slot.

 The type and number of connectivity components present in your vehicle differ according to the equipment level and country.

Software and security mechanisms

The software and security mechanisms in the vehicle are subject to continuous further development. Like with computers or the operating systems of mobile telephones, the software and security mechanisms in the vehicle may also be updated at irregular intervals.

System updates improve the security, stability and the execution speeds of the vehicle systems. The system update is a preventive measure, e.g. to optimise functions and to provide protection against malware.

A system update updates the software of control units in the vehicle.

Depending on vehicle and country, there are two options for updating your vehicle:

- System update by a suitably qualified workshop. We recommend an authorised dealer for this.
- System update via an over-the-air update.

WARNING

Malware can access data and information that is stored in control units, in the Infotainment system and on connected or paired mobile devices. In spite of integrated security mechanisms and regularly performed over-the-air updates, malware can still damage or cause malfunctions of the control units and vehicle. Damage to and malfunctions of the control units and vehicle can also occur if you connect mobile devices to the vehicle that are infected with malware. The damage may mean complete loss of the data, and malfunctions can lead to serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- If the vehicle functions or reacts differently than normal, reduce speed in a controlled manner and contact a suitably qualified workshop.
- After system updates are made available, carry them out as quickly as possible or have them performed by a suitably qualified workshop.
- Protect mobile devices by means of a suitable anti-virus program and generally known precautionary measures. Regularly update the appropriate anti-virus program with the software updates from the provider.

Minimising risks

You too can reduce the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle systems and functions:

- Use only data media, Bluetooth® devices and mobile telephones in the vehicle

than do not contain manipulated data or malware.

- Have any system updates provided by Ford carried out by an authorised dealer as soon as possible after they are made available. If you have the possibility of carrying out over-the-air updates (dependent on vehicle and country), carry out these updates provided by Ford immediately. If the driver repeatedly rejects the over-the-air update, it is then necessary to visit an authorised dealer.
- Have the vehicle serviced, repaired and maintained only by an authorised dealer. <

Over-the-air updates

Introduction

Over-the-air updates allow you to always keep your vehicle up to date, for example in order to optimise functionality and for protection against malware.

How can you recognise that an over-the-air update is available?

An available over-the-air update is displayed in the Infotainment system.

If several over-the-air updates are available for the vehicle simultaneously, one over-the-air update must be completed successfully before the next over-the-air update can be performed.

 Over-the-air updates should be carried out promptly in your own interest. If the driver repeatedly rejects the over-the-air update, it is then necessary to visit a suitably qualified workshop.

WARNING

It is possible in very rare cases that a control unit will not function properly after an over-the-air update. Malfunctions of a control unit and the vehicle can lead to serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Reduce speed in a controlled manner if the vehicle functions or reacts differently than usual when driving.

- Ask a suitably qualified workshop.

WARNING

If the instrument cluster does not function after an over-the-air update, no instruments, warning lamps, symbols or text messages can be displayed. Driving with an instrument cluster that is not working can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Do not use the vehicle. Contact Ford Customer Care.

NOTICE

If special conversions have been performed on vehicles that are outside the scope of responsibility of Ford Motor Company (e.g. for emergency services vehicles or taxis), there is a risk that the special functions (e.g. taximeter) will no longer work correctly after an over-the-air update.

- Consult an authorised dealer before carrying out an over-the-air update.

 An over-the-air update may delete any previous measure designed to enhance performance or efficiency, such as engine tuning, that was not performed by Ford Motor Company.

 Depending on equipment, release notes can be displayed once before or after an over-the-air update. They contain details of the changes to the vehicle status. The release notes are only displayed once and cannot be viewed again in the vehicle.

 The over-the-air update does not update any In-Car Apps. <

Prerequisites for an over-the-air update

 Please refer to  and  at the start of the chapter on page 240.

The following prerequisites must be met in order to download an over-the-air update and install the software.

- ✓ The “over-the-air update” function is available in your country.

- ✓ Your current privacy settings allow data and information to be transmitted and received.
- ✓ The vehicle is in an area with sufficient mobile telephone reception.
- ✓ The electrical system in the vehicle is functional.
- ✓ The 12-volt vehicle battery is appropriately charged.

Download and software installation

📖 **Please refer to ⚠️ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 240.**

Download costs

Over-the-air updates are downloaded via the factory-fitted modem and are free of charge. Ford pays the connection costs.

Download

The download of an over-the-air update can be interrupted at any time and will be resumed again as required when the ignition is switched on.

The duration of a download process depends on the network quality, file size and type of over-the-air update.

Download requirements

- ✓ The prerequisites for an over-the-air update are met → page 240.
 - ✓ The vehicle is in a location or area with adequate mobile and GPS reception.
1. Switch on the vehicle ignition and the Infotainment system.
 2. Observe the information in the Infotainment system.
 3. Start download in the Infotainment system.

Software installation

Choose a time for manual software installation of an over-the-air update when the vehicle does not have to be driven by yourself or other users.

⚠️ WARNING

Control units will be deactivated and will not function while software installation is taking place. Driving with deactivated or malfunctioning control units can cause accidents and fatal injuries.

- Perform the software installation in such a way that other road users are not obstructed.
- Never use your vehicle during a software installation.

Software installation requirements

- ✓ The vehicle is parked safely in accordance with legal requirements and local conditions → page 209.
- ✓ The previously provided over-the-air updates have been installed.
- ✓ All vehicle occupants have left the vehicle.
- ✓ There are no animals in the vehicle.
- ✓ There is no vehicle key in the vehicle.

1. Stop the engine and apply the electric parking brake.
2. Close the bonnet, boot lid, all windows and all doors.
3. Confirm software installation in the Infotainment system.
4. Make sure that all vehicle occupants leave the vehicle and that no animals are left in the vehicle.
5. Remove all vehicle keys and exit the vehicle.
6. Lock the vehicle.

Before starting the engine again, read the notification in the Infotainment system about the completed software installation. Observe the relevant instructions if the software installation failed.

Functional restrictions during software installation

Control units, functions and displays are not available during software installation. Do not use the vehicle during this time.

- Central computer of the Infotainment system: during the software installation, the central computer, the display and

control unit and other control devices are not available.

- Vehicle with connectivity services: no services are available during software installation. This also includes the legally required eCall Emergency System.
- Switching on the ignition during the software installation may cause the following error message: **Error: emergency call Please call workshop**. This is normal in this instance. Wait for a few minutes until the message disappears.

After installing the software

After installing the software and before starting the engine, read the message in the Infotainment system or on the instrument cluster that confirms that installation is complete. The vehicle may need up to 1 minute to display the status of the over-the-air update.

- You can start the engine once the software has been installed correctly.
- If the software installation failed:
→ page 242.

Troubleshooting

 **Please refer to  and  at the start of the chapter on page 240.**

Installation of the over-the-air update has failed

- If installation of an over-the-air update is unsuccessful, a corresponding error message will be displayed on the Infotainment system or instrument cluster. Observe the corresponding messages and warnings.

 Control units will no longer function or will not function correctly in the event of a critical installation error. No functions or displays are available until the fault is rectified. Do not use the vehicle. If this occurs, please contact Ford Customer Care.

Can I interrupt installation of an over-the-air update?

No, this is not possible.

What happens if installation of an over-the-air update is interrupted?

If installation of an over-the-air update is interrupted, for example, due to damage to the electrical system in the vehicle, it is possible that control units will not be updated and may be damaged due to incomplete installation. 

Wired and wireless connections

Introduction

Mobile devices can be connected to the Infotainment system by cable and wireless connections present in the vehicle.

The type and number of cable and wireless connections differ by equipment package and are not available in all countries.

In the case of cable connections, use only the original device connecting cables or, if available, the factory-supplied connecting cables for your vehicle. 

If the adapter or plug on the connecting cable cannot be inserted, check the angle of insertion and the connections.

NOTICE

If unsuitable or damaged connecting cables are used or if the connecting cable connector is inserted with strong pressure or in the wrong position, this can lead to malfunctions and damage to the device, e.g. the device connection and the connecting cable connector may be damaged.

- Use only suitable and undamaged connecting cables.
- When inserting the adapter and plug of the connecting cable into the appropriate port, ensure that they are correctly positioned and apply only light pressure.
- Make sure that the connecting cable is not pinched or severely bent.

 If a connected device is not recognised, disconnect all devices and connect the device again. If necessary, check that the connecting cable you are using is working properly.

i If a connected device malfunctions, restart the device. In some cases this will remedy the fault.

USB port

Please refer to ① at the start of the chapter on page 242.

The USB port allows data to be transferred and devices to be charged or permits only device charging.

USB-C port



Fig. 146 USB-C port in the vehicle (illustration).

The following USB-C ports may be available in the vehicle:



Identification of a USB connection for data transfer and charging.



Identification of a USB connection suitable only for charging.

Information on charging options and charging capacity is provided in this Owner's Manual → page 236.

Possible fitting locations of USB connections

The number and fitting locations of the USB connections depend on the equipment level; these connections are not available in all countries.

- In the centre console.
- On the rear of the centre console for the second seat row.

i USB connections on the rear seats are equipped only with the charging function.

Available data transfer functions

The following USB data transfer functions are available, depending on equipment:

- Mobile Apps → page 279.
- Media playback → page 261.
- Updates, e.g. navigation data → page 270.

Notes and restrictions

- Use only suitable USB charging cables. The USB connecting cable must be suitable for the USB connection installed in the vehicle.
- Dirty, overheated and damaged data media may become unusable. Please observe the manufacturer's instructions.
- Quality differences in data media from different manufacturers may cause malfunctions in the media playback.
- If USB extension cables, USB plug adapters or USB hubs are used, this can result in malfunctions or failure of the USB functions.

Bluetooth® interface

Please refer to ① at the start of the chapter on page 242.

The Bluetooth interface is a wireless connection. In Bluetooth audio mode, audio files from a mobile device that is connected via Bluetooth, e.g. mobile telephone, can be played over the vehicle loudspeakers. Bluetooth audio mode is available only if the vehicle is equipped with a factory-fitted mobile phone interface that supports this function.

Bluetooth profiles

A maximum of three mobile devices can be connected simultaneously via Bluetooth: two for telephony and one for music playback.

The following Bluetooth functions are supported:

- Telephony and hands-free.
- Music playback.
- Displaying and operating music playback.

- Transmission of Cover Arts.
- Access to phone book and call lists.
- Access to SMS and email.

Prerequisites for using the Bluetooth interface for music playback

- ✓ The mobile device supports the Bluetooth profile Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP).
- ✓ Permission for audio and media transmission to the Infotainment system must be given in the settings on the mobile device.

You can find more detailed information on using the mobile device for music playback in this Owner's Manual → page 261.

Pairing the mobile device with the vehicle via Bluetooth

There are various ways to pair your mobile device with the vehicle via Bluetooth. The easiest way is to pair via one of the following main menus: **Telephone** or **Radio/Media**.

Pairing via the Telephone main menu

1. Open the app overview and tap **Telephone**.
2. Follow the instructions on the Infotainment system.
3. If mobile telephones are already connected and another mobile telephone is to be connected, tap **Select mobile telephone** and select the desired mobile telephone.

Pairing via the Radio/Media main menu

1. Open the app overview and tap **Radio/Media ▶ Media ▶ Source ▶ Bluetooth**.
2. Follow the instructions on the Infotainment system.
3. If **Bluetooth** is already selected under **Source** but another mobile device is to be used, tap **Source ▶ Bluetooth** again.

Or: tap **Select ▶ Media ▶ Select Bluetooth audio device** and select the mobile device.

Pairing via the Settings main menu

If pairing via the mobile phone interface or the **Radio/Media** menu fails, pairing can also be performed in the **Settings** menu.

1. Open the app overview and tap **Network ▶ Mobile devices**.
2. In the **Mobile devices** menu, tap **Select**.
3. With the factory settings, both Bluetooth and visibility are always activated. If you wish to deactivate Bluetooth, tap and activate both **Bluetooth** and **Visibility**.
4. Open the list of available Bluetooth devices on the mobile device and select the device name of the Infotainment system.
5. Observe the messages on the mobile device and Infotainment system and confirm as necessary.

If pairing was successful, the data of the mobile device will be stored in the user profile.
6. *Optional:* confirm message for data transfer on the mobile device.

i As a general rule, it is only necessary to pair a mobile device, e.g. a mobile telephone, once. You can then reconnect the mobile device to the Infotainment system via Bluetooth at any time without having to pair the mobile device again.

i The extent to which the Infotainment system can be used to control the mobile device connected via Bluetooth depends on the respective mobile device.

i You can find more detailed information on using a mobile device via a Bluetooth connection in this Owner's Manual → page 271.

i Always switch off the warning and service tones on a connected mobile device, e.g. key tones, to prevent interference noise and malfunctions.

Using the internet in the vehicle

Introduction

This function depends on the vehicle equipment and is available only in some vehicles and countries.

Some Infotainment systems can use the Wi-Fi hotspot of a mobile device, e.g. mobile telephone (Wi-Fi client) → page 245.

Depending on your mobile telephone tariff, using the Wi-Fi hotspot of a mobile device may incur additional costs, e.g. roaming charges, for loading and using data packages from the internet, especially if you use these services abroad. Due to the potentially high volume of data occurring, it is recommended to use a mobile phone tariff which includes a data flat rate. For more information contact your mobile telephone provider.

Setting up an internet connection

 **Please refer to  and  on page 248.**

Using an internet connection via a mobile device

1. Activate tethering/Wi-Fi hotspot on the mobile device; refer to the manufacturer's operating instructions.
2. In the app overview, tap and activate  **► Network ► Wi-Fi ► Wi-Fi: ► Search for Wi-Fi.**

The Infotainment system will search for the nearest Wi-Fi hotspot. It can take several seconds before available Wi-Fi hotspots are shown. The search continues until **Search for Wi-Fi** is deactivated again.

3. Select the Wi-Fi network of the desired mobile device.
4. Enter the network key of the mobile device in the Infotainment system and confirm.

The Wi-Fi connection between the mobile device and Infotainment system is now established. Further inputs may be

required on the mobile device to complete the connection.

 Depending on your mobile telephone tariff, additional costs (e.g. for roaming) may be charged for downloading and using online data bundles, especially if you use these services abroad. Due to the potentially high volume of data occurring, it is recommended to use a mobile phone tariff which includes a data flat rate. For more information contact your mobile telephone provider.

 Due to the large number of possible mobile devices, it is not possible to guarantee fault-free operation of all functions.

 The availability of the function that permits use of the Infotainment system as a Wi-Fi hotspot is country-dependent and may vary.

◁  The Wi-Fi connection can be established only on protected Wi-Fi networks that support the WPA2 or WPA3 standard. Older encryption methods and open networks are not supported. ▷

Setting up and deactivating a Wi-Fi hotspot

 **Please refer to  and  on page 248.**

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the Infotainment system can be used as a Wi-Fi hotspot for internet access of mobile devices, e.g. tablets.

An internet connection is necessary in order to use the Infotainment system as a Wi-Fi hotspot, e.g. via the Wi-Fi hotspot of a mobile device.

The types of internet connections possible are dependent on the country and the Infotainment system used.

Configuring a Wi-Fi hotspot

Inputs are necessary both on the Infotainment system and on the mobile device.

1. In the app overview, tap  **► Network ► Wi-Fi ► Infotainment system as hotspot.**

2. Tap **Use as hotspot** and activate.
3. Find the network name of the Wi-Fi hotspot displayed on the Infotainment system on the mobile device and select.
4. Enter the password displayed on the Infotainment system on the mobile device and confirm.

The Wi-Fi connection is established. Further inputs may be required on the mobile device to complete the connection.

5. *Optional:* repeat the procedure to connect further mobile devices.

 The network name and the password are generated automatically. You can then change the network name and the password.

Deactivating the Wi-Fi hotspot

1. In the app overview, tap  **Network** ▶ **Wi-Fi** ▶ **Infotainment system as hotspot**.
2. Tap **Use as hotspot** and deactivate.

Quick connection with the Infotainment system

 Please refer to  and  on page 248.

The quick connection function makes it possible to easily and quickly establish a Wi-Fi connection with encryption by scanning a QR Code®.

 If the camera app of your mobile telephone cannot scan a QR Code®, install a suitable app for scanning a QR Code®.

1. In the app overview, tap  **Network** ▶ **Wi-Fi** ▶ **Quick connection to Infotainment system**.
2. Scan the QR Code® on the Infotainment system with the mobile device.

The Wi-Fi connection is established. Further inputs may be required on the mobile device to complete the connection.

Technical specifications for internet use

 Please refer to  and  on page 248.

The technical specifications of the internet connections in the vehicle that are described here depend on the vehicle equipment and are available only in some countries.

- Wi-Fi in accordance with IEEE 802.11 a/b/g/n/ac.
- Transfer in 2.4 GHz and 5 GHz.
- Internet connection via Wi-Fi:
 - Tethering via mobile telephone.
- Apple CarPlay® via Wi-Fi.
- Android Auto® via Wi-Fi.
- Simplified pairing process via QR Code®.

Possible types of data connections

The available types of possible data connections depend on the equipment level and are only available in some countries.

Mobile device: Use the Wi-Fi hotspot of a mobile device → page 245.

Prerequisite

✓ **Network settings** ▶ **Allow internet connection** is activated in the settings menu.

Or: **Data connection** ▶ **Integrated data connection** is activated.

Mobile online services

Connected vehicle

What is a connected vehicle?

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and thus allows you to access a number of functions. In conjunction with the FordPass app, you can monitor and control your vehicle even better, for example, check the tyre pressure, fuel level and the location of the vehicle.

You can find further information on the local Ford website.

Requirements for connected vehicles

A connected service and associated functions require a compatible vehicle network. Some remote functions require an additional service to be activated. Log in to your FordPass account for details. Certain restrictions, third-party provisions, and message or data tariffs may apply.

Restrictions for connected vehicles

Further developments in technology, radio networks or new regulations may affect the operation and availability or the continued provision of some functions. As a result of these changes, it may not be possible to use some functions.

Connecting the vehicle to a mobile network – vehicles with a modem

What is the modem?

The modem enables you to access to a number of functions that are integrated into your vehicle.



Vehicle Connectivity Off: communication between the network and the vehicle is not possible.



Share Driving and Vehicle Data: vehicle is able to send data to the network. You can now link your FordPass account to the vehicle.



Share Vehicle Location, Driving and Vehicle Data: if FordPass is enabled with the modem, you can now also share location data. This allows you to use a range of features that are integrated into your vehicle.

Activating the modem

1. Press *Settings*.
2. Press *Connected Vehicle Features*.
3. Press the *Share Driving and Vehicle Data* or *Share Vehicle Location, Driving and Vehicle Data* symbol as required.

Deactivating the modem

1. Press *Settings*.
2. Press *Connected Vehicle Features*.
3. Press the *Vehicle Connectivity Off* symbol.

Adding a FordPass account connection with the modem

1. Make sure the modem is enabled in the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the FordPass app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if it has already been added.
4. You may need to switch the vehicle off and on again before the activation message appears on the screen in your vehicle.
5. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
6. The name on the screen must match the name displayed in your FordPass account.
7. Confirm that the FordPass account is connected to the modem.

Deleting a FordPass account connection with the modem:

Option 1: from the FordPass app

1. To remove the connection between the vehicle and a FordPass account, delete the vehicle from your garage in the FordPass app.

Option 2: from the vehicle

To delete all connected FordPass accounts, you can reset the vehicle to its factory settings. To do this, perform the following steps:

1. Press *Settings*.
2. Press *Restore factory settings*.
3. Confirm that you want to reset the vehicle.

Connected vehicle – Fault finding

Connected vehicle – Frequently asked questions – Vehicles with a modem

I cannot confirm the connection between my FordPass account and the modem.

- The modem is not enabled. Activate the modem → page 247.
- Weak network signal. Drive your vehicle to a location with good network signal.
- No GPS signal. Drive your vehicle to a location, e.g. open land, where a GPS signal is available.

Infotainment system

Introduction

The functions and settings of the Infotainment system depend on the equipment and are not available in all countries.

Before using the unit for the first time

Please note the following points before using the Infotainment system for the first time so that you can make full use of the available functions and settings:

- Read the safety notes → page 248.
- If you want to delete the settings stored in the Infotainment system, reset the Infotainment system to the factory settings → page 257.
- To gain quick access to favourite radio stations, also referred to as stations in the following, search for them and save them to presets → page 258.
- To make telephone calls via the mobile phone interface, pair and connect a mobile telephone → page 271.
- To use mobile online services, register for the mobile online services → page 247.

Other applicable documents

In addition to this Owner's Manual, please observe and read the following documents when using the Infotainment system and its functions:

- Supplements in the Owner's Manual of your vehicle.
- Operating instructions for the mobile telephone, external data media, audio and media sources and devices.
- Instructions for retrofitted or additionally used accessories for the Infotainment system.
- Digital owner's manual in the Infotainment system, depending on equipment and not available in all countries.

Safety information

Some functions may contain links to websites that are operated by third parties.

Ford Motor Company does not assume ownership of the third-party websites that are reached via links and is not responsible for their content.

Some functions may contain information supplied by third parties. Ford Motor Company is not responsible for external information being correct, up-to-date and complete, or for any infringement of third-party rights.

The radio stations and the owners of the data media and audio sources are responsible for the content provided.

Tunnels, tall buildings, street canyons, garages, multi-storey car parks, underpasses, mountains and valleys or other electrical devices such as battery chargers can impair reception of mobile communications, GPS and radio signals.

Observe the other applicable documents
→ page 248.

WARNING

The Infotainment system central computer is networked with the control units installed in the vehicle. In the event of improper repair or improper removal and installation of the central computer, there is an increased risk of accident and injury due to a control unit that is not functioning or not functioning correctly.

- Never replace the central computer with a used central computer taken from an end-of-life vehicle or a recycling facility.
- Only have the central computer removed, installed or repaired by a specialist company qualified to perform this work.

WARNING

Operating the Infotainment system, reading information on the screen, or connecting, inserting or removing a data medium or an audio source can distract you from the traffic situation. Unfavourable light conditions and a damaged or soiled screen may result in information not being read or not being read correctly from the screen, which can distract you from the traffic situation. If the driver is distracted

when driving, this can lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always drive with your full attention and responsibly.
- Operate the Infotainment system only when the vehicle is stationary or if the traffic situation permits.
- Have damaged screens repaired by a suitably qualified workshop.
- Clean dirty screens.

WARNING

If the volume is set too high, acoustic signals may not be heard, which can cause accidents and injuries.

- Adjust the volume so that you can always hear acoustic signals, e.g. emergency service sirens.

WARNING

Volume that is too loud can damage the hearing, even if exposure is only for a short time.

- Adjust the volume so that it is pleasant for all vehicle occupants.
- Avoid volumes that are too loud.

WARNING

Sudden changes in volume, such as when changing or connecting an audio or media source, can distract the driver and cause accidents and injuries.

- Reduce the volume before switching the audio or media source or connecting a new source, for example.

WARNING

The following conditions can lead to situations where emergency calls, telephone calls and data transmission are restricted, interrupted or not possible:

- Your current emergency call location is in an area with no or insufficient mobile communications and satellite signal reception.
- The mobile communications network of telecommunication providers is not available in areas with sufficient mobile communications and satellite reception.

- If the components in the vehicle required for emergency calls, telephone calls and data transmission are damaged, not working, or do not have sufficient electrical power.
- The battery of the mobile telephone is empty or does not have a sufficient charge level.

WARNING

Radio stations can transmit catastrophe and danger warnings. If catastrophe and danger warnings cannot be received or output, this can cause accidents and injuries. The following conditions can prevent these warnings from being received or output:

- Your current location is in an area with no or insufficient radio signal reception.
- The frequency bands of the radio stations are subject to interference or are not available in areas with adequate radio signal reception.
- The loudspeakers and the components required for radio reception in the vehicle are damaged, not working or do not have sufficient electrical power.

WARNING

In some countries and on some mobile networks, a call for assistance or an emergency call can be made only under the following conditions:

- A mobile telephone with an unlocked SIM card and sufficient call credit is connected to the vehicle's mobile phone interface.
- There is sufficient network coverage.

WARNING

If a mobile telephone or two-way radio that is not connected to an external aerial is used, electromagnetic radiation in the vehicle could exceed limit values and thus be a health hazard for all vehicle occupants.

- Maintain a minimum distance of 20 cm (around 8 inches) between the aerials on the mobile telephone and an active medical implant (e.g. a pacemaker)

since the mobile devices may impair the function of active medical implants.

- Do not carry an operational mobile telephone close to or directly over an active medical implant (e.g. in a breast pocket).
- Switch off mobile telephones immediately if you suspect they may be interfering with an active medical implant, e.g. a pacemaker, or any other medical device.

WARNING

Mobile telephones, external devices and accessories in the vehicle that are loose, unsecured or not properly secured can be flung through the vehicle interior and cause accidents and serious injuries in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or in the event of an accident.

- Safely secure or stow any mobile devices and accessories outside the deployment zone of the airbags.
- Always secure or stow mobile telephones, external devices, audio sources and accessories securely in the provided stowage areas and holders in the vehicle so that they cannot be flung through the vehicle interior and hinder the driver.
- Never leave any heavy, hard or sharp objects in the pockets of clothing.
- Arrange the wires for external devices and audio sources so that they do not obstruct the driver.

WARNING

Driving recommendations and displayed traffic signs of the navigation may deviate from the current traffic situation and must not tempt you to take a safety risk.

- Always drive with due care and attention and be ready to intervene at all times.
- Always remember that traffic signs, traffic signals, traffic regulations and local conditions take precedence over driving recommendations and displays provided by the navigation system.
- Ensure that your speed and driving style are always appropriate for the current

visibility, weather and road/traffic conditions.

! NOTICE

The radiation produced by the mobile telephone when switched on may interfere with sensitive technical and medical equipment, possibly resulting in malfunction or damage to the equipment.

- Always switch off your mobile telephone in areas where special regulations apply and when the use of mobile devices is forbidden.

! NOTICE

Setting the volume too high and playing tracks too loudly or with excess distortion can damage the speakers.

- Choose the volume setting so that the loudspeakers are not damaged.

Notes on use

The Infotainment system needs a few seconds for a complete system start and does not respond to inputs during this time. The duration of a system start depends on the functional scope of the Infotainment system and can also take longer than usual particularly at low and high temperatures. During system start-up, only the Rear View Camera image can be displayed. The Infotainment system must start up completely before all displays are available and before it is possible to execute functions.

When using the Infotainment system and the corresponding accessories, e.g. head-phones, please observe the country-specific regulations and legal requirements.

In some countries there may be restrictions on using Bluetooth® devices. Information is available from the local authorities.

To ensure that the Infotainment system functions correctly, it is important to make sure the system is switched on and that, where applicable, the correct date and time are set in the vehicle.

A missing function button on the screen does not constitute a fault in the unit; it re-

flects the equipment that is available in the country in question.

If settings are modified, displays on the screen may vary and the Infotainment system may behave differently from the description in this manual in some cases.

Some of the functions and settings of the Infotainment system are available only when the vehicle is stationary. In some countries, the selector lever must additionally be in selector lever position **N** or **P**. This is not a malfunction, but simply a legal requirement.

Use only suitable audio sources and data media → page 261.

In some vehicles equipped with the Parking Sensors, the volume of the current audio source is automatically lowered when the reverse gear is engaged. It is possible to adjust the volume reduction → page 219.

Use current map data for the navigation system.

To clean the screen of the Infotainment system, observe the information in the section on caring for the vehicle interior → page 404.

Switch on the ignition before switching the Infotainment system back on if the 12-volt vehicle battery has been disconnected.

The Infotainment system switches off automatically when the engine is switched off and when the charge level of the 12-volt vehicle battery is low.

Information on the software and the licence conditions is stored in the Infotainment system, e.g. under **Settings ▶ Info**.

If you sell your vehicle or loan it to somebody else, make sure that all the stored data, files and settings are deleted and that the external audio and media sources and data media are removed where applicable.

Some Infotainment system functions require an active FordPass user account for the vehicle and an internet connection (country-dependent) → page 247. The data transfer may not be restricted when the functions are used.

Brands, licences, copyright law

Brands and licences

Certain terms in this manual are accompanied by the ® or ™ symbol. These symbols are used to indicate trademarks and registered brands. However, the absence of this symbol does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any term.

Other product names are registered trademarks of the respective legal owner.

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Pro Logic and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- All SiriusXM services require a subscription. See the SiriusXM Customer Agreement for complete terms at www.siriusxm.com (US) or www.siriusxm.ca (Canada). All fees, content and features are subject to change. Satellite and steaming lineups may vary. SiriusXM, Pandora and all related logos are trademarks of Sirius XM Radio Inc. and its respective subsidiaries. All rights reserved.
- HD Radio™ Technology manufactured under license from iBiquity Digital Corporation, a subsidiary of Xperi Inc., U.S. and Foreign Patents. For patents see <https://xperi.com/hd-radio-patents/>. Xperi, HD Radio, HD, and “ARC” logos and their respective logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Xperi Inc. and its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

- QR Code® is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.
- Apple Music is a trademark of Apple Inc.
- SPOTIFY and the Spotify logo are among the registered trademarks of Spotify AB. Compatible vehicle and Spotify Premium subscription required, where available.
- Android Auto® is a trademark of Google LLC.
- Apple CarPlay® is a trademark of Apple Inc.
- Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth® SIG, Inc.
- iPod®, iPad® and iPhone® are trademarks of Apple Inc.
- MPEG-4 HE-AAC audio coding technology and patents are licensed by Fraunhofer IIS.
- SD® and SDHC® are trademarks or registered trademarks of SD-3C LLC in the USA and other countries.
- Windows® is a registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation, Redmond, USA.
- This product is subject to certain intellectual property rights and copyrights owned by the Microsoft Corporation. The use or distribution of this type of technology outside this product requires a licence from Microsoft or an authorised Microsoft company.

Copyright law

Audio and video files saved on mobile telephones, data media, audio and media sources and devices are normally subject to national and international copyright laws. Observe legal requirements. <

Overview and operation of the Infotainment system

Infotainment system overview

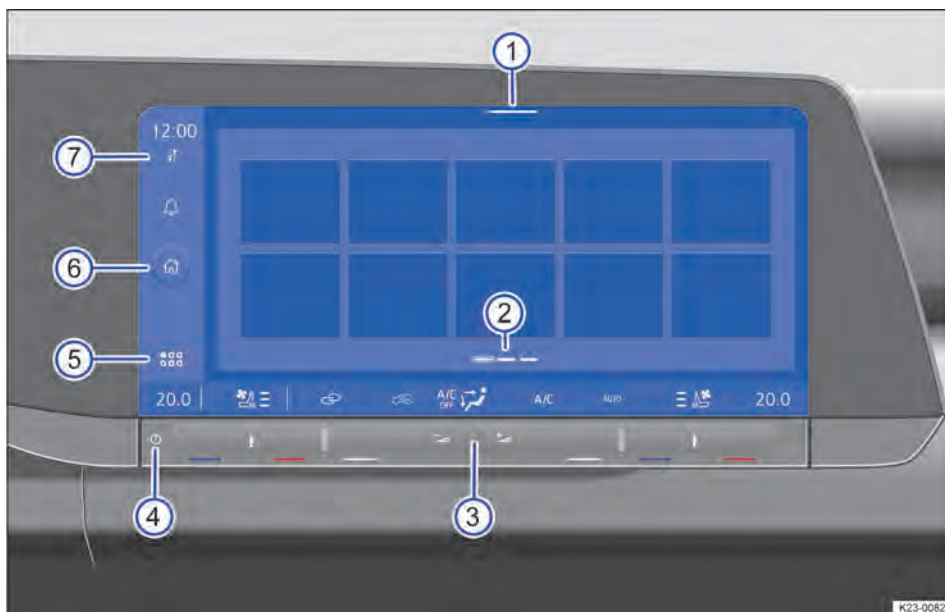


Fig. 147 Overview of the Infotainment system (illustration).

- ① Control centre.
- ② Pages.
- ③ Touch slider for volume adjustment and map view.
- ④ Sensor field for switching the Infotainment system on and off and for muting the system.
- ⑤ Menu button: ⋮.
- ⑥ Home button: 🏠 (below: **HOME**).
- ⑦ Display of notifications and status displays (availability depends on country).

i Further information and tips for operating the Infotainment system are provided in these operating instructions → page 254.

① Control Centre

There are additional function buttons in the Control Centre for functions and notifications, e.g. the screen brightness can be ad-

justed here. You can configure the displayed functions → page 256.

1. Tap the marking and slide it down to open the control centre.

② Pages

Some menus and functions have several pages with different content. The current page is highlighted.

- Tap the marking to change to a page.
- Swipe your finger to the left or to the right across the screen to switch between pages.

③ Touch slider for volume adjustment and map view

- Swipe left to reduce the volume.
- Swipe right to increase the volume.
- To zoom the map view in or out, swipe with two fingers simultaneously to the left or right.

④ Sensor field for switching the Infotainment system on and off and for muting the system

- To switch the Infotainment system on or off manually, tap and hold the sensor field for a few seconds until the screen switches off.
- Tap the sensor field briefly to mute the Infotainment system.

⑤ Menu button: ☰

Apps are available as function buttons in the app overview.

1. Tap ☰ to open the app overview.

⑥ Home button: 🏠 (below: **HOME**)

The home screen contains pages with tiles that contain function buttons.

1. Tap **HOME** to open the home screen.

⑦ Display of notifications and status displays (availability depends on country)

Display of notifications and status display of the user management function and “Pri-

vacancy settings” function with signal strength display of the eSIM, availability depends on country.

1. To open the additional window with the notifications, tap display of notifications.

Or: to open the menu for user management or the “Privacy settings” function, tap the status display for user management or the “Privacy settings” function.

Scroll bar (without position number)

Some menus and functions have further content above or below the current screen view.

1. Touch the scroll bar and swipe it up or down to display additional content. <

Operating the Infotainment system

Resetting the Infotainment system to the factory settings

1. Open the app overview and tap ☰ ► **Reset factory settings**.

i The vehicle settings are deleted by resetting to the factory settings. This also includes personal data, where applicable. Mobile online services can then no longer be used in this vehicle. The services can be used again only after renewed activation. If there is a primary user in the vehicle, this user will also be deleted.

Opening the quick guide for the Infotainment system (if available)

The quick guide for the Infotainment system provides further information and tips for operation of the system.

1. Open the app overview and tap ☰ ► .

Switching the Infotainment system on or off

The third-generation Infotainment system switches on automatically in the following situation:

- When the ignition is switched on if the Infotainment system was not manually switched off before.

The Infotainment system will start at the last selected volume setting provided this does not exceed the preselected maximum switch-on volume.

The Infotainment system switches off automatically in the following cases:

- If you leave the vehicle when the ignition is inactive.
- After around 30 minutes without a user input if you switch on the Infotainment system manually when the ignition is inactive.
- After about 30 minutes without a user input if you remain seated in the vehicle when the ignition is inactive.

If the Infotainment system no longer reacts, it will be restarted automatically. If the restart does not work automatically, tap the sensor field to switch the third-generation Infotainment system on and off and hold it for about 15 seconds.

WARNING

During a restart of the Infotainment system, functions such as the display of the rear view camera system, acoustic and visual warnings from the parking sensors and Rear Traffic Alert, the parking sensors, Rear Traffic Alert and other acoustic warnings may be temporarily unavailable. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the systems. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Pay attention to the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle when driving into and out of a parking space.
- Use the foot brake to slow the vehicle in a hazardous situation.
- Wait until the Infotainment system and other systems have started up completely.

Operating the screen (touchscreen)

The Infotainment system functions are operated via the screen. The screen brightness can be adjusted via the Control Centre → page 253 . You can find a detailed explanation of the different finger gestures in the quick guide to the Infotainment system, where available.

1. Open the app overview and tap    **Operation.**

Main menus in the app overview

Main menus are visible as function buttons in the app overview and on the home screen. The position of the function buttons can be configured.

Opening main menus

1. Tap the corresponding function button to open a main menu, e.g.  for the navigation system.

The following main menus may be included as function buttons in the app overview:



Mobile Apps.



Assist systems.



Vehicle.



Ford Assistant → page 277.



Help: here you will find further information on the functions and operation of the Infotainment system.



Sound.



Air conditioning → page 132.



Navigation.



Radio/Media.



Legal.



Settings.



Stationary air conditioning: auxiliary heater → page 140.



Telephone.

Configuring the app overview

You can configure the arrangement of the function buttons in the app overview.

1. Open the app overview.
2. Tap a function button and hold until an additional window opens.
3. Tap and hold a function button until the function button is visibly highlighted.
4. Drag the function button to your chosen position and release.
5. Tap **Finish**.

Personalisation

Personalise function buttons and pages depending on the vehicle equipment
→ page 256.

Operating pause

If the Infotainment system is operated frequently within a short period of time while driving, there may be a short operating pause. This operating pause will be cancelled automatically after a short time.

Personalising the Infotainment system

Depending on the equipment, you can personalise the Infotainment system to permit faster access to favourite or frequently used functions.

You can find tiles for accessing further menus and functions on the pages of the Infotainment system.

Configuring tiles

Configure the tiles by removing or adding pages.

1. Tap **[HOME]**.
2. Tap a tile and hold until an additional window opens.
3. To add a new page with tiles, tap ☆, tap the desired template, and tap **OK**.

Or: to remove a page with tiles, tap **Delete page** and confirm.

4. Tap **Finish** to return to the page.



At least two pages are always available. These cannot be removed.

Adapting tiles

Adapt the tiles and the displayed tile functions on the Infotainment system pages in order to customise the Infotainment system to suit your needs.

1. Tap **[HOME]**.
2. Tap a tile and hold until an additional window opens.
3. Touch your preferred tile in order to add functions to it.
4. Tap the desired function in the additional window. Various functions are available depending on the size of the tile.
5. To remove a function from a tile, tap the desired tile and then tap the desired function in the additional window.
6. Tap **Finish**.



More functions are available for some tiles than are visible at first glance in the additional window. Swipe to the left or right in the additional window to see all functions.

Adapting the control centre

You can customise the Control Centre of the Infotainment system for faster access to favourite or frequently used functions.

1. Open the Control Centre.
2. Tap a function and hold until an additional window opens.
3. Tap the desired function in the additional window.
4. Tap **Finish**.



More functions are available for the control centre than are visible at first glance in the additional window. Swipe to the left or right in the additional window to see all functions.

Opening tips for personalisation (if available)

You can find further information and tips for personalisation in the digital instructions for the Infotainment system.

1. Open the app overview and tap    **Custom**.

System and sound settings

The choice of possible settings varies depending on the country and also on the vehicle equipment.

Changing settings

The meanings of the following symbols apply to all system and sound settings.

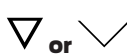
Changes are automatically stored when a menu is closed.



The setting is selected and activated or switched on.



The setting is neither selected, deactivated nor switched off.



Open the drop-down list.



Increase the setting values.



Decrease the setting values.



Gradually back.



Gradually forwards.



Change setting values with the slider control (infinitely variable).

System settings:

The following functions, information and settings options may be available in the system settings:

- Reset to default settings.
- Screen.

- Bluetooth®.
- Copyright.
- Data transmission between mobile devices.
- Data connection.
- Units.
- Wireless charging for mobile devices.
- Configuration assistant.
- Mobile devices.
- Offline mode.
- Connected Vehicle Features.
- Ford Assistant.
- Language.
- System information.
- Time and date.
- Wi-Fi.
- Additional keyboard languages.

Opening system settings

1. Open the app overview and tap **Settings**.

Sound settings

The sound settings may contain information and setting options for equaliser, position, volume and settings.

If an emergency call is automatically triggered, all sources of sound in the vehicle, such as the radio, are muted for the duration of the call, depending on the country.

Opening sound settings

1. Open the app overview and tap **Sound**.

Adjusting the output volume of external audio sources

If you need to increase the output volume of an external audio source, first lower the volume on the Infotainment system.

If the sound from the external audio source is too quiet, increase the output volume of the external audio source. If this is not sufficient, set the input volume to **Medium** or **Loud**.

If the sound from the connected external audio source is too loud or distorted, lower the output volume on the external audio

source. If this is not sufficient, set the input volume to **Medium** or **Quiet**.

Voice Enhancer

The Voice Enhancer depends on the vehicle model and equipment and is only available in some countries.

When the Voice Enhancer is activated, the spoken words of the driver and front passenger are transmitted to the speakers in the rear seats via the hands-free system microphone. This enables good communication between the driver, front passenger and passengers in the rear seats, even at high speeds. The driver can communicate with the vehicle occupants of the rear seats, while driving, without having to turn around or speak more loudly.

Activating or deactivating the Voice Enhancer

1. Tap the touch slider for volume adjustment.

The symbol for the Voice Enhancer is displayed next to the volume display:


2. Tap .

The sound settings open.

3. To activate the function, increase the volume under **Voice Enhancer**.

Or: to deactivate the function, reduce the volume to the minimum setting under **Voice Enhancer**.

Adjusting the volume of the Voice Enhancer

1. Tap the touch slider for volume adjustment.

The symbol for the Voice Enhancer is displayed next to the volume display:


2. Tap .

The sound settings open.

3. Adjust the volume under **Voice Enhancer**.

 The voice enhancer is deactivated during telephone calls and navigation announcements.

 If the Voice Enhancer is activated, this affects recognition of the activation word for the Ford Assistant → page 277. In this case, start the Ford Assistant via the multifunction steering wheel → page 278. <

Radio

Introduction

In radio mode, you can receive radio stations that are available via different reception modes and store your favourites for quick access.

The available reception modes depend on the equipment and are not available in all countries. Frequency bands and reception modes may be discontinued, deactivated or no longer offered in individual countries.

 The radio stations are responsible for the content of the information sent.

 Additional electrical devices connected in the vehicle can interfere with radio reception and cause noises in the loudspeakers.

 Foil or metal-coated stickers on the aerial and windows may affect reception, especially in vehicles with window aerials. <

Functional descriptions

 Please refer to  and  on page 248.

Selecting a reception mode

Various stations are available depending on the selected reception mode. The available reception modes depend on the equipment and are not available in all countries.

1. Tap **Source** to open the list of reception modes.
2. Select the reception mode, e.g. FM.

Searching for and selecting a station

You can search for and select stations in different ways. The options available depend on the reception mode.

Searching for stations in SCAN mode

In SCAN mode, the stations of the reception mode are set automatically one after the other and played back for around 5 seconds. SCAN mode is possible only in the additional window in which the current playback content is displayed.

1. Tap .
2. Tap  to start SCAN mode.
SCAN mode starts and the station currently set is shown in the display.
3. Tap  to select a station.
SCAN mode stops and the station is set.

Selecting stations via the multifunction steering wheel

You can select stations from the station list or from the Favourites via the multifunction steering wheel.

- To select the previous station, press  on the multifunction steering wheel.
- To select the next station, press  on the multifunction steering wheel.

Selecting stations via frequency band

1. Select reception mode AM or FM.
2. Tap  to open the frequency band.
3. Tap the cursor, move on the frequency band and release at the desired frequency.

Or: tap a point on the frequency band. The cursor will automatically go to the relevant frequency.

The station is set at that particular frequency.

Selecting stations from a station list

The station list shows the currently available stations. The station list is updated automatically. Depending on country, the station list of the reception mode FM/DAB is set as the active station list and the stations in the station list are sorted alphabetically.

1. Select the reception mode.
2. Tap the required station.

The selected station is set. The best reception mode is selected automatically according to availability of the station.

Changing the sorting order of the station list

The current sorting order of the stations is visible in the station list. The station list can be sorted alphabetically, according to group and according to genre.

1. Open the station list.
2. Tap  next to the display of the current sorting order.
3. Select the desired sorting order.
The selected sorting order is set.

Selecting a station and saving as a favourite

You can save up to 36 stations or frequencies from different reception modes as favourites.

Saving a station as a favourite

1. Select the reception mode.
2. Set the required station.
3. Tap .
Or: tap and hold a station in the station list.
The memory locations are displayed.
4. Tap .

Or: tap and hold the memory location already assigned until the station is stored.

The station is stored to the selected memory location.

If a station has already been stored to the memory location, that station will be removed from the station location and replaced by the new station.

Showing or hiding display of station logos and the DAB slideshow

1. Tap .
2. Tap radio text in the display for the current playback.

Other functions in radio mode

The functions described below depend on the vehicle equipment and are available only in some countries.

Traffic Programme function (TP function)

The Traffic Programme function TP function monitors the reports from a set traffic news station for traffic news monitoring and automatically plays them in the current radio mode or media mode. Reception of a traffic news station must be possible and the TP function must be activated in the settings in order to receive traffic announcements. Traffic news stations are not available in all countries. Some stations that do not broadcast their own traffic news support the TP function through a corresponding traffic news station (EON).

Provided that a traffic news station can be received, a traffic news station is automatically set in the background in media mode.

No TP will be shown on the display if no traffic news station can be received. The unit will automatically search for an available traffic news station. As soon as a new traffic news station is available, the status on the display changes back to **TP**.

Activating the TP function

1. In radio mode, tap  **Radio** and tap and activate **Traffic Programme (TP)**.

Or: in media mode, tap  **Media** and tap and activate **Traffic Programme (TP)**.

Station logos

Station logos can be pre-installed in the Infotainment system for some frequency bands.

The station logos will be assigned automatically to the stations if **Automatically select station logo** is activated in the settings.

Activating automatic assignment of station logos

1. Tap  **Radio** and tap and activate **Automatically select station logo**.

Manually assigning station logos

1. Tap  **Radio** **Station logos**.
2. Select the station to which you wish to assign a station logo.
3. Select the station logo.
4. If required, repeat the process for other stations.
5. Tap  to finish assigning station logos.

Changing to similar stations

Depending on equipment, if the reception of a station deteriorates or is lost, the radio automatically switches to an alternative station, e.g. a neighbouring regional station, depending on station availability and reception quality.

Activating switching to similar stations

1. Tap and activate  **Radio** **Switch to a similar station if reception is poor**.

Additional DAB announcements

In addition to the messages from the TP function, you can also receive other announcements, e.g. on the weather, from the stations in DAB reception mode.

Activating additional DAB announcements

1. Tap and activate  **Radio** **Additional DAB announcements**. 

Functions and symbols

 Please refer to  and  on page 248.

Functions

The functions and available reception modes depend on the equipment and are not available in all countries.

- AM tuner.
- FM dual tuner (antenna diversity).
- Combined station list.
 - Combination of FM and DAB stations in one list (FM/DAB).
- Combined preset list for favourites.
- Display of station logos.
- Aerial amplifier.

- DAB/DAB+.
- DAB slide show.
- Stationary images are transmitted parallel to the current broadcast.

Symbols

The symbols depend on the equipment and are not available in all countries.

General symbols

- To open the main menu, open the app overview and tap → page 253.



Select AM reception mode.



Select FM reception mode.



Select FM/DAB reception mode.



Select frequency band or reception mode.



Open favourites.
Small in a station list: station already saved as a favourite.



Open the current playback content.



Loudspeakers switched on and radio audible.
Tap to mute the loudspeakers.



Loudspeakers muted.
Tap to make the radio audible.



Open frequency band for manual selection of the frequency.
Only possible for the FM frequency if the combined station list is switched off in the settings in radio mode.



Open the station list.



Update station list manually.



Switch between radio and media mode.



My playlist.



Add station as favourite.



Select previous station from the station list or favourites.



Select next station from the station list or favourites.



Return to higher level.



Start SCAN mode.



Open the settings.



TP Traffic Programme function (TP function) is activated for monitoring traffic programmes.



No TP The selected traffic news station is not available.



AF Off Automatic station tracking (AF) is deactivated.



RDS Off Radio data system (RDS) is deactivated.

Symbols for FM/DAB reception modes



No DAB reception possible.

Media

Introduction

In media mode, you can play media files from data media on the Infotainment system and, depending on equipment, store your favourites for quick access.

Depending on equipment, the following data media can be used as the media source:

— USB data medium, e.g. USB stick.

USB flash drives exclusively with FAT32 file system.

— Bluetooth® device, e.g. mobile telephone.

With some equipment levels, the following types of media files may be played back:

- Audio files, e.g. music.
- Video files.

Restrictions and information on data media

Dirty, overheated and damaged data media may become unusable. Please observe the manufacturer's instructions.

Quality differences in data media from different manufacturers may cause malfunctions in the media playback.

If a data storage device is incorrectly configured, this may result in the data storage device not being readable.

Storage volumes, state of use (copy and deletion processes), file system, folder structure and the volumes of data stored may increase the reading time of data media.

Playlists only specify one playback order and refer to the location of the media files within the folder structure. No media files are stored in a playlist. To play a playlist, the media files must be stored in the locations on the data medium that are referenced by the playlist.

 No liability can be accepted for damaged, changed or lost files on data media.

Playing a media file

 Please refer to  and  on page 248.

Connecting and selecting a media source

1. Connect a media source.
2. Tap **My media** and select the desired media source.

Searching for and playing media files

You can search for and play media files from a media source in various ways.

Searching in a selected media source

All media files on the connected media source can be found via a folder structure or using the full-text search.

1. Open the folder structure.
2. Search the folder structure for the required track.

Or: To start the full text search, tap **Q** and enter the name of the desired track.

The list of found tracks updates itself automatically during input.

3. Tap the desired track.

If the selection is in a folder on a media source when playback starts, the media files in that folder will be added to the playback.

When a playlist is played back, all the available tracks in the playlist are added to the playback.

4. Close the selection with **X**.

Saving a media file as a favourite

Only media files that are saved to **My Media** in the **Music** folder can be stored as favourites. You can save individual tracks, albums, artists and genres as favourites.

1. Start playback of your chosen track.
2. Open the favourites list.
3. Tap a free favourite location.

Or: tap a previously assigned favourite location and hold for around 3 seconds.

4. Choose from the selection list, e.g. track.

The selection options in the selection list depend on the data assigned to the media file. If no genre is specified for music files, for example, the genre cannot be saved as a favourite.

The selection is saved to the selected favourites space as a favourite. If the favourite location was already assigned, the previously stored favourite is overwritten by the selection.

Selecting a media file from favourites

1. Open the favourites list.
2. Tap the desired favourite.

Depending on what you select, all the tracks belonging to the favourite are added to the playlist.

Entertainment playback

Music can be played on the Infotainment system.

Depending on country, it is also possible to play videos.

Video mode

In video mode, the Infotainment system display can play a video from a data medium or the internal memory, depending on the equipment and country.

The video soundtrack is played on the vehicle loudspeakers.

The video image is displayed only when the vehicle is stationary. When the vehicle is in motion, the Infotainment system display is switched off. You will still hear the video audio.

In some countries, no video image is displayed even when the vehicle is stationary for traffic safety reasons.

- MPEG-1 und MPEG-2
(.mpg, .mpeg, .mkv, .avi).
- ISO MPEG-4 ASP; Xvid
(.mp4, .m4v, .mov, .mkv, .avi).
- ISO MPEG-4 AVC / H.264
(.mp4, .m4v, .mov, .mkv, .avi).
- Windows Media Video 9
(.wmv, .asf, .mkv, .avi).
- Cross-device playlists.
- Cross-source media database: **My media**.
 - The data of all media sources connected to the Infotainment system is stored in a media database, **My media**.
 - If **My media** is selected, categories (e.g. music) and connected media sources are shown first.
 - All media files of USB devices are filtered according to categories, e.g. albums. This category view is always displayed in **My media**. The classic folder structure of the individual USB data media is additionally located in the **My media** menu.
- Media search.

Functions and symbols

Please refer to and on page 248.

Functions

The functions and possible media formats depend on the equipment and are not available in all countries.

- Media playback and control via Bluetooth.
- Audio playback in the following formats:
 - AAC.
 - APE.
 - M4A.
 - MP2.
 - MP3.
 - OPUS.
 - Vorbis.
 - WAV.
 - WMA.
- Video playback in the following formats:

Symbols

The symbols depend on the vehicle equipment and are not available in all countries. Their appearance may also differ depending on the Infotainment system.

General symbols

1. To open the main menu, open the app overview and tap → page 253.

Open the current playback content.

Start playback.

Go to previous track.

Go to the next track.

Repeats all tracks.

 Activate random playback sequence.

 Top right: select media source.

 Open search.

 Add a track to the playlist.

 Open the Favourites list.

 Add media file as favourite.

 Open recently played tracks.

 Return to the media source in the higher level folder.

 Open the settings.

Symbols for media sources

 **My media:** select **My media** cross-source media database as media source. Connected USB devices and their folder structure can be selected under **My media**.

 **Bluetooth:** select a device connected via Bluetooth as the media source. Devices that are not yet connected via Bluetooth can also be selected and connected using this function.

 Select a device connected to the USB port as the media source. You can select a connected USB device under **USB**.

Symbols for categories and groups of media files

 Music tracks.

 Videos.

 Playlists.

 Albums.

 Artists.

 Genres.

 Podcasts.

 Audiobooks.

 Compilations.

Symbols for video playback

 Playback videos in full screen mode.

 Minimise playback.



Navigation

Introduction

The current vehicle position is determined by means of a global satellite system. All measured values and any traffic information reports are compared with the available map material in order to enable optimal navigation to the destination. Acoustic navigation prompts and graphic representations guide the user to the destination.

Depending on the country, some Infotainment system functions can no longer be selected when the vehicle is travelling above a certain speed. This is not a malfunction, but simply a legal requirement.

If you sell or loan the vehicle, we recommend resetting the Infotainment system to the factory settings → page 254. This is the only way of deleting all personal data, e.g. information used for navigation.

WARNING

Operating the navigation system can distract you from the traffic situation. If the driver is distracted when driving, this can lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always drive with your full attention and responsibly.
- Operate the Infotainment system only when the vehicle is stationary or if the traffic situation permits.

 If a turn is missed during a route guidance, the navigation may recalculate the route.

 The quality of the output navigation recommendations depends on the navigation data available and, depending on country, any reported traffic disruptions.

 Depending on the vehicle and country, select "Online mode" and a mode with location data in the privacy settings before using the mobile online services of the navigation system → page 247.

 The corresponding mobile online service must be activated and, depending on country, the privacy settings adapted in order to use the mobile online services, e.g. Online Traffic Information → page 247. Only then will Online Traffic Information be output in the navigation system, for example. Depending on the vehicle, the following symbol is displayed if no Online Traffic Information is available: .

Limitations of the navigation function

When the Infotainment system cannot receive any data from GPS satellites, e.g. in a tunnel, navigation can still continue using the vehicle sensors.

In areas that are not or only partially digitised in the Infotainment system's memory, the Infotainment system also tries to enable route guidance.

If navigation data is unavailable or incomplete, the navigation system may be unable to determine the exact vehicle position. As a result, the navigation may not be as exact as usual.

Road layouts are subject to continuous change, e.g. due to road works. If the navigation data is out of date, errors or inaccuracies may occur during route guidance. 

Functional descriptions

 **Please refer to  and  on page 248 and  at the start of the chapter on page 264.**

Adapting the navigation map

To obtain the optimum view, you can also adapt the navigation map and map view using extended finger gestures.

Moving the navigation map

Recommendation: use your index finger.

1. Use your finger to move the navigation map.

Zooming into or out of the map view

Recommendation: use your index finger.

1. Tap and hold the map twice in quick succession.
2. To zoom in the map view, move your finger down.

Or: move your finger upwards to zoom out from the map view.

Zooming into or out of the map view

Recommendation: use your thumb and index finger.

1. Tap and hold the map with two fingers at the same time.
2. To zoom in the map view, slowly move your fingers away from each other.

Or: move your fingers together to zoom out from the map view.

Tilting the map view

Recommendation: use your index and middle fingers.

1. Tap and hold the map with two fingers horizontal to each other at the same time.
2. Move your fingers up to tilt the map view forward.

Or: move your fingers downwards to tilt the map view backwards.

Rotating the map view

Recommendation: use your thumb and index finger.

1. Tap and hold the map with two fingers at the same time.
2. Turn your fingers clockwise or anti-clockwise to rotate the map view.

 You can also zoom the map view in and out using the touch slider for volume adjustment → page 253.

Home and work address

Saving a home or work address

This is only possible if no home or work address has been set.

1. Tap  **Favourites**.
2. Tap **Home** or **Work**.
3. To save the current position, tap **Use position** or **Position**.

Or: to save an address, tap **Set new** or **Set**.

Deleting a home or work address

1. Tap  **Favourites**.
2. Tap and hold the saved home address or work address and swipe left.
3. Tap .

Favourite destinations

Save up to 50 destinations as favourites.

Saving a destination as a favourite

1. When entering a destination, tap ☆ in the additional window.

Deleting a favourite

1. Tap  **Favourites**.
2. Tap on a favourite, hold and swipe left.
3. Tap .

Navigation announcements

Navigation announcements are acoustic driving directions for the route currently travelled. The type and frequency of navigation announcements depends on the settings and the driving situation, e.g. start

of route guidance, driving on a motorway or in a roundabout.

A navigation announcement informing you that you have reached the destination area is given if the exact destination cannot be reached, e.g. because it is located in a non-digitised area. In addition, information on the direction and distance of the destination is shown on the screen.

During dynamic route guidance, you receive information about reported traffic disruptions on the route. An additional navigation announcement is given if the route is recalculated due to a traffic disruption or changed driving style.

The volume of a navigation announcement can be adjusted or muted while the announcement is playing. All other navigation announcements will be at this volume setting or will be muted. Further settings for the navigation announcements can be found in the settings of the navigation system → page 268.

Repeating a navigation announcement

If you have missed a navigation announcement, you can have the navigation announcement repeated.

1. Tap the function button with the next route information on the map.

 Navigation announcements are not output when the Infotainment system is muted.

Route details

The route plan contains your route and possible stopovers. Destinations and stopovers can be defined in sequence, moved or deleted. The starting point is always the vehicle position determined by the Infotainment system. The route plan contains information on relevant events, such as stopovers and suggested destinations, if navigation data is available. When you tap an event, an additional window opens with further options. The options available depend on the event and the current settings.

Opening and closing the route plan

1. To open the route plan, tap the preview of the route plan on the right of the map.

2. To close the route plan, tap | on the right on the map.

Editing route guidance in the route plan

To edit route guidance, move the stopovers or the destination to the route plan.

1. Tap and hold your chosen destination until it is highlighted on the screen.
2. Move the destination into your chosen position and release it.

Stopping route guidance in the route plan

1. To stop route guidance to the destination, tap ⊗ in the route plan preview on the right of the map.

Additional window in the route plan

You can tap on the items on a route plan to open an additional window showing further options relating to the items. These options depend on which item you tap.

Functions in the additional window:

Display on map Display the selection on the map.

Add stopover Add a stopover to the route guidance.

Direct route Start direct route guidance.

Delete Delete stopover from route guidance.

Bypass Bypass traffic disruption. The route will be recalculated.

Stop route guidance End the current route guidance.

Closing the additional window in the route plan

1. Tap a free area outside the additional window.

Setting up a favourite POIs category

The system shows various POIs, e.g. filling stations, via the quick selection symbol in the destination entry field, on the route plan and on the map. You can prioritise the display of these symbols.

1. Tap 𐄌 ▶ **Basic functions** ▶ **Set preferred POI categories**.

Learning usage patterns

As you drive, the navigation system saves the routes followed and destinations reached in order to create suggested destinations automatically. Destinations are learned depending on the time of day and the day of the week.

The navigation system can suggest learned routes. Route guidance begins when one of the suggested routes is selected.

The route guidance follows the selected route until the vehicle deviates from it. The route is recalculated and will guide you back to the selected route via a direct alternative.

Route guidance takes account of any relevant traffic disruption. Relevant traffic disruption will be avoided if an alternative route is available and the navigation system can access the data.

If you drive an already learned route when route guidance is inactive, the destination will be transferred to the route plan. It is not necessary to actively start route guidance to the learned destination. Warnings may be given about traffic disruptions and a forecast arrival time will be displayed.

You can activate or deactivate the function at any time and also delete the stored data for the function.

Activating or deactivating the “Learn usage pattern” function

1. Tap 𐄌 ▶ **Basic functions** to open the settings for this function.
2. Tap and activate **Learn usage pattern**.

Displaying suggested routes

1. Tap 𐄌 ▶ **Suggested**.

Deleting stored data of the “Learn usage pattern” function

1. Tap 𐄌 ▶ **Basic functions** to open the settings for this function.
2. Tap **Delete usage pattern**.

Saved data

The Infotainment system stores certain data, e.g. frequently driven routes, so that you can enter destinations quickly and enjoy the most efficient route guidance.

Deleting saved data

1. Tap  **Basic functions** ▶ **Delete usage pattern**.
2. Tap confirmation to delete.

Functions and symbols

 Please refer to  and  on page 248 and  at the start of the chapter on page 264.

Functions

The functions depend on the equipment and are not available in all countries.

- Destination input and route calculation.
- Personal destinations.
- 3D City Maps.
- Online Map Update.
- Online Traffic Information.

Symbols

The symbols depend on the equipment and are not available in all countries.

General symbols

1. To open the main menu, open the app overview and tap  → page 253.

 Enter and search for destinations.

 Open the navigation map.

 Open saved addresses and, where appropriate, contact list of the connected mobile telephone.

 Open the settings.
You can find settings for the navigation announcements here, for example.

Map symbols

The function buttons and displays depend on the settings and the current driving situation.

Symbols for traffic information are displayed on the map if the data is available

to the navigation system, e.g. POIs and, depending on country, traffic disruptions → page 270.

 Current position.
Tap to centre the map on the vehicle or to display details of the vehicle position.

 Display current position.

 Map scale.

 Align the map.

 Fully automatic map mode.
Alignment in direction of travel, position, zoom and tilt.

 Open route overview and alternative routes for current route when route guidance is active.

Route plan symbols

 Display current position.

 Destination of the current route guidance.

 End the current route guidance.

 Close the route plan.

Other symbols

 Open information on the route.

 Open route options.

 In the additional window: save as favourite.

 In the destination search: open detailed destination input for an address. In the contact list: open address.

Traffic disruptions

Traffic disruptions are displayed on the map when navigation data is available → page 270. Example of a traffic disruption on the map:  for traffic jam. Depending on country, "Online Traffic Information" must be activated to display the mobile online service. Depending on the equipment, the following symbol is displayed if no Online Traffic Information is available: .

1. Tap .
2. Tap a traffic disruption to open an additional window showing details → page 270.

Entering a destination and starting route guidance

 **Please refer to  and  on page 248 and  at the start of the chapter on page 264.**

Depending on equipment and in some countries, different functions are available for entering destinations. You can narrow down your search by adding certain suggestions to the results list, e.g. "nearby".

You will find further information on the symbols on the Infotainment system screen in this Owner's Manual → page 268.

Entering an address

Start route guidance by entering an address. The navigation system suggests known destinations while you are typing an entry.

 When entering an address, enter the name of the destination instead of the postcode.

Selecting a destination and starting navigation

1. Tap .
2. Enter the address of the destination and select the desired destination.
Or: tap  and enter detailed destination information.
3. Tap **Start**.
Or: tap .

Quick start

1. Tap .
2. Enter the address then tap and hold your chosen destination for a few seconds.

 Enter the destination as accurately as possible. If you make a mistake when entering the destination, route guidance will not be possible or you may be navigated to the wrong destination.

Selecting the home or work address

◀ Selecting a destination and starting navigation

1. Tap  ► **Favourites**.
2. Tap **Home** or **Work**.
3. Tap **Start**.

Selecting from suggested destinations

The navigation system uses stored data such as last and learned destinations, favourites, and home and work addresses in order to make this data available for route guidance.

Selecting a destination and starting navigation

1. Tap  ► **Suggested**.
2. Select the required destination.
Route guidance starts automatically.

Selecting from last destinations

The navigation system stores up to 25 destinations that you have driven to last in order to make them available for route guidance. A new destination automatically overwrites the oldest destination.

Selecting a destination and starting navigation

1. Tap  ► **Last destinations**.
2. Tap the desired destination.
3. Tap **Start**.
Or: tap .

Quick start

1. Tap  ► **Last destinations**.

2. Tap and hold your chosen destination for a few seconds.

Selecting from favourite destinations

Selecting a destination and starting navigation

1. Tap  **Favourites**.
2. Tap the desired destination.
3. Tap **Start**.

Or: tap .

Quick start

1. Tap  **Favourites**.
2. Tap and hold your chosen destination for a few seconds.

Using a contact's address data

Start route guidance using stored address data for a contact. Stored contacts without address data cannot be used for route guidance.

Starting navigation

1. Tap .
2. Tap the desired contact with address data.
3. Tap **Start**.

Or: tap .

 If the address details of a contact are out-of-date, the stored address will be used for route guidance and may lead to the wrong destination.

- When starting route guidance, make sure that the stored address of a contact is up-to-date. For this, the update of the phone book in the Infotainment system must be fully completed → page 273.
- Wait until the update of the phone book in the Infotainment system is fully completed → page 273.

Selecting on the map

The navigation map contains active areas at many points which are suitable for destination input. Tap your chosen position or location on the map to enter a destination. If map data is available at this point, you can start route guidance.

Destination inputs via the navigation map depends on the data status and is not possible for all positions. 

Navigation data

 **Please refer to  and  on page 248 and  at the start of the chapter on page 264.**

The Infotainment system has an internal navigation data memory. Depending on the country, the required navigation data is already pre-installed.

The Infotainment system always requires up-to-date navigation data for you to use route guidance correctly and make full use of the functions offered.

NOTICE

If you use obsolete data, you may have problems with navigation. Current routes cannot be determined or route guidance leads to the wrong destination.

- Always keep navigation data up-to-date.

Updating navigation data manually

Contact your authorised dealer in order to manually update the navigation data for larger regions.

Display the version of the map data

1. Open the app overview and tap  **Info**  **System information**. 

Online functions

 **Please refer to  and  on page 248 and  at the start of the chapter on page 264.**

Depending on equipment, online navigation functions are available.

Online navigation functions are not available in all countries and vehicle models.

Online functions include, for example, Online Traffic Information.

Online Traffic Information

Reception of Online Traffic Information depends on the vehicle equipment and is not available in all countries. The Infotainment system automatically receives detailed traffic information when connected to the Internet. This information is indicated by symbols and colouring of the road network on the map → page 268.

Prerequisites for using Online Traffic Information:

- ✓ The requirements for using the services have been fulfilled → page 247.
- ✓ You have ordered the service and activated it in your vehicle.

Traffic disruptions

Traffic disruptions, e.g. traffic jams, are shown as symbols on the navigation map → page 268.

The route plan displays current traffic disruptions when navigation data is available.

When route guidance is active, traffic disruptions that are on the current route are displayed in the route plan. You can avoid these traffic disruptions by editing the route plan → page 265.

Bypassing a traffic disruption

1. Open the route plan → page 265.
2. Tap the traffic disruption.
3. Tap **Bypass**.

The route will be recalculated.

 Depending on the route guidance, it may only be possible to bypass one traffic disruption in this way.

 Local warnings, e.g. about bad weather, may be shown as pop-up messages on the Infotainment system.

Traffic flow display

The traffic flow is shown on the navigation map for current traffic disruptions by means of coloured areas on the road network.

Orange Slow-moving traffic.

Red Traffic jam.

Mobile phone interface

Introduction

You can connect your mobile telephone to the Infotainment system via the mobile phone interface and then use the Infotainment system to control the telephone functions. The audio is relayed via the vehicle loudspeakers. Depending on equipment, you can connect up to two mobile telephones to the Infotainment system simultaneously → page 272.

The functions depend on the vehicle equipment and are not available in all countries. The availability of the functions also depends on the mobile telephone used and its operating system.

High speeds, poor weather and poor road conditions, loud noise levels, also outside the vehicle, and network quality may impair telephone calls in the vehicle.

The mobile phone interface may contain an aerial amplifier which improves the reception quality of the mobile telephone.

 As a general rule, it is only necessary to pair a device, e.g. mobile telephone, once for each technology, Bluetooth or Wi-Fi. The device connection to the Infotainment system via Bluetooth or Wi-Fi can be restored at any time without having to pair the device again.

 When a telephone call is made using the hands-free system or at a loud volume, a conversation can also be heard by third parties outside the vehicle.

 During a phone call, the volume of the call can be adjusted using the volume control → page 253.

Areas where special regulations apply

Switch off the mobile telephone and mobile phone interface in areas where there is an explosion hazard. These areas are not always clearly signposted. This includes, for example:

- Areas immediately around chemical pipelines and tanks.
- Lower decks of ships and ferries.



- The area around vehicles which run on liquid gas, for example propane or butane.
- Places where there are chemicals or particles such as flour, dust and metal powder in the air.
- All other places where the engine or mobile telephone must be switched off.

WARNING

In places where there is a risk of explosion, e.g. near filling stations, and in places with special regulations, ignition sparks, e.g. caused by electrostatic discharges or mobile phones, can lead to an explosion or fire and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Switch off the mobile telephone and mobile phone interface in potentially explosive areas, e.g. near filling stations, and in locations where special guidelines apply.
- Do not operate the mobile telephone and mobile phone interface in potentially explosive areas, e.g. near filling stations, and in locations where special guidelines apply.

Types of mobile phone interface

The following types of mobile phone interface may be present in the vehicle, depending on the equipment and the country:

- Basic mobile phone interface.

The mobile phone interface uses the Bluetooth Hands-free Profile (HFP) for transmission. This profile allows use of telephone functions via the Infotainment system and output via the vehicle speakers. If a mobile telephone is connected to the mobile phone interface via the Bluetooth profile HFP, you can make calls wirelessly via the hands-free system.

- Comfort mobile phone interface.

Like the basic version of the mobile phone interface, the Comfort mobile phone interface also uses the HFP Bluetooth profile.

The Comfort mobile phone interface may be equipped with a wireless charging function → page 236. In order to use the wireless charging function, you must

place a suitable mobile telephone correctly in the stowage compartment for the wireless charging function
→ page 236.



Pairing, connecting and managing

 **Please refer to  and  on page 248 and  at the start of the chapter on page 271.**

Pair and connect a mobile telephone with the Infotainment system in order to use the functions of the mobile phone interface. You can connect up to two mobile telephones to the Infotainment system. Only one device will be active and can be used to make calls. The second connected device can accept calls via the Infotainment system and be used for playing back media.

Depending on the equipment and country, the functions listed below may be available. The available functions depend on the mobile telephone used and its operating system.

Pairing a mobile telephone

The mobile telephone must be paired with the Infotainment system before the first connection is established. A user profile is automatically saved in the Infotainment system → page 273. This pairing procedure can take a few minutes. In order for pairing to be successful, the mobile telephone must support the current security standards for Bluetooth technology. Pairing will be rejected if this is not the case.

1. Activate Bluetooth and visibility for Bluetooth devices on the mobile telephone.
2. Pair the mobile telephone with the vehicle via the Bluetooth interface
→ page 243.
3. If necessary, open the list of available Bluetooth devices on the mobile telephone and select the device name of the Infotainment system.
4. Observe the messages on the mobile telephone and Infotainment system and confirm as necessary.

If pairing was successful, the data of the mobile telephone will be stored in the user profile.

5. *Optional:* confirm the message for the data transfer on the mobile telephone.

WARNING

Pairing a mobile device, e.g. a mobile phone, can distract you from the traffic situation. If the driver is distracted when driving, this can lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always drive with your full attention and responsibly.
- Carry out pairing as the driver only when the vehicle is stationary.

 With the factory settings, Bluetooth and visibility for Bluetooth devices are always activated. If these settings should be deactivated, tap  **Select mobile phone**  and tap and activate **Bluetooth** and **Visibility**.

 When some mobile telephones are paired, a PIN is shown on the display of the mobile telephone. To finish the pairing procedure, enter this PIN on the Infotainment system.

Connecting a mobile telephone

1. Pair the mobile telephone with the Infotainment system → page 272.
2. Activate Bluetooth on the mobile telephone.
3. Observe the messages on the mobile telephone and Infotainment system and confirm as necessary.

 If the connection is not set up automatically, tap  **Select mobile phone** and tap the name of the desired mobile telephone.

Functional descriptions

 **Please refer to  and  on page 248 and  at the start of the chapter on page 271.**

User profiles

An individual user profile is automatically created for every paired mobile telephone. The data from the mobile telephone (e.g. contact data) is stored in the user profile. A maximum of 10 user profiles can be stored in the Infotainment system simultaneously.

Deleting a user profile

You can delete user profiles individually under Settings. Reset the Infotainment system to factory settings to delete the stored data completely → page 257.

1. Open the app overview and tap  **Network**  **Mobile devices**.
2. Tap  next to the desired user profile.

Active and passive connection

At least one mobile telephone must be connected to the Infotainment system in order to use the functions of the mobile phone interface. If several mobile telephones are connected to the Infotainment system, you can switch between active and passive connections. Establish an active connection to the Infotainment system in order to operate the mobile phone interface with the desired mobile telephone.

Paired mobile telephones are stored in the Infotainment system even if they are not currently connected.

Difference between the connection types

 **Active** Mobile telephone is paired and connected. The functions of the mobile phone interface are performed with the data of this mobile telephone.

Passive Mobile telephone is paired and connected. Only incoming calls can be accepted via the mobile phone interface. Other functions are not available.

Switching connection type (passive to active)

Prerequisite:

- ✓ several mobile telephones are connected to the Infotainment system simultaneously.

1. Tap .
The mobile telephone with an active connection is highlighted.
2. Tap the name of the desired mobile telephone.
Other mobile telephones then automatically have a passive connection.

Managing connections

Prerequisite:

- ✓ The mobile telephone is paired and connected.
1. Open the app overview and tap  ► **Network ► Mobile devices**.
 2. Tap to select the technology you wish to use for the connection.

Phone book

The phone book is stored in the Infotainment system when a mobile telephone is paired with the Infotainment system for the first time. It may be necessary to confirm transfer on the mobile telephone. Depending on equipment, up to 5,000 contact entries can be stored in the phone book. The phone book is updated each time the mobile telephone is connected to the Infotainment system. The phone book that is still available can be used during the update. A pop-up appears if changes have been detected in the phone book and the update of the phone book in the Infotainment system has been fully completed.

If conference calls are supported by the mobile service provider and the mobile telephone, the phone book can be opened during a call and a further participant added to the call.

If an image is stored for a contact, this can also be displayed in the list next to the entry.

Using a telephone

Select a telephone number to start the call. Different functions are available for selecting a phone number.

Using contact details

If there are several phone numbers for each contact, you must select the desired phone number.

1. Tap .
2. Tap  and enter the name of the contact to search for a contact.

Or: tap **Favourites** to call a favourite.

Or: tap **All**.

3. Touch a contact in the list to start the call.

 When searching for a contact, enter the surname and first name separated by a space.

Use call list

The mobile phone interface stores incoming and outgoing calls in the call list. Frequently used phone numbers are stored as favourites. Start calls via the call list.

1. Tap  and filter entries in the call list, e.g. missed calls.
2. To start the call, tap a number or, where applicable, a contact in the list.

Entering a telephone number manually

1. Tap  and enter a phone number.
2. Tap  to start the call.

 While you are entering a phone number or a contact name, contacts that match the number will be shown on the Infotainment system display.

Favourites and favourites location

A contact from the phone book can be saved as a favourite. If an image is stored in the entry, this will be displayed in the favourite location.

Favourite locations must be assigned manually and are assigned to a user profile
→ page 272.

Saving a contact as a favourite

1. Tap  ► .

2. Tap a contact from the phone book. If several telephone numbers are stored for a contact, touch the required number in the list.

Editing a favourite location

1. Tap .
2. Tap and hold the favourite location until the phone book opens.
3. Tap a new contact from the phone book. If several telephone numbers are stored for a contact, touch the required number in the list.

Calling a favourite

1. Tap .
2. Tap an assigned favourite location.

 Favourites are not updated automatically. If the phone number of a contact changes, the favourite location must be assigned again.

Removing favourites

1. Tap  .
2. Tap  at the desired favourite location.

Sending text messages

Depending on the mobile telephone and the Infotainment system used, in some countries, you can send and receive text messages, SMS, and in some countries also email via the mobile phone interface.

The ability to send and receive emails also depends on the app being used on the mobile telephone.

Sending a text message

1. Tap  **Text message**  **New message** and enter the message.
2. Enter and tap the desired contact in the search bar.
3. Tap **Send** to send the message.

Sending an email

1. Tap  **E-MAIL**  **New message**.
2. Enter subject and message.
3. Tap **OK**.
4. Enter and tap the desired contact in the search bar.

5. Tap one or more contacts in the list.
6. Tap **Send** to send the message.

Switching between text messages and email

To send SMS or emails, activate the corresponding option. The active option is displayed on the screen, e.g. **Text message**.

1. Tap .
2. Tap v.
3. Touch the desired option. 

Functions and symbols

 **Please refer to  and  on page 248 and  at the start of the chapter on page 271.**

Functions

The functions depend on the equipment and are not available in all countries. The available functions depend on the mobile telephone used and its operating system.

- Hands-free system.
- SMS functions via Bluetooth®:
 - Read SMS.
 - Write SMS, including templates.
 - Have SMS read out loud.
 - Message history.
- Email functions via Bluetooth®:
 - Read emails.
 - Write emails.

Symbols

The symbols depend on the equipment and are not available in all countries.

General symbols

1. To open the main menu, open the app overview and tap  → page 253.



Open the contact list.



Open call lists of incoming and outgoing calls and the list of frequently used numbers or contacts. Open the favourites and list of frequently used numbers and contacts

from the actively connected mobile telephone if this is supported by the mobile telephone.



Dial a phone number.



Open text messages SMS and email, depending on country.



Select the active device from two or more connected mobile telephones.



Select a device connected via Bluetooth® for pairing.



Open the settings.

Symbols for telephone calls



Start, answer or display call.



End or reject a call.



Dial a phone number.



Mute the hands-free system.



Hold call.



Reject call with SMS template.



Add another party to a conference.



Start a conference.



Open the contact list.



Activate or deactivate the hands-free system.



Minimise the call display.



Forward call to mobile telephone.



Make emergency call (SOS).



Voicemail.



Obtain more information.

Symbols in the contact window

1. Tap  to open the contact window.



Input to search for contacts.



Address.



Open favourites.



Edit favourites.



Add favourites.



Remove favourites.



Open the phone book.

Call list symbols

1. Tap  to open the call lists.



Incoming call.



Outgoing call.



Missed call.



Telephone number (work).



Telephone number (private).



Mobile telephone number.



Mobile telephone number (work).



Mobile telephone number (private).



Fax machine.

Text message symbols

1. Tap  to open the text messages.



Select active input.



Received text message.



Sent text message.



Open template for text messages.



Compose text message by voice.



Have text message read out loud.

Ford Assistant

Introduction to the Ford Assistant

You can use the Ford Assistant to operate certain functions and retrieve information by means of voice commands.

Is my vehicle equipped with the Ford Assistant?

If your vehicle is equipped with the Ford Assistant, you will find the corresponding app in your Infotainment system: **Ford Assistant**  → page 254.



Test the Ford Assistant before starting a journey in order to familiarise yourself with the function.

Features of the Ford Assistant

Depending on the set language and country, the Ford Assistant is available offline or online in the third-generation Infotainment system.

Depending on the set language in the Infotainment system, voice commands can be formulated freely and may use colloquial language. Depending on the system language, the statement "I'm cold" will lead to the temperature in the vehicle being increased, for example. Depending on the system language, voice commands that are evaluated online permit optimised searches for points of interest or requests relating to various categories, e.g. the weather.

In some system languages, the voice commands must be formulated according to a certain pattern in order to guarantee recognition, e.g. "Navigate to [Town, Street name, House number]".



The number of languages available in your country depends on the country in question.



You can see whether the Ford Assistant is online on the welcome page of the Ford Assistant app.

Activation word and voice commands

Activation word

The spoken words are analysed continuously in the vehicle and overwritten after around 15 seconds. The Ford Assistant is started as soon as the Infotainment system recognises the activation word as part of this analysis. If the Ford Assistant is available online and activated, (voice) data is also transferred from the vehicle as from this time. Otherwise there is no transmission of data or words spoken in the vehicle.

Recognition of the activation word can be deactivated in the settings.

The Ford Assistant recognises “OK Ford” as the activation word if this is activated in the settings.

Displaying the activation word

You can also find the activation word for your language in your Ford Assistant app.

1. Tap  **Ford Assistant** ▶ **Activation**.

Activating and deactivating the activation word

If the activation word is deactivated, the Ford Assistant cannot be started by means of the activation word.

1. Open the app overview and tap **Ford Assistant** ▶ **Activation**.

Personalising the activation word

Follow the instructions in the Ford Assistant app under .

1. Open the app overview and tap **Ford Assistant** ▶ **Activation**.

Voice commands

The Ford Assistant recognises only voice commands in the language set in the Infotainment system.

Opening suggested voice commands

1. Open the app overview and tap **Ford Assistant** ▶ **Tips** ▶ **Basic functions**.

Starting and ending the Ford Assistant

Starting the Ford Assistant

1. Activate the **Activation word** → page 277.
2. Say the activation word → page 277.

Or: press  on the multifunction steering wheel.

Ending the Ford Assistant

1. To open suggestions for a voice command to end the function, open the app overview and tap **Ford Assistant** ▶ **Tips** ▶ **Basic functions**.

Or: press  on the multifunction steering wheel.



The Ford Assistant is automatically ended in the following cases:

- If you use Infotainment system functions.
- If you activate the parking system.
- If phone calls are received.
- If voice outputs occur.



If the Voice Enhancer → page 257 is activated, this affects recognition of the activation word for the Ford Assistant. In this case, start the Ford Assistant via the multifunction steering wheel → page 278. 

Troubleshooting

Ford Assistant does not react

- The Ford Assistant is not available in your language.
- Set the correct system language in the Infotainment system.
- Say the correct activation word for the system language set in the Infotainment system.
- Check the activation word in the settings and activate and adapt it if necessary.
- Restart the Infotainment system → page 254.



Ford Assistant gives inappropriate answers

- The Ford Assistant has interpreted the question incorrectly.
- Speak the voice command again clearly.
- Formulate the voice command in another way.

Ford Assistant does not perform a function

- The function cannot be performed by the Ford Assistant.
- The function cannot be performed in all languages. Suggestions for voice commands in the set language can be found in the Infotainment system.
- Settings made within the respective function prevent it from being switched on or executed.

— Formulate the voice command in another way.

For further information, please visit the Ford website.

Mobile Apps

Introduction

Mobile Apps enables the user to display and operate content and functions from a mobile telephone on the Infotainment system screen. For this, the mobile telephone must be connected to the Infotainment system using a USB interface with data transfer function. Some technologies can also be accessed wirelessly using Mobile Apps Wireless via the Bluetooth interface and the Wi-Fi® hotspot.

Technologies

The following technologies may be available:

— Apple CarPlay®.

Depending on equipment, it may be possible to use this wirelessly via Mobile Apps Wireless.

— Android Auto®.

Depending on equipment, it may be possible to use this wirelessly via Mobile Apps Wireless.

The above-named technologies are operated by third parties and are not made available by Ford Motor Company. Ford Motor Company is not responsible if these technologies are terminated, discontinued or deactivated during the service life of the vehicle. There may be problems with compatibility with third party apps. We are unable to guarantee that the available apps can be run on all mobile telephones and all operating systems.

The availability of the Mobile Apps technologies is country-specific and may vary depending on the mobile telephone used. A wide range of apps may be available and they may depend on the vehicle and country. The content, scope and providers of apps can vary. Some apps also depend on availability of services offered by third parties.

 Apps, their use and the necessary mobile network connection may be subject to charges.

WARNING

Using apps can distract you from the traffic situation. If the driver is distracted when driving, this can lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always drive with your full attention and responsibly.
- Operate the Infotainment system only when the vehicle is stationary or if the traffic situation permits.

WARNING

Use of unsuitable apps or incorrect use of apps can cause damage to the vehicle and accidents with serious injuries, or even death.

- Protect the mobile telephone and its apps from misuse.

 Ford Motor Company is not responsible for damage to the vehicle caused by poor-quality or faulty third-party apps, inadequate programming of third-party apps, insufficient network strength, data loss, misuse of mobile devices, or malware on data media, computers, tablets and mobile telephones.

Symbols

 Please refer to  and  on page 248 and  at the start of the chapter on page 279.

The symbols depend on the equipment and are available only in some countries.

 Show more information.

 Show paired devices.

 Select Apple CarPlay technology.



Select Android Auto technology.

Connecting a mobile telephone with Mobile Apps

Please refer to and on page 248 and at the start of the chapter on page 279.

In order to use Mobile Apps or, via a wireless connection, Mobile Apps Wireless, you must first connect the mobile telephone to the Infotainment system via the **Mobile Apps** main menu → page 254. With Mobile Apps Wireless, the connection is started via Bluetooth and is then set up via the Wi-Fi hotspot of the Infotainment system.

As long as a mobile telephone is connected via Mobile Apps, no other mobile telephones can be used via the Infotainment system, e.g. to make phone calls via the Bluetooth mobile phone interface.

If Apple CarPlay is used, the Bluetooth connection is terminated again as soon as the connection via the Wi-Fi hotspot of the Infotainment system has been established.

If Android Auto is used, the Bluetooth connection is maintained.

Connecting a mobile telephone via USB cable

1. Connect the mobile telephone to the Infotainment system using a USB cable.
2. Confirm any authorisation prompts on the mobile telephone to give the Infotainment system the necessary permissions.

Mobile Apps is now set up.

Setting up Mobile Apps Wireless

The mobile telephone needs to be paired with the Infotainment system before you can use Mobile Apps Wireless.

Connecting a mobile telephone for the first time

1. Unlock the mobile telephone.

2. Activate Wi-Fi and Bluetooth on the mobile telephone.
3. Connect the mobile telephone to the Infotainment system using a USB cable or Bluetooth.
4. Open the app overview and tap .
5. Select the mobile telephone and the desired technology.
6. Confirm any authorisation prompts on the mobile telephone to give the Infotainment system the necessary permissions.
7. Disconnect the USB connection and connect to the Infotainment system again using Wi-Fi or Bluetooth.

Mobile Apps Wireless is now set up. The pairing is completed. In future, the connected mobile telephone will also be able to use Mobile Apps Wireless without a USB connection.

Mobile Apps or Mobile Apps Wireless will not be available if you do not confirm the pop-up menus during the connection process. In this case, it is recommended that you delete the devices in both the mobile telephone settings and on the Infotainment system and restart the connection process.

Mobile Apps Wireless may not be supported by all technologies.

Mobile Apps Wireless when crossing borders

When you cross the border into countries that have different permitted radio frequencies than in your own country, please note the following for operation of the Wireless function of Mobile Apps (Mobile Apps Wireless)/Wi-Fi:

- Mobile Apps Wireless is restricted or not possible at all due to legal regulations. This may be indicated by a message displayed on the Infotainment system.
- Mobile Apps Wireless must be disabled due to legal requirements.
- The Wi-Fi hotspot must be deactivated.

Operation of wired Mobile Apps functions is not affected by this restriction, and these functions can still be used.

Apple CarPlay®

📖 Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ on page 248 and ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 279.

Prerequisites

The following conditions must be fulfilled in order to use Apple CarPlay:

- ✓ The iPhone must support Apple CarPlay.
- ✓ The voice assistant Siri must be activated on the iPhone.
- ✓ Apple CarPlay must be activated in the iPhone settings without any restrictions.
- ✓ For wireless use with Apple CarPlay Wireless, Bluetooth and the Infotainment system as a Wi-Fi hotspot must be activated on the iPhone.
- ✓ If Apple CarPlay Wireless is not possible, the iPhone must be connected to the Infotainment system via a USB connection with data transfer capability. Only USB ports with data transfer capability are suitable for using Apple CarPlay.
- ✓ The USB cable used must be a USB cable certified by Apple, e.g. the original USB cable from Apple.

📘 The availability of the technologies is country-specific and may vary.

📘 Information on technical requirements, compatible iPhones, certified apps and availability are available on the Ford and Apple CarPlay websites or from an authorised dealer.

Opening Apple CarPlay

1. Open the app overview and tap **Mobile Apps** ▶ ⓘ.

Terminating the connection

1. To open the **Mobile Apps** main menu, tap **FORD** in Apple CarPlay mode.
2. Tap ⓧ to terminate the active connection.

Things to note

Please note the following points during an active Apple CarPlay connection:

- The phone book can be accessed only via Apple CarPlay for the iPhone that is connected to the Infotainment system via Apple CarPlay. Other telephone functions can also be performed via the mobile phone interface of the Infotainment system.
- It is not possible to use the Apple CarPlay navigation at the same time as the internal navigation. The last route guidance to be started terminates the previously active one.
- Depending on the Infotainment system, the instrument cluster display may show information about telephone mode.
- The iPhone sends navigation information to the Infotainment system only if the navigation app used is Apple Maps. The iPhone does not send navigation information to the Infotainment system if other navigation apps are used.
- You can accept or reject incoming calls or end a telephone call via the multifunction steering wheel.

Voice assistant (Siri) and Ford Assistant

The "Ford Assistant" is equipment-dependent and is only available in some countries.

1. To start the Ford Assistant, briefly press  on the multifunction steering wheel → page 277.

Or: press and hold  on the multifunction steering wheel to start the voice assistant (Siri) of the connected iPhone.



Android Auto®

📖 Please refer to ⚠️ and ⓘ on page 248 and ⚠️ at the start of the chapter on page 279.

Prerequisites

The following conditions must be fulfilled in order to use Android Auto:

- ✓ The smartphone must support Android Auto.
- ✓ An Android Auto app must be installed on the smartphone.
- ✓ For Android Auto Wireless with wireless use, Bluetooth must be activated on the smartphone and in the Infotainment system. In addition, the Infotainment system must also be activated as a Wi-Fi hotspot.
- ✓ If Android Auto Wireless is not possible, the smartphone must be connected to the Infotainment system using a USB port with data transfer capability. Only USB connections with data transfer capability are suitable for using Android Auto.
- ✓ The USB cable used must be a USB cable certified by the smartphone manufacturer, e.g. the original USB cable from the smartphone manufacturer.

ⓘ The availability of the technologies is country-specific and may vary.

ⓘ Information on technical requirements, compatible smartphones, certified apps and availability are available on the Ford and Android Auto websites or from an authorised dealer.

Opening Android Auto

1. Open the app overview and tap **Mobile Apps** ▶ ⚠️ **Android Auto**.

Terminating the connection

1. To open the **Mobile Apps** menu, tap **Close** when in Android Auto mode.
2. Tap **Back** ⏮️ to disconnect the active connection.

Things to note

The following points apply when an Android Auto connection is active:

- An active Android Auto device can be connected simultaneously to the Infotainment system via Bluetooth (Hands-Free Profile, HFP).
- Telephone functions are possible via Android Auto. If the Android Auto device is connected to the Infotainment system via Bluetooth at the same time, the telephone function on the Infotainment system can also be used.
- It is not possible to use the Android Auto navigation at the same time as the internal navigation. The last route guidance to be started terminates the previously active one.
- You can see information about telephone mode in the instrument cluster display.
- Depending on the Infotainment system and navigation app you are using, turning instructions may be shown on the instrument cluster display.
- You can accept or reject incoming calls or end a telephone call via the multifunction steering wheel.

Starting the voice assistant of the smartphone or the Ford Assistant of the Infotainment system

The "Ford Assistant" is equipment-dependent and is only available in some countries.

1. Briefly press  on the multifunction steering wheel to start the Ford Assistant of the Infotainment system.

Or: press and hold  on the multifunction steering wheel to start the voice assistant of the connected smartphone. <

Transporting items

Stowing loads

Loads must be secured taking into account country-specific road traffic regulations and any other applicable country-specific regulations. Always observe the legal requirements.

Loads can be transported in the load compartment or on the loadspace floor, on a trailer → page 297 and on a roof carrier → page 305.

Stowing loads safely

- Always distribute any loads in the vehicle as evenly as possible.
- Always stow loads and heavy objects in the load compartment and place them as far forwards as possible.
- If necessary, increase the size of the load compartment by removing the seats.
- Observe gross axle weight ratings and the gross vehicle weight rating → page 452.
- Secure items to the fastening rings in the load compartment using suitable lashing, retaining and securing straps → page 291.
- Also stow small objects safely.
- If necessary, fold back the rear seat backrest and engage it securely.
- If necessary, adjust the headlamp range → page 123.
- Adjust the tyre pressure corresponding to the load. Observe the tyre pressure sticker → page 367.
- If necessary, adapt the tyre monitoring system to the new load level.

WARNING

Objects or animals that are not secured or are secured incorrectly can cause serious or fatal injuries in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident. This applies particularly if objects are struck by the airbag when activated and then flung through the vehicle interior.

- Always stow all objects in the vehicle securely. Observe legal requirements when doing this.
- Stow items in the vehicle interior in such a way that they can never enter the airbag deployment zones while the vehicle is in motion.
- Secure animals in the vehicle using a system that is suitable for their weight and size.
- Always keep stowage compartments closed while the vehicle is in motion.
- Do not stow any hard, heavy or sharp objects loose in any of the vehicle's open stowage areas, on the surface of the folded-down rear seat backrest, on the load compartment cover or on the dash panel.
- Remove any hard, heavy or sharp objects from items of clothing and bags inside the vehicle and stow them securely.

WARNING

If an incorrect sitting position is assumed due to stowed objects, serious or fatal injuries can occur in the event of sudden driving and braking manoeuvres and in accidents.

- Never stow objects on a seat if this is to be occupied and used by a person.

WARNING

Transporting heavy objects changes the vehicle's handling due to the change in the centre of gravity and increases the braking distance. Heavy loads that are not properly stowed or secured can change the vehicle handling, e.g. as a result of the load slipping. This can lead to loss of control over the vehicle and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Never overload the vehicle. Both the load and the distribution of the load in the vehicle will have an effect on the driving response and braking distance of the vehicle.
- Always distribute the load evenly and as low down as possible in the vehicle.

- Always stow heavy items in the load compartment as far as possible in front of the rear axle.
- Secure loose objects to prevent them from slipping.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather and road or traffic conditions.
- Accelerate particularly carefully and gently.
- Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres.
- Brake earlier than usual if the vehicle is heavily loaded.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrectly secured, unsuitable or damaged lashing, retaining or securing straps could become detached in the event of a braking manoeuvre or accident. This could cause objects to be flung through the interior and lead to severe or fatal injuries.

- Always use suitable and undamaged lashing, retaining or securing straps.
- Attach lashing, retaining or securing straps securely to the fastening rings.
- Load the fastening rings evenly.
- Never secure lashing, retaining or securing straps between the fastening rings in the side wall and the fastening rings in the vehicle floor.
- Never secure lashing, retaining or securing straps between opposite side walls.
- Never load lashing, retaining or securing straps above the maximum lashing capacity.
- Observe the sign on the side trims if applicable.
- Make sure that the secured load keeps its form and position. Use sturdy packaging and anti-slip mats.

⚠ WARNING

Unattended children could make their way into the load compartment, close the boot lid or doors and be unable to get out. This can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Always close and lock the doors when the vehicle is not in use or unattended.
- Never leave children unsupervised, particularly when the boot lid is open.
- Never allow children to play in or on the vehicle.
- Never transport people in the load compartment.

⚠ NOTICE

Rubbing objects on the rear windows can cause damage, e.g. to the heating wires of the rear window heating.

- Load the load compartment only up to a height where no objects are in contact with the rear windows.

⚠ NOTICE

Carrier systems that are fixed on the rear spoiler can damage the vehicle.

- Do not secure any load carriers or other carrier systems such as bicycle carriers on the vehicle's rear spoiler.

i Suitable lashing, retaining or securing straps and load securing systems are available from qualified workshops. ◀

Load compartment cover

Load compartment cover

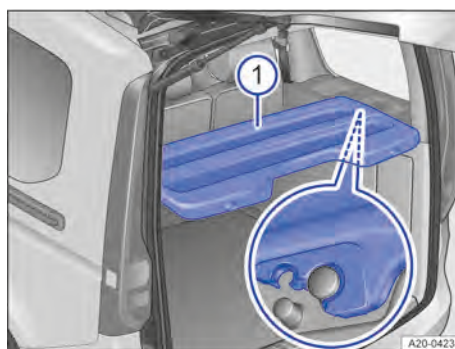


Fig. 148 In the load compartment: load compartment cover.

The load compartment cover is not a suitable place to store items → **⚠**.

Removing the load compartment cover

1. Using both hands, press the front of the load compartment cover carefully out of the retainers from below until the cover is unclipped from the retainers.
2. Once the load compartment cover is unclipped, use one hand to swivel the right-hand side of the load compartment up until it reaches the upper edge of the side window.
3. Lift the left-hand side of the load compartment cover and remove it from the load compartment.

Fitting the load compartment cover

1. Fit the load compartment cover diagonally into the load compartment.
2. Swivel the left-hand side of the load compartment cover up and set it down on the retainer.
3. Swivel the right-hand side of the load compartment cover down and set it down on the retainer.
4. Push the load compartment cover until it has clicked into place in the large retainers → Fig. 148.

Always ensure that the belt is routed correctly when fitting the load compartment cover. The belt must not be trapped by the load compartment cover.

Setting up the load compartment cover

The load compartment cover can be raised to ease the loading or unloading, if necessary.

1. Move the load compartment cover up.
2. Engage the load compartment cover in the two smaller retainers → Fig. 148.

⚠ WARNING

Objects or animals on the load compartment cover can damage the load compartment cover and cause serious or fatal injuries in the event of sudden driving and braking manoeuvres or accidents.

- Never transport any objects on the load compartment cover.
- Never transport any animals on the load compartment cover.

ⓘ NOTICE

Incorrect use of the load compartment cover can cause damage to it.

- Do not fill the load compartment so high that the load compartment cover can press on it when the boot lid is closed.

i The load compartment should be empty to ease removal and installation of the load compartment cover. <

Roll-up load compartment cover

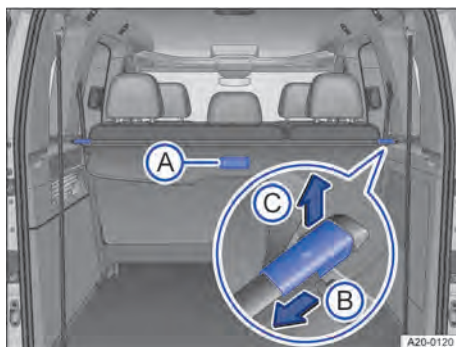


Fig. 149 In the load compartment: load compartment cover.

The load compartment cover can be fitted behind the second row of seats → ⚠.

Opening the load compartment cover

1. Use the handle → Fig. 149 A to pull the load compartment cover back slightly.
2. Lift the load compartment cover out of the side retainers and guide the load compartment cover forward by hand.

Closing the load compartment cover

1. Use the handle → Fig. 149 A to pull the rolled-up load compartment cover evenly to the rear.
2. Hook the load compartment cover into the side retainers on the left and right.

Removing the load compartment cover

1. Unlock the load compartment cover in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 149 B

and lift it up in the direction of the arrow
→ Fig. 149 ©.

2. Remove the load compartment cover from the retainers on the right.

Fitting the load compartment cover

1. Position the load compartment cover in the left mounting in the side trim.
2. Pull and hold the catch of the load compartment cover in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 149 ©.
3. Press the load compartment cover down in the right-hand mounting.
4. Release the load compartment cover catch.
5. Check that the load compartment cover is engaged securely.

⚠ WARNING

The installed load compartment cover in front of the third seat row can cause serious injuries in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or accident.

- Do not install the load compartment cover if there are people in the third row rear seats.

⚠ WARNING

Objects or animals on the load compartment cover could cause serious injuries in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or in an accident.

- Never transport any objects on the load compartment cover.
- Never transport any animals on the load compartment cover.

Partition

Installing and removing the net partition

Using the net partition behind the front seats

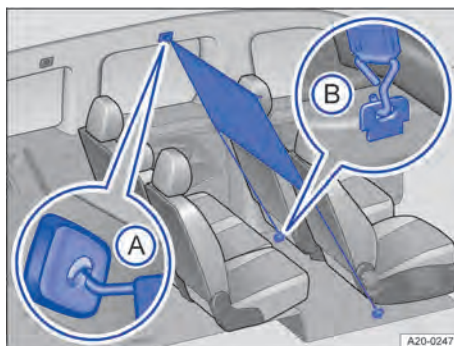
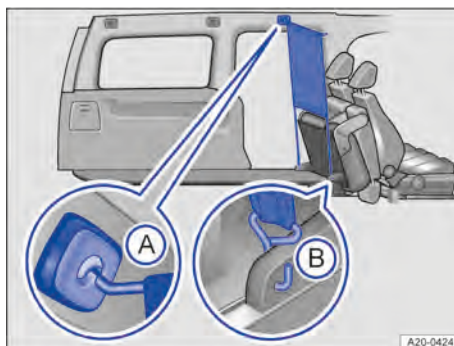


Fig. 150 Behind the first row of seats: Fitted net partition.



◀ **Fig. 151** Behind the folded down second seat row: Fitted net partition.

Installing

1. If necessary, fold down or remove the second seat row.
2. Hook the net partition into the *front left* holder → Fig. 150 © or → Fig. 151 © in the roof. Ensure that the transverse rod is pulled up over the upper position so that it latches securely in the slots.
3. Hook the net partition into the *front right* holder in the roof.

4. Hook the net partition into the anchor point → Fig. 150 (B) or → Fig. 151 (B).

Removing

1. Loosen the net partition straps.
2. Unhook the retaining hooks of the net partition from the fastening rings and/or the seat anchor points.
3. Unhook the net partition from the left holder in the roof.
4. Unhook the net partition from the right holder in the roof.

Using the net partition behind the second row of seats

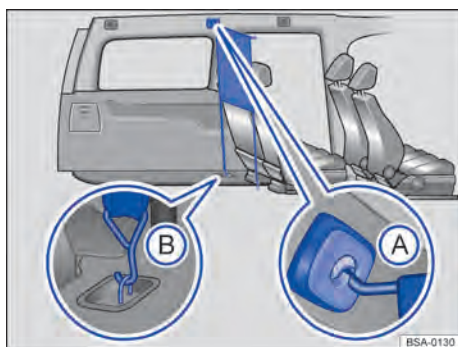


Fig. 152 Behind the second row of seats: Fitted net partition.

Installing

1. Hook the net partition into the *rear left (5-seater) or centre left (7-seater)* holder in the roof → Fig. 152 (A). Ensure that the transverse rod is pulled up over the upper position so that it latches securely in the slots.
2. Hook the net partition into the *rear right (5-seater) or centre right (7-seater)* holder in the roof.
3. Hook the net partition into the lower fastening rings → Fig. 152 (B).

NOTICE

The belts of the net partition could become caught or damaged if you move the front seat far to the rear.

- Make sure the belts on the net partition are routed to the sides of the seat when

you move the front seats forwards or back.

Removing

1. Loosen the net partition straps.
2. Unhook the retaining hooks of the net partition from the fastening rings or the seat anchor points.
3. Unhook the net partition from the right holder in the roof.
4. Unhook the net partition from the left holder in the roof.

Using the net partition behind the third row of seats

Installation of the rear net partition behind the third row of seats is only possible in the 7-seater.

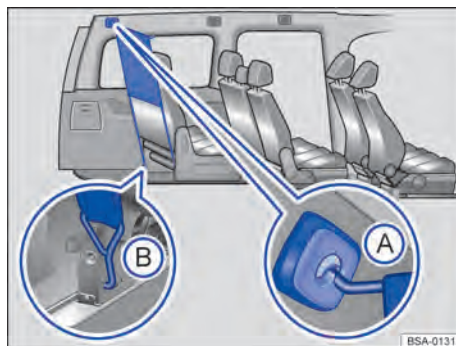


Fig. 153 Net partition installed behind the third row of seats.

Installing

1. Hook the net partition into the *rear left* holder in the roof → Fig. 153 (A). Ensure that the transverse rod is pulled up over the upper position so that it latches securely in the slots.
2. Hook the net partition into the *rear right* holder in the roof.
3. Hook the net partition into the seat anchor points → Fig. 153 (B).

Removing

1. Loosen the net partition straps.
2. Unhook the retaining hooks of the net partition from the seat anchor points.

3. Unhook the net partition from the right holder in the roof.
4. Unhook the net partition from the left holder in the roof.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or accident, objects could be flung through the interior of the vehicle and lead to severe or fatal injuries.

- Check that the net partition is not damaged.
- Never use a damaged net partition.
- Adjust all backrests in front of the net partition so that they are upright and engaged in position.
- Ensure that the rods are securely engaged.
- Check to make sure that the net partition is tensioned at regular intervals.
- Additionally secure all objects in the load compartment even when the net partition is installed.
- Make sure that there are no persons behind the fitted net partition when the vehicle is in motion.

ⓘ NOTICE

If the net partition is not secured at the mounting points provided for this purpose, this may result in damage.

- Always secure the net partition only to the designated mounting points.

Installing and removing the partition grille

The partition grille can prevent objects in the load compartment entering the passenger compartment.

The partition grille can be fitted behind the front seats or behind the second row of seats.

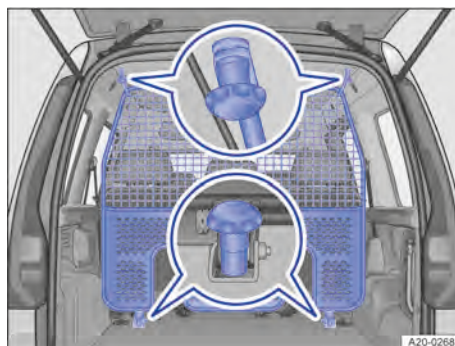


Fig. 154 In the load compartment: partition grille behind the second row of seats.

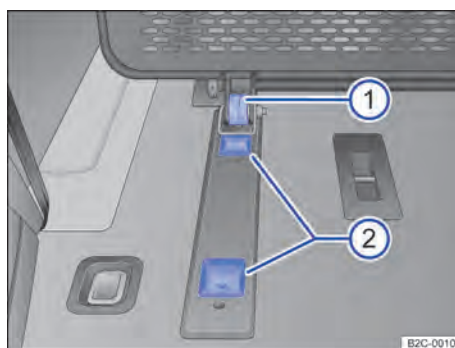


Fig. 155 In the load compartment: Lower anchor point.

- ① Roller of the partition grille.
- ② Recess in the anchor point.

Fitting the partition grille behind the second row of seats

When using the partition grille behind the second row of seats, the seats in the second row must not be removed or folded down → ⚠.

1. Fold seats in the second row forward.
2. Push the bottom of the partition grille with the roller → Fig. 155 ① into the rear recess in the anchor point ②.
3. Screw the partition grille tight at the rear mounting points in the roof → Fig. 154.
4. Screw the partition grille tight at the lower anchor points → Fig. 154.

5. Fold back the seats in the second row of seats.

Installing the partition grille behind the front seats

1. Remove the seats in the second row of seats → page 109 or fold the seats forwards.
2. Push the bottom of the partition grille with the roller → Fig. 155 ① into the front recess of the anchor point → Fig. 155 ②.
3. Screw the partition grille tight at the front mounting points in the roof → Fig. 154.
4. Screw the partition grille tight at the lower anchor points → Fig. 154.

Removing the partition grille

1. Unscrew the partition grille at the lower anchor points → Fig. 154.
2. Unscrew the partition grille at the mountings in the roof → Fig. 154.
3. Fold the upper fastenings on the left and right onto the partition grille.
4. Remove the partition grille from the lower anchor points.
5. If necessary, fold back the seats in the second row of seats.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or accident, objects could be flung through the interior of the vehicle and lead to severe or fatal injuries.

- Check that the partition grille has been fitted correctly.
- Secure objects even if the partition grille is fitted correctly.
- While the vehicle is moving, no passengers may travel behind the fitted partition grille.
- When using the partition grille behind the second row of seats, the seats in the second row must not be removed or folded down.

Installing and removing the load restraint net (vehicles with flexible partition)

On vehicles with a flexible partition, a load restraint net is installed in the left and right side panels. The load restraint net must always be attached when the partition is set up. On vehicles with a long wheelbase, the load restraint net must also be attached in the bench seat position.

⚠ WARNING

In the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or accident, objects could be flung through the interior of the vehicle and lead to severe or fatal injuries.

- Always attach the load restraint net when the flexible partition is set up. In vehicles with a long wheelbase, the bench seat position must also be set up.
- Never use a damaged load restraint net. Have the damaged load restraint net replaced by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
- Additionally secure all objects in the load compartment even when the load restraint net is installed.

Side load restraint net (short wheelbase)

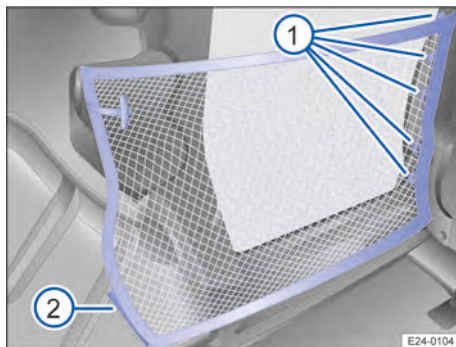


Fig. 156 Load restraint net attached.

- ① Holder on seat frame.
- ② Hook-and-loop fastener on side panel.

Attaching the load restraint net

1. Set up the flexible partition → page 115.
2. Open the toggle fastener and unfold the load restraint net → Fig. 159.
3. Hook the five fastening rings into the holders on the seat frame → Fig. 156 ① on the flexible partition.
4. Secure the rear lower part of the load restraint net at the hook-and-loop fastener → Fig. 156 ②.

Side load restraint net (long wheel-base)

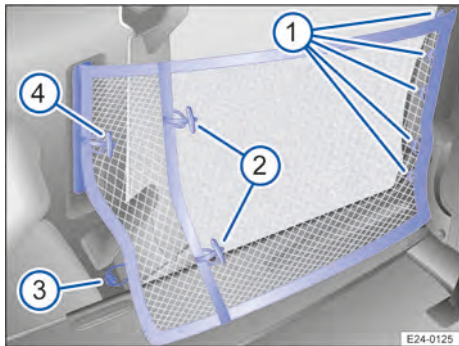


Fig. 157 Restraint net attached with partition set up.

- ① Holders on seat frame.
- ② Toggle fastener for partially rolled-up load restraint net for use in bench seat position.
- ③ Holder on the side panel.
- ④ Toggle fastener for stowing the net.

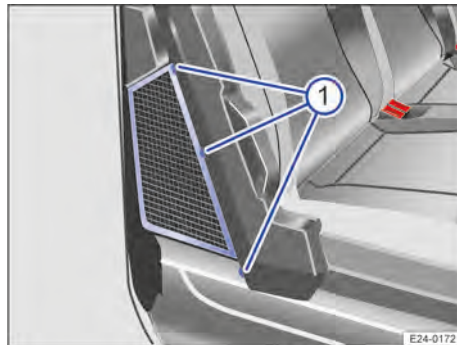


Fig. 158 Load restraint net attached in bench seat position.

- ① Holder on seat frame.

Attaching the load restraint net

1. If necessary, set up the partition → page 288.
2. Open the toggle fasteners and unfold the load restraint net.

When using in the seat position: unfold only up to the first toggle fasteners → Fig. 157 ②.
3. When using with the partition set up: attach the retaining rings in the holders on the seat frame → Fig. 157 ①.

When using in the seat position: attach the retaining rings in the holders on the seat frame → Fig. 158 ①.
4. Attach the rear lower part of the load restraint net in the holder on the side panel → Fig. 157 ③.

Stowing the load restraint net

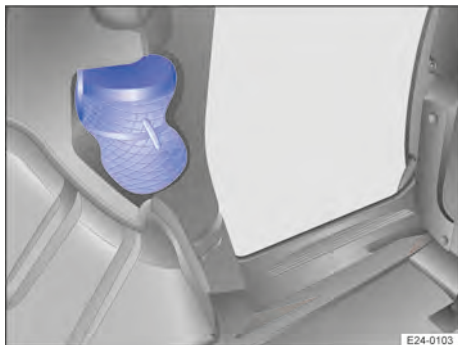


Fig. 159 In the side panel: load restraint net stowed.

1. Unhook the retaining rings from the holders.
2. Fold the lower part of the load restraint net upwards.

The top and bottom edges must lie on top of each other.

3. Roll up the load restraint net and stow it in the opening in the side panel.
4. Secure the load restraint net at the side panel with the toggle fasteners → Fig. 159.

! NOTICE

Improper use of the flexible partition can result in damage.

- The load restraint net must always be stowed properly before adjusting the flexible partition.

Load compartment equipment

Stowage areas in the load compartment

Storage compartments in the load compartment

There may be stowage compartments in the side of the load compartment.

In some vehicle versions, the side walls can be removed by pulling them up and out.

This enables you to stow larger items in the load compartment.

! NOTICE

Overloading the stowage compartment in the sliding door can cause damage to the paintwork when the door is opened.

- Do not load the stowage compartment beyond the edge of the stowage area.

Bag hook

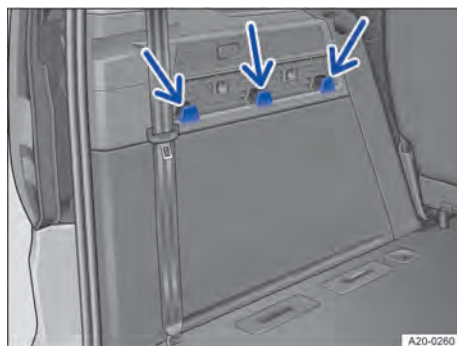


Fig. 160 In the load compartment on the left: bag hook.

The load compartment may be fitted with bag hooks which can be used to hang up light shopping bags.

! WARNING

Loads that are secured at bag hooks can tear off and be flung through the vehicle interior in the event of a braking manoeuvre or accident. This can lead to a loss of control over the vehicle and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Never use the bag hooks to lash down loads.
- The bag hooks in the vehicle should only be used for lightweight object weighing max. 1 kg (approx. 2 lbs).

! NOTICE

Overloading the bag hook can result in damage.

- Do not load each bag hook with more than 1 kg (2 lbs). The main load should be on the floor.

Fastening rings

Observe the maximum load rating of the fastening rings → page 292.



Fig. 161 In the load compartment: fastening rings.

There are fastening rings → Fig. 161 in the load compartment which can be used to secure loose items and loads with the help of lashing, retaining or securing straps.

Securing the load on the fastening rails

1. Fold up the fastening rings → Fig. 161.
2. Position the lashing, retaining or securing straps over the load *across both diagonals* and hook them into the fastening rings.
3. Pull the lashing, retaining or securing straps tightly over the load. Make sure that the cross-over of the lashing, retaining or securing straps is positioned in the centre of the load.
4. Check whether the load can still be moved. If necessary, tighten the securing straps even more tautly.

⚠ WARNING

Elastic tensioning straps must be stretched in order to secure them at the fastening rings and are therefore under tension. If elastic tensioning straps slip off and

snap towards the body, the hooks attached to them can cause serious injuries.

- Protect your eyes and face when installing and removing the straps.
- Always hold the load net hooks tightly to prevent them from jumping out of the fastening ring during installation or removal.
- Always first secure the elastic tensioning straps to the fastening rings in the front area of the load compartment. Then pull the elastic tensioning straps towards the load sill. Secure the elastic tensioning straps to the fastening rings so that they *snap away* from the body if they slip.

⚠ NOTICE

Incorrect tensioning of lashing, retaining or securing straps can lead to damage to the vehicle.

- Never fix lashing, retaining or securing straps between the fastening rings in the side panel and the fastening rings in the vehicle floor.
- Never fix lashing, retaining or securing straps between opposite side walls.

Maximum load capacity of the fastening rings

Fastening rings	Permissible nominal tensile load
Tourneo Connect	300 daN
Transit Connect	400 daN

1 daN (decanewton) corresponds to 10 newtons.

Varying country-specific requirements are met.

⚠ NOTICE

Incorrect use of the fastening rails in the load compartment floor can lead to damage.

- Observe the details on the maximum load capacity of the individual fastening points. In the event of full braking, forces act that can be many times higher than the weight of the load being transported.

- Always use multiple fastening points in order to distribute absorption of these forces and to ensure equal stress on each fastening point.

Towing bracket

Fitting the removable ball coupling

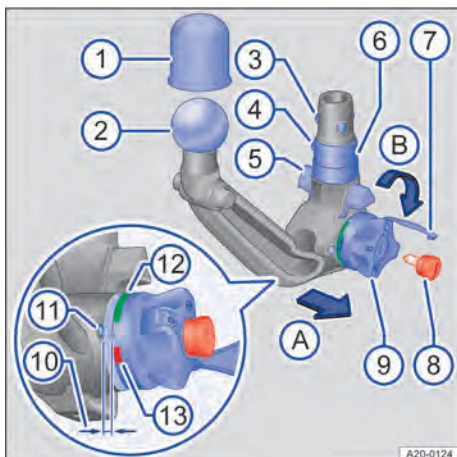


Fig. 162 Overview: Detachable ball coupling.

- ① Protective cap.
- ② Ball head.
- ③ Retaining balls.
- ④ Catch (ball) for locking element.
- ⑤ Centring device.
- ⑥ Shank.
- ⑦ Lock cover.
- ⑧ Key.
- ⑨ Handwheel.
- ⑩ Gap (pre-tensioned ball coupling).
- ⑪ White marking on ball coupling.
- ⑫ Green marking on handwheel.
- ⑬ Red marking on handwheel.

The removable ball coupling is located in a stowage box under the right-hand front seat.

Step 1: Preparations

1. Move the right-hand front seat as far back as possible → page 102, then open the lock and remove the stowage box.
2. Note down the number stamped on the key before using the removable ball coupling for the first time. You will need this number if you have to acquire a replacement key.
3. Remove the sealing plug from the mount for the ball coupling under the bumper. Stow the sealing plug securely in the vehicle.
4. Check to ensure that the mounting, handwheel → Fig. 162 ⑨, shank ⑥ and the retaining balls ③ of the ball coupling are all clean and undamaged → ①. Clean if necessary.

Step 2: Pre-tensioning the ball coupling

The ball coupling cannot be fitted properly unless it is pre-tensioned.

1. Grasp the ball coupling underneath the ball coupling → Fig. 162 ② with one hand.
2. Remove the lock cap → Fig. 162 ⑦ from the lock and insert the key ⑧ into the lock.
3. Turn the key → Fig. 162 ⑧ anticlockwise.
4. Use your other hand to pull out the handwheel → Fig. 162 ⑨ in the direction of arrow A and hold it in this position → ▲.
5. Turn the handwheel → Fig. 162 ⑨ in the direction of the arrow B until it engages. The ball coupling is now pre-tensioned. The red marking ⑬ on the handwheel must point towards the white marking ⑪ on the ball coupling. The handwheel protrudes clearly from the ball coupling. The gap between them is approximately 4 mm ⑩.
6. Check to see whether all retaining balls → Fig. 162 ③ can be pressed fully into the ball coupling shank ⑥.

Step 3: Attaching the pre-tensioned ball coupling to the vehicle.

Do not touch the handwheel once the ball coupling has been pre-tensioned. When engaged, the handwheel will spring back to its original position and could cause injury → .

1. Insert the pre-tensioned removable trailer coupling from below into the mount for the ball coupling.
2. Push the ball coupling firmly upwards until it engages. Both centring devices → Fig. 162  must engage in the mounting points on the vehicle.
3. The handwheel → Fig. 162  has now returned to its original position. There is no longer a gap between the handwheel and the ball coupling.
4. Turn the key → Fig. 162  in the handwheel clockwise and remove it.
5. The handwheel → Fig. 162  may now no longer be pulled out.
6. Fit the lock cap → Fig. 162  on the lock and place the key in the stowage box.
7. Secure the stowage box under the right-hand front seat.

Step 4: Safety check.

Before hitching a trailer, check that the ball coupling is secured correctly.

1. The green marking → Fig. 162  on the handwheel must point towards the white marking on the ball coupling .
2. The handwheel → Fig. 162  must rest on the ball coupling and there must be no gap between them.
3. Shake or pull down on the ball coupling → Fig. 162 with some force. It must sit firmly in the mounting → .
4. The lock must be locked and the key → Fig. 162  removed.
5. The lock cover → Fig. 162  must cover the lock in the handwheel.

WARNING

Improper use of the towing bracket can cause injury and accidents.

- Use the ball coupling only when it is secured correctly.
- Never use the towing bracket if the smallest diameter of the ball → Fig. 162  is less than 49 mm (1.9 in).
- The ball coupling is heavy. When performing the safety check, the ball coupling could fall off and cause crush injuries.
- Do not touch the handwheel when the ball coupling is pre-tensioned. When the ball coupling is pressed into the mounting, the handwheel will jump back to its original position.
- If the ball coupling cannot be attached, have the towing bracket checked by a qualified workshop.
- Never use the towing bracket if the ball coupling does not engage properly or cannot be pre-tensioned.
- Never use the ball coupling if the key in the handwheel cannot be removed when the ball coupling is fitted. This means that the ball coupling is not locked properly.
- Always stow and secure the removed ball coupling in the stowage box under the front right seat.

NOTICE

Incorrect cleaning of the vehicle could damage seals or wash off the grease required for lubrication.

- Never aim the jet of a high-pressure cleaner or steam cleaner directly at the ball coupling or the fitted trailer socket.

 The removable ball coupling is required for towing. Make sure you always carry the ball coupling in the vehicle. → page 336

Removing and slackening the ball coupling

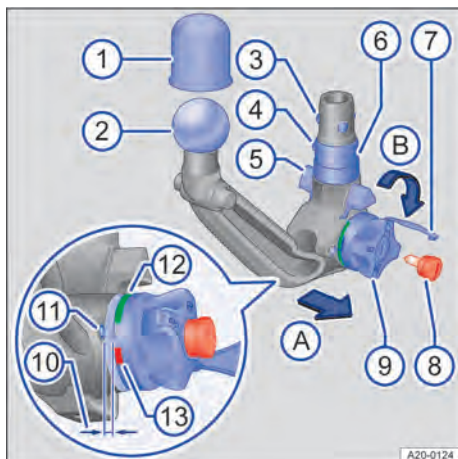


Fig. 163 Overview: removable ball coupling.

- ① Protective cap.
- ② Ball head.
- ③ Retaining balls.
- ④ Catch (ball) for locking element.
- ⑤ Centring device.
- ⑥ Shank.
- ⑦ Lock cover.
- ⑧ Key.
- ⑨ Handwheel.
- ⑩ Gap (pre-tensioned ball coupling).
- ⑪ White marking on ball coupling.
- ⑫ Green marking on handwheel.
- ⑬ Red marking on handwheel.

Removing the ball coupling

1. Stop the vehicle and secure against rolling away → page 210.
2. Switch off the engine.
3. Unhitch the trailer and disconnect the electrical connection between the vehicle and the trailer. If fitted, remove the adapter from the trailer socket.
4. Remove the lock cap → Fig. 163 ⑦ from the lock on the handwheel.

5. Insert the key → Fig. 163 ⑧ into the lock and turn it anti-clockwise.
6. Hold the ball coupling → Fig. 163 ② tightly in one hand → ▲.
7. Use your other hand to pull out the handwheel → Fig. 163 ⑨ in the direction of arrow A and hold it in this position.
8. Turn the handwheel → Fig. 163 ⑨ as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow B.
9. Hold the handwheel → Fig. 163 ⑨ in this position and guide the ball coupling ② downwards out of the mount. The ball coupling engages and is pre-tensioned.
10. Insert the sealing plug into the mount for the ball coupling.

Slackening the ball coupling

The ball coupling must be slackened before being returned to the storage box.

1. Hold the ball coupling in one hand.
2. Use your other hand to turn the handwheel → Fig. 163 ⑨ as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow B.
3. Press in the ball → Fig. 163 ④.
4. Turn the handwheel back → Fig. 163 ⑨ anti-clockwise.
5. Release the ball → Fig. 163 ④. The handwheel no longer protrudes from the ball coupling. The ball coupling is now slackened.
6. Turn the key → Fig. 163 ⑧ clockwise and remove. Store the key in the stowage box.
7. Close the lock cap → Fig. 163 ⑦.
8. Place the slackened ball coupling in the stowage box. Secure the stowage box under the right-hand front seat.

⚠ WARNING

The removable ball coupling is heavy. The ball coupling could fall off while it is being removed and cause crush injuries.

- Never unlock the ball coupling when a trailer is hitched.

⚠ WARNING

If the ball coupling is not secured, it may be flung around the vehicle interior and cause injuries during sudden braking or driving manoeuvres or in the event of an accident.

- Always stow the ball coupling in the stowage box.

i The removable ball coupling is required for towing. Make sure you always carry the ball coupling in the vehicle.
→ page 336

Dimensions and mounting points for retrofitting a towing bracket

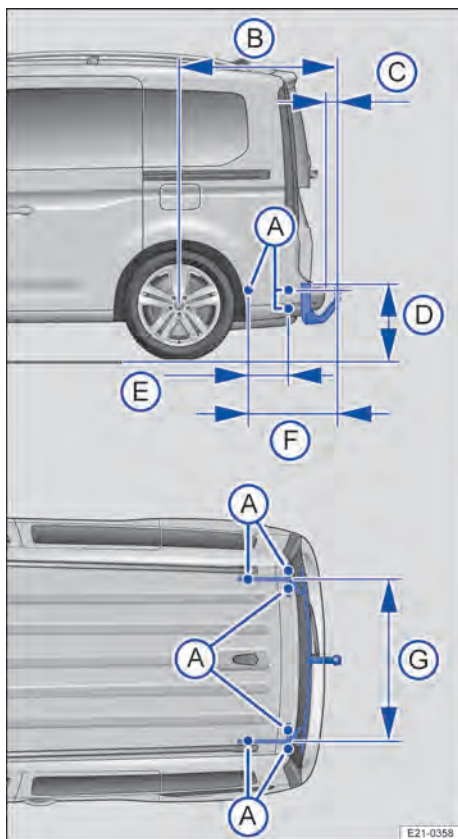


Fig. 164 Dimensions and attachment points for retrofitting a towing bracket.

- Ⓐ Attachment points.
- Ⓑ 5-seater: 934 mm.
7-seater: 1,072 mm.
- Ⓒ At least 65 mm.
- Ⓓ 350 mm to 420 mm.
- Ⓔ 235 mm.
- Ⓕ 531 mm.
- Ⓖ 1,022 mm.

Dimensions

◀ The dimensions must be observed in all cases when retrofitting a towing bracket → Fig. 164. Always observe the minimum distance given from the middle of the ball coupling Ⓓ to the surface of the road. The values refer to the vehicle with maximum load, including the maximum drawbar load. Have the towing bracket retrofitted by a suitably qualified workshop. Conversion measures may be necessary on the cooling system, for example, or it may be necessary to fit heat shields.

Install the towing bracket in accordance with the installation instructions provided.

A retrofitted, non-removable towing bracket must not cover either the licence plate or the lighting system at the rear of the vehicle. Observe the country-specific regulations on use of a towing bracket → ⚠. Due to legal and technical requirements, the vehicle may not be approved for trailer towing in some countries.

In this case, it is also not allowed to retrofit a towing bracket.

Consult a suitably qualified workshop if you have any questions about retrofitting a towing bracket.

⚠ WARNING

Electrical accessories that are not connected properly can cause faults in the entire vehicle electronics system and also cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never connect the trailer's electrical system directly to the electrical connections of the tail lamp clusters or to other unsuitable sources of electricity. Only a suitable connector may be used to connect the trailer.

- When retrofitting a towing bracket to the vehicle, have the work carried out by a suitably qualified workshop.

WARNING

If the towing bracket is incorrectly fitted or unsuitable, the trailer can become detached from the towing vehicle while driving, causing accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Have work on the towing bracket or the retrofitting of a towing bracket carried out only by a suitably qualified workshop.



Use only towing brackets that are intended by the manufacturer for the corresponding vehicle model, model year and vehicle version.

Trailer towing

Introduction

The vehicle can be used to tow a trailer if it has the required technical equipment for this.

The additional trailer load will affect the amount of wear, energy consumption and performance of the vehicle and, in certain circumstances, could shorten the service intervals.

Driving with a trailer not only places an extra load on the vehicle, but also requires increased concentration on the part of the driver.

If the vehicle is driven under heavy loads, functions such as the output of the Climate Control may be reduced or switched off in order to prevent a vehicle breakdown. Avoid long or steep gradients. The engine torque may be reduced temporarily if the vehicle is driven under heavy load for an extended period in order to avoid overheating of the engine or gearbox. Reduce speed and observe messages and illuminated warning and indicator lamps in the instrument cluster. The reduction in engine torque will be cancelled again when the engine and gearbox are again working in the optimum temperature range. The load that

a vehicle can actually pull decreases under the following conditions:

- Driving on uphill gradients.
- Driving at high altitude.
- Driving at high outside temperatures.
- Driving with a fully laden vehicle, e.g. with passengers and load.
- With increasing speed.

Vehicles with Auto StartStop

If towing brackets that were **not** retrofitted by an authorised dealer are used, or if a towing bracket retrofitted by Ford is not detected for system-related reasons, Auto StartStop must be deactivated manually using the  button in the centre console **before** starting to tow a trailer and must remain deactivated for as long as a trailer is being towed → .

Trailer with lighting function check

You must not use any trailer equipped with a tail lamp or brake light that requires a function check of these lights for its approval. Please contact the trailer manufacturer for information on the type of approval that applies to your trailer.

Unused ball coupling

Swivel in or remove the ball coupling if there is no trailer, bicycle carrier or similar equipment mounted on it. This applies in particular if the licence plate or the lighting on the rear of the vehicle are obscured by the unused ball coupling. Observe the country-specific regulations on the use of a ball coupling.

Exterior mirrors

If you are unable to see the traffic behind the trailer in the vehicle's standard exterior mirrors, additional exterior mirrors should be fitted in accordance with any country-specific regulations. Before setting off, adjust the mirrors so that you have a sufficient view of the rear.

Towing brackets fitted to the rear bumper

Do not carry out any alterations to the exhaust or brake systems. Check that the towing bracket is properly secured at regular intervals.

Trailer tail lamp clusters

The trailer tail lamp clusters must work correctly and meet legal requirements. Do not exceed the maximum power consumption for the trailer tail lamp clusters.

Things to note

Before driving with a trailer, observe possible functional limitations of the assistance and parking systems.

DANGER

It is dangerous to transport people in a trailer and it may also be illegal.

- Never transport people in a trailer.

WARNING

Improper use of the towing bracket can lead to a loss of vehicle control, accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Attach and use the trailer in accordance with the instructions supplied by the respective manufacturer.
- Use the towing bracket only if it is undamaged and fitted correctly.
- Do not carry out any alterations or repairs to the towing bracket. If required by the trailer manufacturer's installation instructions, removal of the coating on the ball head is permitted.

WARNING

When the ball coupling is swivelled out, there is an increased risk of accidents and serious injuries for pedestrians and cyclists when vehicles are parked and also in the event of rear-end collisions.

- Swivel in the ball coupling or remove it when it is not in use.

WARNING

The vehicle was not designed for “weight-distributing” or “load-compensating” towing brackets. The towing bracket can fail, causing the trailer to tear loose from the vehicle. This can result in accidents and severe injuries.

- Never install a “weight-distributing” or “load-balancing” towing bracket to the vehicle.

WARNING

Towing a trailer and transporting heavy or bulky items can change the vehicle handling, increase the braking distance and cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always secure loads properly using suitable and undamaged lashing, retaining or securing straps. Please note that a trailer with a high centre of gravity can tip over more easily than a trailer with a low centre of gravity.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather and road or traffic conditions.
- Always drive carefully and ensure that you think ahead.
- Accelerate very carefully and gently.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving and braking manoeuvres.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) when towing a trailer (or 100 km/h (60 mph) in exceptional cases). This also applies to countries where higher speeds are permitted.
- Reduce speed, particularly on uphill gradients and when driving downhill.
- Always obey national speed limits, which may be lower for vehicles towing trailers than for vehicles without trailers.
- Take particular care when overtaking.
- Reduce your speed if the trailer shows even the slightest sign of snaking.
- Never try to stop a vehicle and trailer from snaking by increasing your speed.
- Due to the higher load for the towing vehicle, pay attention to possible messages and to any warning and indicator lamps that light up in the instrument cluster.

WARNING

Auto StartStop must always be switched off manually when towing a trailer using towing brackets that have not been retrofitted by Ford. Otherwise faults can occur in the brake system, possibly resulting in accidents and serious injuries.

- Always switch off Auto StartStop manually if you have installed a towing bracket that was not retrofitted by an authorised dealer and are driving with a trailer.

i Always switch off the anti-theft alarm before hitching or unhitching a trailer → page 94. The tilt sensor could otherwise trigger an alarm unnecessarily.

i In vehicles with a new engine, do not tow a trailer during the first 1,000 km (600 mi).

i Depending on the equipment, the removable ball coupling is required for towing → page 336.

i We recommend additional services between the normal maintenance intervals if the vehicle is used frequently for towing a trailer.

Hitching a trailer

📖 Please refer to ⚠ and ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 297.

Trailer socket

A 13-pin trailer socket makes the electrical connection between the towing vehicle and the trailer. The pin assignment corresponds with DIN ISO 11446.

If the trailer has a **7-pin plug** you will need to use a suitable adapter.

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Lift the cap on the socket and insert the plug.
3. Turn the plug by a quarter of a turn in clockwise direction until it engages fully in the socket.
4. Release the cap to lock the plug in position.
5. Switch on the ignition.
6. Check that the entire lighting system is functioning correctly before starting your journey.

If you are uncertain whether the electrical connection of the trailer with the towing

vehicle is correct, please contact a suitably qualified workshop.

Connection to the anti-theft alarm

The trailer is integrated in the anti-theft system if the following conditions are fulfilled:

- ✓ When the vehicle has a factory-fitted anti-theft alarm and a factory-fitted towing bracket.
- ✓ When the trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.
- ✓ When the vehicle and trailer electric systems are functional, fault-free and undamaged.
- ✓ When the vehicle is locked with the vehicle key and the anti-theft alarm is active.

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm will be triggered as soon as the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted.

For technical reasons, trailers with LED tail lamps cannot be integrated into the anti-theft alarm system.

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm is not triggered as soon as the electrical connection to the trailer with LED rear lights is interrupted.

Safety cable

In some countries, unbraked and braked trailers must be secured by means of a safety or breakaway cable.

Depending on the model, the eyelet for securing the safety or breakaway cable may be located on the neck of the ball head or next to the ball head directly on the ball coupling carrier.

Observe country-specific regulations on the use of a safety cable.

Secure the safety or breakaway cable at the eyelet provided for this purpose on the ball coupling:

1. Guide the cable through the eyelet and hook in the snap hook.

Leave enough slack in the safety or breakaway cable so that the vehicle can still drive around corners. However the emer-

gency breakaway cable should not drag along the ground while you are driving.

WARNING

Any electrical cables that are not connected properly or are connected incorrectly could cause a power surge to the trailer. This could lead to faults in the entire vehicle electronics system and could also cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- All work on the electrical system should be carried out by a suitably qualified workshop.
- Never connect the trailer's electrical system directly to the electrical connections of the towing vehicle's tail lamp clusters or to other power sources.

WARNING

Contact between the pins in the trailer socket can lead to short circuits, overloading of the electrical system and failure of the lighting system, thereby causing accidents and serious injuries.

- Never connect the pins in the trailer socket to one another.
- Have any bent pins repaired by a suitably qualified workshop.

WARNING

If the trailer is not properly secured, this could cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never place the trailer's safety or breakaway cable loosely over the ball coupling.

NOTICE

If a trailer hitched to the vehicle is parked using the support wheel or on the trailer supports, the vehicle height may be lowered or raised due to any changes in the load or tyre damage. Powerful forces then act on the towing bracket and the trailer. This can cause damage to the vehicle and trailer.

- Please note that a trailer that is parked using the support wheel or the trailer

supports must not remain hitched to the vehicle.

NOTICE

The vehicle electronics may be damaged if the trailer's power consumption is too high.

- Never connect the trailer's electrical system directly to the electrical connections of the tail lamp clusters or to other sources of electricity. Only use suitable connections to supply power to the trailer.

 If there is a fault in the vehicle or trailer electrical systems, or if there is a fault in the anti-theft alarm, have the vehicle checked by a suitably qualified workshop.

 If the engine is not running and electrical equipment is switched on in the trailer via the trailer socket, the 12-volt vehicle battery will discharge.

 If the 12-volt vehicle battery charge level is low, the electrical connection to the trailer will be interrupted automatically.



Loading the trailer

 **Please refer to  and  at the start of the chapter on page 297.**

Basic information

If the vehicle is approved for towing a trailer, observe any local regulations for driving with a trailer and using a towing bracket.

Always make sure that the vehicle and trailer are well balanced. Do not overload the front or rear of the trailer. Always stow heavy objects directly over the axle, or as close as possible to it. Always secure loads to the trailer properly → .

Trailer weight and drawbar load

The maximum trailer weight is the weight that the vehicle can pull → .

The drawbar load is the weight that the towing bracket exerts on the ball coupling neck vertically from above → page 452.

The maximum permissible drawbar load should always be utilised. The response of

the trailer on the road will be poor if the drawbar load is too small. However, the maximum permitted load exerted by the trailer drawbar on the ball coupling of the towing bracket must not be exceeded → .

The actually present drawbar load increases the weight on the rear axle and reduces the maximum load of the vehicle as a result.

A higher drawbar load can be used in some countries subject to certain conditions. Observe the country-specific information and regulations.

Gross combination weight

The combination weight is made up of the actual weight of the loaded towing vehicle and of the loaded trailer → page 452.

In some countries, trailers are divided into different classes. We recommend that you contact a qualified workshop to find out about suitable trailers.

Tyre pressure

Follow the trailer manufacturer's recommendations concerning the tyre pressure for the trailer tyres.

When towing a trailer, inflate the tyres on the towing vehicle with the maximum permitted tyre pressure → page 367.

WARNING

Loads that may slide can severely impair stability and driving safety, which can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Always load trailers properly.
- Always secure loads using suitable and undamaged lashing and securing straps.

WARNING

Accidents and serious injuries can occur if you exceed the vehicle's maximum permitted gross axle weight rating, drawbar load, gross vehicle weight rating or gross combination weight rating.

- Never exceed the specified values → page 452.

Driving with a trailer

 Please refer to  and  at the start of the chapter on page 297.

Headlamp adjustment

Towing a trailer can raise the front end of the vehicle enough for the low beam to blind other road users. Use the headlamp range control to lower the light cone as required. If you do not have headlamp range control, the headlamps should be adjusted by a qualified workshop.

Things to note when driving with a trailer

- If the trailer has an **overrun brake**, apply the brakes *gently at first* and then firmly. This will prevent the jerking that can be caused by the trailer wheels locking.
- The combination weight causes the braking distance to increase.
- Select a low gear before driving down a slope. This enables you to use the engine braking effect to slow down the vehicle. The brake system could otherwise overheat and fail.
- The vehicle's centre of gravity and in turn the vehicle's handling will change because of the trailer load and the increased gross weight of the vehicle and trailer.
- The weight distribution of a loaded trailer with an unladen towing vehicle is very unfavourable. When driving in this situation, drive particularly carefully and slowly.

Pulling off on slopes when towing a trailer

Depending on the steepness of the slope and the total weight of the trailer and vehicle, a vehicle towing a trailer could roll back a short distance when moving off on a hill.

When towing a trailer, pull off on slopes as follows:

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Press the  button once to switch off the electric parking brake → page 210.
3. In vehicles with a manual gearbox: fully depress the clutch pedal.

4. Select first gear or selector lever position **D**.
5. Pull on the  button and hold it in this position to hold the vehicle and trailer with the electric parking brake.
6. Gently depress the accelerator and, in a manual vehicle, release the clutch pedal until you feel the vehicle moving forwards. If necessary, observe the information on Hill Start Assist → page 169.
7. Only let go of the  button when the engine has sufficient power to move off.
8. Pull away slowly.

WARNING

Incorrect trailer towing can cause loss of vehicle control and serious or fatal injuries.

- Please note that the vehicle handling changes when towing a trailer and when transporting heavy or bulky objects.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather and road or traffic conditions.
- Always drive carefully and ensure that you think ahead.
- Take particular care when overtaking.
- Reduce your speed if the trailer shows even the slightest sign of snaking.
- Accelerate very carefully and gently.
- Brake earlier than usual because the braking distance may be longer than normal.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving and braking manoeuvres.
- Reduce speed particularly when driving downhill.
- Never try to stop a trailer from snaking by increasing your speed.
- Keep to speed limits, which may be lower for vehicles with trailers than for vehicles without trailers.

WARNING

If there is insufficient visibility to the rear when towing a trailer, this can lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Make sure that you have an adequate view to the rear.
- Fit suitable additional rear view mirrors so that there is sufficient visibility to the rear.

Trailer stabilisation

 **Please refer to  and  at the start of the chapter on page 297.**

The trailer stabilisation function can detect if an attached trailer is starting to snake from side to side and can provide counter steering assistance.

Trailer stabilisation is an extension of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC).

If trailer snaking is detected, the trailer stabilisation function automatically helps to reduce the trailer's swaying motion using counter steering assistance. The trailer stabilisation function may be deactivated in some countries.

Requirements for trailer stabilisation

- ✓ The vehicle is a factory-fitted towing bracket or a compatible towing bracket is fitted.
- ✓ Electronic Stability Control (ESC) and Traction Control (TCS) are active. The indicator lamp  or  in the instrument cluster is not lit up.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.
- ✓ The vehicle speed is higher than approximately 60 km/h (37 mph).
- ✓ The maximum drawbar load is being used.
- ✓ The trailer must have a rigid drawbar.
- ✓ Trailers with brakes must have a mechanical overrun system.

System limits

The trailer stabilisation system cannot react or will react in a restricted way in the following driving situations.

- Trailer stabilisation is switched off when ESC is deactivated.

- Light trailers that are snaking will not be recognised by the trailer stabilisation function and stabilised accordingly in all cases.
- A trailer can still jack-knife on slippery roads with little grip, even if the towing vehicle is equipped with the trailer stabilisation system.
- Trailers with a high centre of gravity might tip over before snaking starts.
- Sudden braking procedures could occur automatically in extreme driving situations if the trailer socket is being used without a trailer, e.g. for a bicycle carrier with lighting.

WARNING

The trailer stabilisation system is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. The trailer stabilisation system therefore cannot recognise all driving situations and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries or even death.

- Always pay due attention and do not rely exclusively on the system. The driver is always responsible for all driving tasks.
- Observe the system limits → page 302.
- Accelerate carefully on slippery surfaces.
- Stop accelerating if a system is performing a control intervention.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather and road or traffic conditions.

for installation on the ball coupling or on the boot lid.

Use only rear carrier systems that are intended by the manufacturer for the corresponding vehicle model, model year and vehicle version.

Mount the rear carrier system in accordance with the manufacturer's assembly instructions.

Observe country-specific regulations for driving with a rear carrier system.



When a rear carrier system is fitted, consumption increases due to the increased air resistance.

Installing a rear carrier system or bicycle carrier on the ball coupling

Rear carrier systems include equipment such as bicycle carriers or hunters' boxes, for example, which are installed on the ball coupling.

Use only rear carrier systems that are intended by the manufacturer for the corresponding vehicle model, model year and vehicle version.

Ford recommends using Ford Genuine Accessories, which are available from Ford dealerships.

Mount the rear carrier system in accordance with the manufacturer's assembly instructions.

Rear carrier system (bicycle carrier)

Introduction

Rear carrier systems include equipment such as bicycle carriers or hunters' boxes, for example. There are rear carrier systems

Maximum load of the rear carrier system

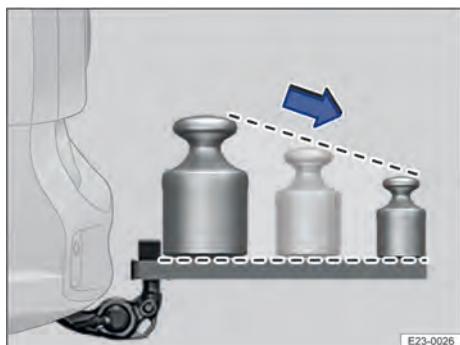


Fig. 165 Recommended weight distribution on the rear carrier system.

The load is made up of the rear carrier system and the items transported on it.

The maximum recommended load of the rear carrier system installed on the ball coupling can deviate from the vehicle-specific drawbar load of the vehicle.

However, the maximum drawbar load of the towing bracket must not be exceeded.

Due to the lever effect, the load capacity decreases the further the centre of gravity of the rear carrier system is away from the ball head.

Position heavy items as close as possible to the ball coupling → Fig. 165.

Vehicle-specific maximum load

In order to find out the recommended maximum load for your vehicle, check the drawbar load of your vehicle → page 452. The corresponding maximum load can then be read from the following table. Ford recommends observing the specified number of bicycles on the rear carrier system in accordance with Regulation UN-R 55.

Vehicle-specific drawbar load	Maximum load	Number of bicycles
50 kg	50 kg	2
55 kg	55 kg	2
from 75 kg	75 kg	3

Maximum overhang of the rear carrier system

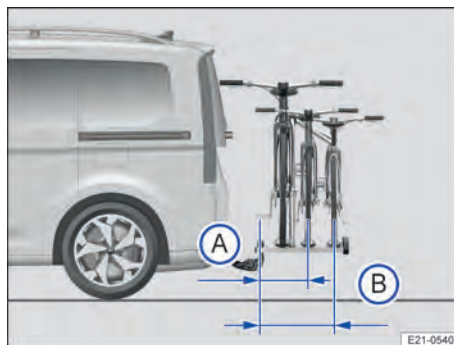


Fig. 166 Illustration of the maximum overhang on a bicycle carrier for two or three bicycles.

- Ⓐ With a load of up to 55 kg (121 lbs): 500 mm (approx. 19.7 in).
- Ⓑ With a load of 75 kg (165 lbs): 700 mm (approx. 27.6 in).

For bicycle carrier systems with two bicycles, the maximum overhang must not exceed 500 mm (approx.

19.7 in) → Fig. 166 Ⓐ from the middle of the ball head to the middle of the rail of the last bicycle carrier. The overhang must not exceed 700 mm (approx. 27.6 in)

→ Fig. 166 Ⓑ for bicycle carrier systems with three bicycles.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of a rear carrier system mounted on the ball coupling of the towing bracket can cause accidents and injuries.

- Make sure that the rear carrier system is suitable for use on your vehicle.
- Always read and observe the fitting instructions of the rear carrier system's manufacturer.
- Never secure a rear carrier system on the ball neck below the ball head. The rear carrier system could slip due to the shape of the ball neck.

i Remove all add-on parts from the rear carrier system before a trip if possible. This includes, for example, bicycle bags

and baskets, child seats or batteries. This helps improve the rear carrier system's wind load and centre of gravity.

Roof load carrier

Introduction

Depending on the model, the vehicle may be designed for fitting a roof load carrier.

Roof load carriers can be used to transport bulky items on the roof of the vehicle.

Please contact a qualified workshop if you are unsure whether a roof load carrier can be fitted to your vehicle.

It is recommended to use Ford Genuine Parts, which are available from an authorised dealer.

Do not use or retrofit a roof load carrier if the vehicle is *not* approved for use with a roof load carrier.

Roof carriers *cannot* be fitted on vehicles that also have additional lighting factory-fitted on the vehicle roof.

WARNING

When transporting heavy or bulky objects on the roof load carrier, the way the vehicle handles will change due to a shift in the centre of gravity and increased susceptibility to crosswinds.

- Always secure loads properly using suitable and undamaged lashing, retaining or securing straps.
- Cargo that is large, heavy, bulky, long or flat will have a negative effect on the vehicle aerodynamics, centre of gravity and overall handling.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving and braking manoeuvres.
- Ensure that your speed and driving style are always appropriate for the current visibility, weather and road/traffic conditions.

WARNING

If the vehicle is not approved for operation with a roof load carrier or a roof load carrier is fitted that is not approved for the

vehicle, the carrier can become detached while driving and fall off the vehicle roof. This can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Use only roof load carriers that have been approved for the vehicle.
- Do not fit a roof load carrier if the vehicle is not approved for this.

Secure roof load carrier

Please refer to **▲** at the start of the chapter on page 305.

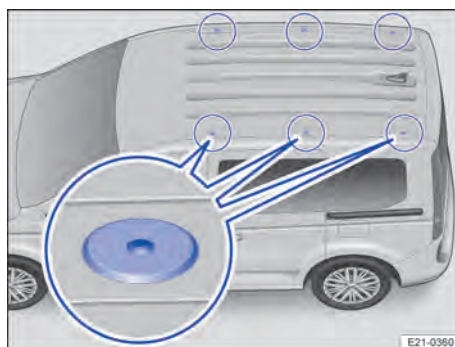


Fig. 167 Attachment points for base carrier (vehicles without roof rails).

Special roof load carriers must be used to transport loads, bicycles, surfboards, skis and boats safely.

Only use roof load carriers intended for the vehicle model, model year and vehicle version by the respective manufacturer.

Securing the base carrier and roof load carrier (vehicles without roof railing)

Install the base carrier bars in accordance with the supplied installation instructions.

Depending on the equipment, there are three or four screws with seals on each side of the roof → Fig. 167. These screws must be removed before the base carrier is fitted. The tool required to do this is supplied with the base carrier.

Secure the base carriers only at these specified points → **▲**.

Once you have fitted the base carrier bars, you can then secure the respective roof load carrier on them.

The screws and seals must be replaced when the roof load carrier is removed.

Attaching roof bars and roof load carrier (vehicles with roof railing)

Mount roof bars to the roof railing according to the installation instructions provided.

There are markings (triangles) on the roof railing. The markings (triangles) indicate the area in which supporting rods may be attached.

Once you have fitted the base carrier bars, you can then secure the respective roof load carrier to them.

Remove the roof load carrier in the following situations

- The roof load carrier is no longer needed.
- Before entering an automatic car wash.
- When the vehicle height exceeds the required clearance height, e.g. in a garage.

WARNING

Incorrect attachment of the roof load carrier and carrier system and incorrect use may result in the load or the entire structure becoming detached from the roof. This can lead to accidents and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Always install the roof load carrier and carrier system correctly and in accordance with the manufacturer's assembly instructions.
- Attach the roof load carrier only at the specified mounting points.
- Always install special carrier systems for bicycles, skis, surfboards, etc. correctly and in accordance with the manufacturer's assembly instructions.
- Use the roof load carrier and carrier system only if they are undamaged and fitted correctly.
- Check that the roof load carrier is secured before starting your journey and tighten as necessary after driving a short distance.

- During a long trip, check all bolts and fasteners at each stop.
- Do not carry out any modifications or repairs to the roof load carrier or carrier system.

NOTICE

The height of the vehicle is changed by the installation of a roof load carrier and the load secured to it. The vehicle may suffer considerable damage if the clearance height is insufficient, e.g. in the case of underpasses and garage doors.

- Check and compare the height of the vehicle with clearance heights.

NOTICE

Depending on the equipment, if components on the vehicle roof (e.g. roof aerial, as well as the movement path of the boot lid) are impeded by the roof load carrier and its load, the vehicle may be damaged.

- Make sure that the roof load carrier is positioned correctly on the roof and that no components are impeded.

 When the roof load carrier is fitted, consumption increases due to the increased air resistance.



Loading the roof load carrier

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 305.**

Maximum permissible roof load

The maximum permitted roof load is **100 kg (around 220 lbs)**.

The roof load limit refers to the combined weight of the roof load carrier and the load carried on the roof → .

Make sure you are aware of the weight of the roof load carrier and the load to be transported. Weigh the load if necessary.

However, you will not be able to carry the maximum permitted roof load if you are using a roof load carrier with a lower load rating. In this case, do not exceed the maximum weight limit for the load carrier sys-

tem which is specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions.

Distributing the load

Distribute the load evenly and secure it correctly → .

Checking mounting

After fitting the roof load carrier, drive a short distance and then check all mounting elements. Check again at regular intervals.

WARNING

Accidents and vehicle damage can occur if the maximum permitted roof load is exceeded.

- Never exceed the specified roof load, the maximum permissible axle loads, and the permissible gross vehicle weight for the vehicle.
- Do not exceed the load capacity of the roof carrier, even if the maximum roof load has not been reached.

WARNING

If loose or improperly secured loads fall off the roof load carrier, this can cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always use suitable and undamaged lashing, retaining or securing straps.

Fuel and emission control

Safety information on using fuel

WARNING

Incorrect handling of fuel can cause explosions, fire, serious burns and other injuries.

- Switch off the engine, the ignition, the auxiliary heater, your mobile phone and other radio equipment before refuelling.
- Avoid electrostatic discharges by not entering the vehicle during refuelling.
- Make sure that the tank cap is closed properly and no fuel can escape.
- Observe the applicable safety instructions and local regulations on handling fuel.

WARNING

Incorrect refuelling can lead to fire, serious or fatal injuries and vehicle damage.

- Use only fuels that have been approved for the vehicle.
- Do not use fuels that contain metals and use only manufacturer-approved additives in the approved quantity.
- Immediately remove any fuel that is spilled from all vehicle components.

CAUTION

Fuel may leak out of the fuel canister and ignite. This could cause fire and injuries.

- Do not carry a fuel canister in the vehicle.



Fuels can pollute the environment. Collect any service fluids that escape or are spilled and dispose of them correctly.



The tank flap cannot be opened manually. Seek expert assistance in an emergency.

Fuel types and refuelling

Introduction

The fuel cap is located on the left-hand side of the vehicle.

Identification of fuels and fuel standards

Please refer to  and  on page 307.

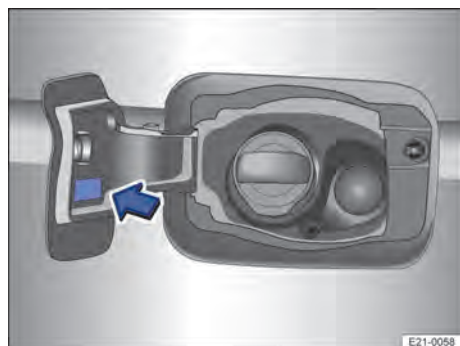


Fig. 168 On the inside of the tank flap: fuel information label (illustration).

Fuel information label

The type of fuel to be used depends on the vehicle engine. There is a factory-fitted fuel information sticker on the inside of the tank flap that indicates the fuel that must be used for the vehicle → Fig. 168.

In accordance with European standard DIN EN 16942, the compatibility identifiers for ethanol content can be found in the following locations:

- On the vehicle on the fuel information label in the tank flap → Fig. 168.
- On the fuel pumps or fuel nozzles suitable for your vehicle.

The designation and frame indicate which fuels are suitable for the vehicle. These are the minimum requirement. The vehicle must not be refuelled with lower-quality fuels or other fuel types → .

Fuel standards and compatibility

The fuels approved in accordance with the information on the tank flap must comply with one of the standards described below.

- ◀ If fuel in accordance with the specified standards is not available, you can obtain information about which fuels are suitable for the vehicle from a qualified workshop.

Ethanol content of petrol fuels

NOTICE

The designation EcoBoost stands for vehicles equipped with petrol engines which can be operated with the following petrol fuels E5 and E10. E20 will not be available in the European Union until a later date.

- After introduction of E20 fuel, ask a qualified workshop whether your vehicle may be refuelled with this type of fuel.

Please also observe the information on the recommended octane number.



Fig. 169 Identification for petrol with 5% ethanol content.

E5 stands for petrol with a maximum ethanol content of 5%.

Petrol fuels with an ethanol content of 5% are available throughout the EU.



Fig. 170 Identification for petrol with 10% ethanol content.

E10 stands for petrol with a maximum ethanol content of 10%.

Petrol fuels with an ethanol content of 10% are available throughout the EU.



Fig. 171 Identification for petrol with 20 % ethanol content.

E20 stands for petrol with a maximum ethanol content of 20 %.

Petrol fuels with an ethanol content of 20% will be available in the EU only in the future.

Fuel standard

- EN 228 in the current version.
- DIN EN 228 in the current version.
- AZS 388-2011 (Azerbaijan) in the current version.

Fuels for diesel engines

EcoBlue stands for vehicles that are equipped with diesel engines and can be operated with the diesel fuels listed below (B7, XTL).



Fig. 172 Identification for diesel with a bio-diesel content of 7%.

B7 stands for diesel fuel with a maximum RME content of 7%.

Fuel standard

- EN 590 in the current version.
- DIN EN 590 in the current version.
- AZS 380-2011 (Azerbaijan) in the current version.
- AZS 381-2011 (Azerbaijan) in the current version.
- AZS 443-2011 (Azerbaijan) in the current version.



Fig. 173 Identification for synthetic diesel fuels.

XTL stands for **X - To - Liquid** and designates synthetic diesel fuels.

Fuel standard

- EN 15940 in the current version.
- DIN EN 15940 in the current version.

! NOTICE

Refuelling with fuels that do not comply with the standards and that are not approved can result in a reduction in performance and considerable damage to the engine and fuel system.

- Only refuel with fuels of the specified grades that comply with the fuel information label in the tank flap.

Petrol

Please refer to and on page 307.

The fuel information label in the fuel filler flap provides information on the fuel to be refuelled.

The petrol types differ in their research octane number (RON). The vehicle may be filled with petrol that has a higher RON than the engine requires. However, this does not provide any advantage in terms of fuel economy or engine output.

The fuel information label on the inside of the tank flap may show several types of petrol, e.g. **95/92/97/93** RON. The highlighted petrol grades, 95/92 in the example, are the preferred petrol grades for the vehicle. The other listed petrol grades may only be filled if the highlighted ones are not available. In this case, choose the petrol grade with the higher RON, e.g. 97 instead of 93 RON.

Always refuel vehicles with a petrol engine only with metal-free petrol (without lead, manganese or iron) that does not have

a higher ethanol content than specified on the fuel information label → ①.

The fuel quality affects the running properties, performance and service life of the engine. Refuel with fuel that already contains suitable additives → ①.

❗ NOTICE

Incorrect refuelling or unsuitable fuel additives can cause damage to the vehicle.

- Only refuel with fuels of the grades that comply with the fuel information label in the tank flap.
- Refuel only with petrol that has the specified or a higher Research Octane Number (RON).
- Use only Ford-approved service additives in the approved quantity if necessary.

❗ NOTICE

If petrol fuel with too low an octane number is filled in an emergency, engine damage can occur if the vehicle is driven with a high engine load.

- Only run the engine at medium speeds and with a low engine load.
- Avoid high engine speeds and heavy engine loads.
- Refuel with petrol with the correct octane number as soon as possible.

Diesel

📖 Please refer to ⚠ and ⚠ on page 307.

Always refuel diesel with a low sulphur content or with sulphur-free diesel in order to avoid damage to the engine and particulate filter.

Fill vehicles with a diesel engine only with diesel or diesel with a maximum RME fuel content of 7 % → ⚠.

If you use diesel with a high sulphur content, the service intervals are shorter. Suitably qualified workshops can provide information on countries that use diesel with a high sulphur content.

The fuel quality affects the running properties, performance and service life of the en-

gine. Refuel with fuel that already contains suitable additives → ⚠.

Winter-grade diesel fuel and filter pre-heater system

During the winter season, you have to use diesel with improved flow characteristics under cold conditions (winter diesel). You can avoid operational faults by refuelling winter diesel. Winter diesel is offered at filling stations during the winter season.

There may be different classes of cold depending on the climate and time in the national fuel standards.

Diesel vehicles are equipped with a filter preheater system. The cold flow characteristic of the diesel is ensured while driving by the filter pre-heating function. Information on the cold properties of diesel is provided by the filling stations in the respective country and suitably qualified workshops.

In order to ensure that the vehicle can also be started at low outside temperatures, it is recommended to park the vehicle in a location that is sheltered from the weather, e.g. in a garage.

Misfuelling prevention device

The tank filler neck in diesel vehicles may be fitted with a misfuelling prevention device. This is intended to help ensure that the vehicle is refuelled only using diesel filler nozzles.

If you are unable to insert the fuel nozzle into the tank filler neck properly, first check whether you are using a diesel pump nozzle. After you have checked that you are using the correct fuel nozzle, turn the diesel fuel nozzle back and forth slightly while exerting light pressure. This can open the misfuelling prevention device and make it possible to refuel the vehicle. If the misfuelling prevention device still remains closed, go to a suitably qualified workshop and have the system checked.

The misfuelling prevention device may not open if you have to refuel the vehicle using a spare fuel canister in an emergency.

In order to fill the fuel tank despite this, pour the diesel into the tank extremely slowly in very small quantities. Use a suitable adapter for the spare fuel canister to

make refuelling easier. The relevant adapt-
ers are available from a suitably qualified
workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect refuelling can lead to fire, seri-
ous or fatal injuries and vehicle damage.

- Before refuelling, check whether the
fuel standard specified on the pump
meets the vehicle's requirements.
- Do not refuel with pure RME fuel, petrol,
fuel oil or other unsuitable fuels.
- Use only additives that have been ap-
proved by the manufacturer in the ap-
proved quantity.

i At cold temperatures, louder noises
may occur in the diesel engine and the
exhaust gas may be tinged blue.

Refuelling

📖 Please refer to ⚠ and ⚡ on page 307.

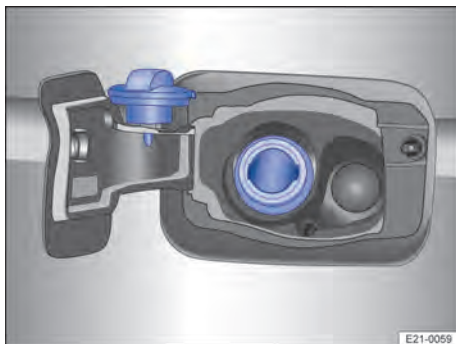


Fig. 174 Behind the tank flap: tank cap (illus-
tration).

Refuelling process

1. To unlock the tank flap, unlock the vehi-
cle with the button on the vehicle key
→ page 80.

Or: to unlock the tank flap, unlock the
vehicle with the button in the driver
door → page 89.

On vehicles with Keyless Entry, the tank
flap is automatically unlocked when the
vehicle is unlocked.

2. Close the left sliding door.
3. Open the tank flap.

*Vehicles with tank flap collision protec-
tion:* a clicking noise can be heard when
the tank flap is opened. This is normal
and is not an indication of a technical
problem. The left sliding door is blocked
and cannot be opened when the tank
flap is open. The sliding door can be
opened again only when the tank flap
has been closed.

*Vehicle without tank flap collision pro-
tection:* keep the left sliding door closed
during refilling → ⚡.

4. Unscrew the tank cap and place it in
the opening provided in the tank flap
→ Fig. 174.
5. Insert the nozzle in the tank filler neck
and start refuelling.

Hold the nozzle so that the handle is
facing downwards in order to guaran-
tee optimum refuelling.

The fuel tank is full as soon as the prop-
erly operated automatic fuel pump
switches off for the first time → ⚠.

6. Screw the tank cap onto the tank filler
neck.
7. Close the tank flap.

Do not continue filling the tank after it
switches off. The expansion space in the
fuel tank can fill with fuel, e.g. as a result of
heating up. This could cause fuel to over-
flow or automatic venting may not func-
tion.

⚠ WARNING

Overfilling the fuel tank may cause the
fuel to splash out and overflow. This
could cause explosions, fires and serious
or fatal injuries.

- Do not continue refuelling when the fill-
er nozzle switches off for the first time.

⚠ CAUTION

Opening the left sliding door can cause in-
juries and damage the vehicle.

- Make sure that the tank flap is closed
before opening the sliding door.

! NOTICE

If the fuel tank content is not consumed up to the reserve quantity at regular intervals, this may result in the fuel quality and system functions necessary for vehicle operation not being maintained.

- You should therefore refuel at least every six months, but only when the  indicator lamp lights up.



Fuels can pollute the environment. Collect any service fluids that escape or are spilled and dispose of them correctly. <

Diesel ageing

 **Please refer to  and  on page 307.**

Compared to other fuel types, fuels with a high biodiesel content (> 7 vol.%) may have a higher water absorption capacity and tend to age (decompose) more rapidly due to lower oxidation resistance. Water and dirt promote microbial activity and accelerate fuel ageing, which can lead to the vehicle's fuel system being damaged.

Perform the following actions to avoid damaging the vehicle's fuel system.

If the vehicle is stationary **as from two weeks:**

1. Fill fuel tank to maximum level.
2. Start the vehicle at least once a week for around five minutes.

If the vehicle is stationary **as from 45 days:**

1. Diesel fuel in the fuel tank may have aged → .
2. You must replace the diesel in the fuel tank and fuel filter before starting the engine again. The diesel and the fuel filter should be changed by a suitably qualified workshop.

! NOTICE

If the diesel fuel contains water or is decomposed and the engine is started, this can cause serious damage to the fuel system.

- If water has settled in the fuel filter, it must always be drained.

- Always fill up with high-quality diesel fuel that meets the required specifications.



Water and diesel fuel must never be disposed of in gardens, forests, sewage systems, roads or paths, rivers or running waters. In order to avoid environmental pollution, disposal must be carried out by a suitably qualified workshop. <

Emission control

Introduction

The components relevant to emission control reduce harmful emissions:

- AdBlue® → page 313.
- Catalytic converter → page 317.
- Particulate filter (depending on equipment) → page 317.
- Maintenance → page 32.

WARNING

Toxic gases can enter the vehicle interior if the engine runs in enclosed spaces. This can cause serious injuries and lead to death by suffocation.

- Do not allow the engine to run in enclosed spaces.
- Do not leave the vehicle unsupervised with the engine running.

WARNING

The components of the exhaust system become very hot and can ignite highly flammable materials, e.g. undergrowth, leaves, dry grass or spilt fuel. This can lead to a fire and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Always park the vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with highly flammable materials underneath the vehicle.
- Never apply additional underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, heat shields or particulate filter. <

📖 Please refer to ⚠️ at the start of the chapter on page 312.

The SCR catalytic converter uses AdBlue® urea solution to convert nitrogen oxides into nitrogen and water. AdBlue® is a registered trademark and is also known as AUS32 or DEF (Diesel Exhaust Fluid).

Legal information

No technical modifications which affect emission control by AdBlue® may be made to the emission control system.

Only operation with AdBlue® that complies with ISO-22241-1 is approved by the manufacturer and corresponds to the Certificate of Conformity issued for this vehicle type.

Operating the vehicle without AdBlue® that complies with ISO-22241-1 may be a criminal offence.

If the emission control system is not operated as intended, the exhaust emissions may become worse.

Information on AdBlue®

The AdBlue® consumption figures depend on the driving style, the operating temperature and the ambient temperature.

The remaining range and refill quantity can be checked on the instrument cluster display.

Because AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below -11 °C (+12 °F), there may be limitations when filling at very low temperatures. While the vehicle is in motion, the system is heated to ensure effective emission control even at very low temperatures. During prolonged spells of cold weather with temperatures below -11°C (+12 °F), and in extremely adverse conditions, it is possible that the AdBlue® cannot be defrosted and is not available for the emission control system.

1. Stop the vehicle in a warm place.
2. Wait until the AdBlue® becomes liquid again.

3. If necessary, have refilling performed by a suitably qualified workshop.

AdBlue® must be refilled independently of the service events. This may be necessary more frequently and between the service intervals.

The AdBlue® tank must never run empty → ⓘ.

Warning and prompting system with low fill level

Always add AdBlue® when a prompt to add it appears in the instrument cluster display.

When the white indicator ⓘ lights up, AdBlue® is still in the normal operating range. AdBlue® can be added, but it is not necessary.

Beginning at a **distance to empty of 2,000 km (1,200 miles)**, a warning to refill AdBlue® will be shown on the instrument cluster display. The respective distance to empty at that time is indicated in this prompt.

If this prompt is ignored, the yellow indicator lamp ⓘ lights up from a **distance to empty of 1,000 km (600 miles)**. A message is displayed on the instrument cluster with the warning that it will no longer be possible to restart the engine in XXX km (XXX mi).

If the yellow indicator lamp is still ignored and the displayed **distance to empty is 0 km (0 mi)**, it is not possible to restart the engine. The red warning lamp ⓘ lights up.

Warning and prompting system in the event of faults

If there is a fault in the exhaust gas purification system or if the tank has not been filled with standard-compliant AdBlue® in accordance with ISO-22241-1, the white or yellow indicator lamps light up ⓘ. The **distance to empty is 1,000 km (600 miles)** when the white or yellow indicator lamps light up → page 318.

If the yellow indicator lamps are ignored, the red warning lamps light up ⓘ. There is a **distance to empty of 0 km (0 miles)** and it is no longer possible to restart the engine → page 318.

⚠ CAUTION

AdBlue® is an irritant and corrosive fluid that can damage the skin, eyes and breathing passages upon contact.

- Always observe the instructions for use when using AdBlue®.
- AdBlue® must be kept only in the closed original container.
- Never use empty food tins, bottles or other containers.
- Always store AdBlue® in a safe place out of reach of children.
- If AdBlue® gets into the eyes or comes into contact with the skin, immediately rinse the eyes with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes and consult a doctor.
- If you swallow AdBlue®, immediately rinse your mouth out with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless instructed to do so by a doctor. Seek medical assistance immediately.

ⓘ NOTICE

If the AdBlue® level is too low, the vehicle cannot be restarted after the ignition has been switched off. Starting with jump leads is also not possible.

- Refill with AdBlue® in accordance with the quantity shown on the instrument cluster display at the latest when the distance to empty is around 1,000 km (600 mi).
- Never allow the AdBlue® tank to run empty.

ⓘ NOTICE

Improper use of AdBlue® may cause damage to the vehicle that is not covered by the warranty.

- Use only AdBlue® that complies with the standard ISO 22241-1.
- Never add water, fuel or additives to the AdBlue®.
- Never fill AdBlue® into the diesel fuel tank.

ⓘ NOTICE

The bottle may develop a leak following changes in temperature and damage and the AdBlue® may damage the vehicle interior.

- Do not permanently carry the refill bottle in the vehicle. <

Refilling AdBlue®

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 312.

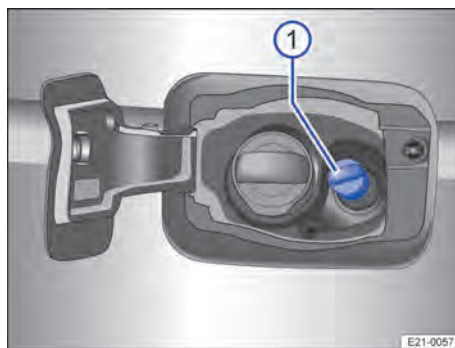


Fig. 175 Behind the tank flap: AdBlue tank cap (illustration).

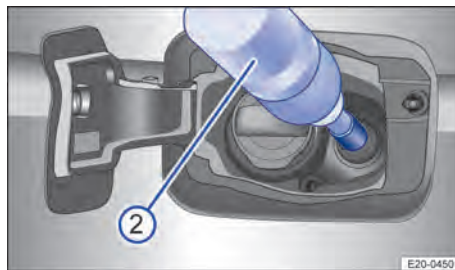


Fig. 176 Behind the tank flap: Refilling AdBlue with a refill bottle (illustration).

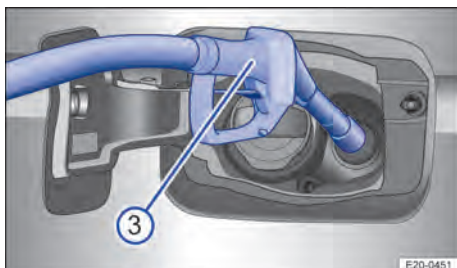


Fig. 177 Behind the tank flap: Refilling AdBlue with a filler nozzle (illustration).

- ① Tank cap for the AdBlue® filler neck.
- ② Refill bottle.
- ③ AdBlue® nozzle.

Preparing for filling

The AdBlue® filler neck is located behind the tank flap next to the tank filler neck for fuel → Fig. 175 ①.

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface and switch off the ignition.
2. Close the left sliding door.
3. Open the tank flap.

Vehicles with tank flap collision protection: You will hear a clicking sound when the tank flap is opened. This is normal and does not indicate a technical problem. The left sliding door is blocked and cannot be opened when the fuel filler flap is open. You can open the sliding door again only when the tank flap has been closed.

Vehicles without tank flap collision protection: Keep the left sliding door closed during refuelling → ⚠.

4. Remove the tank cap from the AdBlue® filler neck.
5. Place the tank cap in the opening provided on the tank flap.

Use **only** AdBlue® that complies with the standard **ISO-22241-1**.

Filling with the refill bottle

Observe the manufacturer's use-by specifications, instructions and information on the refill bottle.

1. Remove the screw top of the refill bottle.
2. Place the refill bottle on the AdBlue® filler neck and screw on the refill bottle hand-tight → Fig. 176.

Do not squeeze the refill bottle to prevent it from being damaged.

3. Press the refill bottle towards the filler neck and hold it in this position → Fig. 176 ②.
4. Add at least the minimum refill quantity of AdBlue® shown on the instrument cluster but do not add more than the maximum quantity.

To ensure that the AdBlue® tank is not overfilled, do not squeeze the refill bottle → ①.

5. Unscrew the refill bottle.

Filling with the filler nozzle

The AdBlue® tank can be refilled at all AdBlue® pumps.

Do not fill fuel and AdBlue® at the same time.

The AdBlue® filler nozzle works in the same way as a filler nozzle for fuel.

1. In order to guarantee optimum filling, hold the AdBlue® nozzle so that the handle is facing downwards → Fig. 177 ③.
2. Add at least the minimum refill quantity of AdBlue® shown on the instrument cluster.

To avoid overfilling the AdBlue® tank, do not continue refuelling after adding the maximum refill quantity of AdBlue®.

The AdBlue® tank is full as soon as the filler nozzle clicks off for the first time → ①.

Filling with the canister

1. Remove the cap from the canister.
2. Use the integrated spout to refill the AdBlue® tank.

3. Add at least the minimum refill quantity of AdBlue® shown on the instrument cluster but do not add more than the maximum quantity.

To avoid overfilling the AdBlue® tank, do not continue filling after adding the maximum refill quantity of AdBlue®

→ ⓘ.

Preparing to continue the journey

1. Screw in the tank cap on the AdBlue® filler neck until it engages.
2. Close the tank flap.
3. Switch on the ignition for at least 30 seconds so that AdBlue® refilling can be detected by the system → page 152.
4. Start the engine.

⚠ CAUTION

Opening the sliding door on the left-hand side can cause injuries and damage the vehicle.

- Make sure that the tank flap is closed before opening the sliding door.

ⓘ NOTICE

Overfilling AdBlue® may damage the tank system and the vehicle.

- Do not fill with more than the maximum refill quantity indicated on the instrument cluster display.
- Remove any spilled AdBlue® as quickly as possible with a damp cloth and plenty of cold water.
- Remove any crystallised AdBlue® with warm water and a sponge.



The refill bottle must be disposed of in accordance with regulations governing the protection of the environment.



When filling with an AdBlue® filler nozzle, you may notice an odour.



Suitable AdBlue® refill bottles are available from a suitably qualified workshop.

Troubleshooting

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 312.



Selective catalytic reduction system fault

The indicator lamp lights up.

There is a fault in the selective catalytic reduction system or the system is not filled with standard-compliant AdBlue®.

— Drive to a suitably qualified workshop and have the system checked.

If the fault is not rectified in the next around 50 km (around 30 mi), the indicator lamps will light up yellow and the remaining range is around 1,000 km (around 600 mi).



Selective catalytic reduction system fault

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

A text message may also be displayed on the instrument cluster.

There is a fault in the selective catalytic reduction system or the system is not filled with standard-compliant AdBlue®.

The remaining range is approximately 1,000 km (approx. 600 mi).

1. Drive immediately to a suitably qualified workshop and have the system checked.

Or:

During prolonged spells of cold weather with temperatures below -11°C (+13°F), and in extremely adverse conditions, it is possible that the AdBlue® cannot be defrosted and is not available for the emission control system.

1. Drive the vehicle to a warmer environment within the stated range, such as a garage, where there is an ambient temperature higher than -11°C (+13°F).

The error message disappears if there is sufficient AdBlue® and it has defrosted.



Selective catalytic reduction system fault

The warning lamp lights up red.

A text message may also be displayed on the instrument cluster.

There is a fault in the selective catalytic reduction system or the system is not filled with standard-compliant AdBlue®.

The yellow indicator lamps and the message on the instrument cluster were ignored. It will no longer be possible to restart the engine.

1. Immediately drive to a suitable specialist workshop without switching off the engine and have the system checked.



AdBlue® level low

The indicator lamp lights up.

AdBlue® is still in the normal operating range.

The remaining range is up to 2,000 km (around 1,200 mi).

AdBlue® can be added, but it is not necessary.



AdBlue® level low

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

A text message may also be displayed on the instrument cluster.

The remaining range is up to 2,000 km (around 1,200 mi).

1. Add AdBlue® within the displayed distance → page 314.



AdBlue® level too low

The warning lamp lights up red.

A text message may also be displayed on the instrument cluster.

The yellow indicator lamp and the message on the instrument cluster were ignored. It will no longer be possible to start the engine.

1. Park the vehicle.
2. Refill the minimum quantity of AdBlue® → page 314.

Catalytic converter

Please refer to at the start of the chapter on page 312.

Observe the following information to help ensure the long-term functionality of the exhaust system and the engine's catalytic converter:

- Only use fuel that has been approved for the vehicle.
- Do not run the fuel tank empty.
- Do not overfill engine oil → page 349.
- Do not tow-start the vehicle but perform jump starting instead → page 333.

If you notice misfiring, loss of power or uneven running when driving, reduce speed immediately and have the vehicle checked by a suitably qualified workshop. Otherwise uncombusted fuel could enter the exhaust system and thus be discharged into the atmosphere. The catalytic converter can also be damaged by overheating.



A sulphur-like exhaust gas smell can also occur even if the exhaust purification system is functioning properly.

Particulate filter

Please refer to at the start of the chapter on page 312.

Diesel engines

Regeneration function

During regeneration of the particulate filter, the accumulated soot inside the filter is burnt to water and carbon dioxide so that the filter does not become clogged. Regeneration takes place at periodic intervals at high temperatures. In order to achieve the high temperatures in the particulate filter, additional diesel is injected into the engine which is burnt in the diesel oxidation catalytic converter, thus allowing the regeneration.

Depending on the driver's driving profile and the load placed on the engine, the amount of diesel fuel injected is continuously adjusted to maintain a high tempera-

ture in the particulate filter during regeneration. During the post-injection of diesel, small amounts of diesel may enter the oil circuit in the engine. The diesel will evaporate from the engine oil again during regular driving. If the engine oil temperatures are not high enough due to the driving profile, or if you drive a lot of short distances, the diesel cannot evaporate from the engine oil and this can cause oil thinning.

An indicator lamp may light up on the instrument cluster display → page 351.

Automatic regeneration

The soot in the particulate filter is burnt off at high temperatures on a periodic basis.

To assist the regeneration of the particulate filter, avoid making only short trips.

The radiator fan may run on while the vehicle is moving or when the engine has been switched off.

Regeneration is interrupted automatically when the vehicle is driven in the reserve range and the yellow indicator lamp  lights up.

NOTICE

If a large number of regeneration processes are not completed, this can thin the oil and cause engine damage.

- Do not switch off the engine unnecessarily while the indicator lamp is active.
- Avoid frequent short trips and driving cycles at continuously low engine speeds or while stationary.

 Noises, smells and increased engine speeds may occur during regeneration.

Petrol engines

Function

The particulate filter is dependent on the vehicle equipment and filters out soot particles in the exhaust gas.

Regeneration

In normal vehicle operation, the filter cleans itself. If it is not possible for the filter to clean itself, for example, if the vehicle is only used for short trips, the filter will be-

come saturated with soot. The diesel particulate filter requires cleaning (regeneration).

Noises, slight smells and increased engine speeds may occur during regeneration. The radiator fan may run on while the vehicle is moving or when the engine has been switched off.

To assist the regeneration of the particulate filter, avoid making frequent short trips.

 The soot in the particulate filter is burnt off at high temperatures on a periodic basis. During a periodic regeneration process, the yellow indicator lamp  does not light up. 

Troubleshooting

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 312.**

Irregular engine running and faults

Irregular engine running or faults when driving may be a sign of poor fuel quality:

1. Reduce speed immediately.
2. Drive to the nearest suitably qualified workshop at medium engine speeds and low loads on the engine.
3. If these symptoms occur immediately after refuelling, switch off the engine immediately to avoid any subsequent damage.
4.  **Do not drive on!** Seek expert assistance.

Particulate filter clogged with soot

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

The particulate filter is saturated with soot and requires regeneration.

Prerequisite for regeneration trip: the engine is at operating temperature.

For petrol engines

1.5 l and 1.6 l

1. Drive at a speed of at least 80 km/h (around 50 mph).

2. To allow the vehicle to coast while a gear is engaged, take your foot off the accelerator completely for a few seconds.
3. Repeat this process of acceleration and coasting until the indicator lamp goes out.
4. If the indicator lamp does not go out after some time, go immediately to a suitably qualified workshop.

For diesel engines

2.0 l

1. Drive at a speed between around 50 km/h and 120 km/h (around 30 mph and 75 mph).

The achieved temperature increase can burn the soot off the filter.

2. End the regeneration drive only when the indicator lamp goes out.
3. Go to a suitably qualified workshop if the indicator lamp continues to light up after driving for approximately 40 minutes.

If a message requesting you to refuel appears additionally on the instrument cluster display during the regeneration drive, the regeneration process of the particulate filter could be interrupted.

1. Refuel if necessary and then continue the regeneration drive.



Particulate filter clogged

The indicator lamps light up yellow together.

Self-regeneration of the particulate filter is no longer possible.

1. Contact a suitably qualified workshop immediately to have a service regeneration carried out.

The particulate filter will be damaged and will have to be replaced by a suitably qualified workshop if the indicator lamps are ignored.



Emissions-relevant fault

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

Fault in an emissions-relevant component that can damage the vehicle.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop and have the engine and exhaust system checked.



Misfiring

The indicator lamp flashes yellow.

Misfiring is occurring that can damage the vehicle.

1. Go to a suitably qualified workshop and have the engine and exhaust system checked.



WARNING

Sudden braking or driving manoeuvres, e.g. when an indicator lamp lights up or due to irregular engine running, can lead to accidents. This can result in severe or fatal injuries.

- Ensure that your speed and driving style are always appropriate for the current visibility, weather and road/traffic conditions.
- Always observe the applicable country-specific traffic regulations.



There may be engine faults and fuel consumption may be higher if the indicator lamps are lit up or flashing.



If and when

Vehicle toolkit

Introduction

When securing the vehicle in the event of a breakdown, observe the legal requirements in the respective country.

WARNING

In the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident, certain items may be flung through the vehicle interior, such as a loose breakdown set, temporary spare wheel or loose vehicle tool kit. This can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Always ensure that the vehicle toolkit, breakdown set and spare wheel are properly secured in the vehicle.

WARNING

Working with an unsuitable or damaged vehicle toolkit can result in accidents. This can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Never work with unsuitable or damaged tools from the vehicle toolkit.
- Seek expert assistance if no suitable vehicle toolkit is available.

Stowage

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 320.**

The vehicle toolkit and the removable ball coupling may be located in different places depending on the vehicle model.

Towing bracket

The removable ball coupling is located at the front under the front passenger seat.

1. Slide the front passenger seat back as far as it will go.
2. Undo the closure and remove the foam rubber holder under the front passenger seat.

Tourneo

The vehicle toolkit is located in the load compartment behind a cover behind the rear right wheel housing.

1. Loosen the securing strap if necessary.

Transit

The vehicle toolkit is stored in a foam rubber holder under the front passenger seat.

1. If necessary, slide the front passenger seat forwards and fold the seat backrest forwards to access the vehicle tool kit → page 102.

Vehicle toolkit in vehicles with flexible partition

The vehicle toolkit is located in a tool bag on the left-hand side of the load compartment above the wheel housing.

Removing the tool bag

1. Open the catch.
2. Loosen the fastening straps and remove the tool bag.

Stowing the tool bag

1. Place the tool bag in the mount.
2. Guide the rear fastening strap through under the handle of the tool bag.
3. Feed the fastening straps through the buckles and tighten.
4. Close the catch.

 *Vehicles with individual seats in the third row of seats*

The backrest of the right-hand individual seat must be folded down in order to access the vehicle toolkit → page 106.

 After using the jack, crank it back to its original position so that it can be stowed safely.

Contents of the vehicle toolkit

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 320.**

The scope of the on-board tool kit depends on the country and equipment. The following section describes the maximum scope:

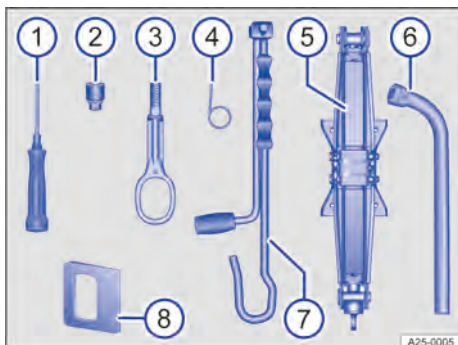


Fig. 178 Contents of the toolbox (illustration).

- ① Screwdriver with hexagon socket in the handle for unscrewing or screwing tight slackened wheel bolts. The screwdriver has two reversible blades.
- ② Adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolt. Carry the wheel bolt adapter in the vehicle toolkit at all times. The code number of the anti-theft wheel bolt is stamped on the front of the adapter. You will need this number to replace the adapter if lost. Make a note of the code number for the anti-theft wheel bolt and keep it in a safe place – but not inside the vehicle.
- ③ Screw-in towing eye.
- ④ Hook for pulling off the centre covers, wheel covers and the wheel bolt caps. Depending on equipment, there may be a puller for pulling off the covers for the wheel bolts.
- ⑤ Jack. Before repacking the jack, fully wind in the jack claw so that the jack can be stowed securely.
- ⑥ Wheel wrench for loosening and tightening the wheel bolts.
- ⑦ Crank.
- ⑧ Tool for removing tail lamp clusters.

Tyre pressure gauge

In some countries, there may also be a tyre pressure gauge in the vehicle.

Servicing the jack

If a jack is included in the vehicle toolkit, it is not generally subject to any maintenance intervals.

1. Grease the jack with a universal lubricant when necessary.

Wiper blades

Service position

The wiper arms can be lifted off the windscreen when in the service position
→ Fig. 179.

! NOTICE

If due care is not taken when working on the wiper arms, this can result in damage to the bonnet, windscreen or wiper arms.

- Lift the wiper arms carefully and always only when in service position.
- Never open the bonnet when the wiper arms have been lifted.
- Always place the wiper arms back on the windscreen before starting a journey.

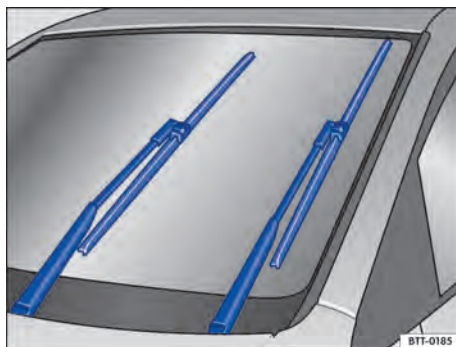


Fig. 179 On the windscreen: Wipers in service position (illustration).

Using the wiper lever to activate the service position

1. Park the vehicle.
2. Close the bonnet and the driver and front passenger doors.
3. Switch the ignition on and then off again.

4. Press the wiper lever down briefly to activate the flick wipe function.

Wipers move to service position.

Activating the service position via the Infotainment system

1. Park the vehicle.
2. Close the bonnet.
3. Switch on the ignition.
4. Tap the  function button.
5. To activate or deactivate the service position, tap the Service position function button.

Lifting the windscreen wiper arms

1. Move the wiper arms to the service position before lifting → .
2. When holding or lifting the wiper arms, do so only in the area of the wiper blade mount.

Placing the wiper arms on the windscreen

1. Before driving off, grip the wiper arms carefully and only in the area of the wiper blade mount, and place them against the windscreen.
2. With the ignition switched on, press the wiper lever briefly in the direction of 'flick wipe'.

The wiper blades return to their initial position.

Cleaning and changing wiper blades

The factory-fitted wiper blades are coated with graphite. The graphite coating ensures that the wiper blade moves quietly over the windscreen. If the graphite coating is damaged, the wiper will become louder.

Check the condition of the wiper blades on a regular basis. Rubbing wiper blades should be changed if damaged or cleaned if dirty → .

Damaged wiper blades should be replaced immediately. Wiper blades are available from a suitably qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Worn or dirty wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries.

- Always clean dirty wiper blades.
- Always change wiper blades if they are damaged or worn and no longer clean the windscreen properly.

ⓘ NOTICE

Cleaning the wiper blades or windows with unsuitable cleaning agents can cause damage.

- Do not use fuel, nail varnish remover, paint thinner or similar products to clean the wiper blades and windows.
- Do not clean the wiper blades with hard sponges and other sharp-edged objects.

 If wax residue from car washes or other care products remains on the vehicle windows, this can cause the wipers to rub. Remove wax residue using a special cleaning product or cleaning cloths.

Cleaning wiper blades

1. Moving the windscreen wipers to service position
2. Lift the wiper arms, holding the wiper arms only in the area of the wiper blade mounting.
3. Clean the wiper blades carefully with a moist sponge → .
4. Carefully place the wiper arms back on to the windscreen.

Changing the windscreen wiper blades

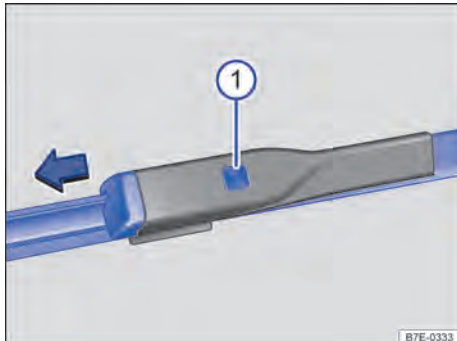


Fig. 180 On the windscreen: changing the wiper blades

① Release button.

1. Move the wiper arms to the service position before lifting.
2. Lift the wiper arms, holding the wiper arms only in the area of the wiper blade mounting.
3. Press and hold the release button and simultaneously pull off the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 180 ①.
4. Insert a new wiper blade of the same length and type onto the respective wiper arm. Push it on until it engages.
5. Place the wiper arms carefully back onto the windscreen.

Changing the wiper blade for the rear window

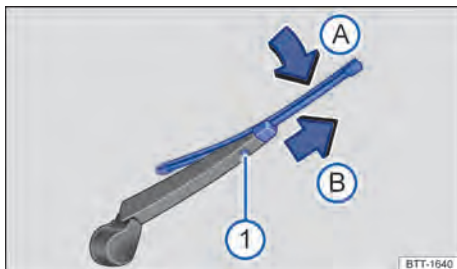


Fig. 181 At the rear of the vehicle: changing the rear window wiper blade.

① Release button.

1. Lift the wiper arm and fold away, holding the wiper arm only in the area of the wiper blade mounting.
2. Press and hold the release button → Fig. 181 ①.
3. Tilt the wiper blade in the direction of the wiper arm → Fig. 181 A and pull it off in the direction of the arrow B at the same time. You may need to use some force to do this.
4. Insert a new wiper blade of the same length and type onto the wiper arm in the opposite direction of the arrow → Fig. 181 B and push it on until it engages. The wiper blade must be in folded-down position to do this A.
5. Carefully place the wiper arm back onto the rear window.

Changing lights

Introduction

Before changing bulbs, check whether a bulb or LED light unit has failed. You can normally change bulbs yourself. If the exterior lighting is designed using LED technology, depending on the vehicle model and equipment, it may not be possible for you to change LED light units or individual LEDs yourself. Failure of individual LEDs can be an indication that other LEDs may fail. In this case, have the light units checked and renewed if necessary at a suitably qualified workshop.

A box with the replacement bulbs necessary for traffic safety should always be carried in the vehicle. Replacement bulbs are available from a suitably qualified workshop. In some countries it is a legal requirement to carry these replacement bulbs.

It may be illegal to drive with defective lights of the exterior lighting.

1. Before changing bulbs, check whether a bulb or LED light unit is installed.

Additional bulb specification

Some bulbs in the headlamps or tail lamp clusters may have certain factory specifica-

tions that deviate from conventional bulbs. The designation is inscribed on the bulb, either on the glass part or on the base.

WARNING

If the vehicle lighting is not switched on according to the weather conditions, the road will not be illuminated sufficiently. Other road users may then have difficulty seeing the vehicle or may not see it at all. This could cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Check the lighting system and the direction indicators of the vehicle regularly.
- Have the lighting system repaired immediately if necessary.

WARNING

When working in the bonnet space, accidents and serious injuries can be caused as a result of bulb changes that are not performed correctly.

- Always follow the described actions and observe the general safety precautions.
- Never change a bulb if you are not familiar with the required work steps.
- If you are uncertain about how to change a bulb, have the work carried out by a suitably qualified workshop.

WARNING

When changing bulbs, sharp-edged parts on the bulb housings or hot or bursting bulbs can cause serious injuries.

- Change bulbs only when they have cooled down fully.
- Always protect your hands when changing bulbs.

NOTICE

Water that enters the headlamp housing can damage the electrical system.

- Always fit the covers on the headlamp housing after changing a bulb.
- After mounting, always make sure that the covers are correctly fastened.

NOTICE

If the glass bulb is touched when changing lamps, fingerprints may be left on the lamp. When the light is switched on, the fingerprints will evaporate due to the heat and the reflector will become cloudy.

- Do not touch the glass part of the bulb with your bare fingers. Use textile gloves, for example.
- When installing a lamp, always hold it by the base of the bulb only.

Information on changing bulbs

 **Please refer to  and  at the start of the chapter on page 323.**

WARNING

If the described activities for changing bulbs are not observed, this can lead to accidents. This can result in serious injuries.

- Always follow the instructions and observe the general safety precautions.

NOTICE

Improper removal and refitting of trims and headlamps can cause damage to the vehicle's paint and bodywork.

- Remove the headlamps and trims carefully and fit them again carefully.

Always carry out the following actions for changing a bulb in the given order:

1. Park the vehicle on a firm and level surface at a safe distance from the flow of traffic.
2. Switch on the electric parking brake.
3. Switch off the light.
4. Move the direction indicator and high beam lever to its neutral position.
5. *In vehicles with an automatic transmission* : engage the parking lock **P**.
In vehicles with a manual gearbox : engage a gear.
6. Switch off the ignition.

7. Allow the orientation lighting to go out → page 122, *Coming Home and Leaving Home function (orientation lighting)*.
8. Leave the defective bulbs to cool down.
9. Check to see if a fuse has visibly blown.
10. Follow the instructions to change the affected bulb.

Always use identical bulbs with the same designation. The designation is inscribed on the bulb, either on the glass part or on the base.

Do not touch the glass part of the bulb with unprotected fingers. The heat of the bulb would cause the fingerprint to evaporate and condense on the reflector. This will impair the brightness of the headlamps.

11. After changing the bulb, check to ensure that the bulb is working properly. If the bulb is not working properly, the bulb may not have been inserted properly, may have failed again, or the connector may have been fitted incorrectly.
12. Each time you change a bulb at the front of the vehicle, the headlamp settings should be checked by a suitably qualified workshop.

Replacing bulbs in the headlamps

📖 Please refer to ⚠️ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 323.

Preparations

The steps should be carried out in the given order only:

1. Observe the information on changing bulbs and carry out the work steps.
2. Open the bonnet.

It is not necessary to remove the headlamp to change a bulb.

ⓘ The illustrations show the right-hand headlamp. The left-hand headlamp is a mirror image of the one shown.

ⓘ There are various types of headlamp, so the position and design of covers, bulbs and bulb holders may vary from those shown in the illustrations.

ⓘ For daytime running lights designed using LED technology, it is not possible to replace the LEDs. Go to a suitably qualified workshop.

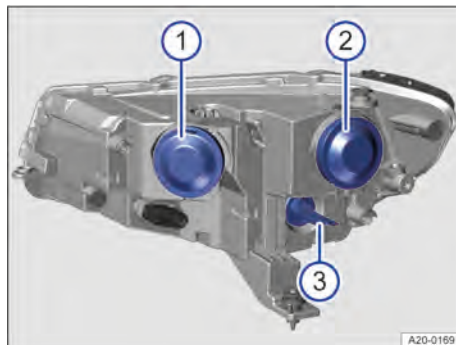


Fig. 182 In the bonnet space: covers on back of the right-hand headlamp.

- ① Cap for high beam headlamp and daytime running light.
- ② Cap for low beam headlamp.
- ③ Cap for direction indicator.

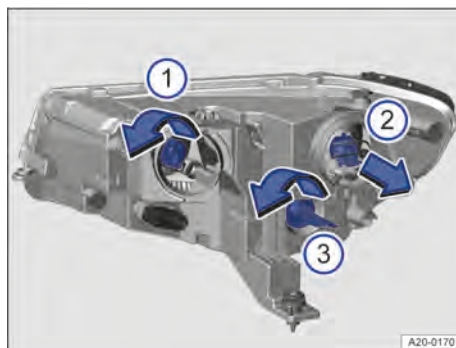


Fig. 183 In the bonnet space: replacing bulbs in the right-hand headlamp.

- ① Bulb for high beam headlamp and daytime running light.
- ② Bulb for low beam headlamp.
- ③ Bulb for direction indicator.

Replacing high beam and daytime running light bulbs

1. Pull off rubber cover from back of headlamp → Fig. 182 ①.
2. Turn the bulb holder in the direction of the arrow as far as it will go and pull it out to the rear → Fig. 183 ①.
3. Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type. If applicable, push the catch on the bulb holder and pull the bulb straight out of the bulb holder.
4. Insert the bulb holder into the headlamp and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow as far as it will go → Fig. 183 ①.
5. Fit the rubber cover onto the rear of the headlamp → Fig. 182 ①.
6. Close the bonnet.

Replacing bulbs in the low beam headlamp

1. Pull off rubber cover from back of headlamp → Fig. 182 ②.
2. Pull out the bulb holder in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 183 ②.
3. Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type. If applicable, push the catch on the bulb holder and pull the bulb straight out of the bulb holder.
4. Insert the bulb holder into the headlamp and press in the opposite direction to the arrow → Fig. 183 ②.
5. Fit the rubber cover onto the rear of the headlamp → Fig. 182 ②.
6. Close the bonnet.

Replacing bulbs in the direction indicators

1. Turn the bulb holder in the direction of the arrow as far as it will go and pull it out to the rear → Fig. 183 ③.
2. Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type. If applicable, push the catch on the bulb holder and pull the bulb straight out of the bulb holder.

3. Insert the bulb holder into the headlamp and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow as far as it will go → Fig. 183 ③.
4. Close the bonnet.



Replacing the direction indicator repeater bulb

📖 Please refer to ⚠ and ❶ at the start of the chapter on page 323.



Fig. 184 On the side of the vehicle: removing the direction indicator repeater.



Fig. 185 Replacing the bulb in the direction indicator repeater.

The steps should be carried out in the given order only:

1. Observe the checklist and carry out the work steps → page 324.

2. Push the direction indicator repeater in direction of travel and swing it out at the rear → Fig. 184.
3. Lever the direction indicator repeater out of the body.
4. Turn the bulb holder in the direction of the arrow and pull the bulb rearwards out of the housing → Fig. 185.
5. Pull the bulb straight out of the bulb holder.
6. Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type.
7. Insert the bulb holder into the housing and turn it as far as it will go in the opposite direction to the arrow → Fig. 185.
8. Fit the spring clip of the direction indicator repeater at front into the body, push it against the spring force in direction of travel, and engage it at the rear into the body.

Replacing bulbs in the tail lamp cluster

Please refer to and at the start of the chapter on page 323.

The illustrations show the left-hand tail lamp cluster. The right-hand tail lamp cluster is a mirror image of this.

There are various types of tail lamp cluster, so the position and design of covers, bulbs and bulb holders may vary from those shown in the illustrations.

In tail lamp clusters with LED technology, some light elements may be fitted with “normal” bulbs. These bulbs can be replaced.

Preparations

The steps should be carried out in the given order only:

1. Observe the information on changing bulbs and carry out the work steps.
2. Open the boot lid or rear doors.
3. Take the vehicle toolkit out of the stowage area.

Removing a tail lamp cluster

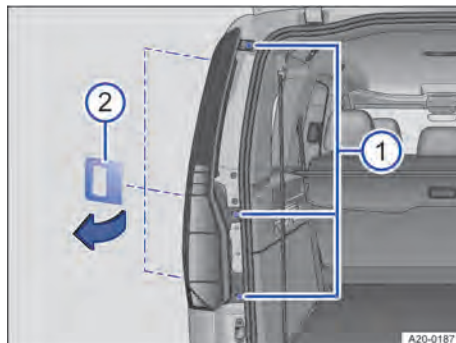


Fig. 186 At the rear left side of the vehicle: removing the tail lamp cluster.

- ① Securing bolts.
- ② Auxiliary tool.

1. Undo securing screws with a screwdriver → Fig. 186 ①. Insert a suitable interchangeable blade if necessary.
2. Pry the tail lamp cluster out of the holder from top to bottom using the auxiliary tool → Fig. 186 ②.
3. Remove the tail lamp cluster and place it on a clean, flat surface.

Replacing the bulb



Fig. 187 On the tail lamp cluster: disconnecting the connector.

- ① Connector.

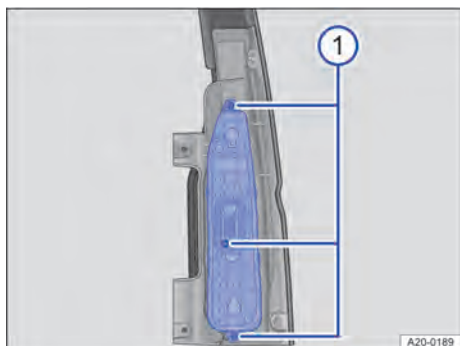


Fig. 188 On the tail lamp cluster: removing the bulb holder.

① Securing bolts.

1. Pull off the connector in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 187 ①.
2. Undo securing screws with the screwdriver → Fig. 188 ①. Insert a suitable interchangeable blade if necessary.
3. Remove the bulb holder → Fig. 188.
4. Replace defective bulbs with a new bulb of the same type.

Fitting the tail lamp cluster

1. Carefully insert the bulb holder into the tail lamp cluster → Fig. 188.
2. Screw the bulb holder onto the tail lamp cluster with the securing screws → Fig. 188 ①.
3. Check that the bulb holder is fitted correctly and is securely seated.
4. Plug the connector onto the bulb holder → Fig. 187 ①.
5. Insert the tail lamp cluster into the opening in the body and carefully press into the holder → Fig. 186.
6. Tighten the securing screws → Fig. 186 ①.
7. Check that the tail lamp cluster is fitted correctly and is securely seated.
8. Close the boot lid or rear doors. ◀

Changing fuses

Introduction

At the time of publication we are unable to provide an complete overview of the locations of the fuses for the electrical consumers. This is because the vehicle is under constant development, because fuses are assigned differently depending on the vehicle equipment level and because several electrical consumers may use a single fuse. You can get more information about the fuse layout from a suitably qualified workshop.

Several pieces of electrical equipment can share a single fuse. Conversely, a single consumer could have more than one fuse.

Therefore fuses should only be replaced when the cause of the fault has been rectified. If a new fuse blows again shortly after fitting, have the electrical system checked by a suitably qualified workshop as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

High voltages in the electrical system can cause electric shocks, serious burns and death.

- Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.
- Avoid causing short circuits in the electrical system.

⚠ WARNING

Using unsuitable fuses, repairing fuses and bridging an electrical circuit without fuses can cause serious damage or a fire in the vehicle. This can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Replace fuses only with fuses with the same rating and size. Make sure that the colour and markings are identical to the defective fuse.
- Never repair fuses.
- Never use a metal strip, paper clip or similar objects to replace a fuse.

! NOTICE

If a fuse is replaced when the ignition is switched on, the engine is running, lights are switched on or when other electrical consumers are switched on, this can damage the electrical system.

- Always switch off the engine and switch off the lights and other electrical consumers.
- When changing a fuse, make sure that it is not possible to start the engine.

NOTICE

Dirt and moisture in the fuse boxes can damage the electrical system.

- Protect open fuse boxes against the ingress of dirt and moisture.
- Avoid causing short circuits in the electrical system.
- Check to make sure that the fuse box covers are closed tightly again and are not damaged.

 This chapter does not refer to all the fuses located in the vehicle. These should be replaced only by a suitably qualified workshop.

Fuses in the front compartment

 **Please refer to  and  at the start of the chapter on page 328.**

Fuse box in the bonnet space

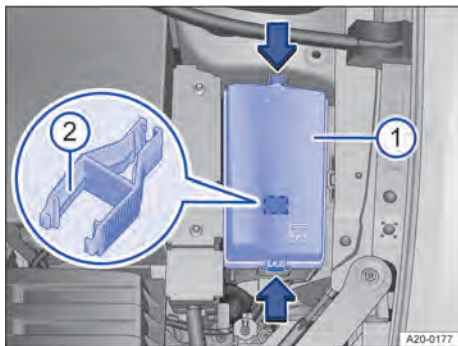


Fig. 189 In the front compartment: fuse box with plastic grippers.

- ① Fuse box.
- ② Plastic pliers.

There may be a pair of plastic grippers for removing fuses in the fuse box → Fig. 189 (2).

Removing the cover

1. Open the bonnet.
2. To release, push the catches in the direction of the arrows → [Fig. 189](#).
3. Lift off the cover → [Fig. 189](#) ①.

Installing the cover

1. Place the cover on the fuse box.
2. Press the cover downwards until the cover audibly clicks into place on both sides.
3. Close the bonnet.

Fuse overview of the fuses in the bonnet space

 Please refer to and at the start of the chapter on page 328.

The overview shows the fuse locations of the electrical consumers relevant for the driver. The first column in the overview contains the location. The other columns contain the amp rating, the fuse type and the electrical consumer protected by the fuse.

Depending on the market and specification of your vehicle, the fuse numbers and locations may differ to those given in the overview. If necessary, ask an authorised dealer for the exact fuse layout.

Fuse assignment

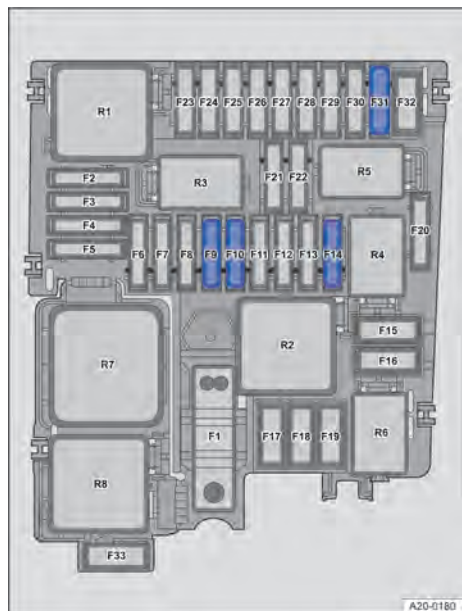


Fig. 190 In the bonnet space: fuse locations.

Fuse location → [Fig. 190](#):

F9 15 amps, ATO®, horn.

F10 30 amps, ATO®, front wipers.

F31 7.5 amps, ATO®, brake light sensor.

Fuse locations for vehicles with factory-fitted auxiliary heater and ventilation
→ [Fig. 190](#):

F14 20 amps, ATO®, auxiliary heater.

Fuses in the dash panel

📖 Please refer to ⚠ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 328.

Left-hand drive vehicle: opening and closing the fuse box in the dash panel

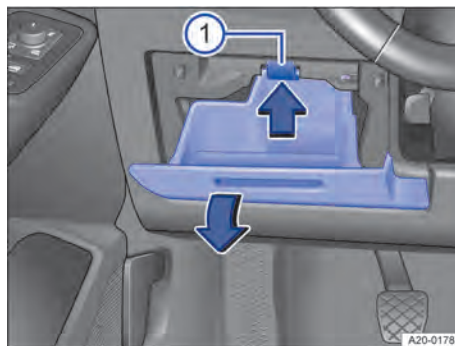


Fig. 191 Fuse box cover in the dash panel: left-hand drive vehicle, on the left-hand side of the steering wheel.

① Lug.

Opening the cover

1. Open the storage compartment and empty it if necessary → [Fig. 191](#).
2. Push the retaining lug upwards in the direction of the arrow and at the same time open the stowage compartment further and remove in the direction of the arrow until you can access the fuse carrier → [Fig. 191](#) ⓘ.

Closing the cover

1. Press the stowage compartment into the mounts on the dash panel until it audibly clicks into place on both sides.
2. Close the stowage compartment.

Right-hand drive vehicle: opening and closing the fuse box in the dash panel

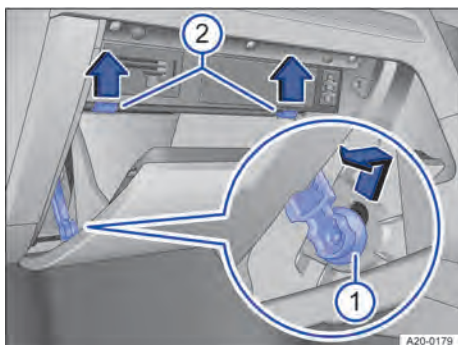


Fig. 192 Fuse box cover in the dash panel: right-hand drive vehicle, on the front passenger side (illustration).

- ① Restrictor.
- ② Catch.

Opening the cover

1. Open the glove box and empty if necessary → Fig. 192.
2. Push the restrictor upwards into the opening of the holder and pull out to the side → Fig. 192 ①.
3. Push the catches upwards in the direction of the arrow at the same time open the glove box further → Fig. 192 ②.

Closing the cover

1. Move the glove box into position.
2. Insert the restrictor into the opening of the holder and push down until you hear it engage.
3. Carefully push the glove box forwards past the resistance of the stop pins → Fig. 192 ②.

Fuse overview of the fuses in the dash panel

📖 Please refer to ⚠ and ! at the start of the chapter on page 328.

The overview shows the fuse locations of the electrical consumers relevant for the driver. The first column in the overview contains the location. The other columns contain the amp rating, the fuse type and the electrical consumer protected by the fuse.

Depending on country and on the equipment of your vehicle, the fuse numbers and positions may differ to those given in the overview. If necessary, ask an authorised dealer for the exact fuse layout.

Fuse assignment

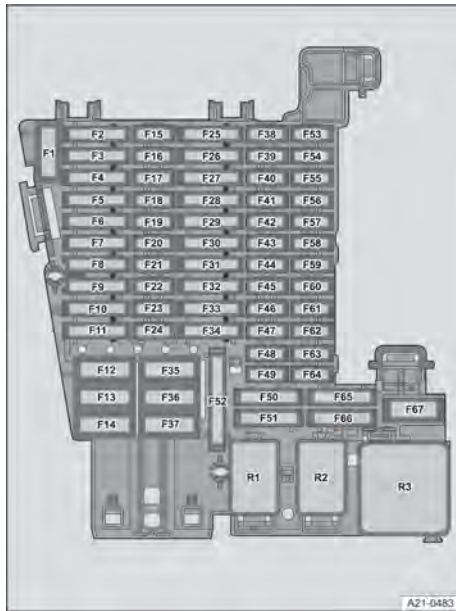


Fig. 193 In the dash panel: fuse assignment.

Fuse location → Fig. 193:

- F6** 30 amps, ATO®, interior lighting.
- F7** 30 amps, ATO®, seat heating.
- F8** 25 amps, ATO®, control unit for special vehicles (depending on the equipment).

- F12 40 amps, MAXI+®**, right exterior lighting.
- F13 40 amps, MAXI+®**, central locking.
- F20 7.5 amps, MINI®**, telephone.
- F30 20 amps, ATO®**, Infotainment system.
- F35 40 amps, MAXI+®**, left exterior lighting.
- F36 40 amps, MAXI+®**, blower regulator.
- F40 7.5 amps, MINI®**, anti-theft alarm.
- F42 7.5 amps, MINI®**, selector mechanism for automatic transmission.
- F43 10 amps, MINI®**, control unit for Climate Control system or heating and fresh air system, rear window heating relay.
- F44 7.5 amps, MINI®**, light switch (lighting), rain/light sensor, electric parking brake.
- F46 7.5 amps, MINI®**, display, Infotainment system control panel.
- F52 20 amps, ATO®**, cigarette lighter, sockets (observe installation position – the fuse is factory-fitted as **permanent live**).
- F66 15 amps, ATO®**, rear window wiper.
- F67 30 amps, MAXI+®**, rear window heating.

Fuse locations for vehicles with factory-fitted towing bracket → Fig. 193:

- F3 25 amps, ATO®**, trailer control unit, left.
- F11 15 amps, ATO®**, trailer control unit.
- F29 15 amps, ATO®**, trailer charging cable.
- F31 25 amps, ATO®**, trailer control unit, right.

 Electric windows and electrically adjustable seats may be protected by circuit breakers or control units which switch on again automatically a few seconds after the overload, e.g. frozen windows, has been rectified.

Replacing blown fuses

 **Please refer to  and  at the start of the chapter on page 328.**

Preparations

1. Switch off the ignition, the lights and all electrical consumers.

Detecting a blown fuse

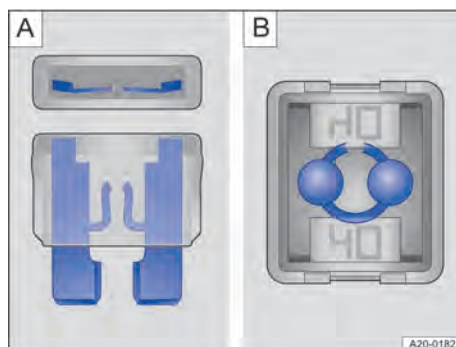


Fig. 194 Blown fuse: **A** flat blade fuse, **B** cartridge fuse.

1. Shine a torch onto the fuse.

You can see if a fuse is blown from the top and side through the transparent housing due to the melted metal strip → Fig. 194.

Fuse types

- Standard flat blade fuse (ATO®).
- Small flat blade fuse (MINI®).
- Large flat blade fuse (MAXI® or MAXI+®).

Colour coding of fuses

Fuses (ATO® - MINI® - MAXI® and MAXI+®)

Colour Amp rating

Black 1 amps

purple 3 amps

light brown 5 amps

Brown 7.5 amps

Red 10 amps

Blue 15 amps

Yellow 20 amps

White or transparent 25 amps

Green 30 amps

Orange 40 amps

Red 50 amps

Replacing a fuse

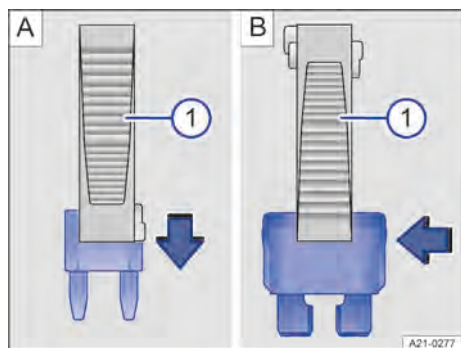


Fig. 195 Removing or inserting fuse (illustration).

- ① Plastic pliers.

! NOTICE

You can damage another position in the electrical system by using a fuse with a higher amp rating.

- Never replace a fuse with a fuse that has a higher rating.

1. If applicable, take the plastic pliers → Fig. 195 ① out of the fuse box cover.
2. Push the plastic grippers clip suitable for the fuse type onto the fuse from the top → Fig. 195 A or the side → Fig. 195 B.
3. Remove the fuse.
4. If the fuse has blown, replace it with a new fuse of the same amp rating (same colour and same markings) and same size → ①.
5. Once the new fuse has been inserted, put the plastic grippers back in the cover.
6. Insert the cover again or close the fuse box cover.

Jump starting

Introduction

For technical reasons, your vehicle must not be tow-started. If the engine fails to start because the 12-volt vehicle battery is flat, the discharged battery can be connected to the 12-volt battery of another vehicle to start the engine.

In vehicles with a 12-volt vehicle battery in the vehicle interior, the jump leads must always be connected to the jump-start connection points in the bonnet space.

! WARNING

Using the jump leads incorrectly or completing the jump start procedure incorrectly can cause the 12-volt vehicle battery to explode, which can lead to serious injury or death.

- Always read and observe the warnings and safety information before carrying out any kind of work on the 12-volt vehicle battery → page 357.
- Never confuse the positive battery terminal with the negative battery terminal or connect the jump leads incorrectly.
- Never jump start a vehicle with a frozen or thawed 12-volt vehicle battery.

! WARNING

A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the 12-volt vehicle battery is jump started. Sparking can cause the oxy-hydrogen gas to ignite. This may result in explosions and serious or fatal injury.

- Always keep fire, sparks, naked flames and lit cigarettes away from the 12-volt vehicle battery.
- Avoid electrostatic discharge in the vicinity of the 12-volt vehicle battery.

! NOTICE

- ◀ Tow-starting the vehicle can cause considerable damage to the vehicle.

- Carry out jump starting to start the vehicle. ▶

Preparing for jump starting

📖 Please refer to ⚠ and ⚡ at the start of the chapter on page 333.

If the engine cannot be started because the 12-volt vehicle battery is discharged, another vehicle can be used to jump start the vehicle.

⚡ NOTICE

A discharged 12-volt vehicle battery can already freeze at temperatures around 0°C (around +32°F) and can be damaged and fail.

- Always replace a 12-volt vehicle battery which is frozen or has been frozen.

Preparations

⚠ WARNING

Jump starting the vehicle incorrectly can cause the 12-volt vehicle battery to explode, which can lead to serious injuries.

- Always wear suitable eye protection and protective gloves.
- Never bend over the 12-volt vehicle battery.
- Always first connect the positive lead and then the negative lead.
- Never connect the negative lead to parts of the fuel system or to the brake lines.
- Make sure that there is no contact between the uninsulated parts of the terminal clamps.
- Make sure that there are no defects in the insulation of the leads.
- Make sure that the lead attached to the positive battery terminal on the 12-volt vehicle battery does not touch electrically conductive parts of the vehicle.

Observe the following when carrying out jump starting:

- Wear suitable eye protection and protective gloves → ⚠.
- Observe the jump lead manufacturer's instructions.
- Open the bonnet.

- Always use jump leads with fully insulated terminal clamps and with defect-free insulation when performing jump starting → ⚠.
- Make sure that there is sufficient distance between the vehicle providing jump starting assistance and the vehicle receiving it. If the vehicles touch metalically, current can already flow when the positive terminals are connected.
- Ensure that the terminal clamps have good metal-to-metal contact with the terminals.
- Never use a mobile telephone when the jump leads are being connected or disconnected.

Jump leads

A suitable jump lead is needed in order to jump start another vehicle or have your vehicle jump started.

The cable cross-section of the jump leads must be at least 25 mm² (0.038 in²). For vehicles with a diesel engine, the cable cross-section of the jump leads must be at least 35 mm² (0.054 in²).

Vehicle receiving jump starting assistance

1. Check that the discharged 12-volt vehicle battery is properly connected to the vehicle electrical system.
2. If the 12-volt vehicle battery has a battery window, check the colour of the window. If the battery window is light yellow or colourless, do not jump start the vehicle. Seek expert assistance.

Vehicle providing jump starting assistance

- Observe the vehicle manufacturer's instructions.
- Make sure that the vehicle battery providing assistance has the same voltage (12 volts) and approximately the same capacity as the flat 12-volt vehicle battery. Pay attention to the label on the vehicle battery of the vehicle providing jump starting assistance.

❗ NOTICE

Please observe the following in order to avoid damage to the electrical system due to a short circuit:

- Always connect the jump leads as described.
- Avoid contact between the vehicles.

Attaching the jump leads

📖 Please refer to ⚠ and ⚡ at the start of the chapter on page 333.

Jump-start connection point (earth)

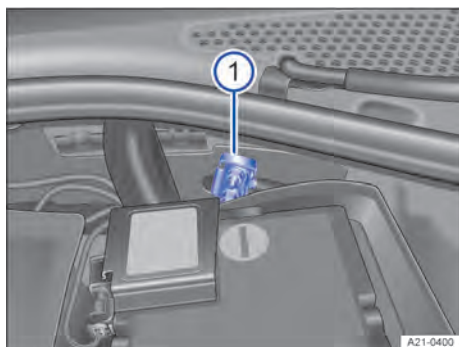


Fig. 196 In the bonnet space: Jump-start connection point (earth).

- ① Jump-start connection point (earth) for connecting the black jump lead.

Connecting the jump leads

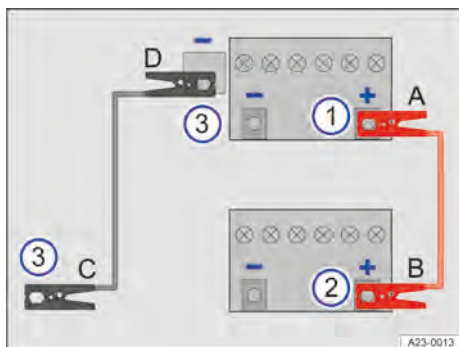


Fig. 197 How to connect the jump leads.

- ① Positive battery terminal on the vehicle being jump-started.
- ② Positive battery terminal on the vehicle that is giving the jump start.
- ③ Suitable earth connection: Preferably the earth jump-start connection point, otherwise a solid metal part which is securely bolted onto the cylinder block, or the cylinder block itself.

The jump leads must be connected only in the order A – B – C – D → Fig. 197.

1. Switch off the ignition in both vehicles.
2. Connect one end of the red jump lead to the positive jump-start connection point in the vehicle with the discharged 12-volt vehicle battery → Fig. 197 ①.
3. Connect the other end of the red jump lead to the positive terminal of the vehicle providing assistance → Fig. 197 ②.
4. Connect one end of the black jump lead preferably to an earth jump-start connection point → Fig. 197 ③ on the vehicle with the 12-volt vehicle battery that is supplying power.

Or: if there is no earth jump-start connection point, connect the end of the black jump lead to a solid metal part that is bolted securely to the cylinder block or to the cylinder block itself on the vehicle with the 12-volt vehicle battery that is supplying power → Fig. 197 ③.

5. Connect the other end of the black jump lead to the earth jump-start connection point on the vehicle with the discharged 12-volt vehicle battery → Fig. 197 ③.

Or: if there is no earth jump-start connection point, connect the end of the black jump lead to a solid metal part that is bolted securely to the cylinder block or to the cylinder block itself on the vehicle with the discharged 12-volt vehicle battery → Fig. 197 ③.

6. Ensure that the terminal clamps have good metal-to-metal contact with the terminals.

7. Position the leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the bonnet space.

Starting the engine

📖 **Please refer to ⚠️ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 333.**

1. Start the engine of the vehicle which is providing assistance and let it run at idle.
2. Wait a few minutes and then start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged 12-volt vehicle battery. If the engine does not start immediately, switch off the starter after about 10 seconds and try again after about 1 minute.

Please contact an expert if the vehicle's engine still will not start.

Removing the jump leads

📖 **Please refer to ⚠️ and ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 333.**

1. Before disconnecting the jump leads, switch off the low beam head lamps if necessary.
2. Turn on the Climate Control blower and rear window heating in the vehicle with the discharged 12-volt vehicle battery. This helps minimise the voltage peaks generated when the leads are disconnected.
3. When the engines are running, the jump leads must be removed only in the order D – C – B – A → page 335, *Attaching the jump leads*.
4. Close the cover of the positive jump-start connection point.
5. Close the bonnet.
6. After jump starting, have the 12-volt vehicle battery checked by a suitably qualified workshop.

Transport and towing

📖 Introduction

If a vehicle can no longer be moved under its own power, the vehicle can be transported with a breakdown truck or towed by another vehicle.

Make sure that both drivers are familiar with how to tow a vehicle. This applies in particular if no tow-bar is used.

Observe any legal requirements when towing.

ⓘ NOTICE

Tow-starting the vehicle can cause considerable damage to the vehicle.

- Carry out jump starting to start the engine.

ⓘ NOTICE

When towing off paved roads, there is always a risk of overloading the fastening parts and causing considerable damage to the vehicles.

- Make sure that no excessive pulling forces occur and take care to avoid jerking movements when towing.

Useful information for vehicle recovery

📖 **Please refer to ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 336.**

Transport is where a vehicle that cannot be driven is transported by a breakdown truck.

⚠️ WARNING

If the tow-ropes or tow-bars are incorrectly fastened, vehicle parts may be seriously damaged. This increases the risk of an accident and serious injuries could result.

- Attach the vehicle only at the points provided for transport and towing.
- Never fasten the tow-rope or tow-bar to axle or running gear components.

- Seek expert assistance and have the vehicle transported on a breakdown truck if necessary.

! NOTICE

Pushing the vehicle by hand can cause damage to the vehicle, e.g. deformation or detachment of add-on parts.

- When pushing the vehicle by hand, do not press on the tail light clusters, large panels and side or rear spoilers.

When does your vehicle have to be transported on a breakdown truck?

If one of the following situations applies, the vehicle must be transported with a breakdown truck → page 338, *Towing the vehicle with another vehicle*.

Transport with a breakdown truck

📖 Please refer to ! at the start of the chapter on page 336.

Transport with a breakdown truck

The vehicle can be transported with all four wheels standing on a breakdown truck or with a raised axle.

Note that it may be necessary to transport the vehicle standing with all four wheels on a breakdown truck → page 338, *Towing the vehicle with another vehicle*.



Fig. 198 Transport with a breakdown truck.

Information on the mounting points for transport at the front and rear → page 339, *Front mounting point*, → page 340, *Rear mounting point*.

If the vehicle is to be raised at one axle for transport, the vehicle must be raised only at the front axle.

If the vehicle is to be transported with the front axle raised:

- The maximum permitted speed is 50 km/h (around 30 mph).
- The maximum permitted distance is 50 km (around 30 miles).
- Make sure that the ignition is always switched on.
- Deactivate the Auto Hold function.
- Make sure that the vehicle key is always in the vehicle during towing → page 83.
- Deactivate Automatic Emergency Braking.

! NOTICE

The wheels can lock if the electric parking brake is switched on during towing. This can result in serious damage to the vehicles.

- Stop towing immediately.
- Seek expert assistance and have the vehicle transported on a breakdown truck if necessary.

Towing the vehicle with another vehicle

📖 Please refer to ⓘ at the start of the chapter on page 336.

Towing is where a vehicle that cannot be driven is pulled with the aid of another vehicle. The vehicle can be towed with a tow-bar or a tow-rope:

- The maximum permitted speed is 50 km/h (around 30 mph).
- The maximum permitted distance is 50 km (around 30 miles).

In which situations may the vehicle not be towed?

In case of a fault or damage, the vehicle must be transported standing with all four wheels on a breakdown truck if one of the following situations applies.

- The 12-volt vehicle battery is discharged.
- The instrument cluster display does not work properly.
- The distance to be towed is further than 50 km (around 30 miles).
- Neutral (position **N**) cannot be selected.
- In vehicles with a manual gearbox, the clutch cannot be depressed fully and neutral selected.
- It is not possible to deactivate the roll-away protection on vehicles with automatic transmission → page 210.
- The electric parking brake cannot be released on vehicles with manual gearbox.
- The steering lock cannot be released.
- If the steering function or the operating clearance of the wheels cannot be ensured after an accident.

If the conditions for towing are not met, the vehicle must be towed or pushed rolling on its own four wheels only in emergency situations. The towing operation to the breakdown truck must take place only at walking pace and for a maximum distance of 100 metres.

It is easier and safer to tow a vehicle with a tow bar. Only use a tow rope if you do not have a tow bar. The tow rope should be slightly elastic to reduce the strain on both

vehicles. It is advisable to use a tow rope made of synthetic fibre or similarly elastic material.

⚠ WARNING

If a vehicle is being towed, the vehicle handling and braking effect will change significantly. This could lead to loss of control over the vehicle and cause accidents as well as serious or fatal injuries.

- Please note that greater force is needed for steering and braking during towing.

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle key is removed from the ignition lock during towing, the steering lock may engage suddenly. The steering wheel can then no longer be moved. This can result in accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Never remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock during towing.

Attach the tow-rope or the tow-bar only to the points provided:

- Towing eye.
- Ball coupling.

⚠ WARNING

Components can be severely damaged by incorrectly secured tow-ropes or tow-bars. The risk of an accident is increased and this can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Attach the vehicle only at the points provided for recovery and towing.
- Never attach the tow-rope or tow-bar to axle or running gear components.
- Seek expert assistance and have the vehicle transported on a breakdown truck if necessary.

Preparations

- Ensure that the tow-rope is not twisted. Otherwise a towing eye can become unscrewed during towing.
- Switch on the ignition and hazard warning lights on both vehicles. However, observe any regulations to the contrary.

— Observe the legal regulations and notes on towing in the Owner's Manual of the other vehicle.

Pulling vehicle (front)

1. The tow-rope must be taut before you drive off properly.
2. Press the accelerator with particular care.
3. Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres.
4. Do not exceed the maximum permitted trailer weight.
5. *In vehicles with a manual gearbox:* Engage the clutch very smoothly when driving off.

Pulled vehicle (rear)

During towing, it is still possible to use the direction indicators to indicate the turning direction when the hazard warning lights are switched on. To do this, move the direction indicator signal and high beam lever in the desired direction. Flashing of the hazard warning lights is interrupted while the direction indicator is activated. The hazard warning lights will start flashing again automatically as soon as the direction indicator and high beam lever is moved back to the neutral position.

1. Make sure that the ignition is always switched on so that the steering wheel is not locked and you can operate the direction indicators and wipers if necessary. The brake servo and power steering function only when the ignition is switched on or when the engine is running. Otherwise you must press the brake pedal with significantly more force and also use more effort for steering.
2. Make sure that the vehicle key is always in the vehicle during towing → page 83.
3. Deactivate Automatic Emergency Braking.
4. Deactivate the roll-away protection on vehicles with automatic transmission → page 210.

Or: the driver sits on the driver's seat during the entire towing operation with

the seat belt fastened at all times and with the driver door closed.

5. On vehicles with manual gearbox, disengage the gear and release the electric parking brake.
6. Ensure that the tow-rope is always taut.

! NOTICE

The wheels can lock if the electric parking brake is switched on during towing. This can result in serious damage to the vehicles.

- Stop towing immediately.
- Seek expert assistance and have the vehicle transported on a breakdown truck if necessary.

! NOTICE

The electric parking brake and steering lock cannot be released if the charge level of the 12-volt vehicle battery is not sufficient. The vehicle may be damaged when towed.

- In the event of power failure or malfunctions, switch on the ignition or start the engine, if necessary by jump starting, in order to release the electric parking brake and steering lock.
- Seek expert assistance and have the vehicle transported on a breakdown truck if necessary.

Front mounting point

 **Please refer to ! at the start of the chapter on page 336.**

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, the mounting for the towing eye is located behind the cover in the bumper.

1. Before towing, check whether a mounting with screw thread is available for the towing eye.
2. Comply with the notes on towing.
3. If this is not the case, seek expert assistance for towing and have the vehicle transported on a breakdown truck if necessary.

The towing eye must always be kept in the vehicle.

NOTICE

Use of a towing eye that is not suitable for the vehicle can damage the vehicle.

- Always use the towing eye supplied in the vehicle toolkit of your vehicle or a suitable towing eye for towing.

Fitting the towing eye at front



Fig. 199 In the front right bumper: Remove the cover.

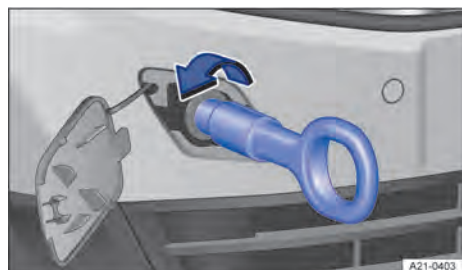


Fig. 200 In the front right bumper: screwing in the towing eye.

WARNING

If the towing eye is not screwed fully and securely into the mounting, it may be wrenched out of the mount. This can result in accidents and severe injuries when towing.

- Before starting towing, check that the towing eye is fully screwed in.

NOTICE

Improper removal and installation of the cover and towing eye can damage the vehicle's paint and bodywork.

- Always take care when removing and installing the cover and the towing eye.

1. Take the towing eye from the toolbox.
2. To release the catch on the cover, press the marked area of the cover in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 199.
3. Remove the cover, allow it to hang on the vehicle or place it in the vehicle if necessary.
4. Turn the towing eye as shown by the arrow into the threaded hole and tighten as far as possible → Fig. 200, → ⚠. Use a suitable object to screw the towing eye fully and securely into the mounting.
5. After you have finished towing, remove the towing eye by unscrewing it in the opposite direction to the arrow using a suitable object.
6. Insert the cap in the respective recess and press in until it engages.
7. If necessary, clean the towing eye and place it back in the vehicle toolkit. ◀

Rear mounting point

📖 Please refer to ❶ at the start of the chapter on page 336.

Depending on the country and vehicle equipment, the mounting for the towing eye is located behind the cover in the bumper.

1. Before towing, check whether a mounting with screw thread is available for the towing eye.
2. Observe the information on vehicle transport → page 336.
3. If this is not the case, seek expert assistance for towing and have the vehicle transported on a breakdown truck if necessary.

The towing eye must always be kept in the vehicle → ❶.

NOTICE

Use of a towing eye that is not suitable for the vehicle can damage the vehicle.

- Always use the towing eye supplied in the vehicle toolkit of your vehicle or a suitable towing eye for towing.

Fitting the rear towing eye



Fig. 201 In the rear bumper on the right: removing the cover.



Fig. 202 In the rear bumper on the right: screwing in the towing eye.

⚠ WARNING

If the towing eye is not screwed into the mounting completely and securely, it can tear out of the mounting. This can result in accidents and serious injuries during towing.

- Check before towing to make sure that the towing eye is fully screwed in.

! NOTICE

The paint and body of the vehicle may be damaged if the cover and towing eye are not removed and fitted correctly.

- Always take care when removing and fitting the cover and towing eye.

3. Remove the cover, allow it to hang on the vehicle or place it in the vehicle if necessary.
4. Turn the towing eye as shown by the arrow into the threaded hole and tighten as far as possible → Fig. 202, → ⚠. Use a suitable object to screw the towing eye fully and securely into the mounting.
5. After you have finished towing, remove the towing eye by unscrewing it in the opposite direction to the arrow.
6. Insert the cap in the respective recess and press in until the cap engages.
7. Clean the towing eye if necessary and place back in the vehicle toolkit.

Vehicles with towing bracket

On vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket there is no mounting for the screw-in towing eye behind the cover.

1. To tow, swivel out or fit and use the ball coupling.

! NOTICE

If you use an unsuitable tow-bar, the ball coupling and the vehicle could be damaged.

- For towing, always use only a tow-bar that is specifically intended for fitting on a ball coupling.
- If no suitable tow-bar is available, use a tow-rope for towing.

1. Take the towing eye from the toolbox.
2. To release the catch on the cover, press the marked area of the cover in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 201.

Checking and refilling

In the bonnet space

Safety notes for working in the bonnet space

The bonnet space of a vehicle is a hazardous area. You should only carry out work in the bonnet space if you know exactly how to perform the required tasks, are aware of the general safety procedures and have access to the correct equipment, service fluids and suitable tools. Failing to carry out work correctly can cause serious injuries → ⚠. Have all necessary work carried out by a suitably qualified workshop.

Always park the vehicle on a level and stable surface before carrying out any work in the bonnet space → ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

The bonnet space is a hazardous area. Accidents and serious or fatal injuries can occur during all work in the bonnet space.

- Always take care and exercise extreme caution during all work.
- Carry out work in the bonnet space only if you are familiar with the necessary actions.
- Have the necessary work carried out by a suitably qualified workshop if you are unsure how to carry out work in the bonnet space.
- Before starting work in the bonnet space, activate the electronic parking brake and move the selector lever to the **P** position or move the gear lever to the neutral position.
- Switch off the ignition and keep the vehicle key in a safe place far enough away from the vehicle to prevent any risk of the engine being switched on accidentally.
- Never touch hot engine components.
- Always ensure you have not left any objects, such as cleaning cloths and tools, in the bonnet space.

- Always keep children away from the bonnet space and never leave children unsupervised.

⚠ WARNING

The bonnet space contains rotating parts. When working in the bonnet space, particularly if the engine is started or running, contact with rotating parts, e.g. rotor blades of the radiator fan, can cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Even when the engine or ignition is switched off, never reach into the radiator fan or in the area of the radiator fan. The fan is temperature-controlled and can start automatically.
- Before starting work, remove any jewellery and ties, tie up long hair and pull clothes in tightly to avoid them getting caught in the engine.
- Always exercise due care and attention when depressing the accelerator. The vehicle could move, even if the electronic parking brake is applied.

⚠ WARNING

Escaping hot steam or hot coolant and hot vehicle parts can cause severe burns.

- Never open or close the bonnet as long as steam or coolant is escaping.
- Always wait until you can no longer see or hear steam or coolant coming from the bonnet space.

⚠ WARNING

The cooling system is under pressure when the engine is hot. If the cap is opened carelessly, coolant can spray out and cause severe burns or fatal injuries.

- Never open the cap of the coolant expansion tank when the engine is hot.
- If you have to open the cap of the coolant expansion tank, always protect your face, hands and arms from hot coolant or steam with a large, thick cloth.
- Turn the cap of the coolant expansion tank slowly and very carefully anti-clockwise while exerting slight downwards pressure on the cap.

⚠ WARNING

Additional insulating materials, e.g. blankets in the bonnet space or objects left in the bonnet space, e.g. cleaning cloths or tools, can cause malfunctions, damage to the engine and fire. This can result in serious injury or death.

- Never cover the engine with blankets or other insulating materials.
- Never leave any objects in the bonnet space.

⚠ WARNING

Unintended vehicle movements may occur if the vehicle is not secured to prevent it from rolling away during maintenance work. This may result in accidents and serious or fatal injury.

- Deactivate the start/stop system manually. Never work underneath a vehicle if it is not adequately secured against rolling away.
- Never work underneath a vehicle if it is not properly secured to prevent it from rolling away.
- Make sure that the vehicle is on a horizontal and firm surface and that the wheels are blocked when working under the vehicle while the wheels are touching the ground.
- If you intend to work underneath the vehicle, use suitable stands to provide support for the vehicle securely. The vehicle jack is not sufficient for this task and can fail.

⚠ WARNING

High voltage in the electrical system can cause electric shocks and burns. This can result in serious injury or death.

- Never short circuit the electrical system. The 12-volt vehicle battery can explode.

Preparing the vehicle for working in the bonnet space

The following steps should always be carried out in the given order before working in the bonnet space:

1. Park the vehicle safely on a horizontal and firm surface → page 209.
2. If necessary, remove the vehicle key from the vehicle and keep it in a separate location so that the vehicle cannot be started accidentally.
3. Allow the engine to cool sufficiently.
4. Always keep other persons away from the bonnet space.
5. Secure the vehicle against rolling away. <

Opening and closing the bonnet

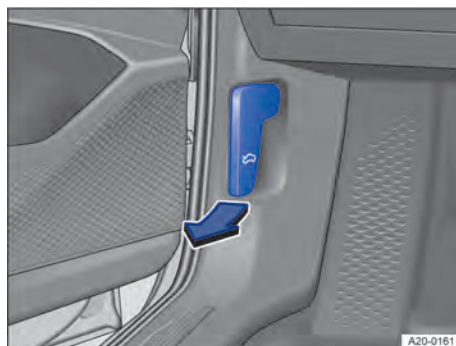


Fig. 203 In the footwell on the left side: bonnet release lever (illustration).

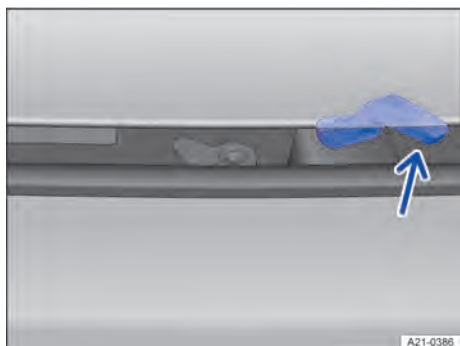


Fig. 204 Above the radiator grille: bonnet opening lever.

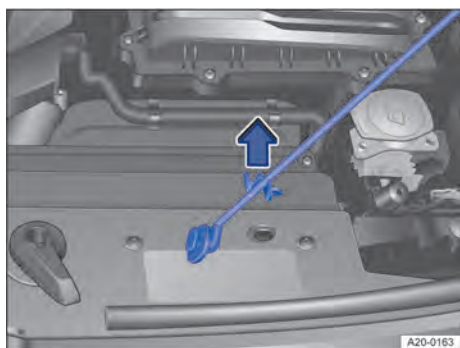


Fig. 205 In the bonnet space: bonnet stay in holder.

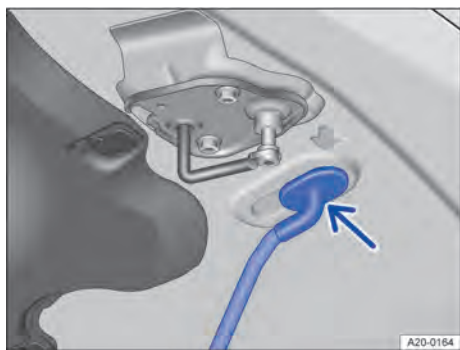


Fig. 206 On the bonnet: holder for bonnet stay.

Opening the bonnet

1. Ensure that the wiper arms are positioned on the windscreen before opening the bonnet → ①.
2. Open the front left door and pull the release lever in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 203.

The bonnet is released from the lock carrier catch by spring force → ①.

3. Lift the bonnet slightly and at the same time press the opening lever in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 204 to open the bonnet fully.
4. Take the bonnet stay out of the holder → Fig. 205 in the direction of the arrow and insert it into the opening → Fig. 206.

Closing the bonnet

1. Lift the bonnet slightly and hold it.
2. Unhook the bonnet stay from the opening → Fig. 206 and clip it into the holder → Fig. 205.
3. Let the bonnet drop into the catch from a height of about 20 cm – *do not* press it down!
4. If the bonnet has not closed properly, open it and then close it again.

The bonnet is flush with the surrounding bodywork when it is closed properly → ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

If the bonnet is not closed properly, it can open suddenly while you are driving and completely obscure your view of the road. This can result in accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- After closing bonnet, always check that the catch is properly engaged in the lock carrier.
- If you notice while driving that the bonnet is not closed properly, park the vehicle safely and close the bonnet.

⚠ WARNING

Careless opening and closing of the bonnet can lead to serious injuries.

- Open or close the bonnet only when there is no-one in its movement path.

! NOTICE

Opening and closing the bonnet incorrectly can damage the bonnet or the wiper arms.

- Open the bonnet only when the wiper arms are flush to the windscreen and when they are switched off.
- Always fold the wiper arms back onto the windscreen before driving away.

Display

A symbol on the instrument cluster display indicates if the bonnet is open or is not closed properly → Fig. 207.

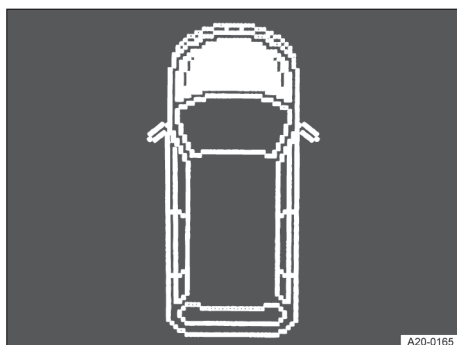


Fig. 207 On the instrument cluster display: the bonnet is open or not closed properly (illustration).

1. **Do not drive on!**
2. Lift the bonnet and then close it again.

This symbol is also visible when the ignition is switched off and will go out a few seconds after the vehicle has been locked when all doors are closed.

! WARNING

Failure to observe displayed warnings can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic and can cause accidents, serious injuries and even death.

- Never ignore warnings.

- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.
- Do not drive on and seek expert assistance if the warning lamp does not go out.



The symbol can differ depending on the version of the instrument cluster.

Service fluids and equipment

All service fluids and consumables, e.g. coolant, engine oils and batteries, are being constantly developed.

1. Service fluids and consumables should be replaced by a suitably qualified workshop.

! WARNING

If work is performed on the fuel system, fires and serious or fatal injuries can be caused by electrical discharge and flying sparks.

- Always disconnect the 12-volt vehicle battery.
- Always have a fully functional and tested fire extinguisher to hand.
- Ensure that the vehicle is unlocked when the 12-volt vehicle battery is disconnected as otherwise the anti-theft alarm will be activated.

! WARNING

Service fluids may be toxic. Incorrect use and storage can cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Store service fluids only in the closed original container.
- Never store service fluids in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers could drink them.
- Keep children away from all service fluids and consumables.
- Always observe and follow the information and warnings on the service fluid packaging.

- When using products that give off harmful fumes, always work outdoors or in a well-ventilated area.

⚠ WARNING

Service fluids and some materials in the bonnet space are easily flammable and can ignite if they come into contact with hot surfaces, sparks or naked flames. This can lead to a fire and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Never smoke in the vicinity of the bonnet space.
- Never work in the vicinity of sparks or naked flames.
- Never work in the direct proximity of heating systems, water heaters or any other naked flames.
- Never spill service fluids onto the engine.
- Always have a fully functional and tested fire extinguisher to hand.

! NOTICE

Use of service fluids that do not correspond to the specification can cause serious malfunctions and damage the engine.

- When refilling or replacing service fluids, ensure that the service fluids correspond to the respective specification.
- Fill service fluids only into the filler openings intended for them.

 Service fluids leaks are harmful to the environment.

- Regularly check the ground underneath the vehicle.
- If there are patches of oil or other fluids on the ground, the vehicle should be inspected by a suitably qualified workshop.
- Any spilt service fluids must be disposed of properly and with respect to environmental legislation.

Washer fluid



Fig. 208 In the engine compartment: cap of washer fluid reservoir

The washer fluid level should be checked regularly and topped up as necessary.

A filter can be found in the feed throat of the washer fluid reservoir. The strainer keeps larger dirt particles away from the washer jets when refilling. The filter should only be removed for cleaning. If the filter is damaged or cannot be found when refilling, dirt particles will reach the system and will block the washer jets.

1. Open the bonnet  → page 343.

The washer fluid reservoir is identified by the  symbol on the cap → Fig. 208.

2. Check whether there is enough washer fluid in the reservoir.
3. To add fluid, mix clear water, but not distilled water, with suitable washer fluid → . Observe the dilution instructions on the packaging.
4. At low outside temperatures, add a special anti-freeze agent so that the fluid cannot freeze → .

⚠ WARNING

Unsuitable additives in the washer fluid can leave an oily film on the vehicle windows. This can reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and can cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Never mix coolant additive or other unsuitable additives into the washer fluid.

! NOTICE

Use of an acidic cleaning agent can lead to damage and to failure of the washer jets.

- Never fill an acidic cleaning agent, e.g. a vinegar-based cleaner, into the washer fluid reservoir.

! NOTICE

Mixing different windscreen washer fluids can lead to flocculation of ingredients in the fluid and cause clogging of the washer jets.

- Use only suitable alcohol-based windscreen washer fluids.
- Never mix different windscreen washer fluids with each other.

! NOTICE

When refilling windscreen washer fluid, dirt particles can enter the washer fluid reservoir if the strainer is damaged or not present. The washer jets could become clogged.

- Remove the strainer only for cleaning.
- Replace the strainer if it is damaged or missing.

Engine oil

Introduction

Engine oils are matched to the requirements of the engines, the emission purification systems, and the fuel quality. Due to the operating principle of combustion engines, engine oil always comes into contact with combustion residues and fuel, which has corresponding effects on the ageing process of the engine oil. The correct engine oil is important for the function and service life of the engine. A special multi-grade high-lubricity oil has been filled at the factory and this can normally be used as an all-season oil.

Information on warning and indicator lamps that light up can be found in the troubleshooting sections at the end of the chapter → page 351.

! WARNING

Engine oil becomes extremely hot when the engine is running. If engine oil is handled without due care, this can cause serious burns to the body. This can result in serious injury or death.

- Always allow the engine to cool down before performing any work with engine oil.

! WARNING

Engine oil is toxic. Contact with engine oil, and especially ingestion of engine oil, can cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Seek medical attention immediately after swallowing engine oil.
- Seek medical attention if you have health problems after working with engine oil.
- Always keep engine oil out of the reach of children and only in the original sealed container. This also applies to used oil until it is disposed of.
- Never store engine oil in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers may then drink the engine oil.
- Avoid regular contact with engine oil to avoid damaging the skin.
- Protect skin, face and especially eyes while working with engine oil.
- Do not eat, drink or smoke when working with engine oil.
- Wash your skin with soap and water after working with engine oil.



Leaking or spilt engine oil can pollute the environment.

- Collect any service fluids that escape or are spilled and dispose of them in a proper and environmentally responsible manner.

Engine oil standards

📖 Please refer to ⚠ on page 342 and ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 347.

Use oils and fluids in accordance with the designated specifications and viscosities.

— Standard WSS–M2C956–A1, viscosity SAE 0 W–20.

Using oils and fluids that do not meet the designated specifications and viscosities may result in the following:

- Damage to components not covered by the vehicle warranty.
- Prolonged engine start-up phases.
- Increased emission values.
- Reduced engine power.
- Increased average fuel consumption.
- Reduced braking performance.

If no engine oil of specification WSS–M2C956–A1 is available, SAE 0 W–30 engine oil as per ACEA C3 can be used for refilling → ⓘ.

Please note that you should not add more than 0.5 l (0.5 qt) of alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals → ⓘ.

ⓘ NOTICE

Use of engine oils that are not approved in accordance with the respective standard can cause engine damage.

- To refill, use only engine oils that meet the quality requirements of the respective standard.
- Only in an emergency, refill with a maximum of 0.5 l (0.5 qt) of an engine oil corresponding to the specified deviating engine oil standards.

Changing engine oil

📖 Please refer to ⚠ on page 342 and ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 347.

The engine oil must be changed regularly and in accordance with the service interval.

Additives in the engine oil can cause new engine oil to discolour quickly. This is nor-

mal and does not mean that the engine oil should be changed more frequently.

⚠ WARNING

Engine oil can cause environmental damage, severe burns or a fire if the engine oil is changed carelessly. This can result in serious injury or death.

- Always allow the engine to cool down completely before changing the engine oil.
- Always wear eye protection when changing engine oil.
- Keep your arms horizontal when unscrewing the oil drain plug with your fingers to prevent the emerging oil from running down your arm.
- Use a suitable container when draining the used oil. It must be at least large enough to hold the entire filling quantity of engine oil.

⚠ WARNING

Engine oil is toxic. Contact with engine oil, and especially ingestion of engine oil, can cause serious or fatal injuries.

- Seek medical attention immediately after swallowing engine oil.
- Seek medical attention if you have health problems after working with engine oil.
- Always keep engine oil out of the reach of children and only in the original sealed container. This also applies to used oil until it is disposed of.
- Never store engine oil in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers may then drink the engine oil.
- Avoid regular contact with engine oil to avoid damaging the skin.
- Protect skin, face and especially eyes while working with engine oil.
- Do not eat, drink or smoke when working with engine oil.
- Wash your skin with soap and water after working with engine oil.

! NOTICE

Oil and filter changes require special tools and expert knowledge. Vehicle damage can result if this work is not carried out correctly.

- You should always have engine oil and filter changes performed by a suitably qualified workshop.

 Dispose of the engine oil in an environmentally responsible manner and only at a collection point for used oil, e.g. a recycling centre or specialist company.

Engine oil consumption

 Please refer to  on page 342 and  at the start of the chapter on page 347.

Engine oil consumption can vary from engine to engine and can change during the working life of an engine.

The vehicle may consume up to 1 l of engine oil per 2,000 km, depending on how you drive and the conditions in which the vehicle is used. In new vehicles, consumption is likely to be higher for the first 5,000 km. The engine oil level must therefore be checked at regular intervals, preferably when refuelling and before long trips.

When the engine is working hard, the engine oil level must be in the upper permissible area → page 349, for instance during extended motorway trips in summer or when climbing mountain passes

Checking the engine oil level and refilling engine oil

 Please refer to  on page 342 and  at the start of the chapter on page 347.



Fig. 209 In the bonnet space: cap of engine oil filler opening (illustration).

To avoid reading the engine oil level incorrectly, observe the following steps:

1. Park the vehicle safely on a level and firm surface with the engine at operating temperature.
2. Wait at least 5 minutes for the engine oil to flow back into the sump.
3. Open the bonnet.
4. Identify the engine oil filler opening and, where applicable, oil dipstick.

The engine oil filler opening can be recognised by the symbol  → Fig. 209 on the cap and the dipstick by its coloured handle.

Vehicles with oil dipstick

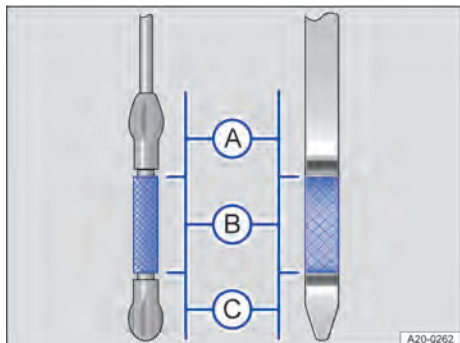


Fig. 210 Oil dipsticks with engine oil level marking (illustration).

- Ⓐ Engine oil level too high.
- Ⓑ Engine oil level within normal range.
- Ⓒ Engine oil level is too low.

The steps should be carried out in the given order only:

1. Pull the dipstick out of the guide tube and wipe it off with a clean cloth.
2. Push the oil dipstick back into the guide tube up to the stop. If there is a marking on the oil dipstick, this marking must fit in the corresponding groove at the top end of the guide tube when inserting.
3. Pull out the oil dipstick again and read the engine oil level on the dipstick as follows → Fig. 210:

Ⓐ Engine oil level too high. Observe the messages on the instrument cluster display or seek expert assistance as necessary.

Ⓑ Engine oil level within normal range. Engine oil can be added up to the upper limit of this range, e.g. when the engine is subject to high loads → ⚠.

Ⓒ Engine oil level is too low. It is essential to add engine oil and observe any messages in the instrument cluster display → ⚠.

4. After reading off the engine oil level, push the oil dipstick back into the guide tube up to the stop.

The engine oil level should be in the upper permissible area when it is subjected to particularly high loads, e.g. during extended motorway trips in summer or when climbing mountain passes.

Vehicles without oil dipstick

The current engine oil level is displayed in the infotainment system.

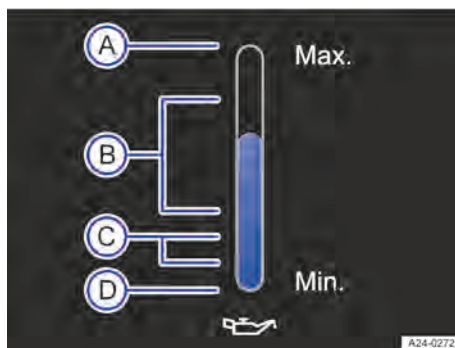


Fig. 211 In the infotainment system: oil level display (illustration).

- Ⓐ Do not add engine oil.
- Ⓑ Engine oil level within normal range.
- Ⓒ Engine oil level low – engine oil should be added.
- Ⓓ Engine oil level low – engine oil must be added.

To check the engine oil level in the infotainment system, carry out the following actions:

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Tap the **[Menu]** function button.
3. Tap the **[Vehicle]** function button.
4. If necessary, tap the **[Status]** function button.
5. Tap the **[Oil level]** function button.

Possible measures after reading off the engine oil level in the infotainment system:

- Ⓐ Do not add engine oil, do not start the engine again and seek expert assistance.
- Ⓑ Engine oil level within normal range.
- Ⓒ Engine oil level low. Engine oil should be added → ⚠.

-  Engine oil level below minimum. Engine oil must be added → .

Adding engine oil

WARNING

When adding engine oil, the engine oil can run out or overflow and ignite if it comes into contact with parts of the engine that are hot or can become hot. This can cause fires or burns. This can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Always ensure that the cap of the engine oil filler opening is securely tightened after refilling and that the dipstick is properly inserted back into the guide tube.
- Always use a suitable filling aid when adding engine oil.

Carry out the steps in the given order only →  → .

1. Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening → Fig. 209.
2. Gradually add engine oil in small quantities, no more than 0.5 l (0.5 qt) in total, or follow the recommendation on the instrument cluster display. The use of approved engine oils in accordance with the relevant standard is recommended.
3. In order to avoid overfilling, wait for at least 1 minute after each refill step to allow the engine oil to flow into the sump.
4. Read the engine oil level from the dipstick or the digital engine oil level display again before adding a further small quantity of engine oil. After filling, the engine oil level should be in the middle of the area → Fig. 210 or → Fig. 211 .
5. If too much engine oil has been added accidentally and the engine oil level is then above the area → Fig. 210 or → Fig. 211 , do not start the engine → . Seek expert assistance.
6. After refilling, close the engine oil filler opening with the cap → Fig. 209.
7. Close the bonnet.

NOTICE

If the engine oil level is too high after refilling and the engine is started, this can damage the engine.

- Do not start the engine and seek expert assistance.

NOTICE

The use of incorrect service fluids could result in serious malfunctions and engine damage.

- When refilling service fluids, ensure that you pour the correct service fluids into the correct openings. 

Troubleshooting

 Please refer to  on page 342 and  at the start of the chapter on page 347.



Engine oil pressure too low

The warning lamp flashes red. A message is shown on the instrument cluster display.

 **Do not drive on!** The engine could otherwise be damaged.

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.
2. Switch off the engine.
3. Check the engine oil level → page 349.
4. Do not drive on or leave the engine running if the warning lamp is flashing even when the engine oil level is correct. The engine could otherwise be damaged. Seek expert assistance.



Engine oil level very low

The warning lamp flashes red. A message is shown on the instrument cluster display.

 **Do not drive on!** The engine could otherwise be damaged.

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.
2. Switch off the engine.
3. Check the engine oil level → page 349.
4. If necessary, add engine oil gradually in small quantities until the engine oil level is correct.

el is back within the normal range or follow the refill recommendation on the instrument cluster display → page 349.

5. Do not drive on or leave the engine running if the warning lamp is lit even though the engine oil level is correct. The engine could otherwise be damaged. Seek expert assistance.



Engine oil level too low

The indicator lamp lights up yellow. A message is shown on the instrument cluster display.

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.
2. Switch off the engine.
3. Check the engine oil level → page 349.
4. If necessary, fill engine oil gradually in small quantities, not more than 0.5 l (0.5 qt) in total, or observe the filling recommendation on the instrument cluster display.
5. Do not drive on or leave the engine running if the indicator lamp is lit even though the engine oil level is correct. The engine could otherwise be damaged. Seek expert assistance.



Engine oil level too high

The indicator lamp lights up yellow. A message is shown on the instrument cluster display.

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.
2. Switch off the engine.
3. Check the engine oil level → page 349.
4. If the engine oil level is too high, do not drive on or allow the engine to run. The engine could otherwise be damaged. Seek expert assistance.



Fault in engine oil system

The indicator lamp flashes yellow. A message is shown on the instrument cluster display.

1. Consult a suitably qualified workshop. <

Coolant

Introduction

Do not work on the cooling system unless you are familiar with the necessary tasks, are aware of the safety procedures, and have access to the correct equipment, service fluids and suitable tools. Failing to carry out work correctly can cause serious injuries → ⚠. Have all work carried out by a suitably qualified workshop if necessary. Information on warning and indicator lamps that light up can be found in the troubleshooting sections at the end of the chapter → page 355.

⚠ WARNING

Coolant is toxic. Serious or fatal injuries can be caused by contact with coolant, particularly if coolant is swallowed.

- Seek immediate medical attention after swallowing coolant.
- Seek medical attention if you experience health problems after working with coolant.
- Always keep coolant out of the reach of children and only in the closed original container.
- Never store coolant in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers may then drink the coolant.
- Avoid regular contact with coolant to prevent damage to the skin.
- Protect your skin, face and especially your eyes when working with coolant.
- Do not eat, drink or smoke when working with coolant.
- Wash your skin with soap and water after working with coolant.

⚠ WARNING

Coolant can freeze at extremely cold outside temperatures, causing the vehicle to break down. This may mean that the heating in the vehicle no longer works. Vehicle occupants with inadequate winter clothing could then freeze to death.

- Make sure that the quantity of coolant additive is adjusted to the lowest expected ambient temperature at which the vehicle will be operated.
- Use only coolant that has been approved by the manufacturer.



Coolant and coolant additives can pollute the environment.

- Collect any service fluids that escape or are spilled and dispose of them in a proper and environmentally responsible manner.

Coolant specification

Please refer to at the start of the chapter on page 352.

The cooling system is filled at the factory with a mixture of specially prepared water and at least 40% coolant additive G12evo (TL 774-L).

The proportion of coolant additive must always be at least 40% to protect the cooling system. If greater frost protection is required in very cold climates, the proportion of coolant additive can be increased. However, the percentage of coolant additive should not exceed 55 %, as this would reduce the frost protection and the cooling effect.

The coolant additive is dyed a violet colour. The mixture of water and coolant additive provides anti-freeze protection down to -25°C (-13°F), protects the alloy parts in the engine cooling system against corrosion, prevents limescale deposits and significantly increases the boiling point of the coolant.

When refilling the coolant, a mixture of distilled water and at least 40% G12evo coolant additive must be used in order to obtain the optimum corrosion protection → .

NOTICE

The colour of the coolant results from mixing the violet coolant additive with distilled water. If the liquid in the coolant expansion tank is not violet but brown, for example, the suitable coolant has been mixed with

another unsuitable coolant. This can result in serious malfunctions or damage to the drive and cooling system.

- Use only coolant additives that have been approved by the manufacturer.
- Have the coolant replaced immediately by a suitably qualified workshop if it has a brown colour.
- When adding coolant additives, never mix genuine coolant additives with other coolant additives that have not been approved.

NOTICE

The coolant must always have the correct mixture ratio. If the mixture ratio is not correct, serious malfunctions or damage to the drive and cooling system may result.

- Have the correct mixture ratio checked by a suitably qualified workshop and corrected if necessary if there is any doubt about the mixture ratio.



Coolant and coolant additives can pollute the environment.

- Collect any service fluids that escape or are spilled and dispose of them in a proper and environmentally responsible manner.

Checking coolant level and adding coolant

Please refer to at the start of the chapter on page 352.

The vehicle's cooling system consists of a cooling circuit for the engine with a coolant expansion tank in the bonnet space.

Preparations

1. Park the vehicle on a firm and level surface.
2. Allow the engine to cool down → .
3. Open the bonnet.

The coolant expansion tank can be recognised by the red symbol on the cap → Fig. 212.



Fig. 212 In the bonnet space: cap of the coolant expansion tank.

⚠ WARNING

Escaping hot steam or hot coolant and hot vehicle parts can cause severe burns.

- Never open the bonnet if you can see or hear steam or coolant coming out of the bonnet space.
- Always wait until you can no longer see or hear steam or coolant coming from the bonnet space.

⚠ WARNING

The cooling system is under pressure when the engine is hot. If the cap is opened carelessly, coolant can spray out and cause severe burns or fatal injuries.

- Never open the cap of the coolant expansion tank when the engine is hot.
- Always protect your face, hands and arms from hot coolant or steam with a large, thick cloth if you have to open the cap of the coolant expansion tank.
- Turn the cap of the coolant expansion tank slowly and very carefully anti-clockwise while exerting slight downwards pressure on the cap.

Checking the coolant level of the engine cooling system



Fig. 213 In the bonnet space: marking on the coolant expansion tank (illustration).

The coolant may be above the marked area upon delivery of new vehicles or after repairs to the cooling system. This is normal. The coolant does not have to be sucked off.

The coolant level cannot be checked accurately in all models as visibility of the fluid level in the coolant expansion tank may be obstructed. If the coolant level cannot be read exactly, contact a suitably qualified workshop.

1. Check the coolant level at the side markings of the coolant expansion tank when the coolant is cold → Fig. 213. The coolant level must be between the marks
2. Have coolant added if the fluid level in the coolant expansion tank is below the minimum marking "min". If the coolant is warm, the coolant level may be slightly above the upper mark.
3. Do not add coolant if there is no longer any coolant visible in the coolant expansion tank → ⓘ.

Adding coolant

1. Unscrew the lid carefully → ⚠.
2. Add only new coolant in accordance with the specification up to the upper level marking → page 353. After adding the coolant, the coolant level must be between the markings on the coolant expansion tank → Fig. 213.
3. Close the cap tightly.
4. Check the coolant level after one day. If the level of the coolant expansion tank drops below the "min" marking again,

visit a suitably qualified workshop and have the cooling system checked.

If in an emergency you do not have access to coolant in the required specification, add only distilled water initially. Then have the correct mixture ratio with the coolant additive restored by a suitably qualified workshop as soon as possible.

! NOTICE

Coolant expands when it is heated. If coolant is added so that the level is above the marked area, excess coolant could escape and damage the vehicle.

- Do not fill coolant above the top edge of the marked area on the coolant expansion tank.

! NOTICE

Air may have entered the cooling system if there is no longer any coolant in the coolant expansion tank. This could cause damage to the engine.

- Do not carry on driving.
- Do not add coolant.
- Seek expert assistance.

! NOTICE

Using water other than distilled water can cause corrosion in the engine due to the chemical components contained in it. This can lead to engine failure.

- Use only distilled water for refilling.
- Have the fluid in the cooling system completely replaced by a suitably qualified workshop if you have not refilled with distilled water.

! NOTICE

Use of the incorrect service fluids can cause serious malfunctions and result in engine damage.

- When refilling or replacing service fluids, ensure that you pour the correct service fluids into the appropriate openings.

Troubleshooting

📖 Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 352.

Coolant

The warning lamp flashes red. The coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level is too low.

 Do not drive on! The engine could otherwise be damaged.

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so → page 209.
2. Switch off the engine.
3. Allow the engine to cool down.
4. Check the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank → page 353.
5. Do not drive on or leave the engine running if the warning lamp does not go out even though the coolant level is correct.
6. Seek expert assistance. 

Brake fluid

Introduction

Brake fluid will gradually absorb water from the surrounding air. The brake system will be damaged if there is too much water in the brake fluid. The boiling point of the brake fluid is also considerably reduced by the water content. Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock in the brake system if the water content is too high. Vapour locks reduce levels of braking power, considerably increase braking distance and can even cause the brake system to fail completely. Your own safety and that of other road users depends on having a brake system that functions properly at all times.

WARNING

Brake fluid is toxic. Contact with brake fluid, particularly if swallowed, can lead to serious or fatal injuries.

- Consult a doctor immediately if you have swallowed brake fluid.

- Consult a doctor if you experience health problems after working with brake fluid.
- Always keep brake fluid out of the reach of children and only in the closed original container.
- Never store brake fluid in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers could drink the brake fluid in them.
- Avoid regular contact with brake fluid in order to prevent damage to the skin.
- Protect your skin, face and particularly your eyes when working with brake fluid.
- Do not eat, drink or smoke when working with brake fluid.
- Wash your skin with soap and water after working with brake fluid.

❗ NOTICE

Brake fluid that has leaked or been spilled will attack vehicle surfaces. The vehicle paintwork, plastic parts and tyres could be damaged as a result.

- Wipe off brake fluid that has leaked or been spilled immediately from all parts of the vehicle.
- Then rinse all components with sufficient amounts of water.



Brake fluid can pollute the environment.

- Collect any service fluids that escape or are spilled and dispose of them in a proper and environmentally responsible manner.

Brake fluid specification

📖 Please refer to ⚠ on page 342 and Ⓜ and Ⓜ at the start of the chapter on page 355.

Brake fluid specification

Before using a particular brake fluid, check that the specifications printed on the container correspond to the vehicle requirements.

Brake fluid that complies with the manufacturer's standard is available from qualified workshops.

If no manufacturer-standard brake fluid is available, you can use brake fluid that is compliant with DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 6 or US standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4.

Brake fluid that is compliant with the manufacturer's standard fulfils the requirements of DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 6 or US standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4. <

Checking the brake fluid

📖 Please refer to ⚠ on page 342 and Ⓜ and Ⓜ at the start of the chapter on page 355.

Preparations

1. Park the vehicle on a firm and level surface.
2. Open the bonnet.

Checking the brake fluid level



Fig. 214 In the engine compartment: cap on the brake fluid container

The brake fluid reservoir can be identified by the cap → Fig. 214.

The brake fluid level cannot be checked accurately in all models as a flap or engine components may partially conceal the brake fluid container. If the brake fluid level cannot be read exactly, please seek assistance from a suitably qualified workshop.

The brake fluid level must always be between the MIN and MAX markings on the brake fluid reservoir → .

The brake fluid level drops slightly when the vehicle is being used as the brake pads wear and the brakes are automatically adjusted.

Brake fluid change

Have the brake fluid changed regularly. Information on the change interval for the vehicle's brake fluid can be obtained from a suitably qualified workshop. Only brake fluid that conforms with the required specification should be used.

WARNING

Old brake fluid can form vapour bubbles due to absorbed moisture when the brakes are subjected to heavy use and reduce the braking effect to the point of total failure. This can result in accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Have the brake fluid changed regularly.
- Have the brake system filled only with new brake fluid.

WARNING

An insufficient brake fluid level or use of unsuitable brake fluid can cause brake failure or reduced braking efficiency. This can result in accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Have the brake system and brake fluid level checked regularly.
- Make sure that the correct brake fluid is used.
- Only use brake fluid that has been approved by the manufacturer.

Troubleshooting

 Please refer to  on page 342 and  at the start of the chapter on page 355.

Brake fluid level

The warning lamp lights up red. The brake fluid level is too low.

 **Do not drive on!** This can result in brake failure.

1. Stop the vehicle immediately as soon as it possible and safe to do so → page 209.
2. Check the brake fluid level.
Or: If you cannot read the brake fluid level yourself, please go to a qualified workshop.
3. Seek expert assistance if the brake fluid level is too low. 

12-volt vehicle battery

Introduction

The 12-volt vehicle battery is a component of the electrical system in the vehicle.

Never carry out any work on the electrical system if you are not familiar with the necessary procedures and the general safety requirements and only unsuitable tools are available → . Otherwise, have all work carried out by a suitably qualified workshop if necessary. Serious injuries can be caused if work is carried out incorrectly.

Information on warning and indicator lamps that light up can be found in the troubleshooting sections at the end of the chapter → page 362.

Number and location of the 12-volt vehicle battery

The 12-volt vehicle battery is located in the bonnet space.

Explanation of the warnings on the 12-volt vehicle battery



Always wear eye protection!



Electrolyte is very corrosive and caustic. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection!



No fires, sparks, naked lights or smoking!



A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the vehicle battery is charging!



Always keep children away from electrolyte and the vehicle battery.



Always observe the information on the 12-volt vehicle battery, in the instructions for use and in the vehicle owner's manual.

⚠ WARNING

Any work on the 12-volt vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause serious chemical burns, fire or electric shocks. This can cause severe injuries.

- Always read and observe the warnings on the 12-volt vehicle battery.
- Switch off the ignition and all electrical consumers before carrying out any work on the 12-volt vehicle battery and also disconnect the negative cable from the 12-volt vehicle battery.
- Children should always be kept away from electrolyte and the 12-volt vehicle battery.
- When working with the 12-volt vehicle battery, ensure that your hands, arms and face in particular are protected from acid spillage.
- Always wear eye protection and protective gloves.
- Never short circuit battery terminals.
- All work should be carried out by a suitably qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

A highly explosive gas mixture is produced when working on the 12-volt vehicle battery. The gas emitted from the 12-volt vehicle battery could be ignited by sparks. This can result in severe or fatal injuries.

- Always keep fire, sparks, naked flames and lit cigarettes away from the 12-volt vehicle battery.
- When handling cables and electrical equipment, avoid generating sparks and electrostatic discharge.

⚠ NOTICE

Ultraviolet radiation can damage the battery housing.

- Do not expose the 12-volt vehicle battery to direct sunlight for an extended time.

⚠ NOTICE

The 12-volt battery can freeze and be destroyed as a result.

- Protect the 12-volt vehicle battery against frost if the vehicle is left standing for extended periods.

System settings after battery replacement

System settings may have been changed or deleted if the 12-volt vehicle battery has been replaced or after jump starting.

1. Check the date and time and adjust if necessary.
2. Check the personal convenience settings and adjust and save if necessary. <

Checking the electrolyte level of the 12-volt vehicle battery

📖 Please refer to ⚠ on page 342 and ⚠ and ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 357.

The electrolyte level of the 12-volt vehicle battery should be checked regularly in high-mileage vehicles, in hot countries and in older 12-volt vehicle batteries. The 12-volt vehicle battery is otherwise maintenance-free.

Preparations

1. Prepare the vehicle for working in the bonnet space → page 343.
2. Open the bonnet ⚠ → page 343.

Checking the electrolyte level (12-volt vehicle batteries with battery window)

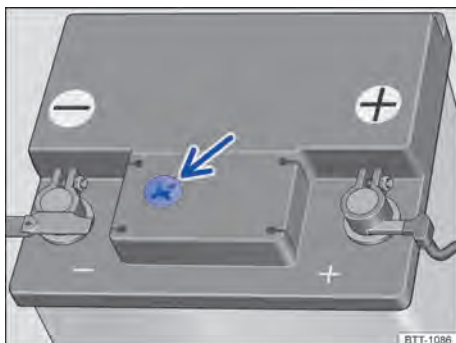


Fig. 215 Battery window on the top of the 12-volt vehicle battery (general guide).

Depending on equipment, it may be necessary to remove an additional bracket in order to view the battery window. An additional tool that is not included in the vehicle toolkit is required for this purpose.

Ensure that enough light is available for you to clearly see the colour indicator in the round window on the top of the 12-volt vehicle battery → Fig. 215.

The colour indicator in the round window changes according to the electrolyte level in the 12-volt vehicle battery.

Light yellow or without colour The electrolyte level of the 12-volt vehicle battery is too low. The 12-volt vehicle battery should be checked and replaced by a qualified workshop if necessary.

Black The electrolyte level of the 12-volt vehicle battery is correct.

For technical reasons, you cannot check the electrolyte level of 12-volt vehicle batteries marked with **AGM**. Go to a suitably qualified workshop to have the 12-volt vehicle battery checked.

⚠ WARNING

Battery acid is caustic. Contact with battery acid – especially if swallowed – can cause severe burns.

- Never open a 12-volt vehicle battery.
- Never tilt the 12-volt vehicle battery. Electrolyte may spill out of the gas vents.

- Protect the skin, face and especially the eyes while working with the 12-volt vehicle battery.
- Do not eat, drink or smoke when working on the 12-volt vehicle battery.
- Wash your skin with soap and water after working on the 12-volt vehicle battery.
- In case of acid contact on skin and hair, remove all soiled or soaked clothing and wash skin and hair with water. Consult a doctor.
- If acid comes into contact with the eyes, rinse the affected area gently with water for a few minutes. Then consult a doctor immediately.
- Drink plenty of water immediately and swallow activated charcoal if you have swallowed acid. Consult a doctor immediately.
- Leave the danger area and breathe fresh air if you have inhaled acid mist. Consult a doctor immediately.

⚠ WARNING

A highly explosive gas mixture is produced when working on the 12-volt vehicle battery. The gas emitted from the 12-volt vehicle battery could be ignited by sparks. This can result in severe or fatal injuries.

- Always keep fire, sparks, naked flames and lit cigarettes away from the 12-volt vehicle battery.
- When handling cables and electrical equipment, avoid generating sparks and electrostatic discharge.

Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the 12-volt vehicle battery

📖 **Please refer to ⚠ on page 342 and ⚠ and Ⓜ at the start of the chapter on page 357.**

1. If you suspect that the 12-volt vehicle battery is damaged or faulty, go to a suitably qualified workshop and have the 12-volt vehicle battery checked.

Charging the 12-volt vehicle battery

The 12-volt vehicle battery should always be charged by a suitably qualified workshop, as the technology used in factory-fitted 12-volt vehicle batteries requires voltage-limited charging → ⚠.

Replacing the 12-volt vehicle battery

The 12-volt vehicle battery has been developed to suit the conditions of its location and has special safety features. If a 12-volt vehicle battery has to be replaced, the replacement part must be installed by a workshop qualified to do this. For component information on size and the required maintenance, capacity and safety features, please contact a suitably qualified workshop, which must have the necessary technical documentation and equipment. The ventilation opening of the 12-volt vehicle battery must always be on the negative terminal side. The ventilation opening on the positive terminal side must always be sealed.

Only maintenance-free 12-volt vehicle batteries compliant with the standards TL 825 06 and VW 7 50 73 should be used. These standards must be dated October 2014 or later.

The 12-volt vehicle battery must always be replaced by a workshop qualified to do this, as the vehicle electronics must be adapted as part of the replacement process. In addition, the battery parameters for functional safety were determined only with the original equipment battery. Only suitably qualified workshops have the technology required to carry out this adjustment and also the correct replacement batteries. If a battery is used that does not meet the quality specifications of Ford or that has insufficient battery capacity, the operating licence and thus the vehicle's type approval will be invalidated → ⚠.

Disconnecting the 12-volt vehicle battery

Please note the following if the vehicle battery has to be disconnected from the electrical system in the vehicle:

1. Switch off all electrical consumers and the ignition.

2. Unlock the vehicle before disconnecting the battery in order to avoid triggering the anti-theft alarm (if fitted).
3. First disconnect the negative cable and then the positive cable → ⚠.

Connecting the 12-volt vehicle battery

Please note the following if the 12-volt vehicle battery has to be connected to the electrical system in the vehicle:

1. Switch all electrical consumers off.
2. First connect the positive cable and then the negative cable → ⚠.

Various indicator lamps may light up after the 12-volt vehicle battery has been connected and the ignition is switched on. They will go out if you drive a short distance at a speed of around 15 km/h to around 20 km/h (around 10–12 mph). If the indicator lamps continue to light up, have the vehicle checked by a suitably qualified workshop.

If the 12-volt vehicle battery was disconnected for an extended period, the system may not be able to calculate or correctly display the time when the next service is due → page 22. Observe the maximum permissible service intervals.

Automatic switch-off for electrical consumers

If electrical consumers are used or the ambient temperature is very low when the vehicle is parked for a long time with the engine is switched off, the intelligent onboard supply management cannot always prevent the 12-volt vehicle battery from discharging.

To maintain the starting capability of the vehicle, the intelligent onboard supply management automatically implements certain measures when the 12-volt vehicle battery has a low charge level.

- So that the engine can still be started, the power of larger electrical consumers may be limited or they may be switched off completely if necessary and online functions are no longer available.
- When the engine is running, the idling speed will be increased so that the alternator supplies more power.

- When the engine is started, the power supply of the 12-volt socket may be interrupted briefly.

12-volt vehicle battery is discharged

It may not be possible to start the engine if the battery is discharged. The 12-volt vehicle battery is discharged in the following situations:

- Due to long standing times without starting the engine.
- Through use of electrical consumers when the engine is switched off.
- Due to operation of the auxiliary heater.

⚠ WARNING

Use of a 12-volt vehicle battery that does not have the same specifications and dimensions as the factory-fitted 12-volt vehicle battery can lead to short circuits or cause a fire. This can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Always use a maintenance-free and leak-proof 12-volt vehicle battery that has the same specifications and dimensions as the factory-fitted 12-volt vehicle battery.

⚠ WARNING

Improper mounting of 12-volt vehicle batteries can lead to short circuits or cause a fire. This can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Always secure the 12-volt vehicle battery at the mounting points provided in the vehicle.
- Fit all covers necessary for the vehicle on the battery again.

⚠ WARNING

A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the 12-volt vehicle battery is being charged. Sparks or naked flames can ignite the explosive gas mixture. This can result in serious burns.

- 12-volt vehicle batteries should only be charged in well-ventilated spaces.
- Keep sparks and naked flames away from the 12-volt vehicle battery.
- Avoid electrostatic charges.

⚠ WARNING

If the hose for the central gas venting system is not correctly secured on the 12-volt vehicle battery, the highly explosive gas mixture that is produced during vehicle operation can enter the vehicle interior. The explosive gas can ignite and cause serious or fatal injuries.

- In vehicles with the 12-volt vehicle battery in the vehicle interior: ensure that the gas discharge hose is connected properly to the 12-volt vehicle battery. The breather hose must always be attached on the negative terminal side of the 12-volt vehicle battery.
- Always make sure that the opening on the positive terminal side of the 12-volt vehicle battery is sealed.

⚠ CAUTION

Discharged 12-volt vehicle batteries can even freeze at temperatures of approx. 0°C (+32°F). Acid can leak from a 12-volt vehicle battery that has frozen and then thawed again. This can cause injuries and damage to the vehicle in the long term.

- Never charge a 12-volt vehicle battery which is frozen or has been frozen.
- The 12-volt vehicle battery must be replaced if it has ever frozen.

⚠ CAUTION

Incorrectly connected cables can cause a short circuit. This can damage the vehicle electronics system and cause injuries.

- First connect the positive cable and then the negative cable.

ⓘ NOTICE

If the 12-volt vehicle battery is disconnected or connected when the ignition is switched on or when the engine is running, this can result in damage to the electrical system and electronic components and electrical malfunction can occur.

- Never connect or disconnect the 12-volt vehicle battery if the ignition is switched on or the engine is running.

NOTICE

If accessories that supply electric power are connected to the 12-volt socket to charge the 12-volt vehicle battery, this can damage the electrical system and the electronic components and lead to electrical malfunctions.

- Never connect equipment that supplies electric power, such as solar panels or a battery charger, to the 12-volt socket to charge the 12-volt vehicle battery.

 12-volt vehicle batteries may contain toxic substances such as sulphuric acid and lead.

- Dispose of the 12-volt vehicle battery in accordance with the applicable regulations.

 Electrolyte can pollute the environment.

- Collect any service fluids that escape or are spilled and dispose of them in a proper and environmentally responsible manner.

A message with information on the charge level of the 12-volt vehicle battery is shown on the instrument cluster display.

1. Allow the engine to run so that the 12-volt vehicle battery can be recharged.
2. Seek expert assistance if the message about the charge level of the 12-volt vehicle battery does not disappear after a few minutes in spite of the measures performed.

Troubleshooting

 **Please refer to  on page 342 and  and  at the start of the chapter on page 357.**

12-volt vehicle battery

The warning lamp lights up red. A message is shown on the instrument cluster display.

 **Do not drive on!** This can result in damage to the electrical system.

1. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible and when safe to do so.
2. Switch off any electrical consumers that are not required.
3. Seek expert assistance.

Auto StartStop cannot start the engine
→ page 157.

12-volt vehicle battery

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

Wheels and tyres

Introduction

The wheels are the most used and most underestimated parts of a vehicle. Wheels consist of matched tyre and wheel rim combinations. Wheels are very important as the narrow surfaces of the tyres are the only contact between the vehicle and the road.

Tyres and wheel rims approved by Ford Motor Company are precisely matched to the vehicle and to each other.

The service life of tyres is dependent on tyre pressure, driving style, handling and correct fitting.

We recommend having all work on the wheels performed by a suitably qualified workshop. The workshop is familiar with the procedure and has the necessary special tools and spare parts and the proper facilities for disposing of the old tyres.

Wheel rims, tyres and wheel bolts

Wheel rims, tyres and wheel bolts are matched to the vehicle type. If different wheel rims are fitted, the tyres approved for these rims and the wheel bolts with the correct length and correctly shaped bolt heads must be used. This ensures that the tyres do not rub on the wheel housings, the brakes can work properly and that the vehicle drives quietly and safely. For technical reasons, it is not generally possible to use the wheel rims from other vehicles. This can also even apply to wheel rims of the same vehicle type. If you wish to switch to a different tyre and wheel rim combination, always consult a suitably qualified workshop.

The correct wheel bolts must always be used for each vehicle type and these must always be tightened with the correct tightening torque → page 369.

WARNING

Incorrect handling of wheels can reduce vehicle safety and cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Check the tyre pressure regularly when the tyres are cold and always observe the specified value → page 367. If the tyre pressure is too low, it is possible that the tyre temperature will increase to such an extent when driving that the tread peels off and the tyre bursts.
- Check the tyres and wheel rims regularly for damage and wear.
- Never exceed the top speed and load permitted for the fitted tyres.
- All four wheels must be fitted with radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern.
- If you notice unusual vibrations, or if the vehicle pulls to one side when driving, stop immediately and check the tyres and wheel rims for damage.
- Never loosen the bolts on wheel rims with bolted-on rings.
- Only carry out work on wheels yourself if you have the necessary knowledge and tools.

WARNING

New tyres or tyres which are old, worn down or damaged cannot provide full levels of vehicle control and braking power. This can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Run in new tyres as they will initially have reduced grip and braking efficiency. For this reason, drive with appropriate care during the first 600 km (370 miles).
- Never drive with worn tyres or tyres that shows signs of damage, such as holes, cuts, cracks or blisters. If you are unsure whether it is possible to continue driving safely, seek assistance from a suitably qualified workshop.
- If you notice unusual vibrations, or if the vehicle pulls to one side when driving, stop immediately and check the tyres and wheel rims for damage.
- Do not use tyres or wheel rims if you do not know their history. Used tyres and wheel rims could be damaged, even if the damage is not visible.

- Only use tyres that are older than six years if you have no alternative. In this case, drive slowly and with extra care at all times. This also applies even if the tyres have never been used.
- Have worn or damaged tyres replaced immediately by a suitably qualified workshop.

WARNING

If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is insufficient, the wheel bolts and thus the wheel can loosen while the vehicle is in motion. The wheel bolts and the threads could be damaged if the tightening torque is too high.

Incorrectly tightened or missing wheel bolts can lead to loss of control over the vehicle, serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Always tighten the wheel bolts with the correct tightening torque. If you do not have a torque wrench, tighten the wheel bolts with the wheel bolt wrench and have the torque checked immediately by the nearest suitably qualified workshop.
- Never drive if wheel bolts are missing or loose.
- Always use wheel bolts that match the wheel rims and the vehicle type.
- Never grease or oil the wheel bolt and the threads in the wheel hubs. The wheel bolts could loosen while the vehicle is in motion, even if the required torque setting is used.
- Make sure that the wheel bolts and threads of the wheel hubs are clean, smooth-running and free of oil and grease.
- Never loosen the bolts on wheel rims with bolted-on rings.

WARNING

Incorrect mounting of the tyre on the wheel rim can result in damage to the wheel rim so that the tyre suddenly loses air or bursts while driving.

This can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Have tyres mounted on the wheel rim only by a suitably qualified workshop. 

Wheel and tyre maintenance

Handling wheels

Avoiding tyre damage

- Drive over kerbs and other low obstacles slowly and at right angles so that the two front wheels come into contact with the obstacle at the same time → .
- There is an increased risk of damage to the tyres and wheel rims on poor and unsurfaced roads and when driving offroad, particularly if the vehicle is fitted with low-profile tyres.
- Check the tyre pressure on a regular basis.
- Inspect the tyres regularly for damage, e.g. holes, cuts, cracks and bulges.
- Have damaged or worn tyres replaced immediately by a suitably qualified workshop → page 372.
- Never exceed the maximum speed and load permitted for the tyres that are fitted → page 396.
- Protect the tyres from contact with aggressive substances, including grease, oil, petrol and brake fluid → .
- Replace missing dust caps on the valves immediately → .
- Remove foreign bodies that have not yet penetrated to the inside of the tyre → page 372.
- Observe all warnings of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System → page 376, → page 381.
- Missing hubcaps can result in damage to the wheel rims and wheel bolts.
Fit missing hubcaps before every journey.
- Check the wheel rims regularly for damage, e.g. cracks, dents or kinks → .
- Have damaged wheel rims replaced immediately by a suitably qualified workshop.
- Use only wheel rims that have been approved for the vehicle → .

WARNING

Corrosive liquids and other substances can cause visible and invisible damage to the tyres, which can cause the tyre to burst.

This can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Always keep chemicals, oils, lubricants, fuel, brake fluid and other corrosive substances away from the tyres.

WARNING

Dirt can damage the valves and cause them to leak so that the tyre loses air.

If the tyre pressure is too low, it is possible that the tyre will heat up to such an extent when driving that this can result in tread separation and the tyre bursting, which can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Never drive without valve caps.

WARNING

Use of unsuitable or damaged wheel rims can impair driving safety and cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Use only wheel rims that are approved for the vehicle.
- Check the wheel rims regularly for damage and replace them if necessary.

NOTICE

Tyres can be deformed by driving through potholes and over kerbs.

This can cause damage to the tyres and wheels.

- Avoid heavy impacts and drive around obstacles if possible.

Storing tyres

- Always store tyres in a cool, dry and dark place if possible.
- Do not store tyres mounted on the rim vertically.
- Any tyres not fitted on wheel rims should be kept in suitable sleeves to protect against dirt and should be stored vertically (standing on the tread).

Tyres that are older than 6 years

Tyres age through physical and chemical processes that can impair their function. Tyres that have been stored unused for an extended period of time age quicker than tyres that are used all the time.

It is recommended to replace tyres that are older than 6 years with new tyres. This also applies for tyres which appear to still be in good condition and whose tread depth has not yet reached the minimum value stipulated by legislation → .

Winter and all-season tyres also largely lose their effectiveness through ageing – regardless of the remaining tread depth.

The age of each tyre can be determined on the basis of the manufacturing date → page 396.

WARNING

Old tyres can suddenly lose air and burst particularly at high speeds.

This can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Only use tyres that are older than six years if you have no alternative. In this case, drive slowly and with extra care at all times. This also applies even if the tyres have never been used.

New tyres

- Drive particularly carefully for the first 600 km (370 miles) with new tyres as the tyres have to be run in. Tyres that have not been run in have reduced grip and braking efficiency → .
- All wheels must be fitted with radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread.
- The tread depth of new tyres may vary between tyre models and manufacturers due to different design features and tread designs.

WARNING

New tyres will have to be run in as they will initially have reduced grip and braking effect.

This can lead to loss of control of the vehicle, serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Run in new tyres. Drive with appropriate care during the first 600 km (370 miles).

i New tyre sizes may differ significantly from the actual dimensions and tyre dimensions for different tyre brands.

Replacing tyres

- The vehicle may be fitted with optimised rolling resistance tyres at the factory. Only with these tyres can the indicated fuel consumption values be achieved. Make sure that any new tyres purchased have optimised rolling resistance → page 172.
- Seek advice from a suitably qualified workshop before purchasing new reduced rolling resistance tyres.
- Always replace tyres at least on an axle-by-axle basis.
- Old tyres should only be replaced by tyres that have been approved for the vehicle type.
- Never use tyres with an effective size that is larger than tyres approved for the vehicle → .

WARNING

Wheels must have the necessary clearance. If there is insufficient clearance, the tyres may rub against parts of the running gear, body and brake lines.

This can lead to failure of the brake system, separation of the tread or the tyre bursting, and can thus cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Use only tyres whose dimensions do not exceed the dimensions of tyre makes approved for the vehicle and that do not rub on any vehicle parts.

In vehicles with a Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator

The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator must be resynchronised after changing one or more wheels. This also applies if the wheels have been swapped, e.g. from the front to the rear → page 373.

Vehicles fitted with a Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

- If you replace factory-fitted wheels, make sure that the new wheels are equipped with sensors that are compatible with the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System → page 377.
- Drive the vehicle at a speed of over around 25 km/h (around 15 mph) for an extended period so that the new wheels can be detected.

Ford recommends that a new valve set and set of seals is used every time the sensors are replaced or modified → .

Further information on the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System → page 377.

WARNING

Incorrect replacement or conversion of the sensors of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System can cause the valves to leak, with the result that the tyre loses air.

If the tyre pressure is too low, it is possible that the tyre will heat up to such an extent when driving that this can result in tread separation and the tyre bursting, which can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- When replacing and converting sensors, always use a new valve and seal set.

i A new valve set and set of seals must always be used every time the sensors of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System are replaced or modified. This is necessary because the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System may otherwise display a fault → page 381.

Spare wheels

The vehicle may be delivered from the factory with a full-size spare wheel → page 367. Before using other spare wheels, check whether they are approved for your vehicle. For information on the tyre and wheel rim sizes approved for your vehicle, refer to the registration documents or the EC Certificate of Conformity, or consult a suitably qualified workshop.

Wheel rims with bolted-on rim ring or trim elements

Wheel rims with bolted-on rim ring or trim elements consist of several parts. These parts are connected to each other by means of special bolts. Have all work on wheel rims with bolted-on rim ring carried out by a suitably qualified workshop → ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect loosening and tightening of the bolts on wheel rims with bolted-on rim ring can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Never loosen the bolts on wheel rims with bolted-on rings.
- Have all work on wheel rims with bolted-on rim ring carried out by a suitably qualified workshop.

Wheel rim identification

In some countries, new wheel rims must be provided with information on certain properties. The following information may be provided on the wheel rim:

- Conformity mark.
- Rim size.
- Name of manufacturer or brand.
- Date of manufacture (month/year).
- Country of origin.
- Production number.
- Raw material batch number.
- Commodity code.

ⓘ NOTICE

The valves can be damaged when fitting different wheels.

- Do not allow wheels that have been removed to fall onto the wheel rim.



Old tyres should be disposed of properly and as required by legislation.



If the spare wheel is not the same as the wheels fitted on the vehicle, the spare wheel must be used only for a short period of time in the event of a breakdown and appropriate care taken when driving. Replace the spare wheel with a normal wheel as soon as possible.



Tyres and wheel rims that are approved for the vehicle are guaranteed to have the dimensions that are suitable for the vehicle. In the case of other tyres or wheel rims, the tyre seller must provide a certificate from the tyre or wheel rim manufacturer stating that the tyre or wheel rim is also suitable for the vehicle. Store the certificate in a safe place and keep it in the vehicle. <

Tyre pressure for the spare wheel

Fully-functional spare wheel

The full-size spare wheel is a wheel whose size and tread correspond to that of the normal tyres. The tyre pressure for the full-size spare wheel corresponds to the tyre pressure of the driving tyres and is specified on the tyre pressure sticker → page 367. <

Checking the tyre pressure

The wrong tyre pressure will have a negative effect on the vehicle's response and leads to high levels of wear or even a burst tyre → ⚠. The correct tyre pressure is particularly important at high speeds.

- The tyre pressure should be at least once a month and before every long trip. The tyre pressure should be checked more frequently in colder regions.
- Always check all the tyres, including the spare if fitted.
- Always check the tyre pressure when the tyres are cold. The specified tyre pressure applies to cold tyres. Tyre pressure is always higher in warm tyres than it is in cold tyres. For this reason, never reduce the pressure in warm tyres to adjust the tyre pressure.
- Always adjust the tyre pressure to the load level → Fig. 216.
- After adjusting the tyre pressures, always screw the caps onto the valves and observe the information on the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System.
- Always use the tyre pressure specified on the sticker. Never exceed the maximum

tyre pressure which is given on the side-wall of the tyre

- If the tyre size of the fitted tyres differs from the specified value on the type plate or tyre pressure sticker, the correct tyre pressure must be determined.

Location of the tyre pressure sticker

The sticker provides the correct tyre pressure for approved tyres and is located either on the driver door pillar → Fig. 217 or inside the tank flap.

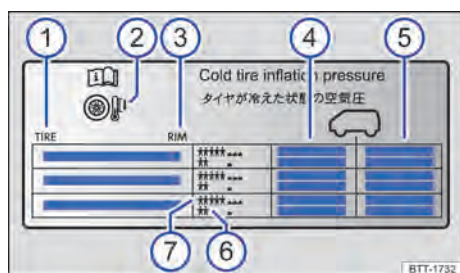


Fig. 216 Information on the tyre pressure sticker.

- ① Tyre size.
- ② Note: Check the tyre pressure when the tyres are cold.
- ③ Rim size.
- ④ Tyre pressure for the tyres on the front axle.
- ⑤ Tyre pressure for the tyres on the rear axle.
- ⑥ Tyre pressure for partial load.
- ⑦ Tyre pressure for full load.

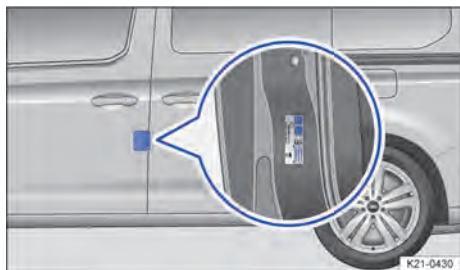


Fig. 217 On the driver door: tyre pressure sticker (alternatively on the inside of the tank flap).

The appearance of the sticker may differ between vehicles. It may contain additional tyre sizes that are not approved for your specific vehicle. For information on the tyre sizes approved for your vehicle, refer to the vehicle registration certificate or the EC Certificate of Conformity (CoC), or ask an authorised dealer.

⚠ WARNING

A tyre pressure that is too low may cause the tyre to suddenly lose pressure, the tread to separate or the tyre to burst while the vehicle is in motion. If the tyre pressure is too low, the tyres will wear prematurely and the car will not handle well.

An incorrect tyre pressure can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Check tyre pressures regularly, at least once a month and before every long trip.
- Always adapt the tyre pressure to the vehicle load level.
- Never reduce the increased tyre pressure of warm tyres.

⚠ WARNING

Driving too fast and overloading the vehicle can cause overheating, sudden tyre damage including tyre bursts, and separation of the tread.

This can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Never exceed the maximum load capacity of the fitted tyres → page 396.
- Never exceed the permitted maximum speed of the fitted tyres → page 396.

ⓘ NOTICE

The valve can be damaged if due care is not taken when using a tyre pressure gauge.

- When attaching the tyre pressure gauge, ensure that you do not position it at an angle to the valve stem.



Underinflated tyres will result in increased fuel consumption.



Checking the tightening torque

The correct wheel bolts must always be used for each vehicle type and these must always be tightened with the correct tightening torque. The tightening torque of the wheel bolts must be checked regularly with a properly functioning torque wrench. In addition, the tightening torque must be checked without delay using a correctly functioning torque wrench after every wheel change. If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is too low, the wheel bolts and rims can loosen while the vehicle is in motion. The wheel bolts and the threads could be damaged if the tightening torque is too high.

If the wheel bolts are corroded and stiff, they must be renewed and the wheel hub threads cleaned before the tightening torque is checked. Never grease or lubricate the wheel bolts or the threads of the wheel hub.

Tightening torque for wheel bolts

The tightening torque of the wheel bolts is specified in the section Changing a wheel → page 389, *Changing a wheel*.

⚠ WARNING

If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is insufficient, the wheel bolts and thus the wheel can loosen while the vehicle is in motion. The wheel bolts and the threads could be damaged if the tightening torque is too high.

Incorrectly tightened or missing wheel bolts can lead to loss of control over the vehicle, serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Always tighten the wheel bolts with the correct tightening torque. If you do not have a torque wrench, tighten the wheel bolts with the wheel bolt wrench and have the torque checked immediately by the nearest suitably qualified workshop.
- Never drive if wheel bolts are missing or loose.
- Always use wheel bolts that match the wheel rims and the vehicle type.

- Never grease or oil the wheel bolt and the threads in the wheel hubs. The wheel bolts could loosen while the vehicle is in motion, even if the required torque setting is used.
- Make sure that the wheel bolts and threads of the wheel hubs are clean, smooth-running and free of oil and grease.
- Never loosen the bolts on wheel rims with bolted-on rings.

Rotating wheels

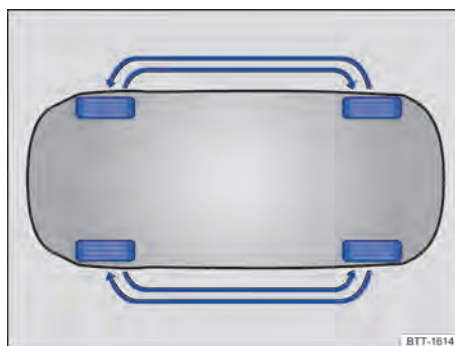


Fig. 218 Diagram showing how to rotate wheels (illustration).

Regularly rotating the wheels as shown in the illustration → Fig. 218 is recommended to help ensure that tyres wear evenly. All the tyres will then last for about the same time.

We recommend having the wheels changed by a suitably qualified workshop. <

Checking the tread depth

Tread depth

Most driving situations require the highest possible tread depth. The tyres should have the same tread depth, at the minimum on each axle → ⚠. This is especially true in wet or wintry road conditions.

In most countries, the minimum tread depth required by law is 1.6 mm (1/16 in), measured in the tread grooves next to the

tread wear indicators. Observe any deviating country-specific legal requirements.

Observe any country-specific legal requirements relating to the permissible minimum tread depths for winter and all-season tyres.

Tyre wear

The tyre wear is affected by several factors:

- Style of driving.
- How well the tyres are balanced.
- Adjustments made to the running gear.

Wheel imbalance may develop when the vehicle is driven; you will notice this by the nervous steering response. Imbalanced tyres will affect the level of tyre wear. In this case the wheels should be balanced again.

Incorrect wheel alignment causes excessive tyre wear, impairing the safety of the vehicle. The wheel alignment should be checked by a suitably qualified workshop if tyres show excessive wear.

Tyre wear due to a sporty driving style

Fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking all increase tyre wear.

In the case of a sporty driving style, check the tread depth every 5,000 to 10,000 km (about 3,107 to 6,214 miles).

Tread wear indicators in tyres



Fig. 219 In the tread grooves: tread wear indicators.

There are 1.6 mm (1/16 in) high wear indicators → Fig. 219 in the tread base of the tyres. Markings on the tyre sidewall indicate the position of the tread wear indicators → Fig. 219.

The tread wear indicators show if a tyre is worn down. The tyre must be replaced at the latest when the tyre tread is worn down to the tread wear indicator.

When checking the tread depth, it is necessary to check the tread wear indicators of all tread grooves.

⚠ WARNING

Worn tyres are a safety risk and make it difficult to control the vehicle properly. They increase the braking distance as well as the risk of skidding.

Worn tyres have significantly reduced grip. On wet roads in particular, the vehicle is more susceptible to aquaplaning.

Worn tyres lead to loss of control over the vehicle, serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Replace the tyres with new tyres at the latest when the tyres are worn down to the tread wear indicators.

Wheels and tyres in snow and ice

Winter tyres

Summer tyres have less grip on icy or snow-covered roads. Winter or all-season tyres improve the handling and braking characteristics in winter road conditions. It is recommended that winter tyres be fitted to the vehicle at temperatures below +7°C (+45°F) or in winter conditions. This also applies to vehicles with all-wheel drive.

Winter and all-season tyres lose their effectiveness when the tread is worn down to a depth of 4 mm (5/32 in).

The following applies when using winter tyres:

- Observe any country-specific legal requirements.
- Use winter tyres on all four wheels at the same time.
- Only use in winter road conditions.
- Only use the sizes of tyre that have been approved for the vehicle.

- Winter tyres must have the same belt type, size and the same tread pattern.
- Observe the maximum speed permitted by the speed index → .

Speed limitation

Winter tyres have a speed limit depending on the speed index → page 396.

If you use V-rated winter tyres, the speed limits and required tyre pressure are determined by the engine size. You must ask a suitably qualified workshop about the maximum permitted speed and required tyre pressure.

Selecting tyre type

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Open the app overview in the Infotainment system.
3. Tap .
4. Tap  (left).
5. Tap .
6. Select the **Tyre type** menu option.
7. Select tyre type.

Setting the speed warning

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Open the app overview in the Infotainment system.
3. Tap .
4. Tap  (left).
5. Tap .
6. In the **Warning at** menu option, use the slider to set the speed warning according to the speed rating of the fitted tyres.

7. In the **Speed warning** menu option, activate the speed warning using the slider.

WARNING

The improved vehicle handling as a result of winter tyres on wintry roads does not constitute a reason to take safety risks, as this may result in loss of vehicle control and serious injuries.

- Adapt your speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather and road or traffic conditions.

 The vehicle handling is better if summer tyres are fitted at temperatures above +7°C (+45°F). The rolling noise is quieter, the tyre wear lower and the energy efficiency higher.

 In vehicles with Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator, the system must be re-synchronised after changing from summer tyres to winter tyres or vice versa → page 376.

 On vehicles with Tyre Pressure Monitoring System, winter tyres must be fitted with compatible sensors for the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System to ensure the system works properly → page 377. If the dimensions of the winter tyres are different from those of the summer tyres and require a different tyre pressure, the tyre pressure values for the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System must be adjusted → page 377.

 You can find out about permitted winter tyre sizes from a suitably qualified workshop.

Snow chains

Please heed legislation and also the permitted speed when driving your vehicle with snow chains.

On icy or snow-covered roads, snow chains will not only improve traction, but also braking response.

Snow chains must be fitted only to the front wheels and must be fitted only to the following tyre and wheel rim combinations:

Tyre size	Wheel
205/65 R15 99H XL	6.0J x 15 ET47
205/60 R16 96H XL	6.5J x 16 ET48
215/55 R17 98H XL	6.5J x 17 ET49

Use only snow chains with fine-pitch links that do not protrude by more than 13.5 mm (17/32 in), including the tensioner. It is recommended that you ask a suitably qualified workshop for information about appropriate wheel, tyre and snow chain sizes.

Snow chains must only be used on tyre/wheel rim combinations that are approved for snow chain operation.

Remove hubcaps and trim rings before fitting snow chains. For safety reasons cover caps must then be fitted over the wheel bolts. Caps are available from a suitably qualified workshop.

Using snow chains with a fitted spare wheel

If the spare wheel differs from the tyre and wheel rim combinations approved for operation with snow chains, the use of snow chains on the spare wheel is not permissible for technical reasons. In this case, proceed as follows:

1. In event of a flat tyre on one of the front wheels, mount the spare wheel to the rear axle.
2. Replace the damaged front wheel with the removed rear wheel. Note the direction of rotation.

It is recommended to fit the snow chains before fitting the wheel.

WARNING

The use of snow chains that are unsuitable for your vehicle or the incorrect instal-

lation of snow chains can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Always use the correct snow chains.
- Use snow chains only on the tyre and wheel rim combinations approved for the vehicle.
- Observe the installation instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer.
- Never exceed the maximum permitted speed specified by the snow chain manufacturer or the applicable legal speed limit when snow chains are fitted.

NOTICE

If snow chains are used on roads that are free of snow, they will impair the vehicle handling and damage the tyres and will also be destroyed quickly.

- Always take the snow chains off on roads that are free of snow.

NOTICE

Snow chains that are in direct contact with the wheel can scratch or damage it.

- To avoid damage, use snow chains with integrated wheel rim protection.

 In vehicles with a Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator, the system must be re-synchronised when snow chains are fitted → page 373.

Troubleshooting

Damage to tyres and wheel rims is often hidden → .

If you suspect that a wheel is damaged, slow down immediately and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Pulling to one side or unusual vibrations

The vehicle pulls to the left or right while driving or vibrates in an unusual way. These symptoms can be a sign of tyre damage or that the tyre pressure is too low.

 Check the tyres!

Slow down immediately and stop as soon as the traffic situation permits and it is safe to do so.

1. Check the tyres and rims for damage.
 2. Do not drive on if a tyre is damaged.
 3. Changing a damaged wheel → page 381. If necessary, seek assistance from a suitably qualified workshop.
- Or:** seal damaged wheel with the breakdown set and inflate → page 391.
4. If there is no visible damage, drive slowly and cautiously to the nearest suitably qualified workshop in order to have the vehicle checked.

Foreign body stuck in tyre

A foreign body is stuck in the tyre or between the tread blocks.

1. Leave the foreign body in the tyre if it has entered the inner tyre. Foreign bodies that are stuck between the tyre tread blocks can be removed.
2. Changing a damaged wheel → page 381. If necessary, seek assistance from a suitably qualified workshop.

Or: seal damaged wheel with the breakdown set and inflate → page 391.

3. Check and adjust the tyre pressure.
4. Go to a suitably qualified workshop.

Tyres lose grip

The vehicle suffers from loss of grip when cornering and breaks away. The braking distance is longer and Traction Control (TCS) and anti-lock brake system (ABS) intervene earlier.

The tyre may be too worn to guarantee sufficient grip → page 369.

1. Drive slowly and cautiously to the nearest suitably qualified workshop in order to have the vehicle checked.

Wheel bolts are difficult to loosen

The wheel bolt can corrode over time. As a result, it is difficult to loosen the wheel bolts,

1. Seek the assistance of a suitably qualified workshop or drive slowly and cau-

tiously to the nearest suitably qualified workshop in order to have the vehicle checked.

WARNING

If you notice unusual vibration or the vehicle pulling to one side while the vehicle is in motion, this may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged.

Tyre damage can cause you to lose control of the vehicle, which can lead to serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Slow down immediately and stop as soon as the traffic situation permits and it is safe to do so.
- Check the tyres and wheel rims for damage, e.g. holes, cuts, cracks and bulges.
- Never drive on if tyres or wheel rims are damaged. Instead, seek assistance from a suitably qualified workshop.
- If there is no visible damage, drive slowly and cautiously to the nearest suitably qualified workshop in order to have the vehicle checked.

Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator

Function of the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator

The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator warns the driver if the tyre pressures are too low.

The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator is a Tyre Pressure Monitoring System and uses data from the ABS sensors to compare, among other things, the speed of rotation and thus the rolling circumference of the individual wheels while driving.

If a tyre is losing air or the tyre pressure is too low, the rolling circumference is reduced and the rotational speed increases.

The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator shows a change in rolling circumference of the tyres with the  indicator lamp in the instrument cluster.

The following situations can also lead to a change in the speed of rotation:

- If the tyre pressure has been changed.
- If the tyre has structural damage.
- If the vehicle is loaded more heavily on one side.
- If snow chains have been fitted.
- If a spare wheel has been fitted.
- If one wheel per axle has been changed.

 The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator does not work if there is a fault in the ESC or ABS → page 168.

Reference pressure

The reference pressure for the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System is the recommended tyre pressure of cold tyres for the factory-fitted tyres. The reference pressure corresponds to the information on the tyre pressure sticker → page 367.

If the tyre pressure of all four tyres has been adjusted correctly, the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator must be re-synchronised → page 376. The reference pressure is then adapted to the current tyre pressure. The tyre pressure of all tyres, including the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel, must be checked once every month with cold tyres and must correspond to the specifications of the vehicle manufacturer on the tyre pressure sticker. If the tyre size of the fitted tyres differs from the specified value on the type plate or tyre pressure sticker, the correct tyre pressure must be determined.

As an additional safety feature, the vehicle is equipped with a Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) where an indicator lamp for low tyre pressure lights up if the pressure in one or more of the tyres is much too low. If the indicator lamp for low tyre pressure lights up, the vehicle should therefore be stopped as quickly as possible. The tyres should then be checked and inflated to the correct pressure. Driving with a tyre pressure that is significantly too low will cause the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre damage. If the tyre pressure is insufficient, this will also reduce the fuel economy and service life of the tyre tread and can impair

the handling and braking ability of the vehicle.

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System does not replace regular maintenance and inspection of the tyres. The driver is responsible for ensuring that the correct tyre pressure is maintained at all times, even if the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System does not yet display a warning about low tyre pressure.

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System also has a malfunction indicator that provides a corresponding warning if the system is not functioning correctly. The fault indicator is coupled to the indicator lamp for low tyre pressure. If the system detects a fault, the indicator lamp flashes for around 1 minute when the vehicle is started and then lights up continuously. This sequence is repeated each time the vehicle is started again as long as the fault is present.

If the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System indicates a fault, the tyre pressure cannot be monitored correctly. A malfunction of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System can have various causes, e.g. due to replacement of a wheel or tyre. When a wheel or tyre has been replaced, check whether the  indicator lamp is indicating a system malfunction to ensure that the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System is functioning properly → page 376, → page 381.

WARNING

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System cannot detect all driving situations and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries or even death.

- Always remain alert and do not rely solely on the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the correct tyre pressure.
- Observe the system limits → page 375.
- Check the tyre pressure regularly when the tyres are cold and always observe

the specified value according to the tyre pressure sticker for the tyres fitted on the vehicle → page 367.

- Check the tyres regularly for signs of wear or damage and replace worn or damaged tyres immediately.
- Never exceed the top speed and load permitted for the fitted tyres.

WARNING

Driving with an inadequate tyre pressure can cause the tyre to heat up to such an extent that this could result in separation of the tread, the tyre bursting and loss of control over the vehicle.

If the tyre pressure is too low or too high, the tyres will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.

Different tyre pressures or low tyre pressures can increase tyre wear, impair driving stability, extend the braking distances, and result in tyre damage, tyre failure and loss of control over the vehicle.

This can result in serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Always observe the warnings of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System. If the  indicator lamp lights up, stop immediately in a safe place and check all tyres → page 367.
- The driver is responsible for the correct tyre pressure. Check the tyre pressure regularly when the tyres are cold and always observe the specified value according to the tyre pressure sticker for the tyres fitted on the vehicle → page 367. The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System cannot function correctly unless all the cold tyres have the correct tyre pressure.
- If the tyre is not flat and it is not necessary to change the wheel immediately, drive at low speed to the nearest suitably qualified workshop and have the tyre pressure checked and corrected → page 367.
- Always synchronise the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator correctly → page 373.

WARNING

Driving too fast and overloading the vehicle can cause overheating, sudden tyre damage including tyre bursts, and separation of the tread.

This can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Never exceed the maximum load capacity of the fitted tyres → page 396.
- Never exceed the permitted maximum speed of the fitted tyres → page 396.



If the tyre pressure is too low, this will increase fuel consumption and tyre wear.



When new tyres are driven at high speeds for the first time, they can expand slightly and trigger a one-off pressure warning.



Old tyres should be replaced only by tyres that have been approved by Ford for the vehicle type.



Do not rely on the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System alone. Check your tyres regularly to ensure that they are properly inflated and have no signs of damage, such as punctures, cuts, cracks, and blisters. Remove any objects that become embedded in the tyre tread but have not penetrated into the body of the tyre itself.

Limits of the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator

Regular maintenance

The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator does not replace regular maintenance and inspection of the tyres. The driver is responsible for ensuring that the correct tyre pressure is maintained at all times, even if the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator does not yet display a warning about low tyre pressure.

The tyre pressure of all tyres must be checked monthly on the cold tyres and correspond to the vehicle manufacturer's specifications on the tyre pressure sticker.

This also applies to the tyre pressure of the spare wheel → page 367.

The recommended tyre pressure for the tyre sizes approved by Ford for the vehicle type can be found on the tyre pressure sticker → page 367.

Fault not rectified

If the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator indicates a fault, the tyre pressure cannot be monitored correctly. A malfunction of the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator can have various causes, e.g. due to replacement of a wheel or tyre. After replacing a wheel or tyre, check whether the indicator lamp (⚠) indicates a system fault in order to ensure that the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator is functioning correctly → page 376.

Delayed or no display

In the following situations, the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator may not display anything or may react only after a delay:

- Driving with snow chains.
- Driving on snow-covered or icy roads or unpaved roads.
- With sporty driving.

— **Or:** wait for 60 seconds with the engine running and the vehicle stationary.

1. Open the app overview in the Infotainment system.
2. Tap .
3. Tap .
4. Tap .
5. Touch .
6. Tap  when all four tyre pressures correspond to the required values.

The (⚠) indicator lamp flashes for around 6 seconds. An acoustic signal also sounds and a text message is displayed on the instrument cluster display.

After an extended driving time of at least 20 minutes and driving at different speeds, the system will automatically learn the new values and monitor them.

If the (⚠) indicator lamp flashes for around 6 seconds without the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator having been newly adapted beforehand, go immediately to the nearest suitably qualified workshop.

Synchronising the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator

The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator must be re-synchronised under the following conditions:

- If the tyre pressures have been adapted.
- If one or more wheels have been changed.
- If the wheels have been swapped round, e.g. from front to rear.

The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator may be re-synchronised only if all tyres have the correct tyre pressure when measured with cold tyres. Before measuring the tyre pressure on a cold tyre, park the vehicle for 1 hour without any exposure to direct sunlight.

In the event of a warning about low tyre pressure, you cannot adapt the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator again until you have fulfilled one of the following two conditions:

- Switch the ignition off and then back on again.

⚠ WARNING

If the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator is synchronised with a tyre pressure that is too high or too low, the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator may issue incorrect warnings or may not issue any warning at all in spite of a dangerously low tyre pressure.

This can result in accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Make sure that the tyre pressure of all tyres is correct before synchronising the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator.

Troubleshooting for Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator

Low tyre pressure

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

There is a loss of pressure in one or more tyres or the tyre is structurally damaged.

1.  Stop the vehicle immediately in a safe place.

2. Check the tyres for visible damage.
 3. If the tyre is not visibly damaged, drive slowly to the next filling station and check the tyre pressures. Correct the tyre pressures if necessary.
 4. If the tyre is damaged, change the damaged wheel → page 381. If necessary, seek assistance from a suitably qualified workshop.
- Or:** seal damaged wheel with the breakdown set and inflate → page 391.
5. Re-synchronise the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator → page 373.
 6. If the fault persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

Fault in the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator

The indicator lamp flashes for around 1 minute and then remains lit up yellow continuously.

There is a system fault.

1.  Stop the vehicle immediately in a safe place.
2. Switch the ignition off and then back on again.
3. Re-synchronise the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator → page 373.
4. If the fault persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

 Driving on unpaved roads for long periods, or a sporty driving style, can temporarily deactivate the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator. In the event of a malfunction, the indicator lamp will flash for around 1 minute and then light up continuously. However, the indicator lamp will go out when the road conditions or driving style change.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

Function of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System warns the driver if the tyre pressures are too low.

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System monitors the tyre pressure of the four wheels while the vehicle is in motion using pressure sensors on the tyres.

The tyre pressure of all tyres, including the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel, must be checked once every month with cold tyres and must correspond to the specifications of the vehicle manufacturer on the tyre pressure sticker. If the tyre size of the fitted tyres differs from the specified value on the type plate or tyre pressure sticker, the correct tyre pressure must be determined.

As an additional safety feature, the vehicle is equipped with a Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) where an indicator lamp for low tyre pressure lights up if the pressure in one or more of the tyres is much too low. If the indicator lamp for low tyre pressure lights up, the vehicle should therefore be stopped as quickly as possible. The tyres should then be checked and inflated to the correct pressure. Driving with a tyre pressure that is significantly too low will cause the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre damage. If the tyre pressure is insufficient, this will also reduce the fuel economy and service life of the tyre tread and can impair the handling and braking ability of the vehicle.

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System does not replace regular maintenance and inspection of the tyres. The driver is responsible for ensuring that the correct tyre pressure is maintained at all times, even if the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System does not yet display a warning about low tyre pressure.

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System also has a malfunction indicator that provides

a corresponding warning if the system is not functioning correctly. The fault indicator is coupled to the indicator lamp for low tyre pressure. If the system detects a fault, the indicator lamp flashes for around 1 minute when the vehicle is started and then lights up continuously. This sequence is repeated each time the vehicle is started again as long as the fault is present.

If the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System indicates a fault, the tyre pressure cannot be monitored correctly. A malfunction of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System can have various causes, e.g. due to replacement of a wheel or tyre. When a wheel or tyre has been replaced, check whether the (i) indicator lamp is indicating a system malfunction to ensure that the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System is functioning properly → page 376, → page 381.

Tyre pressure display in the Infotainment system



Fig. 220 Display in the Infotainment system: current tyre pressures (illustration).

- ① Target tyre pressure in bar.
- ② Actual tyre pressure in bar.
- ③ Loss in pressure at front left.
- ④ System malfunction for rear right tyre.

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Open the app overview in the Infotainment system.
3. Tap **Vehicle**.
4. Tap **Status**.
5. Tap **Tyre pressure**.

The vehicle is displayed with the target and actual tyre pressures of all the wheels → Fig. 220.

When the ignition is switched on, the last measured tyre pressures will be displayed first; these values will be updated when the trip is started. If the tyre pressure is too low, the affected tyres are highlighted → Fig. 220.

If the tyres are in rest state, the sensors will not transmit any tyre pressures. This stops the sensor batteries discharging.

The last received tyre pressures are shown in grey if no tyre pressures are transmitted. If a set of tyres is fitted to the vehicle where the tyres either do not have tyre pressure sensors or have tyre pressure sensors that are not compatible with the vehicle, the indicator lamp (i) will flash for approximately 1 minute and then light up steadily. The tyre pressures will not be monitored. The system cannot be switched off.

i Observe any country-specific legal requirements for the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System.

WARNING

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System is not a substitute for the full attention of the driver and operates only within the limits of the system. The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System cannot detect all driving situations and may not react or may react with a delay or in an undesired way. If you do not pay due attention, there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries or even death.

- Always remain alert and do not rely solely on the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the correct tyre pressure.
- Observe the system limits → page 375, → page 379.
- Check the tyre pressure regularly when the tyres are cold and always observe the specified value according to the tyre pressure sticker for the tyres fitted on the vehicle → page 367.

- Check the tyres regularly for signs of wear or damage and replace worn or damaged tyres immediately.
- Never exceed the top speed and load permitted for the fitted tyres.

WARNING

Driving with an inadequate tyre pressure can cause the tyre to heat up to such an extent that this could result in separation of the tread, the tyre bursting and loss of control over the vehicle.

If the tyre pressure is too low or too high, the tyres will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.

Different tyre pressures or low tyre pressures can increase tyre wear, impair driving stability, extend the braking distances, and result in tyre damage, tyre failure and loss of control over the vehicle.

This can result in serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Always observe the warnings of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System. If the (U) indicator lamp lights up, stop immediately in a safe place and check all tyres → page 367.
- The driver is responsible for the correct tyre pressure. Check the tyre pressure regularly when the tyres are cold and always observe the specified value according to the tyre pressure sticker for the tyres fitted on the vehicle → page 367. The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System cannot function correctly unless all the cold tyres have the correct tyre pressure.
- If the tyre is not flat and it is not necessary to change the wheel immediately, drive at low speed to the nearest suitably qualified workshop and have the tyre pressure checked and corrected → page 367.

WARNING

Driving too fast and overloading the vehicle can cause overheating, sudden tyre damage including tyre bursts, and separation of the tread.

This can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Never exceed the maximum load capacity of the fitted tyres → page 396.
- Never exceed the permitted maximum speed of the fitted tyres → page 396.

 If the tyre pressure is too low, this will increase fuel consumption and tyre wear.

 When new tyres are driven at high speeds for the first time, they can expand slightly and trigger a one-off pressure warning.

 Old tyres should be replaced only by tyres that have been approved for the respective vehicle type.

 Do not rely on the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System alone. Check your tyres regularly to ensure that they are properly inflated and have no signs of damage, such as punctures, cuts, cracks, and blisters. Remove any objects that become embedded in the tyre tread but have not penetrated into the body of the tyre itself.

Limits of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

Regular maintenance

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System does not replace regular maintenance and inspection of the tyres. The driver is responsible for ensuring that the correct tyre pressure is maintained at all times, even if the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System does not yet display a warning about low tyre pressure.

The tyre pressure of all tyres must be checked monthly on the cold tyres and correspond to the vehicle manufacturer's specifications on the tyre pressure sticker.

This also applies to the tyre pressure of the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel.

The recommended tyre pressure for the factory-fitted tyres is indicated on the tyre pressure sticker on the driver's door pillar → page 367.

Fault in radio signal transmission

The function of the system may be temporarily impaired by radio transmitters that operate in the same frequency band as the tyre pressure sensors → page 381.

Metal valve caps can interfere with the radio signal transmission of the sensors. A tyre pressure sensor may not be detected by the system as a result → page 381.

Spare wheel or temporary spare wheel

The tyre pressure of the stowed spare wheel or the temporary spare wheel is not monitored. The stowed spare wheel or temporary spare wheel does not rotate and is therefore in sleep mode.

! NOTICE

Incorrect handling of the tyre valves can damage the pressure sensors and impair functioning of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System.

- The pressure sensors are secured to special aluminium valves that are screwed rigidly in place. When inflating the tyres and checking the pressure, do not bend the valves “into position”.
- Missing valve caps could lead to damage to the valve and the sensors. You should therefore always make sure that all valve caps are fully screwed on while driving.
- Do not use metallic valve caps.
- Do not use “convenience” valve caps as they do not form a proper seal. This can cause damage to the sensors. “Convenience” valve caps are valve caps that do not have to be unscrewed in order to inflate the tyre.

Adjusting the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

Selecting target tyre pressures for partial and full loads

Following any relevant change in the load level, the tyre pressure must be altered as necessary. The tyre pressures recommended for the vehicle and load level are stated on the tyre pressure sticker → page 367.

The driver must select the appropriate target tyre pressure depending on the vehicle load level:

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Open the app overview in the Infotainment system.
3. Tap  Vehicle.
4. Tap  Vehicle (left).
5. Tap  Tyres.
6. Select the **Load** menu option.
7. Select the load level.

 There may be differences between readings on the pressure gauge when filling the tyres and the values determined by the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System. The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System provides more accurate results.

Selecting the tyre size

If the tyre size is changed, it may be necessary to adjust the target tyre pressure for the new tyres. If no adjustment is necessary, the selection menu will not be available.

1. Switch on the ignition.
2. Open the app overview in the Infotainment system.
3. Tap  Vehicle.
4. Tap  Vehicle (left).
5. Tap  Tyres.
6. Select the **Tyre designation** menu option.
7. Select the appropriate tyre size.

If the size of the fitted tyres does not correspond to the factory-specified tyres, the corresponding target tyre pressure can be entered by a suitably qualified workshop.

Spare wheel

If the vehicle is factory-fitted with a spare wheel with the same tyre and rim combination as the other wheels, the spare wheel also has a compatible tyre pressure sensor.

The tyre pressure of the spare wheel under the vehicle is not monitored.

Troubleshooting for Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

Low tyre pressure

The indicator lamp lights up yellow.

Text message: **Flat tyre!** The tyre pressure of one or more tyres is below 1.4 bar (20 psi/140 kPa) or there is a critical loss of tyre pressure.

1.  Stop the vehicle immediately in a safe place.
2. Check the tyre for visible damage → page 372.
3. If the tyre is not visibly damaged, drive slowly to the next filling station and check the tyre pressures. Correct the tyre pressures if necessary.
4. If the tyre is damaged, change the damaged wheel → page 381. If necessary, seek assistance from a suitably qualified workshop.

Or: seal the damaged tyre with the breakdown set and inflate → page 391.

Text message: **Tyre pressures too low!** The warning indicates at least one tyre with a critical tyre pressure.

1. Check the tyre pressure of all tyres and adjust if necessary → page 367.
2. If the tyre cannot hold the tyre pressure, have the tyre replaced.

Or: replace the damaged wheel by a spare wheel or temporary spare wheel and go to a suitably qualified workshop → page 381.

Or: seal the damaged tyre with the breakdown set and go to a suitably qualified workshop → page 391.

Text message: **Please check tyre pressures.** The warning indicates at least one tyre with a reduced tyre pressure.

1. Avoid long trips and high speeds as long as the warning is displayed.
2. Check the tyre pressure of all tyres and adjust if necessary → page 367.

Fault in the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

The indicator lamp flashes for around 1 minute and then remains lit up yellow continuously.

One or more wheels with a tyre pressure sensor have been fitted but have not yet been detected by the system.

1. Drive for a few minutes until the indicator lamp goes out.

One or more wheels without a tyre pressure sensor have been fitted or a tyre pressure sensor is defective.

1. Fit wheels with functional tyre pressure sensors.

There is a transmission fault between the sensor and the system. The function of the system may be temporarily impaired if there is interference from signals in the same frequency range as these transmitters.

1. Switch off or avoid any disruptive sources, e.g. wireless devices, remote controls or children's toys.

Metal valve caps were screwed onto the tyre valves and are blocking the radio signal of the tyre pressure sensors.

1. Replace the metal valve caps with valve caps made of plastic.

There is a system fault.

1. Switch the ignition off and then back on again. If the fault persists, go to a suitably qualified workshop. 

Changing a wheel

Introduction

You should carry out a wheel change yourself only when the vehicle is parked safely, you are familiar with the safety procedures and have access to the correct equipment. Some models are delivered from the factory without a jack or box spanner. If this is the case, have the wheel change carried out by a suitably qualified workshop.

If the vehicle is delivered from the factory with a jack, this must be used only if one wheel on the vehicle is damaged and has

to be replaced. If both tyres on one side of the vehicle, both tyres on one axle, or all tyres are damaged, the factory-supplied jack must not be used. Instead, go to a suitably qualified workshop. The following steps must be carried out to change a wheel.

1. Prepare the vehicle for the wheel change → page 382.
2. Take out the spare wheel → page 383.
3. Remove the wheel trim or wheel bolt caps → page 386, → page 385, → page 386.
4. Loosen the wheel bolts → page 387.
5. Jack up the vehicle → page 388.
6. Remove the damaged wheel and fit the spare wheel → page 389.

WARNING

Performing a wheel change at the side of the road can be dangerous.

If the vehicle and the working area are not secured appropriately, this can result in serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Change the wheel yourself only if you are familiar with the necessary actions. If this is not the case, seek assistance from a suitably qualified workshop.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.
- Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic.
- To reduce the risk of unintended vehicle movement, always switch off the engine and move the selector lever to **P** position.

To reduce the risk of unintended vehicle movement, always switch off the engine and engage a gear on vehicles with a manual gearbox.

- Apply the electric parking brake.
- Move all passengers and children in particular to a safe distance from the working area and away from moving traffic.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.

- Jack up the vehicle only on a flat and stable surface. Soft ground or surfaces at an incline under the vehicle jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. If necessary, use a large, strong board or similar support for the jack.
- Use an anti-slip underlay, e.g. a rubber mat, to prevent the jack from slipping on a slippery surface, e.g. a tiled floor.
- Always use suitable and undamaged tools to change the wheel.
- The wheel bolt tightening torque should be checked with a correctly functioning torque wrench immediately after changing a wheel.
- If your vehicle is equipped with a Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator, adapt the system again immediately after a wheel change → page 373.

 If the spare tyre is not the same as the tyres that are mounted on the car - for example in the case of winter tyres or a temporary spare wheel - only use the spare tyre in the event of a breakdown for a short period of time and drive with extra care. Replace the temporary spare wheel with a normal wheel as soon as possible. 

Preparing the vehicle

 **Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 381.**

Checklist

The following actions must always be carried out in the given order in preparation for changing the wheel → :

1. Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic. Observe all the important information on parking → page 209. The ground must be firm and level. Soft ground or surfaces at an incline under the vehicle jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support for the vehicle jack.
2. Switch on the hazard warning lights → page 14.
3. Ensure that all occupants exit the vehicle and go to a safe place away from

moving traffic, e.g. behind the safety barrier. Observe the country-specific regulations on high-visibility waistcoats.

4. Set up the warning triangle to draw the attention of other road users to your vehicle.
5. Adjust the steering wheel so that the wheels point straight forwards.
6. Chock the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being worked on with a stone, collapsible chocks or a similar object.
7. When towing a trailer: unhitch the trailer from the vehicle and park it → page 297.
8. When the load compartment is loaded: remove load.
9. Remove the spare wheel from the spare wheel bracket and vehicle tools from the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring any of the items on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Always follow the actions in the checklist.
- Observe the generally valid safety precautions.

Removing the spare wheel

📖 Please refer to **⚠** at the start of the chapter on page 381.

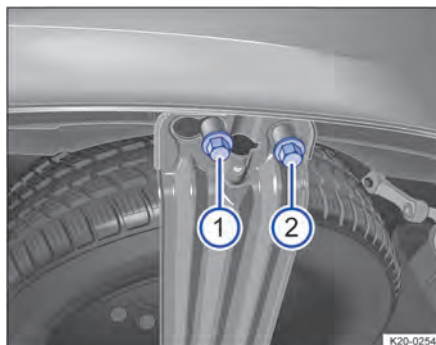


Fig. 221 Underneath the vehicle: retaining bolt ① and securing bolt ② on the spare wheel bracket

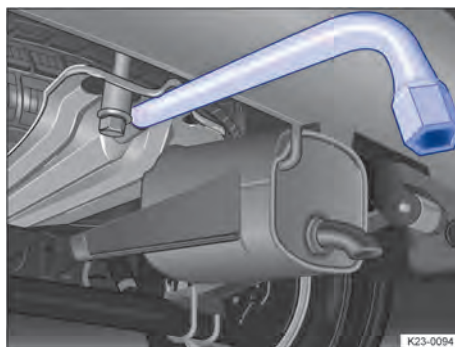


Fig. 222 Underneath the vehicle: spare wheel bracket with box spanner inserted

Removing the spare wheel

These steps should be followed in the given order only → **⚠**.

1. Use the box spanner from the vehicle toolkit to loosen the retaining bolt → Fig. 221 ① until it is free.
2. Unscrew the securing bolt → Fig. 221 ② completely.
The spare wheel bracket is now supported by the retaining bolt.
3. Fit the box spanner in the bracket → Fig. 222.

4. Hold the box spanner with both hands.
5. Lift the box spanner upwards together with the spare wheel bracket and guide the box spanner to the right. The head of the retaining bolt and the recess on the spare wheel bracket should be flush.
6. Guide the box spanner downwards with the spare wheel bracket.
7. Take out the spare wheel.

Storing the removed wheel

1. Place the replaced wheel in the spare wheel bracket.
2. Fit the box spanner in the bracket → Fig. 222.
3. Hold the box spanner with both hands.
4. Lift the box spanner upwards together with the spare wheel bracket and guide the box spanner to the left. The spare wheel bracket must be positioned on the retaining bolt.
5. Pull the box spanner out of the retainer.
6. Screw in the securing bolt → Fig. 221 ② fully with the box spanner.
7. Screw in the retaining bolt → Fig. 221 ① fully with the box spanner.
8. Tighten the securing bolt and the retaining bolt with the box spanner. The tightening torque is 60 Nm.

Check the tightening torque with a working torque spanner immediately after stowing the spare wheel.

When the spare wheel is not the same as the other tyres mounted on the vehicle

If the spare wheel is not the same as the wheels fitted on the vehicle, the spare wheel must be used only for a short period of time in the event of a breakdown and appropriate care taken when driving → ⚠.

You must replace the spare wheel with a normal, functional road wheel as soon as possible.

Observe these driving guidelines:

— Observe the speed specifications on the tyre → page 367.

- Avoid full acceleration, sudden braking and fast driving through bends in the road.
- Do not use snow chains → page 371.
- The tyre pressure must be checked as soon as possible after fitting the spare wheel → page 367.
- Check the tyre pressure of the spare wheel at least once a month. The tyre pressure of the cold tyre on the spare wheel must correspond to the information on the tyre pressure sticker → page 367.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the spare wheel can lead to a loss of control over the vehicle, serious accidents and cause fatal injuries.

- Do not use the spare wheel under any circumstances if it is damaged or worn down to the tread wear indicators.
- If the spare wheel is not the same as the tyres on the vehicle, never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Never drive further than 200 km (125 miles) with a spare wheel that differs from the tyres fitted on the vehicle if it is mounted on the drive axle.
- Do not accelerate quickly, brake suddenly or drive at high speed through bends.
- Replace a spare wheel that differs from the tyres fitted on the vehicle with a normal wheel as soon as possible. Spare wheels that differ from the tyres fitted on the vehicle are only intended for short-term use.
- Always secure the spare wheel with the wheel bolts supplied from the factory.
- Never drive using more than one spare wheel that differs from the normal tyres.
- After fitting the spare wheel, check the tyre pressure as quickly as possible → page 367.
- Do not use snow chains on a spare wheel that is different from the tyres fitted on the vehicle.
- When towing a trailer, never mount a spare wheel on the rear axle that dif-

fers from the tyres fitted on the vehicle
→ page 297.

⚠ WARNING

Failure to carry out the actions for removing the spare wheel in the specified order could result in serious injuries.

- Follow the actions in the specified order.

i If possible, fit the spare wheel or removed wheel securely in the spare wheel bracket underneath the vehicle.

i Depending on equipment, some vehicles may be factory-fitted with a spare wheel bracket in the load compartment.

Removing and fitting the centre wheel trims

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 381.

Removing the centre wheel trims



Fig. 223 Pulling off the centre wheel trim (illustration).

The centre wheel trim protects the wheel bolts and must be replaced after changing the tyre.

1. Take the hook from the vehicle toolkit → page 320 and insert it at the edge of the centre wheel trim → Fig. 223.
2. Pull off the centre wheel trim in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 223.

Fitting centre wheel trims

1. Place the centre wheel trim centrally on the wheel rim and press against the wheel rim until you feel the trim engage in position.

⚠ WARNING

Using unsuitable hubcaps, or fitting them incorrectly, can cause accidents and serious injuries.

Incorrectly fitted hubcaps can become loose while the vehicle is in motion and endanger other road users.

- Do not use damaged hubcaps.
- Check to make sure that the wheel trim has securely engaged around the entire circumference.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrectly fitted hubcaps can stop or reduce the air supply for cooling the brakes. This also applies if hubcaps are retrofitted. If the airflow is not sufficient, the braking distance could increase significantly.

This can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Check to make sure that the wheel trim has securely engaged around the entire circumference.

Removing and fitting wheel covers

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 381.

Removing wheel covers

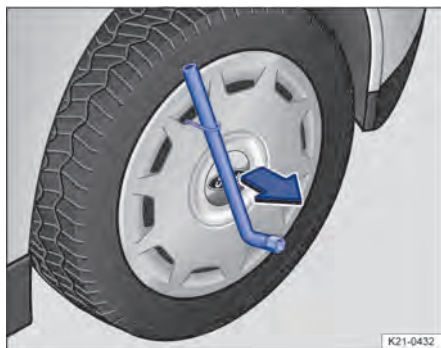


Fig. 224 Pulling off the wheel cover (illustration).

The wheel cover protects the wheel bolts and must be replaced after changing the tyre.

1. Take the hook from the vehicle toolkit → page 320.
2. Insert the hook into one of the holes in the wheel cover.
3. Use the puller to pull off the wheel cover in the direction of the arrow. If necessary, use a box spanner to remove the wheel cover → Fig. 224.

Fitting the wheel covers

1. Check the correct position of the anti-theft wheel bolt → page 389.
2. Press the wheel cover onto the wheel rim so that the valve hole is located over the tyre valve. Please ensure the cover engages securely all the way round.

⚠ WARNING

Using unsuitable hubcaps, or fitting them incorrectly, can cause accidents and serious injuries.

Incorrectly fitted hubcaps can become loose while the vehicle is in motion and endanger other road users.

- Do not use damaged hubcaps.
- Check to make sure that the wheel trim has securely engaged around the entire circumference.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrectly fitted hubcaps can stop or reduce the air supply for cooling the brakes. This also applies if hubcaps are retrofitted. If the airflow is not sufficient, the braking distance could increase significantly.

This can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Check that the opening for the tyre valve in the wheel cover is in the correct position.
- Check to make sure that the wheel trim has securely engaged around the entire circumference.

⚠ NOTICE

The wheel cover may be bolted on and may be damaged if it is pulled off.

- Do not remove bolted-on wheel covers with force.

Removing and fitting wheel bolt caps

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 381.

The caps protect the wheel bolts and should be placed fully back in position after changing the tyre.

Removing caps with the puller



Fig. 225 Removing caps from the wheel bolts with the puller (illustration).

1. Take the puller from the vehicle toolkit → page 320.
2. Grasp the cap with the arms of the puller and pull the cap off the wheel bolt in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 225.

Removing caps with the hook



Fig. 226 Removing caps from the wheel bolts with the hook (illustration).

1. Take the hook from the vehicle toolkit → page 320.
2. Insert the hook through the opening in the cap.
3. Pull off the cap with the hook in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 226.

Fitting caps

1. Press the caps onto the bolts until they click into place.

The anti-theft wheel bolt has a separate cap. This cap only fits onto the anti-theft wheel bolt and not onto conventional wheel bolts.

Loosening the wheel bolts

Please refer to at the start of the chapter on page 381.



Fig. 227 loosening the wheel bolts.

Use a suitable wheel wrench to loosen the wheel bolts.

Only loosen the wheel bolts by approximately one turn before raising the vehicle with the vehicle jack.

1. Fit the box spanner over the wheel bolt as far as it will go.
2. Hold the end of the box spanner and turn the wheel bolt one turn anticlockwise → .

If the wheel bolt is very tight, you may be able to loosen it by pushing down the end of the spanner carefully with your foot. Hold on to the vehicle for support and take care not to slip.

Loosening the anti-theft wheel bolt

1. Take the adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolt out of the vehicle toolkit.
2. Push the adapter onto the anti-theft wheel bolt as far as it will go.
3. Insert the box spanner into the adapter as far as it will go.

4. Hold the end of the box spanner and turn the wheel bolt one turn anticlockwise → .

 If the wheel bolt is very tight, you may be able to loosen it by pushing down the end of the spanner carefully with your foot. Hold on to the vehicle for support and take care not to slip.

WARNING

If the wheel bolts are removed or loosened by more than one turn before raising the vehicle, the wheel could fall off and the vehicle could tip over.

This can cause serious injuries.

- Only loosen the wheel bolts by approximately one turn before raising the vehicle with the jack.
- Never place any part of your body (e.g. an arm) underneath the vehicle while you are loosening the wheel bolts.

Lifting the vehicle with the jack

 Please refer to  at the start of the chapter on page 381.

Jacking points



Fig. 228 On the side sill: markings for the jacking points for the jack.

The jack may be positioned only at the reinforcements on the underbody, which are located behind the markings on the body → Fig. 228. The jacking point that is located at the wheel to be changed must be used → .

Positioning the jack

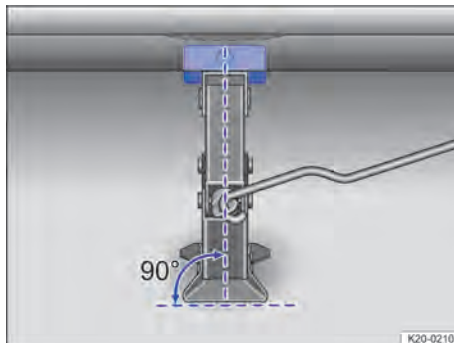


Fig. 229 Correct alignment of the jack.

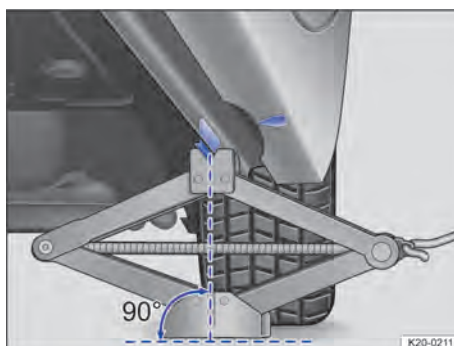


Fig. 230 Correct alignment of the jack.

Checklist

For your own safety, carry out the following tasks in the specified order → .

1. Insert the crank into the opening on the jack (depends on the vehicle equipment).
2. Find the jacking point under the vehicle → Fig. 228 which is closest to the wheel that is being changed.
3. Raise the jack until it just fits under the jacking point of the vehicle.
4. Make sure that the entire surface of the foot of the jack is resting securely on the ground and that it is positioned vertically directly beneath the jacking point → Fig. 229 and → Fig. 230.
5. Position the jack and simultaneously continue to crank the claw up until it is in position around the jacking point underneath the vehicle → Fig. 230.

6. Crank the jack further until the wheel is just clear of the ground.

⚠ WARNING

Ignoring any of the items on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Always follow the actions in the checklist.
- Observe the generally valid safety precautions.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the vehicle jack can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack, which can lead to serious or fatal injuries.

- Never jack up the vehicle if more than one wheel is damaged.
- Never jack up the vehicle when the engine is running.
- Never start the engine when the vehicle is jacked up. Engine vibrations can cause the vehicle to fall off the vehicle jack.
- Fit the jack only at the described jacking points. The jack claw must grip the vertical rib under the door sill securely → Fig. 230.
- Use only jacks that have been approved for your vehicle. Other jacks could slip out of place – this includes jacks supplied with other models.
- Jack up the vehicle only on a flat and stable surface. Soft ground or surfaces at an incline under the vehicle jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. If necessary, use a large, strong board or similar support for the jack.
- Use an anti-slip underlay, such as a rubber mat, to prevent the jack from slipping on a slippery surface (e.g. a tiled floor).
- Never place any part of your body (e.g. an arm) underneath a vehicle only supported by the jack. If you have to work underneath the vehicle, use suitable stands to provide extra support for the vehicle.

Changing a wheel

📖 Please refer to ⚠ at the start of the chapter on page 381.

Removing the wheel



Fig. 231 Unscrew the wheel bolts with the wheel wrench.

1. Observe the checklist → page 382.
2. Loosen the wheel bolts → page 387.
3. Jack up the vehicle → page 388.
4. Using the wheel wrench → Fig. 231, completely unscrew loosened wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface.
5. Remove the wheel.

Fitting the spare wheel

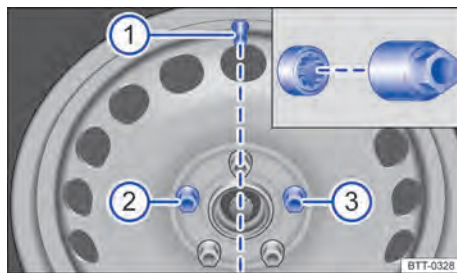


Fig. 232 tyre valve ① and locations of the anti-theft wheel bolt ② or ③.

1. Note the tyre direction of rotation → page 396.
2. Put the wheel in place.

3. Screw in the anti-theft wheel bolt with the adapter clockwise at the correct position and tighten slightly.

On wheels with a wheel cover, the anti-theft wheel bolt must be screwed in at position → Fig. 232 ② or ③ according to the position of the tyre valve ①. Otherwise, it will not be possible to fit the wheel cover.

4. Screw in all the other wheel bolts in clockwise direction and use the box spanner to tighten them slightly.
5. Lower the vehicle with the jack.
6. Use the box spanner to tighten all the wheel bolts securely in a clockwise direction → ⚠. Do not tighten the bolts in clockwise or anticlockwise sequence. Tighten them in diagonal sequence.
7. Fit caps or hubcaps → page 386, → page 385, → page 386.

After changing a wheel

1. Clean the removed tyre and stow it safely in the load compartment → page 383.
2. If necessary, clean the vehicle tools and stow them safely in the vehicle → page 320.
3. Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts or wheel nuts checked immediately → page 369.
4. The damaged wheel should be replaced as soon as possible.

Tightening torque for wheel bolts

Specified tightening torque for wheel bolts for steel or alloy wheels:

— 140 Nm (103 ft-lbs).

The tightening torque should be checked with a perfectly functioning torque spanner immediately after changing a wheel.

If the wheel bolts are corroded and stiff, they must be renewed and the wheel hub threads cleaned before the tightening torque is checked.

Never grease or lubricate the wheel bolts or the threads of the wheel hub. This could cause them to loosen while the vehicle is in

motion, even if the required torque setting is used.

⚠ WARNING

If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is insufficient, the wheel bolts and thus the wheel can loosen while the vehicle is in motion. The wheel bolts and the threads could be damaged if the tightening torque is too high.

Incorrectly tightened or missing wheel bolts can lead to loss of control over the vehicle, serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Always tighten the wheel bolts with the correct tightening torque. If you do not have a torque wrench, tighten the wheel bolts with the wheel bolt wrench and have the torque checked immediately by the nearest suitably qualified workshop.
- Never drive if wheel bolts are missing or loose.
- Always use wheel bolts that match the wheel rims and the vehicle type.
- Never grease or oil the wheel bolt and the threads in the wheel hubs. This could cause them to loosen while the vehicle is in motion, even if the required torque setting is used.
- Make sure that the wheel bolts and threads of the wheel hubs are clean, smooth-running and free of oil and grease.
- Never loosen the bolts on wheel rims with bolted-on rings.

⚠ WARNING

If the wrong wheel bolts are used, the wheel bolt can loosen while driving and lead to loss of control of the vehicle, serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Always use wheel bolts that match the wheel rims and the vehicle type.
- Never use different wheel bolts.



After changing a wheel, the indicator lamp for the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System may indicate a fault in the system → page 376, → page 377.



Breakdown set

Introduction

In some countries, the vehicle may be supplied with a breakdown set.

You can use the breakdown set to temporarily seal a tyre securely if the tread has been damaged by a foreign body or a puncture up to around 6 mm (around 15/64 in) in diameter. Do not remove the foreign object, such as a screw, from the tyre.

Once the sealant has been added to the tyre, the tyre pressure must be checked and adjusted again after approximately 10 minutes of driving.

Seek assistance from a suitably qualified workshop if more than one vehicle tyre is damaged. The breakdown set is only designed to fill one tyre.

Only use the breakdown set when the vehicle has been safely parked and you are familiar with the work and safety precautions needed. Otherwise seek assistance from a suitably qualified workshop.

The tyre sealant must not be used in the following instances:

- If the rim is damaged.
- If the outside temperature is below -30 °C (-22 °F).
- If there are cuts or punctures in the tyre that are larger than 6 mm (around 15/64 in).
- If the vehicle was driven with very low tyre pressure or a flat tyre.
- If the use-by date on the tyre filler bottle has expired.
- If a foreign object has been removed from the tyre.

WARNING

Use of the breakdown set at the side of the road can be dangerous.

If the vehicle and the working area are not secured appropriately, this can result in serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Use the breakdown set only if you are familiar with the necessary actions. If

this is not the case, seek assistance from a suitably qualified workshop.

- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.
- Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic → page 74, → page 209.
- Make sure that the surface the vehicle is parked on is level and firm.
- All passengers, and children in particular, must be at a safe distance and away from your area of work.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
- When using the breakdown set, never lift the vehicle with a jack, even if the jack is approved for the vehicle.

WARNING

Tyres that have been filled with sealant will not handle in the same way as an undamaged tyre.

If the sealed tyre is subjected to excessive loads, this can lead to serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Do not accelerate quickly, brake suddenly or drive at high speed through bends.
- Drive at a maximum of 80 km/h (50 mph) for not longer than 10 minutes and then check the tyre.
- Tyres that have been sealed using the breakdown set should be replaced immediately. Tyres repaired with the breakdown set are intended for temporary, emergency use only. They should be used only until you can reach the nearest qualified workshop.

CAUTION

The sealant may be harmful if it comes into contact with the skin.

- If the sealant comes into contact with the skin, remove it from the skin immediately with a cloth or another suitable item.
- Keep the breakdown set out of the reach of children.

 Dispose of used or out-of-date sealant in accordance with legal requirements.

 You can purchase a new tyre filler bottle from a suitably qualified workshop.

 Observe the separate operating instructions provided by the manufacturer of the breakdown set.

WARNING

Ignoring any of the items on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Always follow the activities in the checklist.
- Observe the generally valid safety precautions.

Preparing the vehicle

 Please refer to  and  at the start of the chapter on page 391.

Checklist

Always carry out the following actions in the given order → :

1. Stop the vehicle at a safe distance away from moving traffic and on a flat and firm surface. Observe all the important information on parking → page 209.
2. Switch on the hazard warning lights → page 14.
3. Ensure that all occupants exit the vehicle and go to a safe place away from moving traffic, e.g. behind the safety barrier. Observe country-specific regulations on high-visibility waistcoats.
4. Place the warning triangle in position to draw the attention of other road users to your vehicle.
5. Check whether the puncture can be repaired with the breakdown set → page 391.
6. When towing a trailer: unhitch the trailer from the towing vehicle and park it → page 297.
7. If the load compartment is loaded: remove the load.
8. Remove the breakdown set from the vehicle.
9. Do not remove foreign objects, e.g. screws, from the tyre.

Sealing and inflating tyres

 Please refer to  and  at the start of the chapter on page 391.

Sealing a tyre

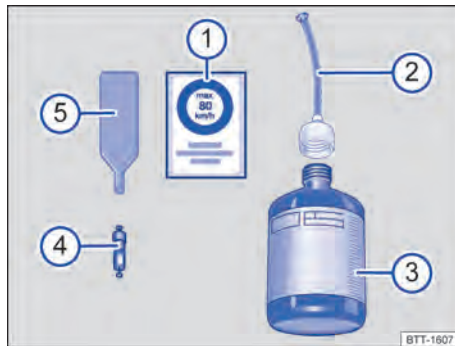


Fig. 233 Contents of the breakdown set (illustration).

- ① Sticker with the maximum permitted speed "max. 80 km/h" or "max. 50 mph".
- ② Filler hose with plug.
- ③ Tyre filler bottle.
- ④ Spare valve core.
- ⑤ Valve core extractor.

 There is a slot for the valve core on the lower end of the valve core extractor → Fig. 233 ⑤. This is required for extracting and fitting the tyre valve core. This also applies to the spare valve core ④.

1. Take the sticker from the breakdown set → Fig. 233 ① and stick it on the dash panel within the driver's field of vision.

2. Unscrew the cap from the tyre valve.
3. Use the valve core extractor
→ Fig. 233 ⑤ to unscrew the valve core from the tyre valve. Place the core on a clean surface.
4. Shake the tyre filler bottle → Fig. 233 ③ vigorously to and fro several times.
5. Screw the tyre sealant tube
→ Fig. 233 ② tightly onto the tyre filler bottle in a clockwise direction. The plastic foil on the plug is pierced automatically.
6. Remove the plug from the filler hose
→ Fig. 233 ② and place the open end fully on the tyre valve.
7. Hold the bottle upside down and fill the entire contents of the tyre filler bottle into the tyre.
8. Remove the empty tyre filler bottle from the valve.
9. Use the valve core extractor
→ Fig. 233 ⑤ to screw the valve core back into the tyre valve.

Inflating the tyre (variant 1)

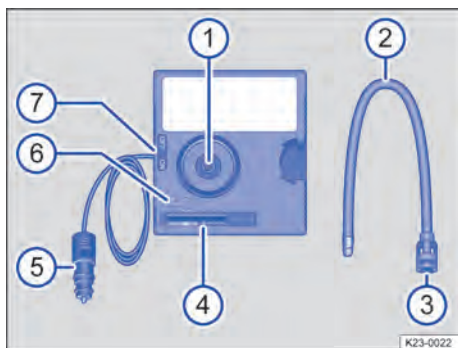


Fig. 234 Compressor in the breakdown set (illustration).

- ① Mount for tyre filler hose.
- ② Tyre filler hose.
- ③ Wing nut.
- ④ Tyre pressure display.
- ⑤ 12-volt plug.
- ⑥ Air bleed button.
- ⑦ ON/OFF switch.

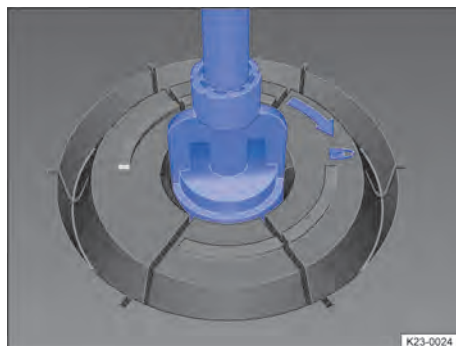


Fig. 235 Connecting the tyre filler hose.

i The compressor from the breakdown set may be operated from the 12-volt socket, even if the power stated on the type plate of the compressor exceeds the maximum power of the socket.

1. Remove the tyre filler hose → Fig. 234 ② from the rear of the compressor.
2. Insert the tyre filler hose → Fig. 234 ② with the wing nut ③ into the mount for the tyre filler hose ① so that the wing nut is pointing to ⚙.
3. Turn the wing nut → Fig. 234 ③ in clockwise direction until the wing nut is pointing to ⚙ → Fig. 235.
4. Screw the tyre filler hose → Fig. 234 ② of the compressor tightly onto the tyre valve.
5. Start the engine and let it run.
6. Insert the 12-volt plug → Fig. 234 ⑤ into one of the vehicle's 12-volt sockets → page 234.
7. Switch on the compressor with the ON/OFF switch → Fig. 234 ⑦.
8. Run the compressor until the pressure has reached 2.0 – 2.5 bar (29 – 36 psi / 200 – 250 kPa).
9. Switch off the compressor.

If a tyre pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar (29 – 36 psi / 200 – 250 kPa) cannot be achieved:

1. Unscrew the tyre filler hose from the tyre valve.

2. Drive (or reverse) the vehicle around 10 metres (around 33 ft) so that the sealing compound is evenly distributed in the tyre.
3. Screw the compressor's tyre filler hose firmly back onto the tyre valve and inflate the tyre again.
4. If the required pressure still cannot be reached, the tyre is too badly damaged. The tyre cannot be sealed with the breakdown set. Do not drive on → . Seek assistance from a suitably qualified workshop.

Continuing your journey

1. Disconnect the compressor and unscrew the tyre filler hose from the tyre valve.
2. Immediately drive on at a speed of no more than 80 km/h (50 mph) once a tyre pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar (29 – 36 psi/200 – 250 kPa) has been reached.
3. Check the tyre pressure after driving for 10 minutes.

Inflating the tyre (variant 2)

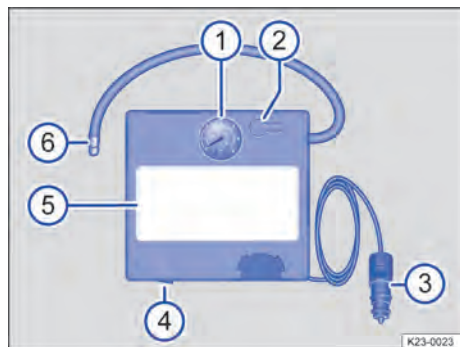


Fig. 236 Compressor in the breakdown set (illustration).

- ① Tyre pressure display.
- ② Air bleed button.
- ③ 12-volt plug.
- ④ ON/OFF switch.
- ⑤ Compressor.
- ⑥ Tyre filler hose.

 The compressor from the breakdown set may be operated from the 12-volt socket, even if the power stated on the type plate of the compressor exceeds the maximum power of the socket.

1. Screw the tyre filler hose → Fig. 236 ⑥ of the compressor tightly onto the tyre valve.
2. Start the engine and let it run.
3. Insert the 12-volt plug → Fig. 236 ③ into one of the vehicle's 12-volt sockets → page 234.
4. Switch on the compressor with the ON/OFF switch → Fig. 236 ④.
5. Run the compressor until the pressure has reached 2.0 – 2.5 bar (29 – 36 psi/200 – 250 kPa). **Maximum running time: 10 minutes** → ①.
6. Switch off the compressor.

If a tyre pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar (29 – 36 psi / 200 – 250 kPa) cannot be achieved:

1. Unscrew the tyre filler hose from the tyre valve.
2. Drive (or reverse) the vehicle around 10 metres (around 33 ft) so that the sealing compound is evenly distributed in the tyre.
3. Screw the compressor's tyre filler hose firmly back onto the tyre valve and inflate the tyre again.
4. If the required pressure still cannot be reached, the tyre is too badly damaged. The tyre cannot be sealed with the breakdown set. Do not drive on → . Seek assistance from a suitably qualified workshop.

NOTICE

The compressor can overheat and be damaged if it is operated for an extended time.

- Switch the compressor off after a maximum of 10 minutes.
- Allow the compressor to cool down for several minutes before switching it back on again.

Continuing your journey

1. Disconnect the compressor and unscrew the tyre filler hose from the tyre valve.
2. Immediately drive on at a speed of no more than 80 km/h (50 mph) once a tyre pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar (29 – 36 psi/200 – 250 kPa) has been reached.
3. Check the tyre pressure after driving for 10 minutes.

Check after driving for 10 minutes

1. Park the vehicle on a firm and level surface at the next safe opportunity, e.g. a car park.
2. Reconnect the tyre filler hose → Fig. 234 ① or → Fig. 236 ⑥ and read the tyre pressure on the tyre pressure display → Fig. 234 ④ or → Fig. 236 ②.

1.3 bar (19 psi / 130 kPa) and lower:

1.  **Do not drive on!** The tyre cannot be sealed adequately with the breakdown set → . Seek assistance from a suitably qualified workshop.

1.4 bar (20 psi / 140 kPa) and higher:

1. Adjust the tyre pressure back to the correct value.
2. Drive carefully to the nearest suitably qualified workshop. Do not exceed a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

3. Have the damaged tyre replaced by a suitably qualified workshop.

WARNING

The tyre filler hose and compressor can become hot during the inflation process and cause burns if touched.

- Protect your hands and skin from hot components.
- Do not place the hot tyre filler hose and the hot compressor on any flammable materials.
- Allow the tyre filler hose and the compressor to cool down before stowing them.

WARNING

If the defective tyre cannot be sealed adequately with the breakdown set, the tyre will lose air when driving.

This can lead to tyre failure, loss of control of the vehicle, accidents, serious injuries and death.

- If the tyre will not inflate to at least 2.0 bar (29 psi/200 kPa), the tyre is too damaged. The sealant is unable to seal the tyre. Do not drive on. Instead, seek assistance from a suitably qualified workshop.
- Do not carry on driving if the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar (19 psi/130 kPa) or lower after driving for 10 minutes. Instead, seek assistance from a suitably qualified workshop.

Tyre characteristics

Tyre lettering and tyre type

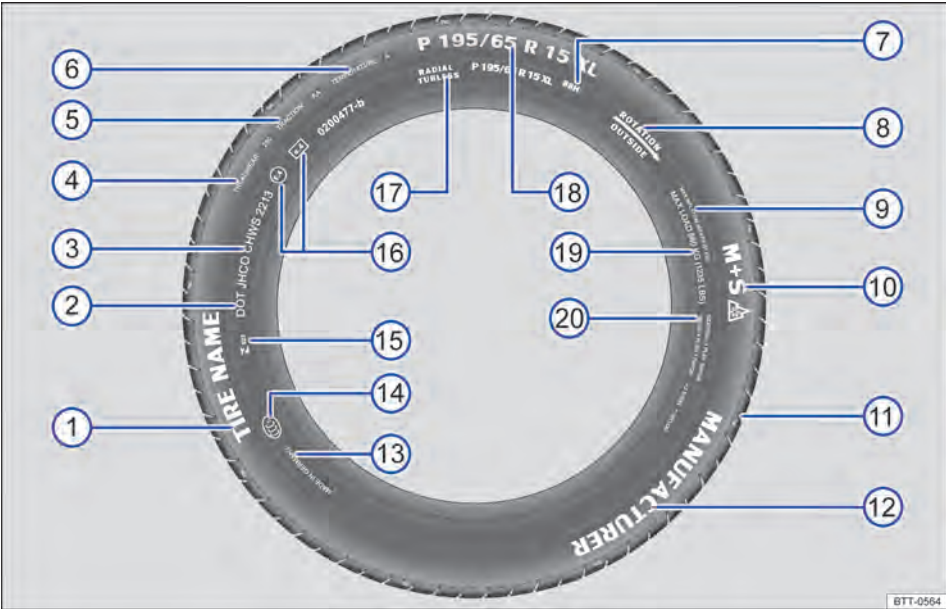


Fig. 237 International tyre lettering

Tyre lettering (example), meaning			
①	Product name	Individual tyre lettering from manufacturer.	
②	DOT	The tyre complies with the legal requirements of the USA Department of Transportation, responsible for tyre safety standards.	
③	JHCO CHWS 2213	Tyre identification number (TIN – possibly only on the inside of the wheel) and date of manufacture:	
		JHCO CHWS	Identifier of producing plant and specifications of the tyre manufacturer on size and characteristics.
		2,213	Date of manufacture: Week 22 in 2013.
Information for the end user concerning comparative values for specified basic tyres (standardised test procedure) → page 410:			
④	TREADWEAR 280	Relative life expectancy for the tyre, with reference to a US-specific standard test. A tyre with the specification 280 is used up at a rate of 2.8 times more slowly than standard tyres which have a treadwear value of 100. The performance of tyres is determined by how they are used and can notably deviate from norm values due to driving style, maintenance, road surface and climatic conditions.	

Tyre lettering (example), meaning

⑤	TRACTION AA	Wet braking performance of the tyre (AA, A, B or C). The wet braking performance is tested under controlled conditions on certified test tracks. Tyres marked C have a low traction performance. The traction value assigned to the tyres is based on linear traction tests and does not include acceleration, lateral stability, or aquaplaning and traction under maximum load.
⑥	TEMPERATURE A	Temperature stability of the tyre at higher test speeds (A, B or C). A and B tyres exceed legal requirements. The temperature evaluation is based on tyres with correct tyre pressure and does not allow for excess pressure. Excessive speed, incorrect tyre pressure or excess pressure can cause heat build-up or tyre damage. This applies to one or a combination of these factors.
⑦	88 H	Load index → page 398 and speed index → page 398.
⑧	Rotation and arrow Or: Outside	Denotes direction of rotation → page 398. Denotes outside of tyres → page 398.
⑨	MAX INFLATION 350 KPA (51 psi / 3.51 bar)	US limitation for the maximum tyre pressure.
⑩	M+S or M/S or 	Denotes winter tyres (mud and snow tyres) → page 370. Studded snow tyres are labelled with an E after the S.
⑪	TWI	Indicates the position of the tread wear indicator → page 369.
⑫	<i>Brand name, logo</i>	Manufacturer.
⑬	Made in Germany	Country of manufacture.
⑭		Country-specific denotation for China (China Compulsory Certification).
⑮		Country-specific denotation for Brazil.
⑯	E4 e4 0200477-b	Certification of conformity with international regulations. The next number is the code number of the country that granted approval. Approved tyres which comply with ECE regulations are denoted with E, tyres which comply with EC regulations are denoted with e. This is followed by the number of the type approval certificate.
⑰	RADIAL TUBELESS	Tubeless radial tyres.
⑱	P 195 / 65 R 15 XL	Size designation:
		P Identification for passenger vehicle.
		195 Tyre width from wall to wall in mm.
		65 Height/width ratio in %.
		R Tyre construction: radial.
		15 Rim diameter in inches.
⑲	MAX LOAD 615 KG (1235 LBS)	Heavy-duty tyres (extra load tyres).
		US load data for the maximum load per wheel.
⑳	SIDEWALL 1 PLY RAYON	Data on the tyre carcass components: 1 layer of rayon (artificial silk).
	TREAD 4 PLYES 1 RAYON + 2 STEEL + 1 NYLON	Data on the tread surface components: In the example there are 4 plies under the tread surface: 1 ply of rayon (artificial silk), 2 steel belt plies and 1 nylon ply.

The TIN is the tyre serial number.

The tyre label is located on both sides. Certain labels may only be found on one side of the tyre, e.g. tyre identification number and manufacturing date.

Any further numbers and letters are internal codes used by the tyre manufacturer or country-specific denotations.

Low-profile tyres

Low-profile tyres have a wider tread surface, larger rim diameter and lower side-walls than conventional wheel/tyre combinations → page 364. Low-profile tyres can improve the vehicle's handling and precision. They may however result in a less comfortable ride on uneven road surfaces and tracks.

Tyres with directional tread pattern

An arrow on the tyre sidewall indicates the direction of rotation on tyres with directional tread. The direction of rotation must be observed in all cases. This makes sure they run as smoothly as possible.

If, however, the tyre is fitted in the opposite direction to the tread pattern, you must take more care when driving as the tyre is now no longer being used according to its designation. The tyres must be replaced as quickly as possible or be fitted with the tread in the correct direction.

Asymmetrical tyres

Asymmetrical tyres take into account the differing behaviour of the inner and outer areas of the tread pattern. The sidewalls of asymmetrical tyres are marked to indicate "inside" or "outside". Maintain the correct tyre positioning on the wheel rim.

Tyre load

The load capacity index indicates how many kilograms can be loaded onto an individual tyre (tyre load).

Examples:

- 78** 425 kg (936 lbs)
- 81** 462 kg (1,018 lbs)
- 83** 487 kg (1,073 lbs)
- 85** 515 kg (1,135 lbs)

- 87** 545 kg (1,201 lbs)
- 88** 560 kg (1,234 lbs)
- 91** 615 kg (1,355 lbs)
- 92** 630 kg (1,388 lbs)
- 93** 650 kg (1,433 lbs)
- 95** 690 kg (1,521 lbs)
- 97** 730 kg (1,609 lbs)
- 99** 775 kg (1,708 lbs)
- 100** 800 kg (1,763 lbs)
- 101** 825 kg (1,818 lbs)
- 102** 850 kg (1,873 lbs)
- 103** 875 kg (1,929 lbs)
- 104** 900 kg (1,984 lbs)
- 105** 925 kg (2,039 lbs)
- 106** 950 kg (2,094 lbs)
- 107** 975 kg (2,149 lbs)
- 108** 1,000 kg (2,204 lbs)
- 109** 1,030 kg (2,270 lbs)
- 110** 1,060 kg (2,337 lbs)
- 112** 1,120 kg (2,469 lbs)
- 114** 1,180 kg (2,601 lbs)
- 116** 1,250 kg (2,755 lbs)
- 118** 1,320 kg (2,910 lbs)
- 120** 1,400 kg (3,086 lbs)

Speed index

The speed index indicates the maximum permitted speed that may be driven when particular wheels are fitted.

- P** max. 150 km/h (93 mph)
- Q** max. 160 km/h (99 mph)
- R** max. 170 km/h (106 mph)
- S** max. 180 km/h (112 mph)
- T** max. 190 km/h (118 mph)
- U** max. 200 km/h (125 mph)
- H** max. 210 km/h (130 mph)
- V** max. 240 km/h (149 mph)
- W** max. 270 km/h (168 mph)
- Y** max. 300 km/h (186 mph)
- Z** over 240 km/h (149 mph)

Some tyre manufacturers use the code "ZR" for tyres with a highest permitted speed of over 240 km/h (149 mph).



Maximum load and speed range for tyres

Vehicles registered within the EU and the EU “user countries” are issued an EC Certificate of Conformity. The EC Certificate of Conformity contains details for the size, diameter, load-carrying capacity and speed range of all tyres approved for the relevant vehicle type.

The type plate shows whether there is an EC Certificate of Conformity for this particular vehicle → page 452.

- If the type plate has a row marked “Permit” then the vehicle has an EC certificate of conformity.
- If there is no type plate, or no row marked “Permit”, the vehicle does not have an EC certificate of conformity.



Maintenance

Vehicle care

Notes on vehicle care

Regular and expert care helps to preserve your vehicle → .

The longer contamination or dirt is left on the surface of vehicle components, the more difficult it can become to clean and treat them. Extended exposure may mean that it is no longer possible to remove soiling.

Consult a suitably qualified workshop if you have any questions about care products or if components are not listed.

Appropriate accessories are available from a suitably qualified workshop.

Follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

WARNING

Improper care, impregnation and cleaning of components can irreparably damage the safety features of the vehicle, e.g. the airbag units, and prevent them from functioning properly. This can lead to serious injuries in the event of an accident.

- Always use suitable cleaning agents. More detailed information is available from a suitably qualified workshop.
- Do not use cleaning agents that contain solvents.
- Clean and care for vehicle parts only in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

WARNING

Improper cleaning of the vehicle can cause serious injuries.

- Protect your hands and arms against parts with sharp edges, e.g. when cleaning the insides of the wheel housings.
- Use cleaning agents only in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

WARNING

Dirty, misted-up or iced-up windows reduce visibility and can prevent the safety features of the vehicle from functioning properly. This can result in accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.

- Drive only when you have a clear view through all windows.
- Do not treat the windscreen with water-repellent window coating agents. In unfavourable conditions, they can cause increased dazzle.

WARNING

Care products may be toxic, highly flammable and caustic. Improper use of care products or the use of unsuitable care products can cause burns and poisoning and can lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Observe the instructions supplied with the respective product.
- Store care products only in the closed original container.
- Keep all care products out of reach of children.
- Use care products only outside or in well-ventilated rooms so that you do not breathe in any toxic vapours.
- Never use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail varnish remover or other volatile fluids for vehicle care.

NOTICE

Contamination with aggressive and solvent-based ingredients can cause irreparable damage to the vehicle equipment, e.g. even if left for only a short time on seat covers or trim parts.

- Do not let contamination or dirt dry.
- Have stubborn stains removed by a suitably qualified workshop. 

Washing the vehicle

Washing the vehicle regularly prevents effects of soiling that can damage the paint work.

To wash your vehicle correctly and properly, please observe the following information → , → .

WARNING

After a car wash, the braking action may be delayed as the brake discs and brake pads will be wet, or iced up in winter. The braking distance will increase as a result. This can lead to loss of control of the vehicle, accidents and also serious or fatal injuries.

- Carry out a few careful braking operations to dry the brakes and remove any coating of ice when visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions permit.

NOTICE

Serious vehicle damage can be caused if the vehicle is not washed correctly.

- Always observe the described tasks for vehicle care and cleaning.
- Always follow the manufacturer's instructions.
- Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.

NOTICE

Wet components can freeze in cold weather and this may prevent them from functioning properly.

- Never aim a water jet directly at doors or the boot lid in cold weather.

Automatic car washes

- Do not select a washing programme with hot wax for vehicles with decorative and protective films.
- Car washes without brushes are to be preferred.
- Regularly have the bottom of the vehicle thoroughly cleaned to remove residue.
- Please observe any information provided by the car wash operator, especially where add-on parts are concerned → .

Checklist for car wash

- ✓ The windows must be closed and the exterior mirrors must be folded away.
- ✓ The Auto Hold function is switched off.

- ✓ *Vehicles with steering lock:* If the vehicle is mechanically pulled through the car wash, the steering must not lock → page 146.

- ✓ *Vehicles with automatic transmission:* if the vehicle is pulled mechanically through the car wash (tunnel wash), the transmission must be in neutral position **N**.

The roll-away protection is deactivated → page 210.

- ✓ *Vehicles with manual gearbox:* if the vehicle is pulled mechanically through the car wash (tunnel wash), the gear must be disengaged.
- ✓ The wipers → page 125 and the rain and light sensor → page 127 are switched off.

NOTICE

Car washes that make contact with the vehicle contours can damage the vehicle and add-on parts, e.g. spoilers.

- Observe the information of the car wash operator, particularly if there are add-on parts on the vehicle.



Wash the vehicle only in specially designated washing bays. This prevents waste water that is possibly contaminated with oil from entering the sewerage system.

High-pressure cleaner

- Never use rotary nozzles. Observe the manufacturer's instructions.
- Use water only up to a maximum temperature of +60°C (+140°F).
- Move the jet of water uniformly so that the washer jet is at least 50 cm (20 in) away from the vehicle components.
- Do not point the water jet at the same location for too long.
- Aim the water jet indirectly at sensitive vehicle components if possible, e.g. rubber seals, side windows, gloss strips, tyres, sensors, camera lenses, decorative and protective film.
- Never use a high-pressure cleaner to clean windows that are iced up or covered in snow.

! NOTICE

Please note that the sensors in the door handles can be activated by a powerful jet of water or steam if a valid vehicle key is simultaneously within its operating range. The windows could open as a result and moisture could enter the vehicle interior. This could lead to the vehicle interior being damaged.

- Never direct the jet of a high-pressure or steam cleaner directly at the sensors in the door handles.

i The vehicle may be unlocked if the jet of a high-pressure cleaner or steam cleaner is pointed directly at the sensors in the door handles.

Washing by hand

Isolated soiling on the paint can be removed with cleaning clay.

1. Clean the vehicle with plenty of water to remove dust and coarse soiling.
2. Clean with a soft sponge, a wash mitt or a brush applying only light pressure. Start with the roof and work from the top to the bottom. Use a cleaning shampoo for very stubborn dirt only.
3. Clean wheels and side members with a clean sponge.
4. Rinse off with plenty of water.
5. Allow the vehicle to dry in the air.
6. Remove water residue with a chamois leather.

Cleaning and caring for the vehicle exterior

! NOTICE

Incorrect cleaning and care can damage the vehicle.

- Always follow the manufacturer's instructions.
- Do not use excessively hard or abrasive cleaning tools.

Windows, glass surfaces

- Remove wax residue, e.g. from care products, using a suitable glass cleaner or with a suitable cleaning cloth.
- Remove snow with a brush.
- Remove ice with a plastic scraper. Move the scraper in one direction only.
- Remove any ice with a suitable de-icing agent.
- Clean the wiper blades or replace if necessary.

Paint

Always treat surfaces carefully in order to prevent damage to the paint coat.

- Use a clean, soft cloth and a mild soap solution (made with a maximum of two tablespoons of neutral soap to one litre of water) or cleaning clay to remove any light dirt immediately, e.g. deposits, insect residue, or cosmetics.
- Remove overflowing fuel or service fluids immediately.
- Moisten flash rust deposits with a soap solution. Then remove any deposits with cleaning clay.
- Have corrosion removed by a suitably qualified workshop.
- In the event of paint damage, go to a suitably qualified workshop and have the paint damage repaired.

Waxing protects the paintwork. At the latest when water no longer clearly forms small drops and runs off the paintwork when the vehicle is *clean*, the vehicle should be protected again using a preservative wax.

- Even if a preservative wax is applied regularly in the car wash, we recommend protecting the paint with a coat of suitable hard wax at least twice a year.

Polishing is only necessary if the paint has lost its shine, and the gloss cannot be brought back by applying wax.

i Even if a preservative wax is used regularly in the car wash, Ford recommends protecting the paint with suitable hard wax or with Ford hard wax at least twice a year.

Bonnet space, plenum chamber

WARNING

There is a risk of accident and fire when working on the engine or in the bonnet space. Serious injuries may occur.

- Note the operations required and the necessary safety precautions before performing any work in the bonnet space → page 342.
- If you are not familiar with the work, have the work carried out by a suitably qualified workshop.

NOTICE

The drains in the plenum chamber could become blocked with leaves or dirt. Water that does not drain off can get into the vehicle interior and cause damage.

- Have the area under the perforated cover of the plenum chamber cleaned regularly by a suitably qualified workshop.

NOTICE

Water that has entered the plenum chamber via a manual process, e.g. from a high-pressure cleaner, can cause considerable damage to the vehicle.

- Remove leaves and other loose objects with a vacuum cleaner or by hand.
- Always have cleaning of the bonnet space performed by a suitably qualified workshop.

- Remove leaves and other loose objects on the perforated cover with a vacuum cleaner or by hand.
- Make sure that large quantities of water do not enter the plenum chamber, e.g. due to use of a high-pressure cleaner.
- Always have the bonnet space checked by a suitably qualified workshop.

Sensors and camera lenses

Observe the installation locations of the components on the vehicle → page 8.

Clean the area in front of the sensors or camera with a soft cloth and solvent-free cleaning agent.

Clean sensitive surfaces on the rain and light sensor and the camera window on the windscreen with a suitable glass cleaner.

- Remove snow with a brush.
- Never use warm or hot water.
- Remove any ice with a suitable de-icing agent.

Decorative films, protective films

- Remove soiling in the same way as for paint. Use a suitable plastic cleaner for decorative films.
- Treat the vehicle with liquid hard wax every three months after washing and removing dust. Only use clean, soft microfibre cloths to apply it. Do not use hot wax – also not in car washes!
- Remove stubborn impurities carefully using white spirits, and then rinse using warm water.

 The durability and colour of decorative and protective films are affected by environmental factors such as sunshine, moisture, air pollution, stone chips, etc. Decorative films can show signs of wear and ageing after approximately one to three years and protective films after approximately two to three years. In very hot climates, decorative films may start to fade within one year and protective films within two years.

Trim parts made of chrome-plated plastic, aluminium or stainless steel

- Clean the surface with a suitable chrome and aluminium care product.
- Chrome trim can be protected with a suitable hard wax.

Headlamps, tail lamp clusters

- Remove soiling using a soft sponge soaked with a mild soap solution consisting of a maximum of two table-spoons of neutral soap diluted in one litre of water. Do not use any cleaning agents that contain alcohol or solvents.
- Remove stubborn dirt with a suitable chrome and aluminium care product.

Wheels

- Remove dirt and gritting salt deposits with plenty of water.
- Treat dirty alloy wheels with a suitable wheel rim cleaner. It is recommended to treat the wheel rims with a suitable hard wax every three months.
- Repair any damage to the protective paint coating immediately with a touch-up pen. If necessary, go to a suitably qualified workshop.
- Remove brake dust with a suitable wheel rim cleaner.

Door lock cylinders

It is recommended to thaw door lock cylinders with a suitable door lock de-icer. Do not use door lock de-icers containing grease solvents.

- Remove soiling with a suitable interior cleaning agent.
- Use a suitable interior cleaning agent for grease-based soiling, e.g. oil. Use an absorbent cloth to dab off dissolved grease and dye. If necessary, treat again with water.
- Use a suitable interior cleaning agent to remove soiling caused by ballpoint pens or nail varnish, for example. If necessary, treat again with a mild soap solution consisting of a maximum of two tablespoons of neutral soap diluted in one litre of water.
- Never use leather care products, solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover or similar.
- Never use a high-pressure cleaner, steam cleaner or coolant spray.



Cleaning and care of the vehicle interior

The following overview contains recommendations for cleaning and care of individual vehicle components.

! NOTICE

Improper cleaning and care may damage the vehicle.

- Always observe the described tasks for vehicle care and cleaning.
- Do not use a steam cleaner, brushes or hard sponges etc.
- Have stubborn stains removed by a suitably qualified workshop.

Windows

1. Clean windows with a glass cleaner.
2. Wipe windows dry with a clean chamois leather or a lint-free cloth.

Textiles, microfibre fabrics, Sensico (premium artificial leather)

- Regularly remove dirt particles that are adhering to surfaces with a vacuum cleaner so that the material is not permanently damaged by scrubbing.

Natural leather

- Remove fresh soiling using a cotton cloth and a mild soap solution consisting of a maximum of two tablespoons of neutral soap diluted in one litre of water. Do not allow fluids to seep into the seams.
- Use a suitable leather cleaner to remove soiling caused by ballpoint pens or nail varnish, for example.
- Treat dried stains with a suitable leather cleaner.
- In the case of grease-based soiling, e.g. oil, remove the fresh stains using an absorbent cloth.
- Apply a leather care product for seating furniture regularly and each time after the leather is cleaned. If the vehicle is left standing outside for an extended period, cover the leather to protect it from direct sunlight.

Never treat leather with solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover or similar.

Plastic parts

- Clean with a soft, damp cloth.
- If stubborn soiling cannot be removed with a mild soap solution consisting of a maximum of two tablespoons of neutral soap diluted in one litre of water, a solvent-free plastic cleaner can be used.

Trim parts, trim strips made of chrome, aluminium or stainless steel

- Clean in a dust-free environment using a clean, soft cloth and a mild soap solution consisting of a maximum of two tablespoons of neutral soap diluted in one litre of water.
- Treat anodised surfaces with a suitable chrome and aluminium care product.

Controls

1. Use a soft paintbrush to remove coarse soiling and dirt that is difficult to reach.
2. Use a clean, soft cloth and a mild soap solution consisting of a maximum of two tablespoons of neutral soap diluted in one litre of water. Fluids must not be allowed to enter the controls → ⚠.

Displays and screens

Do not clean the instrument cluster display and Infotainment system screen when they are dry.

1. Switch off the Infotainment system before cleaning.
2. Use a suitable clean, soft cleaning cloth with some water, a suitable glass cleaner or LCD cleaner → ⓘ.

In the case of stubborn dirt:

- Moisten dirt with only a little water and allow to soak in → ⓘ.
- Carefully remove dirt with a clean, soft cloth.

ⓘ NOTICE

The screen can become cloudy, be damaged or scratched if it is cleaned with the wrong cleaning agents or when dry.

- Only exert light pressure.
- Do not use aggressive or solvent-based cleaning products.

ⓘ NOTICE

If the screen is cleaned with too much moisture, it may no longer be possible to operate the screen or the screen may switch off.

- Dry the screen then leave the vehicle locked from the outside for at least 2 minutes.

Rubber seals

- Clean with a soft, lint-free cloth and plenty of water.
- Treat regularly with a suitable rubber care product.

Seat belts

1. Pull out the seat belt completely and leave the belt extended.
2. Remove coarse dirt with a soft brush.
3. Clean the seat belt with a mild soap solution consisting of a maximum of two tablespoons of neutral soap diluted in one litre of water.
4. Allow the belt fabric to dry completely before allowing it to retract again.

⚠ WARNING

Improper cleaning of the seat belts, their anchorages and the belt retractors can cause damage and prevent them from functioning properly. This can result in serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.

- Never carry out any modifications on the seat belts for cleaning.
- Never clean the seat belts and their components with chemical agents.
- Do not use any caustic fluids, solvents or sharp objects.
- Protect the belt buckles against ingress of fluids and foreign material.
- Allow the cleaned seat belt to dry fully before allowing it to retract.

Cleaning seat covers

If clothing that is not sufficiently colour-fast, e.g. denim, transfers colour to the seat padding, this is not a defect of the cover fabric. Parts of the airbag system and electrical connectors may be installed in the seat padding. In addition to damage to the vehicle's electrical system, a malfunction in the airbag system may also be caused by damage, incorrect cleaning and treatment or soaking → ⚠.

Depending on equipment, electrical components and connectors are installed in seat cushions with seat heating that can be damaged in the event of incorrect cleaning or treatment. This can also lead to damage in another part of the vehicle's electrical system.

- Never use a high-pressure cleaner, steam cleaner or coolant spray.
- Never soak seat covers.
- Never switch on the seat heating to dry the seats.
- Do not use washing pastes or mild detergent solutions.
- Clean the seat surfaces only with a slightly moistened cloth → .
- If you are unsure, go to a suitably qualified workshop.
- In the case of coarser soiling, ask a suitably qualified workshop about special cleaning agents.

WARNING

Improper care and cleaning of components can irreparably damage the safety features of the vehicle, e.g. the airbag units, and prevent them from functioning properly. This can lead to serious injuries in the event of an accident.

- Always use approved or recommended cleaning products.
- Do not use cleaning agents that contain solvents.
- Clean and care for vehicle parts only in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
- Avoid massive use of water, e.g. with a water hose, high-pressure cleaner or steam cleaner.

 The signs of wear and soiling visible due to normal use are naturally more easily visible in the case of light-coloured materials in the vehicle interior. These signs of use cannot be prevented and also represent unavoidable ageing due to normal use. Please observe the corresponding care instructions.

Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts

Sensors and cameras

Incorrectly performed repairs, structural changes to the vehicle (e.g. lowering the suspension, retrofitted add-on parts or modifications to the trim) can lead to sensors and cameras being displaced or damaged. This can impair important functions of driver assistance systems → .

- Observe the positions of sensors and cameras in the vehicle overview when performing repairs or modifications.

Add-on parts or modifications in the area of sensors and cameras

WARNING

If the area in front of and around sensors and cameras is covered, e.g. by incorrectly fitted licence plates or licence plate holders with trim frame, additionally applied films or paint on the sensors or similar, this may impair functions of the driver assistance systems. Failure of the driver assistance systems can lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always ask a suitably qualified workshop whether installation of a licence plate or licence plate holder with trim frame is possible for your vehicle.
- When installing, ensure that there is a sufficient distance from sensors and cameras.
- Make sure that the licence plate or the licence plate holder with trim frame is installed only in the specified position.
- Do not attach any additional films in front of and around sensors.

NOTICE

Incorrect installation of licence plates or licence plate holders with trim frame can damage components, such as cables and sensors.

- Always ask a suitably qualified workshop whether installation of a licence plate or licence plate holder with trim frame is possible for your vehicle.

The licence plate holder with trim frame is used to attach the vehicle licence plate.

In some vehicle versions, the front radar cover may affect the radar sensor's view to the front. You should therefore only operate the vehicle only with the original cover or with replacement parts that have been approved by the manufacturer.

Damage in the area of sensors and cameras

WARNING

If the area around sensors and cameras is damaged (e.g. by stone impact or collisions when parking), this may impair functions of the driver assistance systems. Failure of the driver assistance systems can lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- In the event of damage in the area of the sensors and cameras, have the component replaced by a suitably qualified workshop.

After components have been replaced, the sensors and cameras must be adjusted and calibrated by a suitably qualified workshop if necessary.

If the windscreen has been damaged in the viewing field of the sensors and camera (e.g. by stone chip), the windscreen must be replaced. Repairing the stone chip can lead to malfunctions or faults in the driver assistance systems. After the windscreen has been replaced, the camera and sensors must be adjusted and calibrated by a suitably qualified workshop.

Repairs and technical modifications

Diagnostic connection (OBD)

There is a diagnostic connection (OBD) in the vehicle interior for reading the event memories. Event memories document any faults that have occurred and any deviations from the nominal values in the electronic control units → .

The diagnostic connection (OBD) is located in the footwell on the driver side under-

neath the dash panel, or behind a cover next to the bonnet release lever.

The event memory should only be read and reset by a suitably qualified workshop. Additional information on the stored data is available from suitably qualified workshops.

After a fault has been rectified, the information in the event memory relating to the fault is deleted. Other memory content is overwritten on an ongoing basis.

Vehicles with special auxiliary equipment or body parts

The manufacturer of these components must ensure that these parts (fittings) adhere to the stipulated environmental laws and regulations, particularly the EU directive 2000/53/EC concerning end-of-life vehicles and EU directive 2003/11/EC concerning the restriction on the marketing and use of certain dangerous substances and preparations.

The vehicle owner should keep all assembly documentation for these auxiliary fittings, and pass it on to any scrapping company later engaged. This is to facilitate environmentally responsible disposal for all vehicles, including refitted vehicles.

Engine and transmission guard

An engine and transmission guard can reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle's underbody and sump, for example when driving over kerbs, drive entrances or unsurfaced roads.

- ◀ Have retrofitting carried out by a suitably qualified workshop.

An engine and transmission guard may not be available in all countries.

WARNING

Incorrect repairs and modifications to the vehicle can impair the effectiveness of the driver assistance systems and the airbags when they trigger. This can cause malfunctions and lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Have repairs and modifications to your vehicle carried out only by a suitably qualified workshop.

WARNING

Incorrectly performed repairs and modifications on the vehicle, e.g. through use of unsuitable parts, can damage the vehicle and cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never fit parts to your vehicle that differ in their design or characteristics from the factory-fitted parts.
- Use only wheel rim/tyre combinations that Ford has approved for your vehicle type.
- Have repairs and modifications to your vehicle carried out only by a suitably qualified workshop. Qualified workshops have the necessary tools, diagnostic equipment, repair information and qualified personnel.

WARNING

Use of the diagnostic connection for other than its intended purpose can cause malfunctions and lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Never read out the event memory using the diagnostic interface yourself.
- Never upload data to the vehicle yourself using the diagnostic connection.
- The event memory should be read only by a suitably qualified workshop using the diagnostic interface.

Repairs and faults in the airbag system

Repairs and modifications must always be carried out according to Ford specifications → .

Modifications and repairs to the front bumper, the doors, the front seats, the headliner or the bodywork should be carried out only by a suitably qualified workshop. System components and airbag system sensors can be located on these vehicle components.

If you work on the airbag system or remove and install parts of the system when performing other repair work, parts of the airbag system may be damaged. The conse-

quence may be that, in the event of an accident, the airbag inflates incorrectly or does not inflate at all.

Regulations must be observed to ensure that the effectiveness of the airbags is not reduced and that removed parts do not cause any injuries or environmental pollution. Qualified workshops are familiar with these requirements.

Any modifications to the vehicle's suspension could prevent the airbag system from working properly during a collision. For example, using wheel rim/tyre combinations that have not been approved by the manufacturer, lowering the vehicle or making modifications to the suspension rate including work on the springs, struts and shock absorbers etc., could change the forces that are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit. Some changes to the suspension could cause the forces measured by the sensors to increase, for example. This can lead to the airbag system being triggered in collision scenarios where it normally would not be triggered if modifications to the suspension had not been made. Other modifications can cause the forces measured by the sensors to decrease, therefore preventing the airbag system from being triggered when it should have been.

WARNING

Use of unsuitable replacement parts and accessories can cause malfunctions and damage to the vehicle and impair the effectiveness of the airbag system. This also applies to work, modifications and repairs that are not performed correctly. This can lead to vehicle damage and accidents with serious or fatal injuries.

- Have repairs and modifications to your vehicle carried out only by a suitably qualified workshop. Qualified workshops have the necessary tools, diagnostic equipment, repair information and qualified personnel.
- Please note that the airbag unit cannot be repaired, but must be replaced.
- Never install recycled airbag components or components that have been

taken from end-of-life vehicles in your vehicle.

- Never fit parts to your vehicle that differ in their design or characteristics from the factory-fitted parts.

WARNING

Modification of the vehicle suspension, including the use of non-approved wheel rim and tyre combinations, can change how the airbag functions. This can result in serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.

- Never install components in the suspension system which do not have the same characteristics as the original factory-fitted components.
- Never use wheel rim/tyre combinations that have not been approved for your vehicle.

Mobile communication in the vehicle

Electromagnetic radiation

If a mobile telephone or radio device is used without being connected to the external aerial, the electromagnetic radiation will not be optimally directed to the outside of the vehicle. Increased levels of radiation in the vehicle interior can occur in particular in the event of poor reception, e.g. in rural areas. This could constitute a health hazard → .

Depending on the vehicle's equipment level, a suitable mobile phone interface can be used to connect the mobile telephone to the external aerial. The connection quality is improved and the range is increased.

Using a telephone

Many countries require a hands-free system to be used when using a telephone inside the vehicle, e.g. via a Bluetooth® connection. Before use, secure the mobile telephone to a suitable bracket →  or stow it in a stowage compartment so that it cannot slip around, e.g. in the centre console.

Two-way radios

Observe legal regulations and the manufacturer's operating instructions for operation of two-way radios. Approval is required for retrofitting two-way radio systems.

Ask a suitably qualified workshop for further information on installing a two-way radio.

WARNING

Mobile telephones which are loosely placed in the vehicle or not properly secured could be flung through the vehicle interior and cause injuries during a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre, or in the event of an accident.

- Secure a mobile telephone and accessories outside the deployment zone of the airbags, or stow them safely.

WARNING

If a mobile telephone or two-way radio that is not connected to an external aerial is used, electromagnetic radiation in the vehicle could exceed limit values. This also applies to external aerials which have not been correctly installed. This can endanger the health of the driver and the vehicle occupants.

- Keep a distance of at least 20 cm (approx. 8 in) between a device's aerial and an active medical implant, e.g. a pacemaker.
- Do not carry an operational device close to or directly above an active medical implant, e.g. in a breast pocket.
- Switch off the device immediately if you suspect it may be interfering with an active medical implant or any other medical device.

Customer information

Declaration of conformity

The corresponding manufacturer hereby declares that the components listed below were compliant with the basic requirements and any other relevant regulations and laws at the time the vehicle was produced.

UKCA (UK Conformity Assessed) Components:

**UK
CA**

The UKCA (UK Conformity Assessed) marking is a UK product marking that is used for certain goods being placed on the market in Great Britain (England, Wales and Scotland).

UK Product Safety and Metrology Regulations

This vehicle has various devices installed that are subject to UKCA product regulations. The following acts as the importer of these devices for the United Kingdom market within the meaning of the Product Safety and Metrology Regulations: Ford Motor Company Limited

Dunton Campus,

Arterial Road,

Laindon, Essex, SS15 6EE

United Kingdom

Radar sensors

Depending on the equipment level, your vehicle may be equipped with assistance systems (e.g. Adaptive Cruise Control) that use radar sensors.

Observe the legal regulations when driving into certain zones where entry of vehicles with radar sensors is prohibited. Pay attention to any relevant traffic signs. If you want to drive into one of these regions, inform yourself in advance whether radar sensors are installed in your vehicle.

WARNING

Sensors are subject to physical system limits. External sources of interference, e.g. from other vehicles, can impair functioning of the sensors and restrict the functions of the assistance systems. If the system does not function as expected, this can lead to accidents and serious or fatal injuries.

- Always pay attention to the traffic situation and the area around the vehicle.
- Ensure that your speed and driving style are always appropriate for the current visibility, weather and road/traffic conditions.

Infotainment system and antennas

The aerials for the Infotainment system are installed at different points in the vehicle:

- In the exterior mirrors.
- On the roof of the vehicle.
- On the inside of the rear window.
- On the inside of the rear side windows.

Aerials on the interior of the windows can be identified by thin wires.

If the vehicle equipment includes aerials installed in the exterior mirrors, subsequent metal chrome-plating of the exterior mirrors, e.g. with chrome-plated design caps, can cause significant interference or loss of the reception and transmission properties of radio, mobile communications and navigation services.

NOTICE

Aerials located on the inside of the windows could be damaged by corrosive or acidic substances or if hard objects rub against the window.

- Never affix stickers over metal wires.
- Never clean the aerials with corrosive or acidic agents.

NOTICE

A retrofitted Infotainment system that is not compatible with the aerial amplifier in-

stalled as standard equipment can damage the aerial amplifier.

- Consult a suitably qualified workshop before retrofitting an Infotainment system.

Component protection

Some electronic components and control units are fitted with component protection as standard, e.g. the Infotainment system.

The component protection permits a suitably qualified workshop to legitimately install or replace components and control units.

The component protection prevents the factory-supplied components from being operated without restrictions outside the vehicle in the following situations:

- Installation in other vehicles, e.g. after theft.
- Operation of components outside the vehicle.

If a text message about component protection appears in the display of the instrument cluster or the screen of the Infotainment system, go to a suitably qualified workshop.

Third-party copyright information

Some of the products installed in the vehicle contain software components which are subject to open source licences.

A list of open source software components, including information on copyright, the relevant open source licence conditions, and the associated licence texts can be found on the following website:

<https://corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html>

The source code for certain open source software components can be requested from the vehicle manufacturer. The manu-

facturer will make the source code available to you in accordance with the relevant licence conditions. You will only be charged the actual costs of provision, such as postage costs. The above-mentioned website contains the necessary information.

Information stickers and plates

Stickers and plates showing important information for vehicle operation are factory-fitted in the bonnet space and on certain vehicle parts.

- Never remove stickers or signs. They must remain legible at all times.
- If vehicle parts labelled with stickers or plates are removed from the vehicle, replacement stickers or plates with the same information must be applied properly to the same location on the new parts by a suitably qualified workshop.

Safety certificate

There is a safety certificate on the door pillar which states that all necessary safety standards and specifications from the transport safety authorities of the particular country were met at the time of production. The month and year of production and the vehicle identification number may also be listed. Observe notes in the owner's manual.

WARNING

Removal of stickers and signs reduces the amount of information about sources of danger and can result in less attention being paid when working on the vehicle. This can lead to serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Never remove stickers or signs or make them illegible.
- Observe legal requirements.
- Observe the owner's manual.

NOTICE

Removal of stickers and signs increases the risk of incorrect operation and can result in damage to the vehicle.

- Never remove stickers or signs or make them illegible.
- Observe legal requirements.
- Carry out servicing work in accordance with the specifications.



Flammable refrigerant.



Ensure correct disposal of all components and never install components removed from end-of-life vehicles or recycled components in the vehicle.

Fluids in the Climate Control system

Refrigerant in the Climate Control system

The sticker in the bonnet space contains information regarding the type and quantity of refrigerant used in the vehicle's Climate Control system. The sticker is located in the front area of the bonnet space → .

Details of the refrigerant used



The Climate Control system contains fluorinated greenhouse gases.

Valid for vehicles with refrigerant R1234yf:

Refrigerant weight	CO ₂ equivalent	Global warming potential
460 g	0.0002 t	0.501

Refrigerant oil in the Climate Control system

The Climate Control system is filled with refrigerant oil. Consult a suitably qualified workshop for information about the type and quantity of the refrigerant oil used → page 407.



Warning: maintenance of the Climate Control system must be performed by qualified personnel.



Type of refrigerant.



Type of refrigerant oil.



See workshop information.



Maintenance of the Climate Control system must be performed by qualified personnel.

DANGER

Maintenance of the Climate Control system by unqualified personnel can cause serious and fatal injuries.

- To service the Climate Control system, contact qualified personnel who are trained according to the nationally required standards, e.g. SAE-standard J2845.
- Observe the service intervals specified by Ford. Ask a suitably qualified workshop.

DANGER

The refrigerant is flammable and can lead to serious and fatal injuries if maintenance is not performed correctly.

- Have the Climate Control system serviced by suitably qualified personnel.
- Keep the vehicle away from naked flames, sparks and other sources of ignition.

DANGER

The refrigerant is pressurised and can explode if heated. This can lead to serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Have the Climate Control system serviced by suitably qualified personnel.
- Keep the vehicle away from naked flames, sparks and other sources of ignition.

DANGER

The refrigerant can form toxic vapours if it comes into contact with hot surfaces. If these are breathed in, this can result in poisoning or even death.

- Have the Climate Control system serviced by suitably qualified personnel.

! NOTICE

Repair or replacement of the evaporator with spare parts from end-of-life vehicles or from recycling sources can result in damage to the Climate Control system.

- Never have repairs on the evaporator carried out with spare parts from end-of-life vehicles or from recycling sources.

Information in accordance with the EU chemicals regulation

We are committed to promoting the responsible manufacturing, handling and use of our products. That is why we support the underlying goals of REACH, a European Union regulation that concerns the Registration, Evaluation, Authorisation & Restriction of Chemicals.

We specifically support Regulation EC 1907/2006 Article 33(1), which relates to Substances of Very High Concern that appear on the current Candidate List for Authorisation.

If these substances are present in a product, it is important to ensure that they are used safely. The regulation is therefore intended to inform consumers about the dangers and help them to take suitable risk management measures.

To find out more about the REACH regulation, search for REACH on the Ford website in your country.

To find the Ford website for your country, visit:

<https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>

Product recycling

Disposal of used batteries

The end user must collect and recycle used batteries separately from household waste. This is indicated by the symbol with the crossed-through waste bin . As the end user, you are required by law to return used batteries.

— In EU member states and other states, device batteries and vehicle batteries can be returned to an authorised dealership or approved return systems.

Your authorised dealership can provide further information on returning and recycling end-of-life vehicles, or you can visit:

<https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>

! WARNING

If batteries containing lithium are damaged, gaseous or liquid substances may escape, posing a significant risk to health and the environment. A short circuit of the terminals can also cause a fire or explosion. This can result in serious or fatal injuries.

- Handle batteries containing lithium with special care.
- Never heat batteries containing lithium.
- Never damage batteries containing lithium.
- Never short circuit the battery terminals.



Batteries containing heavy metals are marked with the chemical symbols HG (mercury), Cd (cadmium) and/or Pb (lead). Heavy metals can be harmful to human and animal health and tend to accumulate in the environment.

- You must ensure the separate collection and proper return of used batteries to prevent this from happening.

Old electrical/electronic devices

The vehicle contains electrical/electronic devices such as remote controls. The electrical/electronic devices are marked with the crossed-out bin symbol .

Used devices marked with this symbol must be collected and disposed of separately from your normal domestic waste. You can hand in these electrical/electronic devices at local collection points or to any approved national return systems.

In Germany, retailers with a sales area of at least 400 m² for electrical devices and food retailers with a total sales area of at least 800 m² who offer new electrical devi-

ces are obliged to take back these devices free of charge. When purchasing a new device, the end user may return an equivalent old device. The same also applies for delivery to private households and sale via the internet. Small old devices can be returned to retailers even if no new device is purchased. Your authorised dealership is also obliged to take back up to three old devices with an edge length of less than 25 cm free of charge.

- Batteries, rechargeable batteries or lamps that are not a fixed part of the device must be removed first and disposed of accordingly.
- Stored personal data must be deleted before disposal of the old devices.

Your authorised dealership can provide further information on waste avoidance, returning and recycling end-of-life vehicles, or you can visit:

<https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>

Recycling information for France



Fig. 238 Recycling information for France.

Observe the recycling information → Fig. 238, which includes the following objects:

- Vehicle key.
- Remote control for the auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation.
- Tyre Pressure Monitoring System.
- Keycard for Phone as a Key.
- SD card.
- Compressor.
- Torch.
- Portable warning lamp.



Fig. 239 Recycling information for France.



Fig. 240 Recycling information for France.

Observe the recycling information for accompanying documentation and packaging or bags → Fig. 239 and → Fig. 240. This recycling information includes the following objects:

- Owner's Manual.
- High-visibility waistcoat.

The Triman logo and Info-tri symbol contain important sorting information for the end user.

Returning and scrapping end-of-life vehicles

Recycling end-of-life vehicles

At the end of its service life, your vehicle should be handed in for environmentally responsible recycling or disposal. For this reason, the last keepers of vehicles in the EU and many other countries are required by law to take their vehicle to an approved collection point, vehicle return centre or authorised dismantling facility.

We already have an arrangement for end-of-life vehicles. You can return your vehicle at a wide range of collection points in all EU states and in many other countries. If you satisfy the national legal requirements, you can return your end-of-life vehicle free of charge within the EU.

The vehicle return centre issues a recycling certificate which serves as proof that the end-of-life vehicle has been recycled properly.

Further information about collection points is available from your authorised dealer.

Scrapping

The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or its individual components, e.g. from the airbag system and belt tensioners, are scrapped. Qualified workshops are familiar with these requirements.

Information on radio systems

Simplified declaration of conformity

EU

Your vehicle is equipped with a range of radio equipment. The manufacturers of this radio equipment declare that this radio equipment is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU where required by law.

The full text of the EU declarations of conformity is available at the following internet address:

<https://www.wirelessconformity.ford.com>

United Kingdom

Your vehicle is equipped with a range of radio equipment. The manufacturers of this radio equipment declare that this equipment is in compliance with the relevant legal requirements.

The full text of the declarations of conformity is available from the following website:

<https://www.wirelessconformity.ford.com>

Importeur

Ford Motor Company Limited
Dunton Campus,
Arterial Road,
Laindon, Essex, SS15 6EE
United Kingdom

Turkey

Your vehicle is equipped with a range of radio equipment. The manufacturers of this radio equipment declare that this radio equipment is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU where required by law.

The full text of the declarations of conformity is available from the following website:

<https://www.wirelessconformity.ford.com>

Importeur

Ford Otomotiv Sanayi A.Ş.

◀ Gölcük Denizevler Mah. Ali Uçar Cad. No:53
41650 Gölcük / Kocaeli

Ukraine

Your vehicle is equipped with a range of radio equipment. The manufacturers of this radio equipment declare that this radio equipment is in compliance with Directive TR-355 where required by law.

The full text of the declarations of conformity is available from the following website:

<https://www.wirelessconformity.ford.com>

Importer

Winner Imports Ukraine
Official Ford importer in Ukraine
Kapitanovka, 5-A,

Dachnaya Str.

Kiev region, 08112, Ukraine



Radio systems marked with this symbol must be collected and disposed of separately from your normal domestic waste. You can hand them in at a local waste management company or return them as part of a national take-back system → page 413, *Product recycling*.



Identification for restricted use of certain hazardous substances in electrical and electronic equipment in accordance with the RoHS directive.

Information on radio equipment

The tables below show the radio equipment used, the frequency bands on which it is operated, the maximum transmission power of the equipment, and the associated manufacturers. Each table contains one component assembly. The manufacturer's details, the frequency bands and maximum transmitting powers are assigned a reference number and shown in separate tables.

The following radio systems are not available in every market and not in every vehicle. <

Connection to the external aerial

Component	Designation/ Product Type Designation EU/UK	Designation/ Product Type Designation Ukraine	Frequency + transmitter power	Manufacturer
5G compenser EU	5G-NRC-EU		CG	36
LTE Compenser	LTE-MBC-EU2	LTE-MBC-EU2	AA	14
Transceiver module	CM01TN-VWW	CM01TN-VWW	BN	26
Transceiver module	CM01TN-VWW		CB	26
Transceiver module	CM01TN-VWW additional model names: CM01XN-VWE		CB	26

Aerials

Component	Designation/ Product Type Designation EU/UK	Designation/ Product Type Designation Ukraine	Frequency + transmitter power	Manufacturer
Roof aerial base for taxi 2m/70cm, GPS, UMTS	AM/FM, DAB+ DVBT, GPS, FAKRAnBHC 3789.01		AI	01
Exterior mirror aerial system AM, FM	920639A	920639A	AD	02
Exterior mirror aerial system AM, FM, DAB	920639A	920639A	AF	02
Exterior mirror aerial system FM	920639A	920639A	AB	02

Component	Designation/ Product Type Designation EU/UK	Designation/ Product Type Designation Ukraine	Frequency + transmitter power	Manufacturer
Exterior mirror aerial system FM, DAB	920639A	920639A	AC	02
Aerial module, exterior mirror GNSS	920336A	920336A	AH	02
Exterior mirror aerial, navigation [short bracket] GNSS	7E0.035.510	7E0.035.510	AH	23
Exterior mirror aerial, navigation [long bracket] GNSS	7E0.035.510.A	7E0.035.510.A	AH	23
Roof short-rod aerial base AM, FM	Receiving antenna amplifier AM/FM, DAB, LTE,NAV 6C0.035.501.Q/ 6C0.035.501.A	7C0.035.501	AD	22
Roof short-rod aerial base AM, FM, LTE, GNSS	Receiving antenna amplifier AM/FM, DAB, LTE,NAV 6C0.035.501.Q/ 6C0.035.501.A	7C0.035.501.F	AE	22
Roof short-rod aerial base AM, FM, LTE, DAB, GNSS	Receiving antenna amplifier AM/FM, DAB, LTE,NAV 6C0.035.501.Q/ 6C0.035.501.A	7C0.035.501.G	AG	22
Aerial module, exterior mirror [standard] FM	920481A	920481A	AB	02
Aerial module, exterior mirror [bracket] FM	920481A	920481A	AB	02
Aerial module, exterior mirror [standard] GNSS	920336A	920336A	AH	02
Aerial module, exterior mirror [bracket] GNSS	920336A	920336A	AH	02
Aerial amplifier, exterior mirror AM, FM	920301A	920301A	AD	02
Aerial amplifier, exterior mirror FM	920301A	920301A	AB	02
Aerial amplifier, exterior mirror FM, DAB	920304A	920304A	AC	02
Exterior mirror aerial system [short bracket] AM, FM	920611A	920611A	AD	02
Exterior mirror aerial system [short bracket] FM	920611A	920611A	AB	02

Component	Designation/ Product Type Designation EU/UK	Designation/ Product Type Designation Ukraine	Frequency + transmitter power	Manufacturer
Exterior mirror aerial system [short bracket] FM, DAB	920611A	920611A	AC	02
Exterior mirror aerial system [long bracket] AM, FM	920611A	920611A	AD	02
Exterior mirror aerial system [long bracket] FM	920611A	920611A	AB	02
Exterior mirror aerial system [long bracket] FM, DAB	920611A	920611A	AC	02
Exterior mirror aerial system FM1	920639A	920639A	AB	02
Exterior mirror aerial system FM1, DAB2	920639A	920639A	AC	02
Roof aerial LTE, GNSS	Product name: 5WA.035.507.A Type: 5WA.035.507.A	5WA.035.507.A	AH	04
Roof aerial LTE, GNSS, Telestart	Product name: 5WA.035.507.B Type: 5WA.035.507.A	5WA.035.507.B	AH	04
Impedance converter FM	FAM012		AB	03
Impedance converter FM1	7T0.035.577.C (FAM012)		AB	03
Impedance converter FM2	7T0.035.577.A (FAM012)		AB	03
Impedance converter FM, DAB	FAM012		AC	03
Impedance converter FM2, DAB1	7T0.035.577.B (FAM012)		AC	03
Impedance converter FM1, DAB2	7T0.035.577.D (FAM012)		AC	03
Roof aerial LTE, GNSS, Telestart	7T0.035.507.B (FAM016)		AH	03
Roof aerial LTE, GNSS, Telestart, Wi-Fi p	7T0.035.507.F (FAM016)		AH	03
Roof aerial LTE, GNSS	7T0.035.507.A (FAM016)		AH	03
Roof aerial LTE, GNSS, Wi-Fi p	7T0.035.507.E (FAM016)		AH	03
Wi-Fi p auxiliary aerial	7T0.035.510 (FAM027)		BM	03
Aerial TEL+BLTE+Wi-Fi+GNSS	5WA.035.507.E		BZ	04
Aerial, C2C auxiliary aerial	CSA-1		CA	04

Component	Designation/ Product Type Designation EU/UK	Designation/ Product Type Designation Ukraine	Frequency + transmitting power	Manufacturer
DSRC aerial	Quad DSRC Detached Antenna		BF	25
DSRC aerial	DSRC		CM	37
DSRC module	DSRC CAN Module/ EFAS-4 DU (200046-8) DSRC CAN Module/ EFAS-4 DU (200046-9)		BF	25
Satellite system	CAP 750 GPS (BN: 2031005)		CU	20

Vehicle key

Component	Designation/ Product Type Designation EU/UK	Designation/ Product Type Designation Ukraine	Frequency + transmitting power	Manufacturer
Vehicle key FKS12	FS125C	FS125C	BG	05
Vehicle key FKS12	FS12P	FS12P	BG	05
Vehicle key FS125C5	FS125C5		CR	05
Vehicle key FS191S	FS191S	FS191S	BH	05
Vehicle key FS19S	FS19S		BQ	05
Vehicle key FS19R	FS19R		CH	05
Vehicle key FS1912S	FS1912S		CT	05

Infotainment systems

Component	Designation/ Product Type Designation EU/UK	Designation/ Product Type Designation Ukraine	Frequency + transmitting power	Manufacturer
MIB3 EI	MIB3E_MQB37w_BT	Panasonic MIB3E_MQB37w_BT	AO	06
MIB3 EI GP	MIB3 EI GP MQBevo		AP	07
MIB3 OI EU1 MQB	MIB3 OI	MIB3 OI	AP	07
MIB3 OI EU1 MQB	MIB3 OI	MIB3 OI	AP	08
MIB3 OI EU2 MQB	MIB3 OI	MIB3 OI	AP	07
MIB3 OI EU2 MQB	MIB3 OI	MIB3 OI	AP	08
MIB3 OI RdW1 MQB	MIB3 OI	MIB3 OI	AP	07
MIB3 OI RdW2 MQB	MIB3 OI	MIB3 OI	AP	07

Component	Designation/ Product Type Designation EU/UK	Designation/ Product Type Designation Ukraine	Frequency + transfer mit power	Manufacturer
MIB3 OI RdW2 MQB	MIB3 OI	MIB3 OI	AP	08
MIB3 OI RdW2 DAB MQB	MIB3 OI	MIB3 OI	AP	07
MIB3 OI EU1 37W	MIB3 OI	MIB3 OI	AP	08
MIB3 OI EU2 37W	MIB3 OI	MIB3 OI	AP	08
MIB3 OI RdW1 37W	MIB3 OI	MIB3 OI	AP	08
MIB3 OI RdW2 37W	MIB3 OI	MIB3 OI	AP	08
MIB3 OI RdW2 DAB 37W	MIB3 OI	MIB3 OI	AP	08
MIB3 OI GP	MIB3GP	MIB3GP	AP	08
ICAS3 (from UNECE)	MEB ICAS3		BY	32

Wireless seat belt warning system

Component	Designation/ Product Type Designation EU/UK	Designation/ Product Type Designation Ukraine	Frequency + transfer mit power	Manufacturer
wSBR F-SG (wireless Seat Belt Reminder vehicle-side control unit)	wSBR F-SG (wireless Seat Belt Reminder - car unit)	wSBR F-SG (wireless Seat Belt Reminder - car unit)	AQ	24
wSBR S-SG (wireless Seat Belt Reminder seat-side control unit)	wSBR S-SG (wireless Seat Belt Reminder - seat unit)	wSBR S-SG (wireless Seat Belt Reminder - seat unit)	AQ	24

Wireless charging function

Component	Designation/ Product Type Designation EU/UK	Designation/ Product Type Designation Ukraine	Frequency + transfer mit power	Manufacturer
Coupling aerial, 2nd generation	WCH-185	WCH-185	AR	14
5W Wireless Charging Module TX Controller	WPC003-1 WPC003-5	WPC003-1 WPC003-5	CE	33
15W Wireless Charging Module mobile phone interface	SCB		AM	30

Keyless Entry

Component	Designation/ Product Type Designation EU/UK	Designation/ Product Type Designation Ukraine	Frequency + trans mit power	Manufacturer
Kessy IO Box Basic	013854	013854	AS	05
Kessy IO Box High	013854	013854	AS	05
RSAD Box	RSB19	RSB19	AT	05

Instrument cluster / electronic immobiliser

Component	Designation/ Product Type Designation EU/UK	Designation/ Product Type Designation Ukraine	Frequency + trans mit power	Manufacturer
Instrument cluster, analogue, medium	VW MQBAB2020 Instrument Cluster and Immobilizer System	Medium 5c	BS	16
Instrument cluster, Lowline	"Immobilizer integrated in dashboard module instrument cluster / Wegfahrsperr im Schalttafeleinsatz Kombi-Instrument"	17101055	BV	17
Instrument cluster, Highline	"Immobilizer integrated in dashboard module instrument cluster / Wegfahrsperr im Schalttafeleinsatz Kombi-Instrument"	17101056	BV	17
Instrument cluster, Premiumline	"Immobilizer integrated in dashboard module instrument cluster / Wegfahrsperr im Schalttafeleinsatz Kombi-Instrument"	17101057	BV	17
Instrument cluster, Premiumline	"Immobilizer integrated in dashboard module instrument cluster / Wegfahrsperr im Schalttafeleinsatz Kombi-Instrument"	17101055	BV	17
Instrument cluster, Premiumline	"Immobilizer integrated in dashboard module instrument cluster / Wegfahrsperr im Schalttafeleinsatz Kombi-Instrument"	17101056	BV	17

Component	Designation/ Product Type Designation EU/UK	Designation/ Product Type Designation Ukraine	Frequency + trans mit power	Manufacturer
Instrument cluster, FPK-Entry	"Immobilizer integrated in dashboard module instrument cluster / Wegfahrsperr im Schalttafeleinsatz Kombi-Instrument"	17101002	BU	17
Instrument cluster, FPK-Basic	Vehicle Instrument Cluster with 125kHz Immobilizer circuit	FPK10-5C	CJ	35
Instrument cluster, FPK-Basic	VW MQBAB2020 Instrument Cluster and Immobilizer System		CJ	35
Instrument cluster, analogue, medium	"Immobilizer integrated in dashboard module instrument cluster / Wegfahrsperr im Schalttafeleinsatz Kombi-Instrument"	18020532	BT	17
Instrument cluster, analogue, medium	"Immobilizer integrated in dashboard module instrument cluster / Wegfahrsperr im Schalttafeleinsatz Kombi-Instrument"		BT	17
Instrument cluster, colour, medium	"Immobilizer integrated in dashboard module instrument cluster / Wegfahrsperr im Schalttafeleinsatz Kombi-Instrument"	18100931	BT	17
Instrument cluster, colour, medium	"Immobilizer integrated in dashboard module instrument cluster / Wegfahrsperr im Schalttafeleinsatz Kombi-Instrument"		BT	17
Instrument cluster, analogue, medium without chrome ring	"Immobilizer integrated in dashboard module instrument cluster / Wegfahrsperr im Schalttafeleinsatz Kombi-Instrument"	18020532	BT	17
Instrument cluster, analogue, medium without chrome ring	"Immobilizer integrated in dashboard module instrument cluster / Wegfahrsperr im Schalttafeleinsatz Kombi-Instrument"		BT	17

Component	Designation/ Product Type Designation EU/UK	Designation/ Product Type Designation Ukraine	Frequency + transfer mit power	Manufacturer
i.ID Cluster	LCW05-VWE5 LCW05-VWE1 LCW05-SEE5		CC	08
Tachograph (DTCO) with associated DSRC module	EFAS 4.10		BI	27
DTCO4.1	DTCO 1381 Rel.4.1		CF	34
TCO Smart2	SMART2 SE5000-8.1 tachograph		BW	37

Mobile online services

Component	Designation/ Product Type Designation EU/UK	Designation/ Product Type Designation Ukraine	Frequency + transfer mit power	Manufacturer
Communication box OCU3 (online services "Security & Service")	Telematics TLVHM3IU-E, TLAHW3IU-E, TLVHM3IU-R, TLAHW3IU-R	Telematics TLVHM3IU-E, TLAHW3IU-E, TLVHM3IU-R, TLAHW3IU-R	AY	26
Communication box OCU3 (online services "Security & Service")	Telematics TLVHW3IU-E, TLVHW3IU-R, TLVHE4IU-E	Telematics TLVHW3IU-E, TLVHW3IU-R, TLVHE4IU-E	BR	26
Communication box OCU3 (online services "Security & Service")	Telematics TLVLM3IU-E, TLVLM3IU-R	Telematics TLVLM3IU-E	CD	26
Communication box OCU3 UNECE (online services "Security & Service")	Telematics TLVUW3IU-E	TLVUW3IU-E	CN	26
Communication box OCU3 UNECE (online services "Security & Service")	Telematics TLVUW3IU-W		CQ	26
Communication box OCU4 (online services "Security & Service")	Telematics TLVHW3IU-E, TLVHW3IU-R, TLVHE4IU-E		BR	26
Communication box OCU4 UNECE (online services "Security & Service")	Telematics TLVUE4IU-E		CN	26

Component	Designation/ Product Type Designation EU/UK	Designation/ Product Type Designation Ukraine	Frequency + transmitter power	Manufacturer
Communication box OCU4 UNECE (online services "Security & Service")	Telematics TLVUE4IU-W		CQ	26



Radar sensors for assist systems

Component	Designation/ Product Type Designation EU/UK	Designation/ Product Type Designation Ukraine	Frequency + transmitter power	Manufacturer
Lane change system Entry Gen.3	RS4	RS4	AZ	05
Lane change system Entry Gen.1	BSD3.0	BSD3.0	AZ	05
Front radar control unit (mid-range radar)	ARS4-B	ARS4-B	BA	11
Front radar control unit (mid-range radar)	FR5CPEC	FR5CPEC	BB	21
Front radar control unit (mid-range radar)	ARS5-B	ARS5-B	BX	11
Front radar control unit (mid-range radar)	F5CP42	F5CP42	BB	21
Nanoradar	RS5.3	RS5.3	CS	05
Nanoradar	RS5.5	RS5.5	CS	05



Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

Component	Designation/ Product Type Designation EU/UK	Designation/ Product Type Designation Ukraine	Frequency + transmitter power	Manufacturer
TPMS control unit	TMSE6A4	TMSE6A4	CO	18
Wheel electronics assembly	TSSRE4A	TSSRE4A	CP	18



Auxiliary heater (transmitter/receiver unit)

Component	Designation/ Product Type Designation EU/UK	Designation/ Product Type Designation Ukraine	Frequency + transmitter power	Manufacturer
Remote control receiver for auxiliary heater	Funkempfänger STH Model Name: D208L VW		AJ	12
Remote control receiver for auxiliary heater	Funkempfänger STH		BP	30
Component	Designation/ Product Type Designation EU/UK	Designation/ Product Type Designation Ukraine	Frequency + transmitter power	Manufacturer
Hand transmitter, auxiliary heater	Sender STH Model Name: RTSH		AJ	12
Hand transmitter, auxiliary heater	Funkfernbedienung		BP	30

Central control unit

Component	Designation/ Product Type Designation EU/UK	Designation/ Product Type Designation Ukraine	Frequency + transmitter power	Manufacturer
BCM37w (Body Control Module) Jap	BCM MQB37W		CX	31
BCM37w (Body Control Module) Jap	BCM MQB37W		CX	39
BCM37w (Body Control Module) Med	BCM MQB37W	MQB37W	BO	39
BCM37w (Body Control Module) Med+	BCM MQB37W	MQB37W	BO	39
BCM37w (Body Control Module) Max	BCM MQB37W	MQB37W	BO	39
BCM37w (Body Control Module) Jap	BR22		BO	31
BCM37w (Body Control Module) Max	BR22		BO	31
BCM37w (Body Control Module) Med	BR22		BO	31
BCM37w (Body Control Module) Med+	BR22		BO	31
BR22 (Body Control Module) Jap	BR22		BO	31

Component	Designation/ Product Type Designation EU/UK	Designation/ Product Type Designation Ukraine	Frequency + transmitter power	Manufacturer
BR22 (Body Control Module) Max	BR22		BO	31
BR22 (Body Control Module) Med	BR22		BO	31
BR22 (Body Control Module) Med+	BR22		BO	31
BCM37H (Body Control Module)	BCM PQ37H	5WK50254	AK	13
BCM MQB27	BCM MQB27	5WK50254	AK	13
KFG Max	KFG: Max		BL	09
KFG 2 Max	KFG: Max		CK	09
SAM	BCM MQB37W	MQB37W	AK	13
SAM	BCM MQB37W	MQB37W	AK	39
SAM	BCM MQB37WBL (ab 2023)		CY	13



Frequency bands and maximum transmission power

If not otherwise stated, the specifications apply to all vehicles that are equipped with the respective radio equipment.

In certain countries, the activation of, or permission to use, radio technology may be restricted, not possible, or only possible when additional requirements have been fulfilled.

	Referenced radio equipment (e.g. AA) → page 415.
	Frequency band.
	Maximum transmission power.
μW	Microwatt.
mW	Milliwatt.
W	Watt.
dBm	Decibel-milliwatt.

		
AA	GSM900: (uplink: 880 MHz – 915 MHz/downlink: 925 MHz – 960 MHz) GSM1800: (uplink: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz/downlink: 1805 MHz – 1880 MHz) WCDMA FDDI: (uplink: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz/downlink: 2110 MHz – 2170 MHz) WCDMA FDDIII: (uplink: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz/downlink: 1805 MHz – 1880 MHz) WCDMA FDDVIII: (uplink: 880 MHz – 915 MHz/downlink: 925 MHz – 960 MHz) LTE FDDI: (uplink: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz/downlink: 2110 MHz – 2170 MHz) LTE FDD3: (uplink: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz/downlink: 1805 MHz – 1880 MHz) LTE FDD7: (uplink: 2500 MHz – 2570 MHz/downlink: 2620 MHz – 2690 MHz) LTE FDD8: (uplink: 880 MHz – 915 MHz/downlink: 925 MHz – 960 MHz) LTE FDD20: (uplink: 832 MHz – 862 MHz/downlink: 791 MHz – 821 MHz)	GSM 900: 33 dBm (2 W) GSM1800: 30 dBm (1 W) UMTS: 21 dBm (0.125 W) LTE: 23 dBm (0.2 W)
AB	87 MHz – 108 MHz	reception only
AC	87 MHz – 108 MHz 174 MHz – 240 MHz	reception only
AD	520 kHz – 1710 kHz 87 MHz – 108 MHz	reception only
AE	520 kHz – 1710 kHz 87 MHz – 108 MHz 1570 MHz – 1614 MHz	reception only
AF	520 kHz – 1710 kHz 87 MHz – 108 MHz 174 MHz – 240 MHz	reception only
AG	520 kHz – 1710 kHz 87 MHz – 108 MHz 174 MHz – 240 MHz 1570 MHz – 1614 MHz	reception only
AH	1570 MHz – 1614 MHz	reception only
AI	1575.42 MHz	reception only
AJ	868.70 MHz – 869.20 MHz (Band N)	14 dBm (25 mW)
AK	434 MHz	reception only
AL	WIFI (2.4 GHz) Bluetooth: 2.4 GHz	Wi-Fi: 19.14 dBm Bluetooth: 7.93 dBm
AM	105 kHz – 138 kHz	15 W
AN	Bluetooth®: 2402 MHz – 2480 MHz FM: 87.5 MHz – 108 MHz AM: 526.5 kHz – 1606.5 kHz	4.3 dBm
AO	Bluetooth®: 2402 MHz – 2480 MHz	2.5 mW

	 	
AP	Bluetooth®: 2402 MHz – 2480 MHz Wi-Fi 2.4 GHz: 2410 MHz – 2480 MHz Wi-Fi 5 GHz: 5150 MHz – 5250 MHz and 5725 MHz – 5850 MHz	Bluetooth®: -2.43 dBm (0.57 mW) EIRP Wi-Fi 2.4 GHz: 5.26 dBm (3.36 mW) EIRP Wi-Fi 5 GHz: -3.25 dBm (0.47 mW) EIRP and -2.68 dBm (0.54 mW) EIRP
AQ	Bluetooth® LE: 2400 MHz – 2483.5 MHz	- 9.8 dBm
AR	105 kHz – 115 kHz	105 kHz – 115 kHz: 6 W 111 kHz: 42 dBµA/m
AS	125 kHz	The magnetic field strength: IMMO mode is 19.48 dBµA/m LF Scan mode is 17.81 dBµA/m
AT	6.52 GHz 7.04 GHz 7.56 GHz	Highest Peak Emission Power at 6.52 GHz: -9.1 dBm at 7.04 GHz: -7.8 dBm at 7.56 GHz: -6.2 dBm
AU	125 kHz	82.05 dBµV/m @3 m ±5%
AV	125 kHz	-2.5 dBuV/m @ 3 m
AW	125 kHz	< 20 mW
AX	125 kHz	42 dBµA/m
AY	WCDMA Band 1: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz WCDMA Band 3: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz WCDMA Band 8: 880 MHz – 915 MHz LTE Band 1: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz LTE Band 3: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz LTE Band 7: 2500 MHz – 2570 MHz LTE Band 8: 880 MHz – 915 MHz LTE Band 20: 832 MHz – 862 MHz LTE Band 28A: 703 MHz – 718 MHz LTE Band 32: 1452 MHz – 1496 MHz GSM 900: 880 MHz – 915 MHz DCS 1800: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz GNSS: 1559 MHz – 1610 MHz	WCDMA Band 1: 22.51 dBm WCDMA Band 3: 22.88 dBm WCDMA Band 8: 23.32 dBm LTE Band 1: 22.04 dBm LTE Band 3: 21.72 dBm LTE Band 7: 21.59 dBm LTE Band 8: 21.83 dBm LTE Band 20: 22.44 dBm LTE Band 28A: 21.99 dBm LTE Band 32: - GSM 900: 31.93 dBm DCS 1800: 29.95 dBm GNSS: -
AZ	24050 MHz – 24250 MHz	< +20 dbmW peak
BA	76.0 GHz – 77.0 GHz	3.16 W (35 dBm RMS EIRP)
BB	76.0 GHz – 77.0 GHz	31.7 dBm (peak), 23.4 dBm (RMS)
BC	Centre frequency Ch5: 6489.6 MHz Ch6: 6988.8 MHz Ch8: 7488.0 MHz Ch9: 7987.2 MHz Occupied Bandwidth: >500 MHz	Maximum mean EIRP spectral density: -41.3 dBm/MHz Maximum output power: -0.75 dBm EIRP (peak)
BD	Centre frequency Ch5: 6489.6 MHz Ch6: 6988.8 MHz Ch8: 7488.0 MHz Ch9: 7987.2 MHz Occupied Bandwidth: >500MHz BLE: 2402 – 2480 MHz (40 channels)	UWB: Maximum mean EIRP spectral density: -41.3 dBm/MHz Maximum output power: -0.75 dBm EIRP (peak) BLE: 9.9 dBm (E.I.R.P)

		
BE	WiFi IEEE 802.11 b/g/n: 2412 MHz – 2472 MHz GSM/GPRS/E GPRS 900: 880.2 MHz – 914.8 MHz GSM/GPRS/E GPRS 1800: 1710.2 MHz – 1784.8 MHz UMTS FDDI: 1922.4 MHz – 1977.6 MHz UMTS FDDVIII: 882.4 MHz – 912.6 MHz LTE FDD1: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz LTE FDD3: 1710 MHz – 1784.9 MHz LTE FDD7: 2500 MHz – 2569.9 MHz LTE FDD8: 880 MHz – 914.9 MHz LTE FDD20: 832 MHz – 861.9 MHz	WiFi IEEE 802.11 b/g/n: 18.4 dBm GSM/GPRS/E GPRS 900: 37.64 dBm GSM/GPRS/E GPRS 1800: 37.64 dBm UMTS FDDI: 27.84 dBm UMTS FDDVIII: 27.84 dBm LTE FDD1: 27.84 dBm LTE FDD3: 27.84 dBm LTE FDD7: 27.84 dBm LTE FDD8: 27.84 dBm LTE FDD20: 27.84 dBm
BF	5795 MHz – 5815 MHz (DSRC)	-14 dBm EIRP
BG	125 kHz 433.05 MHz – 434.79 MHz	125 kHz: reception only 433.05 MHz – 434.79 MHz: 0,5 mW [ERP]/-3 dBm [ERP]
BH	125 kHz 433.05 MHz – 434.79 MHz	125 kHz: reception only 433.05 MHz – 434.79 MHz: 0,1 mW [ERP]/-10 dBm [ERP]
BI	1575.42 MHz +/- 1.023 MHz (GPS/Galileo) 1602.00 MHz +/- 5.00 MHz (Glonass)	reception only
BJ	Bluetooth®: 2402 MHz – 2480 MHz Wi-Fi 2.4 GHz: 2410 MHz – 2480 MHz	Bluetooth®: 2.5 mW Wi-Fi: 100 mW
BK	Bluetooth®: 2402 MHz – 2480 MHz FM: 87.5 MHz – 108 MHz AM: 526.5 kHz – 1606.5 kHz DAB: 174 MHz – 240 MHz	4.3 dBm
BL	Bluetooth®: 2402 MHz – 2480 MHz Wi-Fi 2.4 GHz: 2412 MHz – 2472 MHz	Bluetooth®: 5 dBm (Max) Transceiver output: 3 dBm Wi-Fi: 20 dBm (max) Transceiver output: 18 dBm
BM	5.85 GHz – 5.925 GHz	24 dBm
BN	5.9 GHz	2 W
BO	Channel A: 433.46 MHz Channel B: 433.92 MHz Channel C: 434.36 MHz	10 dBm
BP	868.7 MHz – 869.2 MHz	10 dBm (10 mW)
BQ	125 kHz 433.05 MHz – 434.79 MHz 6.52 GHz 7.04 GHz 7.56 GHz	125 kHz: reception only 433.05 MHz – 434.79 MHz: 0,1 mW [ERP]/-10 dBm [ERP] 6.52 GHz, 7.04 GHz, 7.56 GHz: Peak Power: 1.0 mW [EIRP] / 0 dBm [EIRP], Mean Power Spectral Density: -41.3 dBm/MHz [EIRP]

	 	
BR	WCDMA Band 1: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz WCDMA Band 3: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz WCDMA Band 8: 880 MHz – 915 MHz LTE Band 1: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz LTE Band 3: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz LTE Band 7: 2500 MHz – 2570 MHz LTE Band 8: 880 MHz – 915 MHz LTE Band 20: 832 MHz – 862 MHz LTE Band 28A: 703 MHz – 718 MHz LTE Band 32: 1452 MHz – 1496 MHz GSM 900: 880 MHz – 915 MHz DCS 1800: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz GNSS: 1559 MHz – 1610 MHz	WCDMA Band 1: 22.64 dBm WCDMA Band 3: 22.89 dBm WCDMA Band 8: 23.35 dBm LTE Band 1: 22.15 dBm LTE Band 3: 21.82 dBm LTE Band 7: 21.63 dBm LTE Band 8: 21.98 dBm LTE Band 20: 22.47 dBm LTE Band 28A: 22.03 dBm LTE Band 32: - GSM 900: 31.99 dBm DCS 1800: 29.98 dBm GNSS: -
BS	125 kHz	30.55 dBµA/m (@ 3 m)
BT	125.3 kHz	-10.46 dBµA/m (@ 10 m)
BU	124.9 kHz	-10.6 dBµA/m (@ 10 m)
BV	125 kHz	-12.25 dBµA/m (@ 10 m)
BW	1560 MHz – 1610 MHz (GNSS)	reception only
BX	76.0 GHz – 77.0 GHz	2.0 W (33 dBm RMS EIRP)
BY	Bluetooth®: 2402 – 2480 MHz Wi-Fi 2.4: 2412 – 2472 MHz Wi-Fi 5: 5150 – 5250 MHz, 5725 – 5850 MHz VHF II: 87.5 – 108 MHz VHF III: 174 – 240 MHz	Bluetooth®: max. 1.20 dBm Wi-Fi 2.4: max. 16.40 dBm Wi-Fi 5.2: max. 13.46 dBm Wi-Fi 5.2: max. 13.77 dBm
BZ	GNSS: 1570 MHz – 1614 MHz Wi-Fi p: 5.85 GHz – 5.925 GHz	GNSS: reception only Wi-Fi p: 20 dBm
CA	5.85 GHz – 5.925 GHz	20 dBm
CB	5.9 GHz (802.11p)	Roof aerial: 20±3 dBm Front aerial: -16±3 dBm
CC	125 kHz ± 10 kHz	5.4 dBµA/m
CD	WCDMA Band 1: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz WCDMA Band 3: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz WCDMA Band 8: 880 MHz – 915 MHz LTE Band 1: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz LTE Band 3: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz LTE Band 7: 2500 MHz – 2570 MHz LTE Band 8: 880 MHz – 915 MHz LTE Band 20: 832 MHz – 862 MHz LTE Band 28A: 703 MHz – 718 MHz GSM 900: 880 MHz – 915 MHz DCS 1800: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz GNSS: 1559 MHz – 1610 MHz	WCDMA Band 1: 22.47 dBm WCDMA Band 3: 22.81 dBm WCDMA Band 8: 23.31 dBm LTE Band 1: 22.02 dBm LTE Band 3: 21.68 dBm LTE Band 7: 21.54 dBm LTE Band 8: 21.8 dBm LTE Band 20: 22.37 dBm LTE Band 28A: 21.94 dBm GSM 900: 31.91 dBm DCS 1800: 29.93 dBm GNSS: -
CE	110 kHz ± 5 kHz	5 W 93.05 dBµA/m @ 12 cm

CG	LTE FDD1 (uplink: 1920 – 1980 MHz/downlink: 2110 – 2170 MHz) LTE FDD3 (uplink: 1710 – 1785 MHz/downlink: 1805 – 1880 MHz) LTE FDD8 (uplink: 880 – 915 MHz/downlink: 925 – 960 MHz) LTE FDD20 (uplink: 832 – 862 MHz/downlink: 791 – 821 MHz) NR FDD1 (uplink: 1920 – 1980 MHz/downlink: 2110 – 2170 MHz) NR FDD3 (uplink: 1710 – 1785 MHz/downlink: 1805 – 1880 MHz) NR FDD8 (uplink: 880 – 915 MHz/downlink: 925 – 960 MHz) NR FDD20 (uplink: 832 – 862 MHz/downlink: 791 – 821 MHz) NR TDD78 (uplink: 3400 – 3800 MHz)/downlink: 3400 – 3800 MHz)	Maximum Radio-Frequency Power: 5G: 23 dBm/0.2 W NR: 23 dBm/0.2 W
CH	125 kHz 433.05 MHz – 434.79 MHz 6988.8 MHz, 7488.0 MHz	125 kHz: reception only 433.05 MHz – 434.79 MHz: 0.1 mW [ERP]/-10 dBm [ERP] 6988.8 MHz, 7488.0 MHz: Peak Power: 1.0 mW [EIRP] / 0 dBm [EIRP], Mean Power Spectral Density: -41.3 dBm/MHz [EIRP]
CJ	125 kHz	97.2 dBμA/m (@ 3 m)
CK	Bluetooth®: 2402 MHz – 2480 MHz	11.5 dBm
CL	76.0 GHz – 77.0 GHz	30.49 dBm (peak), 21.4 dBm (RMS)
CM	5797.5 MHz – 5812.5 MHz (DRSC)	-14 dBm EIRP
CN	WCDMA Band 1: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz WCDMA Band 3: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz WCDMA Band 8: 880 MHz – 915 MHz LTE Band 1: 1920 MHz – 1980 MHz LTE Band 3: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz LTE Band 7: 2500 MHz – 2570 MHz LTE Band 8: 880 MHz – 915 MHz LTE Band 20: 832 MHz – 862 MHz LTE Band 28: 703 MHz – 748 MHz LTE Band 32: 1452 MHz – 1492 MHz GSM 900: 880 MHz – 915 MHz DCS 1800: 1710 MHz – 1785 MHz GNSS: 1559 MHz – 1610 MHz	WCDMA Band 1: 23.66 dBm WCDMA Band 3: 23.61 dBm WCDMA Band 8: 23.15 dBm LTE Band 1: 22.92 dBm LTE Band 3: 23.14 dBm LTE Band 7: 22.80 dBm LTE Band 8: 22.66 dBm LTE Band 20: 23.64 dBm LTE Band 28: 22.60 dBm LTE Band 32: - GSM 900: 33.20 dBm DCS 1800: 30.85 dBm GNSS: -
CO	433 MHz	reception only
CP	433 MHz	10 mW
CQ	GNSS: 1559 MHz – 1610 MHz	GNSS: -
CR	125 kHz 315 MHz	125 kHz: reception only 315 MHz: 75.6 dBμV/m @ 3 m
CS	76.0 GHz – 77.0 GHz	37.79 dBm 0.45 W

		
CT	125 kHz 315 MHz	125 kHz: reception only 315 MHz 0.05 mW [EIRP]/-13 dBm [EIRP]
CU	10.70 GHz – 12.75 GHz	reception only
CV	13.56 MHz	
CW	13.56 MHz	0.0733 ERP [mW]
CX	Channel A: 314.60 MHz Channel B: 314.60 MHz Channel C: 314.90 MHz	10 dBm
CY	434 MHz (JP: 315 MHz)	reception only
CZ	315 MHz	reception only

Manufacturer reference numbers

Manufac- turer	Manufacturer name	Manufacturer's address
01	Desay SV Automotive Europe GmbH	In der Buttergrube 3-7 99428 Weimar Germany
02	Hirschmann Car Communication GmbH	Stuttgarter Str. 45-51 72654 Neckartenzlingen Germany
03	FUBA Automotive Electronics GmbH	TecCenter 31162 Bad Salzdetfurth Germany
04	Molex Hildesheim	Daimlerring 31 31135 Hildesheim Germany
05	Hella GmbH & Co. KGaA	Rixbecker Str. 75 59552 Lippstadt Germany
06	Panasonic Automotive Systems Europe GmbH	Robert Bosch Str. 27-29 63225 Langen Germany
07	Joynext Dresden	Gewerbepark Merbitz 5 01156 Dresden Germany
08	LG	Manufacturer: LG Electronics Inc. LG Twin Towers 128 Yeoui-daero, Yeongdeungpo-gu Seoul 150-721, Republic of Korea Importer: LG Electronics Inc. Single Point of Contact Alfred-Herrhausen-Allee 3-5 65760 Eschborn Germany

Manufac- turer	Manufacturer name	Manufacturer's address
09	Flextronics International Kft. 8900 Zalaegerszeg (HUN) Zrinyi Miklos utca 38	Flex Automotive GmbH Arthur-B.-Modine-Str. 1 70794 Filderstadt Germany
10	DESAY SV Automotive	Manufacturer: Huizhou Desay SV Automotive Co., Ltd. NO. 103 Hechang 5th Road West, Zhongkai National Hi-tech Industrial Development Zone, Huizhou, Guangdong 516006 People's Republic of China Importer: Desay SV Automotive Europe GmbH In der Buttergrube 3-7 99428 Weimar-Legefeld Germany
11	ADC Automotive Distance Control Systems GmbH	Peter-Dornier-Strasse 10 88131 Lindau Germany
12	Digades GmbH Zittau or digades GmbH	Äußere Weberstr. 20 02763 Zittau Germany Dresdner Straße 16 a 02763 Zittau Germany
13	Continental Automotive GmbH	Siemensstrasse 12 93055 Regensburg Germany
14	Molex CVS Dabendorf GmbH	Märkische Straße 72 15806 Zossen Germany
15	Lesswire GmbH	Rudower Chaussee 30 12489 Berlin Germany
16	Visteon Electronics Slovakia	Odstepny zavod Namestovo 02901 Namestovo Slovakia
17	Continental Automotive GmbH	VDO Straße 1 64832 Babenhausen Germany
18	Huf Baolong Electronics Bretten GmbH	Gewerbestrasse 40 75015 Bretten Germany
19	Sensata / Schrader Electronics	11 Technology Park, Belfast Road Antrim, Northern Ireland, BT41 1QS, UK

Manufacturer	Manufacturer name	Manufacturer's address
20	KATHREIN Digital Systems GmbH	Anton-Kathrein-Straße 1 – 3 83022 Rosenheim Germany
21	Robert Bosch GmbH XC-DA/ECR	Postfach 1661 71226 Leonberg Germany
22	ASK Industries S.p.A	Via dell' Industria n.12/14/16 60037 Monte San Vito Italy
23	Ficosa	P.I. Can Mitjans s/n E08232 Viladecavalls (Barcelona) Spain
24	AEV spol. s r.o.	Jozky Silneho 2783 76701 Kromeriz Czech Republic
25	Norbit ITS AS	Stiklestad v. 1 7041 Trondheim Norway
26	LG ELECTRONICS INC	Manufacturer: LG ELECTRONICS INC. 10 Magokjungang 10-ro, Gangseo-gu, Seoul, Republic of Korea Importer: LG Electronics Inc. Single Point of Contact Alfred-Herrhausen-Allee 3-5 65760 Eschborn Germany
27	Intellic	Fernitzer Straße 5 8071 Hausmannstätten Austria
28	Aptiv Services Deutschland GmbH	Am Technologiepark 1 42111 Wuppertal Germany
29	Dometic Germany Holding GmbH	In der Steinwiese 16 57074 Siegen Deutschland
30	BURY Sp. z o.o.	ul. Wojska Polskiego 4 39-300 Mielec Poland
31	Robert Bosch GmbH	Daimlerstrasse 6 71229 Leonberg Germany
32	LG ELECTRONICS INC	Ul. LG Electronics 7 06-500 Mława Poland
33	BCS Automotive Interface Solutions s.r.o.	Jana Nohy 2048 256 01 Benesov Czech Republic

Manufacturer	Manufacturer name	Manufacturer's address
34	Continental Automotive Technologies GmbH	Heinrich-Hertz-Str. 45 78052 Villingen-Schwenningen Germany
35	Visteon	Visteon Portuguesa Ltd. 2950-503 Palmela(PRT) Estrada Nacional 252 KM12 Parque das Carrascas Portugal
36	Molex Technologies GmbH	Mizarstrasse 3 12529 Schönefeld Germany
37	Stoneridge Electronics AB	Gustav III Boulevard 26, SE-I 69 73 Solna, Sweden
38	PAV Card GmbH	Hamburger Strasse 6 22929 Lütjensee Germany
39	Robert Bosch GmbH	Robert-Bosch-Platz 1 70839 Gerlingen Germany

Declaration of Conformity for radio systems in countries outside the European Union (EU)



Approval symbol for radio systems in Australia or in Australia and New Zealand.



Approval symbol for Europe and countries where radio systems are approved and permitted according to European Directives.



Approval symbol for England, Wales and Scotland.



Approval symbol for radio systems in Mexico.



Approval symbol for New Zealand.



Approval symbol for Russia and countries where radio systems are approved and permitted according to EAC Directives.



Approval symbol for Serbia.



Approval symbol for South Africa.



Approval symbol for Ukraine.



Approval symbol for radio systems in the USA and countries where radio systems are approved and permitted according to the US FCC Directive.



Approval symbol for radio systems in the United Arab Emirates.

The corresponding manufacturer hereby declares that the radio equipment listed below was compliant with the basic requirements and any other relevant regulations and laws at the time the vehicle was produced.

The following radio systems are not available in every market and not in every vehicle.

— Connection to the external aerial.

— Aerial.

- Aerial amplifier.
- Bluetooth®.
- FordPass Connect Security and Service.
- Remote control (auxiliary heater).
- Vehicle key.
- Infotainment system.
- Wireless seat belt warning system.
- Wireless charging function.
- Keyless Entry.
- Instrument cluster, electronic immobiliser.
- Modem.
- Radar sensors for assist systems.
- Tyre Pressure Monitoring System.
- Auxiliary heater (transmitter/receiver unit).
- Mobile phone interface.
- Door control unit.
- Wi-Fi hotspot.
- Central control unit.

Further information on declarations of conformity: → page 415.



Radio systems marked with this symbol must be collected and disposed of separately from your normal domestic waste. You can hand them in at a local waste management company or return them as part of a national take-back system → page 413, *Product recycling*.



Symbol for restricted use of certain hazardous substances in electrical and electronic equipment in accordance with the RoHS directive.

United Kingdom

Further information on the importer and declarations of conformity: → page 415.

Turkey

Further information on the importer and declarations of conformity: → page 415.

Ukraine

Further information on the importer and declarations of conformity: → page 415.

Approval numbers

Egypt

*TAC.01082124605.WIR,
TAC.07021815923.WIR,
TAC.07081715137.WIR,
TAC.07122240328.WIR,
TAC.08022341022.WR,
TAC.08051918482.WIR,
TAC.08051918491.WIR.
TAC.11041918338.WIR,
TAC.13111919566.WIR,
TAC.17101817260.WIR,
TAC.17102125453.WIR,
TAC.18042227628.WIR,
TAC.18072342822.WIR,
TAC.19022341166.WIR,
TAC.19102239714.WIR,
TAC.19102239715.WIR.
TAC.24061918671.WIR,
TAC.24061918672.WIR,
TAC.24091817125.WIR,
TAC.25012340845.WIR,
TAC.29051918508.WIR,
TAC.29072124600.WIR,
TAC.29082343321.WIR.
T24-01412.
VOCSZ210525002.*

Angola

*INACOM/DEGER/2022, Equipment Type
Model Number: 198, 545, 574, 606, 611,
628, 1027, 1028, 1183, 1247, 1275, 1304,
1382, 1606, 1607, 1894.
INACOM/DEGER/2023.
114/INACOM/DEGER/2024, 163/
INACOM/DEGER/2024, 410/INACOM/
DEGER/2024, 1085/INACOM/DEGER/
2024, 1086/INACOM/DEGER/2024.
68/DEGER/INACOM/2025.*

Australia

*ABN 12 625 564 909,
ABN 50 068 406 995,
ABN 76 310 261 826, ABN 81 145 810 206.
ACN 004 315 628
ACN/ARBM 84 156 023 504.
ACN/ARBN 004 315 628, ACN/
ARBN 004 528 778/58004528778, ACN/
ARBN 4156023504, ACN/
ARBN 006 256 524, ACN/
ARBN 84 156 023 504.*

50 313 619 001, 81 158 008 881.

FK55534375000001.

N11042.

P23441LR

RCMA020050903.

T819046P-01-TEC,
TMWK2203000785KR.

2150-01, 2152-01, 2851-01, 116073641.

Bahrain

1329, 2699, 3002, 3003, 6476, 2993000,
5921000, 5932000.

DLM/13085/13085.

DLM/1405, DLM/932 Ref.nr. 810, DLM/
932 Ref.nr. 5531, DLM/932 Ref.nr. 18043,
DLM/932 Ref.nr. 18044, DLM/
932 Ref.nr. 2663000, DLM/
1294 Ref.nr. 2937000.

DLM/1630 Ref.nr. 3362, DLM/
1630 Ref.nr. 6839, DLM/
1630 Ref.nr. 6858, DLM/
1630 Ref.nr. 7372, DLM/1630 Ref.nr. 7829,
DLM/1630 Ref.nr. 4174000, DLM/
1630 Ref.nr. 4199000, DLM/
1630 Ref.nr. 10137, DLM/
1630 Ref.nr. 10138, DLM/
1630 Ref.nr. 5919000.

DLM/1921 Ref.nr. 10535, DLM/
1921 Ref.nr. 13086, DLM/
1921 Ref.nr. 13285, DLM/
1921 Ref.nr. 14922, LM/1921 Ref.nr. 15600,
DLM/1968 Ref.nr. 10616, DLM/
1968 Ref.nr. 10883, DLM/
1968 Ref.nr. 10961, DLM/
1968 Ref.nr. 15768.

DLM/11104.

CB SG PSB-HS-05783, E24 10R-052022,
CB JP TUV-46073, E13 10R-0616248.

TA RTTE: ER00657/21 DA44932/15.

Chile

Nº 11899/DO Nº 58538/F60, Nº 1947/
DO Nº 86192/F14.
Nº 2335/DO Nº 36509/F26, Nº 2615/
DO Nº 3881/F26, Nº 2615/DO Nº 53881/
F26, Nº 2895/2024 105423/F44.
Nº 3458/DO Nº 45141/F26, Nº 3974/
DO Nº 96.826/F-25, Nº 3975/
DO Nº 96.827/F-25, Nº 3985/

DO Nº 96.913/F-25, Nº 3590/
DO Nº 87.187/F71.

Nº 4003/DO Nº 77963/F23, Nº 4567/
DO Nº 97,287/F54, Nº 4665/
DFRS01259/F-50.

Nº 5092/DO Nº 55076/F60.
Nº 6314/DO Nº 32306/F26.

Nº 9140/DFRS11860/F-50, Nº 9195/
DO Nº 40087/F26, Nº 9198/
DO Nº 40087/F26.

Nº 10968/DO Nº 100.142/F-25,
Nº 12190/DO Nº 48994/F26, Nº 12553/
DO Nº 100.943/F-25, Nº 13589/
DO Nº 83457/F39, Nº 13829/
DO Nº 49857/F60, Nº 15530/
DO Nº 50759/F26, Nº 16512/
DO Nº 84637/F28, Nº 16527/
DO Nº 84399/F14.

Nº 26527/DO Nº 84399/F14, MDE_HEL-
LA_1806.

7763, 10495, 12785, 12786, 17194, 58798,
58799.

These devices comply with the 2008 reso-
lution Exenta 403 in the version as amen-
ded and regarding electromagnetic radia-
tion, issued by the Undersecretariat of Tele-
communication within the Chilean Ministry
of Transport and Telecommunications.

Curacao

2014/003/TA.
2017/040/TA.
2018/086/TA, 2018/159/TA,
2018/171/TA, 2018/181/TA,
2018/209/TA.
2019/029/TA, 2019/067/TA,
2019/121/TA, 2019/121a/TA,
2019/122/TA, 2019/123/TA,
2019/158/TA.
2020/020/TA, 2020/027/TA,
2020/228/TA.
2021/052/TA, 2021/156/TA,
2021/178/TA, 2021/179/TA.
2022/240/TA, 2022/240a/TA,
2022/241/TA.
2023/012/TA, 2023/034/TA,
2023/121/TA.
2024/006/TA.

England, Wales and Scotland

Further information on radio systems
→ page 415

10385, 10440.

LO476ADC1.AMK, T818399F-02-TEC (0682).

CB SG PSB-HS-05783, E24 10R-052022, CB JP TUV-46073, E13 10R-0616248.

U1177-221423, UK24-0028-01-TEC, UK24-0029-01-TEC.

Europe and countries that certify radio equipment based on European directives:

See EU declarations of conformity at → page 415.

232140411/AA/00.

T818363F-03-TEC, T818399F-02-TEC (0682), T.2021.09.0007T.2021.04.0014.

CB SG PSB-HS-05783, E24 10R-052022, CB JP TUV-46073, E13 10R-0616248.

EU24-0133-01-TEC, EU24-0132-01-TEC.

A. - Information on the safety of persons.

Compliance with usage restrictions for certain locations (hospitals, airplanes, filling stations, schools, etc.).

For mobile phones: reminder of the prohibition on the use of a mobile phone held in the hand by the driver of a motor vehicle while driving.

Precautionary measures to be taken by the wearers of electronic implants (pacemakers, insulin pumps, neurostimulators, etc.), particularly in relation to the distance between the radio equipment and the implant (15 centimetres for the most powerful exposure sources such as mobile telephones).

B. - Information on behaviour to reduce exposure to radiation from radio equipment.

Use the radio equipment under good reception conditions to reduce the received amount of radiation.

Use a hands-free system or a loudspeaker if they are suitable for radio equipment.

Use radio equipment such as mobile telephones by children and young people rationally by avoiding communication at night and limiting the frequency and duration of calls, for example.

Keep radio equipment away from the stomachs of pregnant women.

Keep radio equipment away from the lower abdomen of teenagers.

Gabun

D'HOMOLOGATION D'EQUIPEMENTS DE TELECOMMUNICATIONS

CERTIFICAT No:

100/ARCEP/2019, 440/ARCEP/2019, 441/ARCEP/2019, 443/ARCEP/2019, 444/ARCEP/2019, 448/ARCEP/2019, 513/ARCEP/2019, 045/ARCEP/2020, 337/ARCEP/2020, 369/ARCEP/2020, 433/ARCEP/2020, 554/ARCEP/2020, 555/ARCEP/2020, 556/ARCEP/2020, 557/ARCEP/2020, 558/ARCEP/2020, 559/ARCEP/2020, 560/ARCEP/2020, 561/ARCEP/2020, 562/ARCEP/2020, 563/ARCEP/2020, 564/ARCEP/2020, 565/ARCEP/2020, 566/ARCEP/2020, 567/ARCEP/2020, 568/ARCEP/2020, 569/ARCEP/2020, 570/ARCEP/2020, 571/ARCEP/2020, 572/ARCEP/2020, 573/ARCEP/2020, 574/ARCEP/2020, 575/ARCEP/2020, 576/ARCEP/2020, 577/ARCEP/2020, 578/ARCEP/2020, 579/ARCEP/2020, 580/ARCEP/2020, 581/ARCEP/2020, 582/ARCEP/2020, 583/ARCEP/2020, 584/ARCEP/2020, 585/ARCEP/2020, 586/ARCEP/2020, 587/ARCEP/2020, 588/ARCEP/2020, 589/ARCEP/2020, 590/ARCEP/2020, 591/ARCEP/2020, 592/ARCEP/2020, 593/ARCEP/2020, 594/ARCEP/2020, 595/ARCEP/2020, 596/ARCEP/2020, 597/ARCEP/2020, 598/ARCEP/2020, 599/ARCEP/2020, 600/ARCEP/2020, 601/ARCEP/2020, 602/ARCEP/2020, 603/ARCEP/2020, 604/ARCEP/2020, 605/ARCEP/2020, 606/ARCEP/2020, 607/ARCEP/2020, 608/ARCEP/2020, 609/ARCEP/2020, 610/ARCEP/2020, 611/ARCEP/2020, 612/ARCEP/2020, 613/ARCEP/2020, 614/ARCEP/2020, 615/ARCEP/2020, 616/ARCEP/2020, 617/ARCEP/2020, 618/ARCEP/2020, 619/ARCEP/2020, 620/ARCEP/2020, 621/ARCEP/2020, 622/ARCEP/2020, 623/ARCEP/2020, 624/ARCEP/2020, 625/ARCEP/2020, 626/ARCEP/2020, 627/ARCEP/2020, 628/ARCEP/2020, 629/ARCEP/2020, 630/ARCEP/2020, 631/ARCEP/2020, 632/ARCEP/2020, 633/ARCEP/2020, 634/ARCEP/2020, 635/ARCEP/2020, 636/ARCEP/2020, 637/ARCEP/2020, 638/ARCEP/2020, 639/ARCEP/2020, 640/ARCEP/2020, 641/ARCEP/2020, 642/ARCEP/2020, 643/ARCEP/2020, 644/ARCEP/2020, 645/ARCEP/2020, 646/ARCEP/2020, 647/ARCEP/2020, 648/ARCEP/2020, 649/ARCEP/2020, 650/ARCEP/2020, 651/ARCEP/2020, 652/ARCEP/2020, 653/ARCEP/2020, 654/ARCEP/2020, 655/ARCEP/2020, 656/ARCEP/2020, 657/ARCEP/2020, 658/ARCEP/2020, 659/ARCEP/2020, 660/ARCEP/2020, 661/ARCEP/2020, 662/ARCEP/2020, 663/ARCEP/2020, 664/ARCEP/2020, 665/ARCEP/2020, 666/ARCEP/2020, 667/ARCEP/2020, 668/ARCEP/2020, 669/ARCEP/2020, 670/ARCEP/2020, 671/ARCEP/2020, 672/ARCEP/2020, 673/ARCEP/2020, 674/ARCEP/2020, 675/ARCEP/2020, 676/ARCEP/2020, 677/ARCEP/2020, 678/ARCEP/2020, 679/ARCEP/2020, 680/ARCEP/2020, 681/ARCEP/2020, 682/ARCEP/2020, 683/ARCEP/2020, 684/ARCEP/2020, 685/ARCEP/2020, 686/ARCEP/2020, 687/ARCEP/2020, 688/ARCEP/2020, 689/ARCEP/2020, 690/ARCEP/2020, 691/ARCEP/2020, 692/ARCEP/2020, 693/ARCEP/2020, 694/ARCEP/2020, 695/ARCEP/2020, 696/ARCEP/2020, 697/ARCEP/2020, 698/ARCEP/2020, 699/ARCEP/2020, 700/ARCEP/2020, 701/ARCEP/2020, 702/ARCEP/2020, 703/ARCEP/2020, 704/ARCEP/2020, 705/ARCEP/2020, 706/ARCEP/2020, 707/ARCEP/2020, 708/ARCEP/2020, 709/ARCEP/2020, 710/ARCEP/2020, 711/ARCEP/2020, 712/ARCEP/2020, 713/ARCEP/2020, 714/ARCEP/2020, 715/ARCEP/2020, 716/ARCEP/2020, 717/ARCEP/2020, 718/ARCEP/2020, 719/ARCEP/2020, 720/ARCEP/2020, 721/ARCEP/2020, 722/ARCEP/2020, 723/ARCEP/2020, 724/ARCEP/2020, 725/ARCEP/2020, 726/ARCEP/2020, 727/ARCEP/2020, 728/ARCEP/2020, 729/ARCEP/2020, 730/ARCEP/2020, 731/ARCEP/2020, 732/ARCEP/2020, 733/ARCEP/2020, 734/ARCEP/2020, 735/ARCEP/2020, 736/ARCEP/2020, 737/ARCEP/2020, 738/ARCEP/2020, 739/ARCEP/2020, 740/ARCEP/2020, 741/ARCEP/2020, 742/ARCEP/2020, 743/ARCEP/2020, 744/ARCEP/2020, 745/ARCEP/2020, 746/ARCEP/2020, 747/ARCEP/2020, 748/ARCEP/2020, 749/ARCEP/2020, 750/ARCEP/2020, 751/ARCEP/2020, 752/ARCEP/2020, 753/ARCEP/2020, 754/ARCEP/2020, 755/ARCEP/2020, 756/ARCEP/2020, 757/ARCEP/2020, 758/ARCEP/2020, 759/ARCEP/2020, 760/ARCEP/2020, 761/ARCEP/2020, 762/ARCEP/2020, 763/ARCEP/2020, 764/ARCEP/2020, 765/ARCEP/2020, 766/ARCEP/2020, 767/ARCEP/2020, 768/ARCEP/2020, 769/ARCEP/2020, 770/ARCEP/2020, 771/ARCEP/2020, 772/ARCEP/2020, 773/ARCEP/2020, 774/ARCEP/2020, 775/ARCEP/2020, 776/ARCEP/2020, 777/ARCEP/2020, 778/ARCEP/2020, 779/ARCEP/2020, 780/ARCEP/2020, 781/ARCEP/2020, 782/ARCEP/2020, 783/ARCEP/2020, 784/ARCEP/2020, 785/ARCEP/2020, 786/ARCEP/2020, 787/ARCEP/2020, 788/ARCEP/2020, 789/ARCEP/2020, 790/ARCEP/2020, 791/ARCEP/2020, 792/ARCEP/2020, 793/ARCEP/2020, 794/ARCEP/2020, 795/ARCEP/2020, 796/ARCEP/2020, 797/ARCEP/2020, 798/ARCEP/2020, 799/ARCEP/2020, 800/ARCEP/2020, 801/ARCEP/2020, 802/ARCEP/2020, 803/ARCEP/2020, 804/ARCEP/2020, 805/ARCEP/2020, 806/ARCEP/2020, 807/ARCEP/2020, 808/ARCEP/2020, 809/ARCEP/2020, 810/ARCEP/2020, 811/ARCEP/2020, 812/ARCEP/2020, 813/ARCEP/2020, 814/ARCEP/2020, 815/ARCEP/2020, 816/ARCEP/2020, 817/ARCEP/2020, 818/ARCEP/2020, 819/ARCEP/2020, 820/ARCEP/2020, 821/ARCEP/2020, 822/ARCEP/2020, 823/ARCEP/2020, 824/ARCEP/2020, 825/ARCEP/2020, 826/ARCEP/2020, 827/ARCEP/2020, 828/ARCEP/2020, 829/ARCEP/2020, 830/ARCEP/2020, 831/ARCEP/2020, 832/ARCEP/2020, 833/ARCEP/2020, 834/ARCEP/2020, 835/ARCEP/2020, 836/ARCEP/2020, 837/ARCEP/2020, 838/ARCEP/2020, 839/ARCEP/2020, 840/ARCEP/2020, 841/ARCEP/2020, 842/ARCEP/2020, 843/ARCEP/2020, 844/ARCEP/2020, 845/ARCEP/2020, 846/ARCEP/2020, 847/ARCEP/2020, 848/ARCEP/2020, 849/ARCEP/2020, 850/ARCEP/2020, 851/ARCEP/2020, 852/ARCEP/2020, 853/ARCEP/2020, 854/ARCEP/2020, 855/ARCEP/2020, 856/ARCEP/2020, 857/ARCEP/2020, 858/ARCEP/2020, 859/ARCEP/2020, 860/ARCEP/2020, 861/ARCEP/2020, 862/ARCEP/2020, 863/ARCEP/2020, 864/ARCEP/2020, 865/ARCEP/2020, 866/ARCEP/2020, 867/ARCEP/2020, 868/ARCEP/2020, 869/ARCEP/2020, 870/ARCEP/2020, 871/ARCEP/2020, 872/ARCEP/2020, 873/ARCEP/2020, 874/ARCEP/2020, 875/ARCEP/2020, 876/ARCEP/2020, 877/ARCEP/2020, 878/ARCEP/2020, 879/ARCEP/2020, 880/ARCEP/2020, 881/ARCEP/2020, 882/ARCEP/2020, 883/ARCEP/2020, 884/ARCEP/2020, 885/ARCEP/2020, 886/ARCEP/2020, 887/ARCEP/2020, 888/ARCEP/2020, 889/ARCEP/2020, 890/ARCEP/2020, 891/ARCEP/2020, 892/ARCEP/2020, 893/ARCEP/2020, 894/ARCEP/2020, 895/ARCEP/2020, 896/ARCEP/2020, 897/ARCEP/2020, 898/ARCEP/2020, 899/ARCEP/2020, 900/ARCEP/2020, 901/ARCEP/2020, 902/ARCEP/2020, 903/ARCEP/2020, 904/ARCEP/2020, 905/ARCEP/2020, 906/ARCEP/2020, 907/ARCEP/2020, 908/ARCEP/2020, 909/ARCEP/2020, 910/ARCEP/2020, 911/ARCEP/2020, 912/ARCEP/2020, 913/ARCEP/2020, 914/ARCEP/2020, 915/ARCEP/2020, 916/ARCEP/2020, 917/ARCEP/2020, 918/ARCEP/2020, 919/ARCEP/2020, 920/ARCEP/2020, 921/ARCEP/2020, 922/ARCEP/2020, 923/ARCEP/2020, 924/ARCEP/2020, 925/ARCEP/2020, 926/ARCEP/2020, 927/ARCEP/2020, 928/ARCEP/2020, 929/ARCEP/2020, 930/ARCEP/2020, 931/ARCEP/2020, 932/ARCEP/2020, 933/ARCEP/2020, 934/ARCEP/2020, 935/ARCEP/2020, 936/ARCEP/2020, 937/ARCEP/2020, 938/ARCEP/2020, 939/ARCEP/2020, 940/ARCEP/2020, 941/ARCEP/2020, 942/ARCEP/2020, 943/ARCEP/2020, 944/ARCEP/2020, 945/ARCEP/2020, 946/ARCEP/2020, 947/ARCEP/2020, 948/ARCEP/2020, 949/ARCEP/2020, 950/ARCEP/2020, 951/ARCEP/2020, 952/ARCEP/2020, 953/ARCEP/2020, 954/ARCEP/2020, 955/ARCEP/2020, 956/ARCEP/2020, 957/ARCEP/2020, 958/ARCEP/2020, 959/ARCEP/2020, 960/ARCEP/2020, 961/ARCEP/2020, 962/ARCEP/2020, 963/ARCEP/2020, 964/ARCEP/2020, 965/ARCEP/2020, 966/ARCEP/2020, 967/ARCEP/2020, 968/ARCEP/2020, 969/ARCEP/2020, 970/ARCEP/2020, 971/ARCEP/2020, 972/ARCEP/2020, 973/ARCEP/2020, 974/ARCEP/2020, 975/ARCEP/2020, 976/ARCEP/2020, 977/ARCEP/2020, 978/ARCEP/2020, 979/ARCEP/2020, 980/ARCEP/2020, 981/ARCEP/2020, 982/ARCEP/2020, 983/ARCEP/2020, 984/ARCEP/2020, 985/ARCEP/2020, 986/ARCEP/2020, 987/ARCEP/2020, 988/ARCEP/2020, 989/ARCEP/2020, 990/ARCEP/2020, 991/ARCEP/2020, 992/ARCEP/2020, 993/ARCEP/2020, 994/ARCEP/2020, 995/ARCEP/2020, 996/ARCEP/2020, 997/ARCEP/2020, 998/ARCEP/2020, 999/ARCEP/2020, 1000/ARCEP/2020.

Hong Kong

HKCA 1035, HKCA1061, HKTA 1035, HK0011902060.

HK0011902061, HK0022000047, HK0022000048, HK0022000027, HK0022200028, HK0022300057, HK0022400134, HK0022400135, HK0022400136, HK0022400137.

US0022000073, US0022300009, US0031600020, US0031800001, US0031800017, US0031900023, US0031900026.

HUF71254, SDoc-HUF.

Indonesia



Dilarang melakukan perubahan spesifikasi yang dapat menimbulkan gangguan fisik dan/atau elektromagnetik terhadap lingkungan sekitarnya.

 60924/SDPPI/2019, PLG ID: 4334



 61642/SDPPI/2019, PLG ID: 4334



 62404/SDPPI/2019, PLG ID: 4334



 63286/SDPPI/2019, PLG ID: 4334



 67149/SDPPI/2020, PLG ID: 4334



 68316/SDPPI/2020, PLG ID: 4334



 72663/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334



 72586/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334



 72770/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334



 73094/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334



 73488/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334



 73489/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334



 73588/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334



 74303/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334



 76052/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334



 77146/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334



 77225/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334



 77920/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334



 78452/SDPPI/2021, PLG ID: 4334



 80846/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334



 80858/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334



 81032/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334



 81094/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334



 82006/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334



 82007/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334



 82231/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334



 82886/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334



 85731/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 4334



 86322/SDPPI/2022, PLG ID: 3813



 87909/SDPPI/2023, PLG ID: 4334



 89688/SDPPI/2023, PLG ID: 4334



 89689/SDPPI/2023, PLG ID: 4334



 89700/SDPPI/2023, PLG ID: 4334



 97855/SDPPI/2024, PLG ID: 4334



 97856/SDPPI/2024, PLG ID: 4334



 97857/SDPPI/2024, PLG ID: 4334



 97858/SDPPI/2024, PLG ID: 4334



www 98178/SDPPI/2024, PLG ID: 4334



www 99387/SDPPI/2024, PLG ID: 4334



www 106119/SDPPI/2024, PLG ID: 10325



www 106394/SDPPI/2024, PLG ID: 13098



www 106600/SDPPI/2024, PLG ID: 10325



www 107470/DJID/2025, PLG ID: 4334



32143/SDPPI/2013, PLG ID:3073, 32144/
SDPPI/2013, PLG ID:3073, 32221/SDPPI/
2013, PLG ID:3073, 33651/SDPPI/2017,
PLG ID: 2181, 33652/SDPPI/2017, PLG ID:
2181, 34468/I/SDPPI/2017; PLG ID: 2879,
34539/I/SDPPI/2017, PLG ID: 4211,
34691/SDPPI/2014, PLG ID: 4604,
38132/I/SDPPI/2017, PLG ID: 2130,
38296/I/SDPPI/2017, PLG ID: 4976,
44153/SDPPI/2016, PLG ID: 4211, 47817/
SDPPI/2016, PLG ID: 6094, 50459/
SDPPI/2017, PLG ID: 6051, 53856/
SDPPI/2017, PLG ID: 4211, 55438/SDPPI/
2018, PLG ID: 6051, 55776/SDPPI/2018,
PLG ID: 7205, 56625/SDPPI/2018, PLG
ID: 7708, 57406/SDPPI/2018, PLG ID:
7708, 57647/SDPPI/2018, PLG ID: 7708,
57687/SDPPI/2018, PLG ID: 7708,
58206/SDPPI/2018, PLG ID: 5834,
62361/SDPPI/2019, PLG ID: 8837,
67688/SDPPI/2020, PLG ID: 3813.

57059/SDPPI/2018, PLG ID: 7696.

PLG ID: 4334:

**58849/SDPPI/2018, 62637/SDPPI/2019,
62638/SDPPI/2019, 62825/SDPPI/
2019, 62826/SDPPI/2019, 62827/
SDPPI/2019, 62828/SDPPI/2019,
63076/SDPPI/2019, 63077/SDPPI/2019,
63078/SDPPI/2019, 63079/SDPPI/2019,
63080/SDPPI/2019, 63081/SDPPI/
2019, 63082/SDPPI/2019, 63128/
SDPPI/2019, 63129/SDPPI/2019, 63130/
SDPPI/2019, 63131/SDPPI/2019, 63132/
SDPPI/2019, 63133/SDPPI/2019, 63134/
SDPPI/2019, 63135/SDPPI/2019, 63136/
SDPPI/2019, 63137/SDPPI/2019, 63138/
SDPPI/2019, 63139/SDPPI/2019, 63140/
SDPPI/2019, 63147/SDPPI/2019, 63160/
SDPPI/2019, 63161/SDPPI/2019, 63162/
SDPPI/2019, 63577/SDPPI/2019, 63578/
SDPPI/2019, 63579/SDPPI/2019,
63580/SDPPI/2019, 63581/SDPPI/2019,
63582/SDPPI/2019, 63583/SDPPI/2019,
64639/SDPPI/2019, 64640/SDPPI/
2019, 66006/SDPPI/2020, 66074/
SDPPI/2020, 67154/SDPPI/2020,
67359/SDPPI/2020, 67495/SDPPI/
2020, 67512/SDPPI/2020, 71563/SDPPI/
2020, 72556/SDPPI/2021, 72557/SDPPI/
2021,**

62443/SDPPI/2019,

**73816/SDPPI/2021, 73954/SDPPI/2021,
74360/SDPPI/2021, 74525/SDPPI/2021,
76862/SDPPI/2021, 80130/SDPPI/2022,
82116/SDPPI/2022, 81032/SDPPI/2022,
82926/SDPPI/2022,
FK55534375000001.**

Israel

03-7964600.

10-17958.

11-11252, 11-12320.

51-15282, 51-41889, 51-42830, 51-42841,

51-43949, 51-46980, 51-54730,

51-55347, 51-63653, 51-65839,

51-66537, 51-69416, 51-69417, 51-71935,

51-73720, 51-77099, 51-77882, 51-80024,

51-80976, 51-88548, 51-88746,

51-88751, 51-89883, 51-91460, 51-91527,

51-91756, 51-92318, 51-92728, 51-95837,

51-96511, 51-97641, 51-97823, 51-98454,

51-99160, 51-99533, 51-99534,

51-3973255.

54-37173.

55-01612, 55-02626, 55-07477,
55-07480, 55-07924, 55-09135,
55-09893, 55-10614, 55-11679, 55-12037,
55-12193, 55-12628, 55-13403, 55-13786,
55-14888, 55-15760, 55-15761,
55-98454.
56-00201, 56-00597, 56-00923,
56-01890, 56-02024, 56-02772,
56-02972, 56-07444, 56-08706,
56-09104, 56-09421, 56-09348,
56-09584, 56-09643, 56-10032,
56-10063, 56-10108, 56-10968,
56-10969, 56-11192, 56-11193, 56-11644.
63-63304, 63-63571, 63-66687,
63-66961, 63-71587, 63-73361,
No. 7052352267, No. 9872334765,
No. 9872340205.
HCTIMP_SI62368.42625,
HCTIMP_SI62368.42656,
HCTIMP_SI62368.42673.
LT-0083880B, LT-0066086,
LT-0083873.

Precautionary measures

1. Must be installed only by qualified service personnel.
2. No modification of this product is allowed. Modifications may adversely affect the performance, safety and durability of the product and may void the warranty.

Conformity confirmation number of the Ministry of Communications

Due to the possibility of radio interference, it is forbidden to make any interventions on the device that could alter its wireless characteristics, including software changes, replacement of the original aerial or adding an option to connect to an external aerial, without the approval of the Ministry of Communications.

Jordan

TRC/LPD/...

2010/91, 2014/9, 2014/241, 2014/248,
2014/258, 2014/274, 2015/387,
2016/252, 2016/538, 2016/584,
2016/591, 2017/63, 2017/254, 2018/1,
2018/162, 2018/381, 2019/152, 2019/153,
2019/155, 2019/233, 2019/234.

TRC/34/6019/2020,
TRC/34/6311/2020,
TRC/32/6420/2020,

TRC/31/7615/2020, TRC/31/7918/2020,
TRC/31/9121/2021, TRC/32/6420/2020,
TRC/36/9257/2021, TRC/20/9710/2022,
TRC/36/10847/2022,
TRC/36/10848/2022,
TRC/34/11161/2022.

TRC/20/12854/2023,
TRC/31/11516/2023, TRC/34/7179/2023,
TRC/34/8107/2023,
TRC/34/8108/2023,
TRC/34/11842/2023,
TRC/34/11841/2023,
TRC/34/12409/2023,
TRC/34/12834/2023.

TRC/19/15439/2024,
TRC/34/13604/2024,
TRC/34/13799/2024.

TRC/SS/2014/127, TRC/SS/2016/476,
TRC/SS/2019/212.

TRC No.: T/4/11/11/...

194, 258, 1028, 3338, 3680, 3681, 3893,
4387, 4555, 5621, 5649, 5653, 5896,
5898, 6856, 7716, 8102, 8205, 9851,
10625, 10752, 10753.

Cape Verde

nº: 50/EBP/ANAC/17.
nº: 09/EBP/ANAC/18.
nº: 53/EBP/ARME/19, nº: 44/EBP/
ARME/19.
nº: 16/EBP/ARME/2022, nº: 53/EBP/
ARME/22, nº: 78/EBP/AMRE/22,
nº: 79/EBP/AMRE/22, nº: 91/EBP/
ARME/2022.
nº: 13/EBP/ARME/23, nº: 46/EBP/
ARME/23.

Kenya

CA/LCS/1600/GEN/Vol.I.
CA/STA/1600/GEN/Vol.I.
ID 6518, ID 7941.
MDE_VIS_2212.
VAT Reg No. 331 0184 52.

Madagascar

Nº 17/195/ARTEC/DG/DHCT/SSS/test.
Nº 18/007/ARTEC/DG/DHCT/SSS/test.
Nº 18/073/ARTEC/DG/DHCT/SSS/test.
Nº 18/104/ARTEC/DG/DHCT/SSS/test.
Nº 19/042-DCP/ARTEC/DG/DNCSR/
SNAE/test.

Nº 19/053-DCP/ARTEC/DG/DNCSR/
SNAE/test.
Nº 19/068-DCP/ARTEC/DG/DNCSR/
SNAE/test.
Nº 19/115-DCP/Artec/DG/DNCSR/
SNAE/test
Nº 20/027-DCP/ARTEC/DG/DNCSR/
SNAE/test.
Nº 21/156-DCP/ARTEC/DG/DNCSR/
SNAESR/test.
Nº 21/157-DCP/ARTEC/DG/DNCSR/
SNAESR/test
Nº 21/169-DCP/ARTEC/DG/DNCSR/
SNAESR/test.
Nº 22/031-DCP/ARTEC/DG/DNCSR/
SNAESR/test.
Nº 22/329-DCP/ARTEC/DG/DNCSR/
SNAESR/test.
Nº 22/330-DCP/ARTEC/DG/DNCSR/
SNAESR/test.
Nº 22/411-DCP/ARTEC/DG/DNCSR/
SNAESR/test.
Nº 23/217-DCP/ARTEC/DG/DNCSR/
SNAESR/test.

Malaysia

169008, 201573.
CIDFI5000490, CIDFI5000578,
CIDFI7000143.
MRR14F, ARS4-B, MIB3 OI.
RAAT/44A/0219/S(19-0487).
RAAU/05C/0415/S(14-3022),
RAAU/33C/1015/S(15-0535),
RAAU/35C/1115/S(15-0536),
RAAU/57A/0111/S(10-2112).
RAAY/84A/0618/S(18-2241),
RAAY/85A/0618/S(18-2242),
RAAY/86A/0618/S(18-2378),
RAAY/87A/0718/S(18-2596),
RAAY/89A/0718/S(18-3107),
RAAY/92A/1218/S(18-4731).
RALM/41B/0121/S(21-0515),
RALM/44A/0517/S(17-1383),
RALM/69A/1018/S(18-3829),
RALM/74B/1122/S(22-5508),
RALM/75B/1122/S(22-5510),
RALM/77A/0219/S(19-0174),
RALM/89B/0323/S(23-0830),
RALM/90B/0323/S(23-0831).
RDDC/72A/0518/S(18-1697).
RDDK/02B/0419/S(19-1401),
RDDK/22A/1016/S(16-3306),
RDDK/62D/1024/S(24-4684),
RDDK/72A/0518/S(18-1697),

RDDK/74C/0223/S(23-0472),
RDDK/75C/0223/S(23-0474).
RDDS/27A/0319/S(19-1029).
RFCL/09A/0218/S(18-0609),
RFCL/13A/0618/S(18-2379),
RFCL/14A/0618/S(18-2543),
RFCL/15A/0718/S(18-2544),
RFCL/18A/0718/S(18-2529),
RFCL/19A/0718/S(18-2545),
RFCL/20A/0718/S(18-2718),
RFCL/21A/0718/S(18-2717), RCFL/22A/
0818/S(18-3109), RFCL/23A/0818/
S(18-3153), RCFL/24A/0818/
S(18-3152), RFCL/26A/0918/
S(18-3810), RFCL/27A/0918/
S(18-3812), RFCL/28A/1018/
S(18-3977), RFCL/29A/1018/
S(18-4127), RFCL/30A/1018/
S(18-4129), RFCL/31A/1018/
S(18-3976), RFCL/33A/0619/
S(19-2422), RFCL/35A/0719/
S(19-2874), RFCL/34A/0619/
S(19-2421), RFCL/36A/0719/
S(19-2875), RFCL/41A/0220/
S(20-0390), RFCL/42A/0220/
S(20-0391), RFCL/44A/0320/
S(20-1385).
RFCP/83A/0323/S(23-1490).
RFFK/07A/0323/S(23-1401).
RGNU/03A/0221/S(21-0560).

Morocco

Approval number, date of approval

MR0005835ANRT2010 28.08.2020,
MR7906ANRT2013 06.03.2013.
MR9102ANRT2014,
MR9107ANRT2014 18.03.2014,
MR9778ANRT2014 11.11.2014,
MR9918ANRT2014 22.12.2014.
MR11030ANRT2015.
MR12089ANRT2016 15.06.2016,
MR12123ANRT2016 22.06.2016,
MR12623ANRT2016 11.10.2016,
MR12901ANRT2016 30.11.2016.
MR13255ANRT2017 09.02.2017,
MR13576ANRT2017,
MR13900ANRT2017 04.05.2017,
MR14320ANRT2017 07.07.2017,
MR14830ANRT2017 28.09.2017.
ANRT/DTEC/DAA/SAG/BD/795/2019,
ANRT/
DTEC/DAA/SAG/OR/802/2019 26.11.201

9, ANRT/DTEC/DAA/SAG/BD/
1391/2018 14.09.2018, ANRT/
DTEC/DAA/SAG/BD/
1480/2018 09.10.2018.

MR15669ANRT2018 31.01.2018,
MR15674ANRT2018 31.01.2018,
MR15675ANRT2018 31.01.2018,
MR16263ANRT2018 06.04.2018,
MR16606ANRT2018 17.05.2018,
MR16657ANRT2018 23.05.2018,
MR16726ANRT2018 30.05.2018,
MR16794ANRT2018 05.06.2018,
MR16860ANRT2018 18.06.2018,
MR16861ANRT2018 18.06.2018,
MR16905ANRT2018 21.06.2018,
MR16906ANRT2018 21.06.2018,
MR16907ANRT2018 21.06.2018,
MR16908ANRT2018 21.06.2018,
MR17015ANRT2018 03.07.2018,
MR17016ANRT2018 03.07.2018,
MR17079ANRT2018 11.07.2018,
MR17080ANRT2018 11.07.2018,
MR17201ANRT2018 06.08.2018,
MR17202ANRT2018 06.08.2018,
MR17203ANRT2018 06.08.2018,
MR17204ANRT2018 06.08.2018,
MR17505ANRT2018 14.09.2018,
MR17528ANRT2018 27.10.2022,
MR17576ANRT2018 26.09.2018,
MR17678ANRT2018 11.10.2018,
MR17679ANRT2018 11.10.2018,
MR18103ANRT2018 30.11.2018.

ANRT/
DTEC/DAA/SAG/OR/802/2019 26.11.201
9.

MR18928ANRT2019 25.02.2019,
MR19106ANRT2019 14.03.2019,
MR19108ANRT2019 14.03.2019,
MR19315ANRT2019 04.04.2019,
MR19338ANRT2019 09.04.2019,
MR19339ANRT2019 09.04.2019,
MR19520ANRT2019,
MR19767ANRT2019 15.05.2019,
MR19768ANRT2019 15.05.2019,
MR19769ANRT2019 15.05.2019,
MR20233ANRT2019 27.06.2019,
MR20859ANRT2019 11.09.2019,
MR21473ANRT2019 28.11.2019,
MR21807ANRT2019 23.12.2019.

MR00026333ANRT2020 12.11.2020,
MR23231ANRT2020 26.05.2020,
MR25982ANRT2020 14.10.2020.

MR00027808ANRT2021 17.03.2021,
MR00030377ANRT2021 20.10.2021,
MR00030406ANRT2021 12.01.2024,
MR00030494ANRT2021 28/10/2021,
MR00030529ANRT2021,
MR00030528ANRT2021.

MR00035351ANRT2022 17.11.2022,
MR00035350ANRT2022 17.11.2022,
MR00035739ANRT2022 12.12.2022,
MR31772ANRT2022 17.02.2022.

MR00036628ANRT2023 03.02.2023,
MR00036711ANRT2023 10.02.2023,
MR00037442ANRT2023,
MR00037357ANRT2023,
MR00039161ANRT2023,
MR00039743ANRT2023.

MR00000490ANRT2024 05.02.2024.

Mauritius

TA/2017/0651.
TA/2018/0084, TA/2018/0559, TA/
2018/0647, TA/2018/0982, TA/
2018/1189.
TA/2019/0194, TA/2019/0310, TA/
2019/0383, TA/2019/0509, TA/
2019/0510, TA/2019/0586.
TA/2027/0128.
21055524, 21055525, 2257740,
2634955, 21055520, 4683808,
8808460.

Mexico

IFT-008-2015.

IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/0311/2018,
IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/3370/2018.

IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/3093/2020,
IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/7603/2020.

IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/0029/2021,
IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/11233/2021,
IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/2408/2021,
IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/2457/2021,
IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/6527/2021.

IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/4432/2022,
IFT/223/UCS/DG-AUSE/4432/2022,
IFT/223/UCS/4897/2022.

IFT/223/UCS/1365/2023, IFT/223/UCS/
1940/2023, IFT/223/UCS/3399/2023,
IFT/223/UCS/8488/2023.

NYC-CEDT0621-24, NYC-2102C0E19765,
NYC-2202C0E21270.

RCPAPR318-2005.

**RCPBOFR18-1885, RCPBOLR09-0828,
RCPBOLR16-0518, RCPBOMR12-1538,
RCPBOMQ19-0594, RCPBOMR14-0766,
RCPBOMR14-0922.**

RCPCOAR18-1800.

**RCPHEBS14-0180, RCPHEBC18-2099,
RCPHEFS19-1702, RCPHEFS20-1469,
RCPHERS19-1678, RCPHERS21-4335,
RCPHERS21-4334.**

RCPLGLG16-0952, RCPLGMI19-1163.

RCPSCAG21-4523.

**RCPVIVW20-0478, RCPVOHT13-1485,
RCPVOMI15-0115, RCPVWL414-0775-A1,
RCPVWL617-0023, RCPVWMM17-1053.**

RLVBHTS19-1995.

**RLVCO1820-0821, RLVCOAR15-0008,
RLVCOBC16-1823.**

RLVDER316-1666, RLVDER316-2005.

RLVHE0119-0720, RLVHEBC15-0293.

**RLVHEFS18-1288, RLVHEFS18-1565,
RLVHEFS19-0647, RLVHEFS19-1298,
RLVHEFS20-0533, RLVHEFS20-1335,
RLVHEFS20-1336, RLVHEFS20-1420.**

RLVHERS17-0286.

RLVHUHU19-1065.

RLVVIME20-2934.

RLVMABN18-1512, RLMABN18-1512-A1.

**RLVVIFP20-1412, RLVVIKO18-0155,
RLVVIME19-1022, RLVVIME19-1023.**

**RLVVWFS17-2122, RLVVWFS17-2122-A1,
RLVVW1718-1092, RLVVW1718-1169,
RLVVW1718-1170, RLVVW1718-1171,
RLVVW1718-1314, RLVVW1718-1315,
RLVVW1718-1316, RLVVW1718-1317,
RLVVW1718-1507, RLVVW1718-1508,
RLVVW1718-1509, RLVVW1718-1517,
RLVVW1718-1518, RLVVW1718-1519,
RLVVW1718-1567, RLVVW1718-1568,
RLVVW1718-1789, RLVVW1718-1790,
RLVVW1718-1928, RLVVW1718-1929,
RLVVW1719-1795, RLVVW1818-1248,
RLVVW1818-1249, RLVVW1818-1258,
RLVVW1819-0009, RLVVW1819-0023.**

RTIVWCO19-1185, RTILGTL19-0483.

ULM-TOL-00892-21.

**VOHEFS22-33012, VOHEFS22-33014, VO-
VIFP23-35777, VOVWMI23-13062.**

Operation of this device is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This system or this device must not cause any harmful interference, and

(2) This system or device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

New Zealand

R-NZ:

**2008-GO7355 Issue Number 152,
2022-01-27, 2151-01, 2153-01, 2521-01,
2852-01, 1628242.
1-2461/16-04-05, 19-1-0055004T04a.
AS/NZS 4268:2017, AZ 69026194.
ABN 12 625 564 909,
ABN 81 145 810 206.
ACMA E6712 ABN 12 625 564 909.
ACN/ARBN 004 315 628, ACN/
ARBN 006 256 524.
BCL DoC No 2424-01,
BCL DoC No 3213-01.
CFI1310_NZ/1-1/1628242, CFI1341_NZ/
1-1, CFI17307_NZ-Rev: 00.
E3516.
F690501/RF-RTL011520, F690501/RF-
RTL011521, F690501/RF-RTL011522,
FK55534375000001.
GOM-1804-7358-V01.
MDE_FLEX1401_EMCA_rev01.
MDE_VIS_2212_RADIO_01 2023-0221-
EMC-TR-23-0122-V01.
NL-78727, NZBN: 9429047590168.
P23441LR.
RCM231005608R, RCM231005609R.
RSM24G1209CN 001.
S47229-00-00GA.**

Panama

**2111, 2483, 2909, 3035, 3084, 3226, 3377,
3579, 4577, 4820, 4821, 5050, 5192, 5815,
5816, 5817, 5843, 6119.**

Saudi Arabia

**CB JP TUV-46073, E13 10R-0616248.
TA 09012017-08012019-18964,
TA 10102017-10102019-21312,
TA 23032017-23032019-19857.
29563.
CB SG PSB-HS-05783, E24 10R-052022,
CB JP TUV-46073, E13 10R-0616248.**

TA 2018-1718.
 TA 2019-439, TA 2019-1205,
 TA 2019-1221.
 TA 2020-466, TA 2020-1043.
 TA 2021-935, TA 2021-1240,
 TA 2021-1296, TA 2021-1335,
 TA 2021-1560, TA 2021-1561,
 TA 2021-2069, TA 2021-2125.
 TA 2022-1160.
 TA 2023-423, 2023-631, 2023-1238,
 2023-1337.
 04038-007-24-1530355.

Serbia

И005 12, И005 13, И005 14, И005 15,
 И005 16, И005 17, И005 18, И005 19,
 И005 20, И005 22, И005 23, И005 23:
 И1623И10300, И005 24, И005 25.
 И011 13-4, И011 14, И011 15, И011 17,
 И011 18, И011 19.
 И038 21, И038 23: 0141_01375, И038 23,
 И038 24.

Singapore

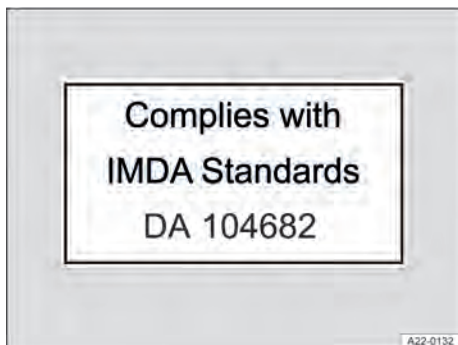


Fig. 241 Marking in accordance with radio communications regulations (illustration).

Complies with IMDA Standards:

DA103787, DA104328, DA104682,
 DA105282, DA107248, DA107974.
 DB103858, DB106879, DB107220.

Registration Number:

ESER/25/0054
 N3333-13.
 N0688-15.
 N0708-17, N4975-17.
 N2053-18, N2417-18, N3083-18,
 N3688-18.

G1594-19, G1858-19, N0722-19,
 N1599-19, N2404-19, N2405-19,
 N4247-19.
 N0982-20, N2152-20, N2533-20,
 N4334-20, N5358-20, N5856-20.
 G0443-21, N0041-21, N5963-21,
 N6963-21.
 N2941-22, N3020-22, N4176-22,
 N4381-21, N5976-22.
 G1231-23, N0337-23, N0374-23,
 N0414-23, N0452-23, N0488-23,
 N1233-23, N1291-23, N1631-23, N3567-23,
 N3958-23, S3262-23, S3263-23.
 G0001-24N1074-24, N2161-24,
 N3508-24, N6573-24, N6574-24,
 N6575-24, N6576-24.
 BCL LoA No 2424-01, NL-78727.

South Africa

TA-2005/614.
 TA-2009/464.
 TA-2010/1234, TA-2010/1235.
 TA-2012/1747, TA-2012/1821.
 TA-2013/2085, TA-2013/2465,
 TA-2013/2503.
 TA-2014/176, TA-2014/212,
 TA-2014/1783, TA-2014/2108,
 TA-2014/2597.
 TA-2015/2011, TA-2015/2084.
 TA-2016/169, TA-2016/501,
 TA-2016/820, TA-2016/863,
 TA-2016/1449, TA-2016/2568,
 TA-2016/2601, TA-2016/2759,
 TA-2016/3407, TA-2016/3539.
 TA-2017/1393, TA-2017/2824.
 TA-2018/175, TE-2018/180,
 TA-2018/732, TA-2018/844,
 TA-2018/998, TA-2018/1091,
 TA-2018/1205, TA-2018/1649,
 TA-2018/1650, TA-2018/2775,
 TA-2018/2868, TA-2018/3466,
 TA-2018/3561, TA-2018/3974,
 TA-2018/5159.
 TA-2019/115, TA-2019/348,
 TA-2019/582, TA-2019/583,
 TA-2019/1381, TA-2019/2347,
 TA-2019/2348, TA-2019/5101,
 TA-2019/5116_LTE-MBC-EU2,
 TA-2019/5167.
 TA-2020/2916, TA-2020/4885,
 TA-2020/5217, TA-2020/6392,
 TA-2020/7066, TA-2020/7103,
 TA-2020/7390.

TA-2021/0295, TA-2021/1608,
TA-2021/1613, TA-2021/2146,
TA-2021/2501.
TA-2022/0124, TA-2022/0298,
TA-2022/2916, TA-2022/3229,
TA-2022-3353, TA-2022/3381,
TA-2022/6392.
TA-2023/0232, TA-2023/0338,
TA-2023/0349, TA2023/0892,
TA-2023/1203, TA-2023/1851,
TA-2023/3425.
TA-2024/0552, TA-2024/3199.
TA-2027/1393.
TE-2018/180.

Suriname

T0011/15, T0035/16, T0049/14,
T0049/17, T0053/07, T0070/08,
T0077/18, T0090/08, T0154/20.

Tanzania

TCRA/TAC/160/2017.
TCRA/TAC/003/2018,
TCRA/TAC/302/2018,
TCRA/TAC/451/2018.
TCRA/TAC/102/2019,
TCRA/TAC/105/2019,
TCRA/TAC/152/2019,
TCRA/TAC/252/2019,
TCRA/TAC/256/2019,
TCRA/TAC/272/2019,
TCRA/TAC/273/2019,
TCRA/TAC/278/2019,
TCRA/TAC/325/2019.
TCRA/TAC/677/2020, TCRA/TAC/
1175/2020.
TCRA/TAC/1318/2021, TCRA/TAC/
1577/2021, TCRA/TAC/1726/2021.
TCRA/TECEDR/0001/2022, TCRA/
TECEMP/0028/2022, TCRA/TECESRD/
0057/2022, TCRA/TECESRD/
0073/2022.
TCRA/TECESRD/0053/2023, TCRA/
TECESRD/0176/2023.

Tunisia

AHO-0177-18, AHO-1262-18.
AHO-0637-19, AHO-0991-19,
AHO-1150-19.
AHO-0278-20, AHO-0514-20,
AHO-0817-20, AHO-1451-20,
AHO-2014-20, AHO-2033-20,
AHO-2081-20.

AHO-007-21, AHO-0699-21,
AHO-0925-21, AHO-0933-21,
AHO-0975-21, AHO-0997-21,
AHO-1333-21, AHO-1423-21,
AHO-1534-21, AHO-1684-21,
AHO-1685-21AHO-1816-21, AHO-1817-21,
AHO-2244-21, AHO-2517-21,
AHO-2604-21, AHO-2703-21.
AHO-0357-22, AHO-0463-22,
AHO-0522-22, AHO-1072-22, W-
AHO-2529-22, AHO-2565-22.
AHO-0278-23, AHO-0426-23,
AHO-1764-23, AHO-1796-23, W-
AHO-2179-23.
AHO-0053-24, AHO-0799-24.
63-71587.

Turkey

See EU declarations of conformity at
→ page 415.

Countries outside of the USA that certify and approve radio equipment based on the USA's FCC guidelines:

FCC ID:

2AOUZ17101001, 2AOUZ17101002,
2AOUZ17101010, 2AOUZ17101022,
2AOUZ17101023, 2AOUZ17101031,
2AOUZ17101032, 2AOUZ17101033,
2AOUZ17101034, 2AOUZ17101041,
2AOUZ17101042, 2AOUZ17101043,
2AOUZ17101051, 2AOUZ17101052,
2AOUZ17101053, 2AOUZ17101054,
2AOUZ17101055, 2AOUZ17101056,
2AOUZ17101057, 2AOUZ17101071,
2AOUZ17101072, 2AOUZ18020531,
2AOUZ18020532, 2AOUZ18020533,
2AOUZ18020534, 2AOUZ18100931.
2AVXWWSBRC001, 2AVXWWSBRS001.
2AXPS-WPC003-1, 2AXPS-WPC003-5.
2AA98, 2AA98A, 2AA98-COLOUR5C,
2AA98-MEDIUM5C, 772C-LB1FD.
BEJTLVHE4IU-E, BEJTLVUE4IU-N,
BEJTLVLM3IU-NBEJTLVUW3IU-WBEJTL-
VUW3IU-NBEJTLVUM3IU-WBEJTL-
VUM3IU-NBEJTLVUM3IU-E.
BEJLCW05-VWE5, BEJ-MEBICAS3, BEJ-
MIBPQMIN, BEJ-MIB3OI, BEJ-MIB3GP.
CWTUGZZF1, CWTUGZZF2.
IYZVK2.
KR5BCM37WBL, KR5-BCMEVOC.

**LTQR3TR, NBG013854, NBG01RS4,
NBG01RS53, NBG-BCMEVO,
NBGFS12P01M, NBGFS125C,
NBGFS125C1, NBGFS125C5,
NBGFS173NP, NBGFS173NPM,
NBGFS173NR, NBGFS19, NBGFS191,
NBGFS19S, NBGFS191S, NBGFS93N,
NBGMQBBB, NBGMQBBH, NBGRSB19,
NBG011719A, NBG013854.
NF3-F5CP42, NF3-FR5CPEC, NF3-
MRR1PLUS, NF3MRREVO14F, NF3-
LRR3SCU, NF3-LRR4.
NT8-FPK8IMMO5D, NT8-FPK105C,
NT8-VWMIBREGIO.
OAYARS4B, OAYARS5B.
QIPALAS6A-US, QZ9-KA3.
RK7MBC-NAR, RK7185-00, RX2BNFHL,
RX2BNFLL.
VPLYB1KD, YGONFCTGSAU336 .**

FCC part 15.19

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device must not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC part 15.21

WARNING TO USERS:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Wireless notice

This device complies with FCC radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment and meets the FCC radio frequency (RF) Exposure Guidelines. This transmitter must not be colocated or operated in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. The antenna should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 20 cm between the radiator and your body.

FCC Class A digital device notice

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 (and to Part 18) of the FCC Rules. These limits are

designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation.

FCC Class B digital device notice

NOTE: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Ukraine

**0754, 0781, 0816, 0826, 0848, 0849,
0869, 0870, 0871, 0872, 0874, 0880,
0911, 0912, 0942, 0978, 0992, 0993,
1004, 1033, 3476-CET, 04-1214/123,
737.21-ECT.
1APTIV R3TR, 1BOSC0001.
UA.TR.109.0009-18,
UA.TR.109.R.0389-18,
UA.TR.109.R.0394-18,
UA.TR.109.R.0425-18, UA.TR.028.**

UA.R.TR.052.089-19,
 UA 1.001.018968-19-TE,
 UA.1.001.018568-19-TE,
 UA.TR.109.R.0021-19,
 UA.TR.109.R.0133-19,
 UA.TR.109.R.0336-19,
 UA.TR.109.R.0337-19, 10094.007280-19,
 UA.R.TR.052.634-19,
 UA.R.TR.052.081-20,
 UA.TR.109.R.0273-21,
 UA.TR.109.R.0274-21,
 UA.TR.109.R.0340-21,
 UA.032.CT.0187-22, UA.032.CT.0280-22,
 UA.R.TR.052.204-22,
 UA.TR.109.R.0250-22,
 UA.TR.109.R.0253-22,
 UA.R.TR.052.091-23,
 UA.R.TR.052.044-23,
 UA.R.TR.052.090-23,
 UA.R.TR.052.050-23,
 UA.TR.109.R.0042-24,
 UA.TR.109.R.0282-24,
 UA.TR.109.R.0285-24.
629.60-CET, UA 1.001.021441-20-TE.
RTS.UKR.355-20/20 629.60-CET.
DoC_2024-01-31.

United Arab Emirates

TRA, REGISTERED No_DEALER No

VU20180914-012356.

ER0109760/13_DA0043253/10,
ER34947/14_DA0043252/10,
ER35423/14_DA35176/14,
ER37807/15_DA38660/15, ER450/20,
ER45520_DA44932,
ER46672/16_DA38660/15,
ER48223_DA44932,
ER49378/16_DA38660/15,
ER49719/16_DA0062437/11,
ER49796/16_DA35176/14, ER51643/17,
ER53878/17_DA44932/15,
ER54754/17_DA0043253/10,
ER61136/18_DA40068,
ER61137/18_DA0089862/12,
ER62570/18_DA44932,
ER63911_DA44932,
ER66801/18_DA77281/18,
ER68006/18_DA40068/15,
ER68006/18 TIC-D01-DS01,
ER69987/19_DA44932/15.
ER70046/19_DA44932,
ER70554/19_DA0043253/10,
ER71148/19_DA0043253/10,

ER71355/19_DA38660/15,
ER71413/19_DA0089862/12, ER71414/19,
ER73393/19,
ER74095/19ER76324/19_DA56674/16,
ER76326/19_DA56674/16.

ER77956/20_DA76153/18, ER88450/20,
ER89638/20_DA36975/14.

ER95816/21,
ER97243/21_DA0043253/10,
ER06372/22_DA0043253/10,
ER15318/22, ER15319/22, ER16161/22.

ER17500/23, ER17906/23,
ER22483/23_DA0086237/12,
ER22617/23_DA0043253/10.

ER27577/24.

VU20190312-003278,
VU20190412-004940.

CB SG PSB-HS-05783, E24 10R-052022,
CB JP TUV-46073, E13 10R-0616248.

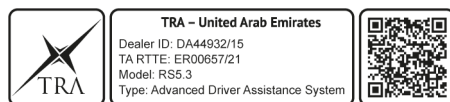


Fig. 242 ER00657/21_DA44932/15

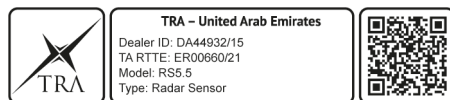


Fig. 243 ER00660/21_DA44932/15

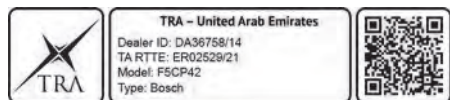


Fig. 244 ER02529/21_DA36758/14.

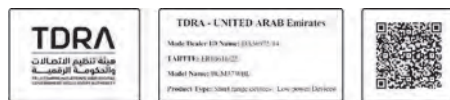


Fig. 245 ER10616/22_DA36975/14.



Fig. 246 ER16161/22

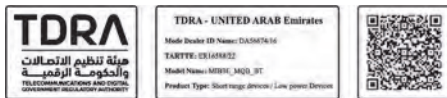


Fig. 247 ER16588/22_DA56674/16.

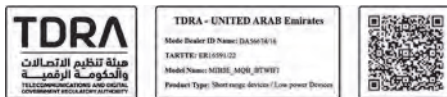


Fig. 248 ER16591/22_DA56674/16.



Fig. 249 ER18934/23.



Fig. 250 ER18944/23.



Fig. 251 ER19636/23.



Fig. 252 ER22469/23.



Fig. 253 ER24928/23



Fig. 254 ER28573/24

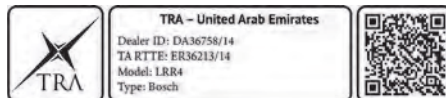


Fig. 255 ER36213/14_DA36758/14.

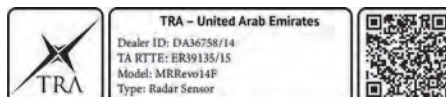


Fig. 256 ER39135/15_DA36758/14.

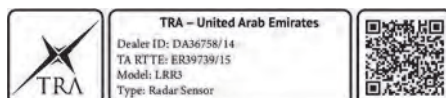


Fig. 257 ER39739/15_DA36758/14.



Fig. 258 ER41902/25.



Fig. 259 ER43831/16_DA36758/14.



Fig. 260 ER50430/16.

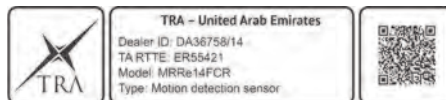


Fig. 261 ER55421/17_DA36758/14.



Fig. 262 ER57806/17_DA0086237/12.

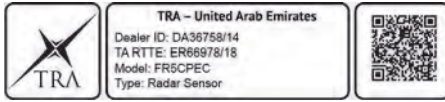


Fig. 263 ER66978/18_DA36758/14.



Fig. 264 ER69987/19_DA44932/15.

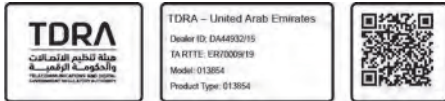


Fig. 265 ER70009/19_DA44932/15.



Fig. 266 ER70046/19_DA44932/15.



Fig. 267 ER70659/19_DA44932/15.



Fig. 268 ER76113/19.



Fig. 269 ER76114/19.



Fig. 270 ER76115/19.

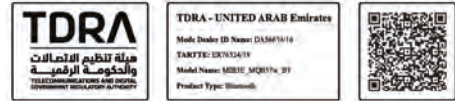


Fig. 271 ER76324/19_DA56674/16.



Fig. 272 ER76326/19_DA56674/16.



Fig. 273 ER76515/19.



Fig. 274 ER90294/20_DA0043253/10.

Technical data

Notes on technical data

Unless otherwise indicated or listed separately, the technical data for the basic model applies. Optional equipment, different model designs, custom vehicles and country-specific vehicle equipment levels can result in different values. All data in the official vehicle documents takes precedence over this data.

The official vehicle documents show which drive and which power output your vehicle has.

Weight

The values for the kerb weight in the following tables apply to the road-ready vehicle with a driver weight of 75 kg (approx. 165 lbs), service fluids including fuel tank carrying 90% of its capacity and, where applicable, tools and spare tyre. Additional equipment and retrofitted accessories increase the stated kerb weight and reduce the maximum permitted load accordingly.

The load comprises the weights of the following:

- Passengers
- Overall load inside and outside the vehicle.
- Add-on parts.
- Drawbar load when towing a trailer

The permitted gross vehicle weight rating and gross axle weight rating must never be exceeded. The permitted values are provided on the safety certificate ("safety compliance label") or on the type plate on the B-pillar.

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

Structure of the vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number VIN comprises 17 characters. These characters are categorised into seven groups.

Performance figures

The performance figures were measured without equipment which may influence performance, such as add-on parts.

The power output and performance figures may differ for reasons of vehicle registration or vehicle taxation.

The maximum speed may be limited and may therefore be lower for some engine versions in vehicles equipped with heavy-duty running gear.

Maximum trailer weight and drawbar load information

The figures for maximum trailer weight and drawbar load that are given on the type plate of the towing bracket are for certification purposes only. The correct values for your specific model, which may be lower than these figures, are given in the vehicle registration documents. The values in the official vehicle documents or on the vehicle's type plate or in the safety certificate always take precedence.

Gross combination weight

The gross combination weight ratings listed apply only to altitudes up to around 1,000 m (approx. 3,000 ft) above sea level. The maximum gross combination weight rating must be reduced by approximately 10% at the beginning of each increase of 1,000 m (approx. 3,000 ft) in altitude.

Explanation of the tables

Gearbox abbreviations: MG = manual gearbox, AT = automatic transmission. MG6 therefore means: 6-speed manual gearbox. <

Group	①			②			③		④	⑤	⑥	⑦					
Position:	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
Example	W	F	0	E	X	X	S	K	6	S	X	0	0	3	0	7	2

① Vehicle manufacturer identifier:

WFO Ford

② Filler characters: the filler characters may differ depending on manufacturer or contain information about the body or gearbox type.

③ Vehicle class per model:

SK Tourneo Connect, Transit Connect

Depending on manufacturer, the places 7 to 9 can also contain information on the fuel type (7) and vehicle class (8 and 9).

④ Filler or check character: the filler or check character may differ depending on manufacturer.

⑤ VIN index per model year:

S 2025

T 2026

U 2027

⑥ Production location, manufacturing plant:

X Poznań plant

The letter assignment of the production location may differ on a vehicle-specific basis or may be used twice.

⑦ Sequential production number in a model year.

Position of the vehicle identification number (VIN)



Fig. 275 In the windscreen: vehicle identification number.

The vehicle identification number (VIN) can be read from outside through a viewing window in the windscreen. The viewing window is located at the side in the bottom area of the windscreen.

Displaying the vehicle identification number in the Infotainment system

1. Touch the **Vehicle** function button in the Infotainment system.
2. In the **Vehicle** menu, touch the **Status** function button.
3. To display the VIN, tap the **Service** function button.

The VIN is displayed.

Depending on model, country and engine, the VIN may also be on the type plate or stamped at one of the following locations:

- In the bonnet space in the right water drainage channel.
- In the bonnet space on the right suspension turret.
- In the bonnet space close to the bonnet hinge on the right side of the vehicle.
- In front of the right front seat under the floor covering.
- Behind the right front seat under the floor covering.
- On the right side of the vehicle on the rear sliding door pillar.

Type plate

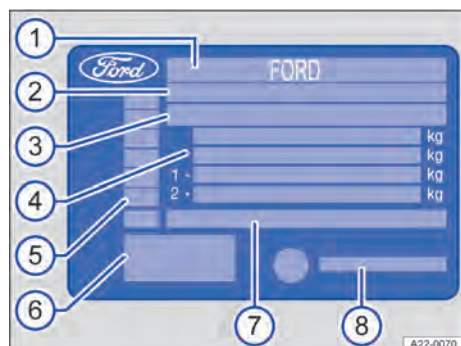


Fig. 276 On the B-pillar in the front door: type plate (illustration).

The type plate contains the following data:

- ① Manufacturer code.
- ② EU type approval number.
- ③ Vehicle identification number.
- ④ Gross vehicle weight rating
 - Gross combination weight rating (vehicle plus trailer).
 - Gross front axle weight rating
 - Gross rear axle weight rating
- ⑤ Engine code.
- ⑥ Manufacturer's address.
- ⑦ Official type designation.
- ⑧ Type approval number, country-dependent

Depending on country, the number of the type approval, e.g. EC type approval number, may be specified.

Dimensions

Depending on country and model, the type plate is visible in the lower area of the door pillar after opening the driver or front passenger door. Vehicles for certain export countries do not have a type plate.

Safety certificate

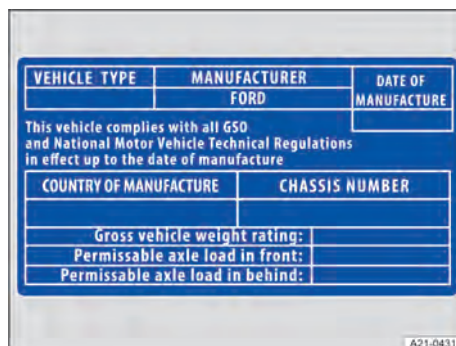


Fig. 277 Safety certificate (illustration).

A safety certificate on the door pillar in the driver door shows the following information:

- Vehicle type.
- Manufacturer.
- Date of manufacture.
- Country of manufacture.
- Vehicle identification number.

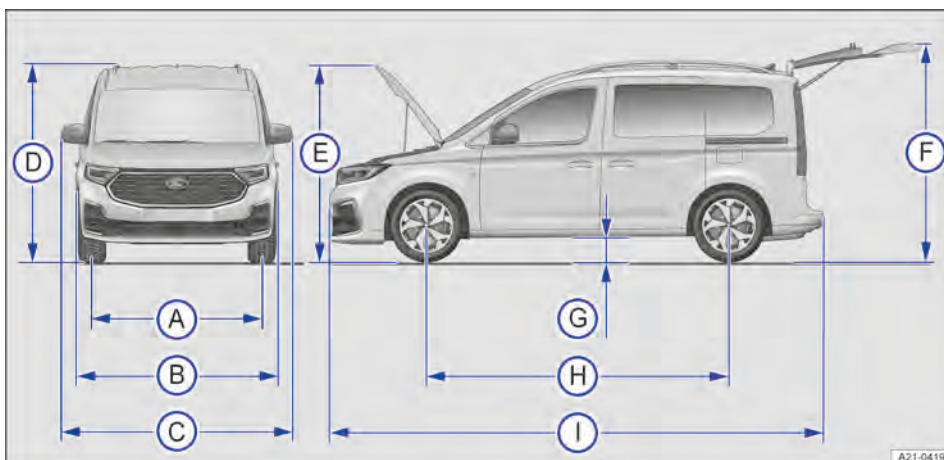


Fig. 278 Vehicle dimensions.

The data in the table applies to the most basic model.

The specified values can vary due to different tyre and wheel sizes, if additional equipment is fitted, for different model versions, for retrofitted accessories, and for

special vehicles. They can also vary in vehicles that have been manufactured for other countries.

Information on the composition of the weight values is provided in section → page 452.

Key to Fig. 278:			Tourneo/ Transit Con- nect L1	Tourneo/ Transit Con- nect L2
A	Front track	mm	1,565 – 1,572	1,565 – 1,572
	Rear track	mm	1,603 – 1,606	1,602 – 1,606
B	Width excluding exterior mirrors	mm	1,855	1,855
C	Width from one exterior mirror to the other	mm	2,100	2,100
D	Height at kerb weight	mm	1,798 – 1,819	1,800 – 1,823
	Height with aerial base at kerb weight	mm	1,830 – 1,856	1,835 – 1,860
	Height with roof railing at kerb weight	mm	1,832 – 1,853	1,836 – 1,859
E	Height with open bonnet at kerb weight	mm	1,773 – 1,792	1,773 – 1,791
F	Height with open boot lid at kerb weight	mm	2,155 – 2,180	2,155 – 2,183
G	Ground clearance between the axles when ready to drive	mm	153 – 180	152 – 179
H	Wheelbase	mm	2,755	2,970
	Turning circle diameter	m	11.4	12.1
I	Length (from bumper to bumper)	mm	4,500 – 4,515	4,853 – 4,868
①	Length with a factory-supplied towing bracket	mm	4,601 – 4,613	4,954 – 4,966

Capacities

Petrol engines, diesel engines

Fuel tank filling quantity:

approx. 50 litres

i The fuel tank capacity includes an unspecified reserve quantity which remains in the tank when the fuel gauge indicates that the tank is empty. The reserve quantity is variable and cannot be reliably used to increase the distance to empty.

Capacity of the AdBlue® tank:

approx. 15 litres



— If refill bottles are used to replenish the system, the AdBlue® fill level could be slightly higher for technical reasons.

— The filling quantity may be lower for technical reasons in cold climate conditions.

Washer fluid reservoir capacity:

3.2 litres to 5 litres

Petrol engines

1.5 l, 4-cylinder EcoBoost, 85 kW, petrol engine

Engine overview

Power output	kW	85 at 5,000 – 6,000 rpm	
Engine code		DXDE	
Maximum torque	Nm	220 at 1,500 – 3,000 rpm	
Transmission		SG6	AG7
Maximum speed Tourneo Connect L1	km/h	180 ^{a)}	179 ^{a)}
Maximum speed Tourneo Connect L2		180 ^{a)}	179 ^{a)}
Maximum speed Transit Connect L1		182	181
Maximum speed Transit Connect L2		182	181

a) Figures were not available at time of publication.

Tourneo Connect L1: weight ratings and axle loads

Transmission		SG6	AG7
Kerb weight ^{a)}	kg	1,544 – 1,638	1,583 – 1,672
Gross vehicle weight rating	kg	2,150 – 2,300	2,150 – 2,300
Gross front axle weight rating	kg	1,070	1,100
Gross rear axle weight rating	kg	1,110 – 1,260	1,110 – 1,260

a) The exact weight can be found on the vehicle's type plate → page 454 or safety certificate → page 454.

Tourneo Connect L1: maximum trailer weights

Transmission		SG6	AG7
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 %	kg	1,300 – 1,400	1,400 – 1,500
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 %	kg	1,500	1,500

Maximum trailer weight, unbraked	kg	750	750
Maximum gross combination weight rating, gradients up to 12%	kg	3,550 – 3,600	3,650 – 3,700
Maximum permissible draw-bar load	kg	75	75

Load for rear carrier systems → page 303, *Installing a rear carrier system or bicycle carrier on the ball coupling*

Tourneo Connect L2: weight ratings and axle loads

Transmission		SG6	AG7
Kerb weight ^{a)}	kg	1,606 – 1,696	1,639 – 1,729
Gross vehicle weight rating	kg	2,220 – 2,350	2,220 – 2,350
Gross front axle weight rating	kg	1,110	1,150
Gross rear axle weight rating	kg	1,160 – 1,280	1,150 – 1,270

a) The exact weight can be found on the vehicle's type plate → page 454 or safety certificate → page 454.

Tourneo Connect L2: maximum trailer weights

Transmission		SG6	AG7
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 %	kg	1,300 – 1,400	1,400 – 1,500
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 %	kg	1,500	1,500
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked	kg	750	750
Maximum gross combination weight rating, gradients up to 12%	kg	3,620 – 3,650	3,720 – 3,750
Maximum permissible draw-bar load	kg	75	75

Load for rear carrier systems → page 303, *Installing a rear carrier system or bicycle carrier on the ball coupling*

Transit Connect L1: weight ratings and axle loads

Transmission		SG6	AG7
Kerb weight ^{a)}	kg	1,419 – 1,735	1,453 – 1,772
Gross vehicle weight rating	kg	2,150 – 2,300	2,150 – 2,350
Gross front axle weight rating	kg	1,060 – 1,070	1,090 – 1,100
Gross rear axle weight rating	kg	1,210 – 1,320	1,210 – 1,335

a) The exact weight can be found on the vehicle's type plate → page 454 or safety certificate → page 454.

Transit Connect L1: maximum trailer weights

Transmission		SG6	AG7
--------------	--	-----	-----

Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 %	kg	1,300 – 1,400	1,400 – 1,500
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 %	kg	1,500	1,500
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked	kg	700 – 750	720 – 750
Maximum gross combination weight rating, gradients up to 12%	kg	3,550 – 3,600	3,650 – 3,750
Maximum permissible draw-bar load	kg	75	75

Load for rear carrier systems → page 303, *Installing a rear carrier system or bicycle carrier on the ball coupling*

Transit Connect L2: weight ratings and axle loads

Transmission		SG6	AG7
Kerb weight ^{a)}	kg	1,464 – 1,785	1,497 – 1,822
Gross vehicle weight rating	kg	2,250 – 2,300	2,250 – 2,350
Gross front axle weight rating	kg	1,110 – 1,130	1,140 – 1,170
Gross rear axle weight rating	kg	1,280 – 1,310	1,290 – 1,310

a) The exact weight can be found on the vehicle's type plate → page 454 or safety certificate → page 454.

Transit Connect L2: maximum trailer weights

Transmission		SG6	AG7
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 %	kg	1,300 – 1,400	1,400 – 1,500
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 %	kg	1,500	1,500
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked	kg	730 – 750	740 – 750
Maximum gross combination weight rating, gradients up to 12%	kg	3,600 – 3,650	3,750
Maximum permissible draw-bar load	kg	75	75

Load for rear carrier systems → page 303, *Installing a rear carrier system or bicycle carrier on the ball coupling*

Legal regulations for fuel consumption Energy consumption (off-vehicle charging), fuel consumption (combustion engine and not off-vehicle charging) and CO2 emissions

The WLTP values for fuel/energy consumption, CO2 emissions and range in electric operation were determined in accordance with the technical requirements and speci-

fications of the regulations (EC) 715/2007 and (EU) 2017/1151 as amended. The standardised test procedures used permit a comparison to be made between different vehicle types and manufacturers.

European Directive 1999/94/EC

The fuel/energy economy, CO2 emissions and electric range of a vehicle do not just depend on the efficient utilisation of the

fuel by the vehicle, but also on the driving style and other non-technical factors. CO₂ is the greenhouse gas that is mainly responsible for global warming. A guideline

on fuel economy and CO₂ emissions containing the data for all new passenger car models is available free of charge from all sales points.

Fuel consumption values

Low	Medium	High	Extra high	Combined	CO ₂ emissions
l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	g/km
—a)	—a)	—a)	—a)	—a)	—a)

a) Figures were not available at time of publication.

Diesel engines

2.0 l, 4-cylinder, EcoBlue, 75 kW, diesel engine

Engine overview

Power output	kW	75 at 2,750 – 4,250 rpm
Engine code		DXRD
Maximum torque	Nm	280 at 1,500 – 2,500 rpm
Transmission		SG6
Maximum speed Tourneo Connect L1	km/h	175
Maximum speed Tourneo Connect L2		175
Maximum speed Transit Connect L1		173
Maximum speed Transit Connect L2		173

Tourneo Connect L1: weight ratings and axle loads

Kerb weight ^{a)}	kg	1,618 – 1,716
Gross vehicle weight rating	kg	2,220 – 2,350
Gross front axle weight rating	kg	1,130
Gross rear axle weight rating	kg	1,130 – 1,270

a) The exact weight can be found on the vehicle's type plate → page 454 or safety certificate → page 454.

Tourneo Connect L1: maximum trailer weights

Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 %	kg	1,400 – 1,500
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 %	kg	1,500
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked	kg	750
Maximum gross combination weight rating, gradients up to 12%	kg	3,720 – 3,750
Maximum permissible drawbar load	kg	75

Load for rear carrier systems → page 303, *Installing a rear carrier system or bicycle carrier on the ball coupling*

Tourneo Connect L2: weight ratings and axle loads

Kerb weight ^{a)}	kg	1,681 – 1,769
Gross vehicle weight rating	kg	2,300 – 2,450
Gross front axle weight rating	kg	1,180
Gross rear axle weight rating	kg	1,160 – 1,290

a) The exact weight can be found on the vehicle's type plate → page 454 or safety certificate → page 454.

Tourneo Connect L2: maximum trailer weights

Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 %	kg	1,400 – 1,500
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 %	kg	1,500
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked	kg	750
Maximum gross combination weight rating, gradients up to 12%	kg	3,800 – 3,850
Maximum permissible drawbar load	kg	75

Load for rear carrier systems → page 303, *Installing a rear carrier system or bicycle carrier on the ball coupling*

Transit Connect L1: weight ratings and axle loads

Kerb weight ^{a)}	kg	1,495 – 1,816
Gross vehicle weight rating	kg	2,220 – 2,400
Gross front axle weight rating	kg	1,130
Gross rear axle weight rating	kg	1,240 – 1,355

a) The exact weight can be found on the vehicle's type plate → page 454 or safety certificate → page 454.

Transit Connect L1: maximum trailer weights

Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 %	kg	1,400 – 1,500
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 %	kg	1,500
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked	kg	740 – 750
Maximum gross combination weight rating, gradients up to 12%	kg	3,720 – 3,800
Maximum permissible drawbar load	kg	75

Load for rear carrier systems → page 303, *Installing a rear carrier system or bicycle carrier on the ball coupling*

Transit Connect L2: weight ratings and axle loads

Kerb weight ^{a)}	kg	1,543 – 1,864
Gross vehicle weight rating	kg	2,300 – 2,450
Gross front axle weight rating	kg	1,170 – 1,200
Gross rear axle weight rating	kg	1,330 – 1,360

- a) The exact weight can be found on the vehicle's type plate → page 454 or safety certificate → page 454.

Transit Connect L2: maximum trailer weights

Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 %	kg	1,400 – 1,500
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 8 %	kg	1,500
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked	kg	750
Maximum gross combination weight rating, gradients up to 12%	kg	3,800 – 3,850
Maximum permissible drawbar load	kg	75

Load for rear carrier systems → page 303, *Installing a rear carrier system or bicycle carrier on the ball coupling*

Legal regulations for fuel consumption Energy consumption (off-vehicle charging), fuel consumption (combustion engine and not off-vehicle charging) and CO2 emissions

The WLTP values for fuel/energy consumption, CO2 emissions and range in electric operation were determined in accordance with the technical requirements and specifications of the regulations (EC) 715/2007 and (EU) 2017/1151 as amended. The standardised test procedures used permit a comparison to be made between different vehicle types and manufacturers.

European Directive 1999/94/EC

The fuel/energy economy, CO2 emissions and electric range of a vehicle do not just depend on the efficient utilisation of the fuel by the vehicle, but also on the driving style and other non-technical factors. CO2 is the greenhouse gas that is mainly responsible for global warming. A guideline on fuel economy and CO2 emissions containing the data for all new passenger car models is available free of charge from all sales points.

Fuel consumption values

Low	Medium	High	Extra high	Combined	CO2 emissions
l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	g/km
a)	a)	a)	a)	a)	a)

- a) Figures were not available at time of publication.

2.0 l, 4-cylinder, EcoBlue, 90 kW, diesel engine

Engine overview

Power output	kW	90 at 2,750 – 4,250 rpm
Engine code		DXRA
Maximum torque	Nm	320 at 1,600 – 2,500 rpm
Transmission		SG6/all-wheel drive
		AG7

Maximum speed Tourneo Connect L1	km/h	185	186
Maximum speed Tourneo Connect L2		185	186
Maximum speed Transit Connect L1		183	186
Maximum speed Transit Connect L2		183	186

Tourneo Connect L1: weight ratings and axle loads

Transmission		SG6/all-wheel drive	AG7
Kerb weight ^{a)}	kg	1,714 – 1,808	1,656 – 1,750
Gross vehicle weight rating	kg	2,300 – 2,450	2,250 – 2,400
Gross front axle weight rating	kg	1,160	1,170
Gross rear axle weight rating	kg	1,200 – 1,340	1,130 – 1,270

a) The exact weight can be found on the vehicle's type plate → page 454 or safety certificate → page 454.

Tourneo Connect L1: maximum trailer weights

Transmission		SG6/all-wheel drive	AG7
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 %	kg	1,500	1,500
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked	kg	750	750
Maximum permitted gross combination weight	kg	3,800 – 3,950	3,750 – 3,900
Maximum permissible draw-bar load	kg	75	75

Load for rear carrier systems → page 303, *Installing a rear carrier system or bicycle carrier on the ball coupling*

Tourneo Connect L2: weight ratings and axle loads

Transmission		SG6/all-wheel drive	AG7
Kerb weight ^{a)}	kg	1,779 – 1,863	1,713 – 1,801
Gross vehicle weight rating	kg	2,350 – 2,500	2,300 – 2,450
Gross front axle weight rating	kg	1,210	1,220
Gross rear axle weight rating	kg	1,200 – 1,340	1,150 – 1,280

a) The exact weight can be found on the vehicle's type plate → page 454 or safety certificate → page 454.

Tourneo Connect L2: maximum trailer weights

Transmission		SG6/all-wheel drive	AG7
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 %	kg	1,500	1,500
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked	kg	750	750
Maximum permitted gross combination weight	kg	3,850 – 4,000	3,800 – 3,950
Maximum permissible draw-bar load	kg	75	75

Load for rear carrier systems → page 303, *Installing a rear carrier system or bicycle carrier on the ball coupling*

Transit Connect L1: weight ratings and axle loads

Transmission		SG6/all-wheel drive	AG7
Kerb weight ^{a)}	kg	1,606 – 1,886	1,530 – 1,850
Gross vehicle weight rating	kg	2,350 – 2,450	2,250 – 2,425
Gross front axle weight rating	kg	1,160	1,160 – 1,170
Gross rear axle weight rating	kg	1,320 – 1,395	1,240 – 1,360

a) The exact weight can be found on the vehicle's type plate → page 454 or safety certificate → page 454.

Transit Connect L1: maximum trailer weights

Transmission		SG6/all-wheel drive	AG7
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 %	kg	1,500	1,500
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked	kg	750	750
Maximum permitted gross combination weight	kg	3,850	3,750 – 3,925
Maximum permissible drawbar load	kg	75	75

Load for rear carrier systems → page 303, *Installing a rear carrier system or bicycle carrier on the ball coupling*

Transit Connect L2: weight ratings and axle loads

Transmission		SG6/all-wheel drive	AG7
Kerb weight ^{a)}	kg	1,657 – 1,937	1,579 – 1,896
Gross vehicle weight rating	kg	2,400 – 2,500	2,350 – 2,450
Gross front axle weight rating	kg	1,180 – 1,230	1,200 – 1,230
Gross rear axle weight rating	kg	1,350 – 1,395	1,325 – 1,340

a) The exact weight can be found on the vehicle's type plate → page 454 or safety certificate → page 454.

Transit Connect L2: maximum trailer weights

Transmission		SG6/all-wheel drive	AG7
Maximum trailer weight, braked, gradients up to 12 %	kg	1,500	1,500
Maximum trailer weight, unbraked	kg	750	750
Maximum permitted gross combination weight	kg	3,900	3,850 – 3,950
Maximum permissible drawbar load	kg	75	75

Load for rear carrier systems → page 303, *Installing a rear carrier system or bicycle carrier on the ball coupling*

**Legal regulations for fuel consumption
Energy consumption (off-vehicle charging), fuel consumption (combustion engine and not off-vehicle charging) and CO2 emissions**

The WLTP values for fuel/energy consumption, CO2 emissions and range in electric operation were determined in accordance with the technical requirements and specifications of the regulations (EC) 715/2007 and (EU) 2017/1151 as amended. The standardised test procedures used permit a comparison to be made between different vehicle types and manufacturers.

European Directive 1999/94/EC

The fuel/energy economy, CO2 emissions and electric range of a vehicle do not just depend on the efficient utilisation of the fuel by the vehicle, but also on the driving style and other non-technical factors. CO2 is the greenhouse gas that is mainly responsible for global warming. A guideline on fuel economy and CO2 emissions containing the data for all new passenger car models is available free of charge from all sales points.

Fuel consumption values

Low	Medium	High	Extra high	Combined	CO2 emissions
l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	l/100 km (mpg)	g/km
—a)	—a)	—a)	—a)	—a)	—a)

a) Figures were not available at time of publication.



List of abbreviations

Abbrevia- tion	Definition
A2DP	Advanced Audio Distribution Profile: Manufacturer-independent technology for audio signal transmission via Bluetooth.
AAC	Advanced Audio Coding: format for compressing audio files.
ABS	Anti-lock brake system: System that prevents the wheels from locking during braking.
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control: Adaptive Cruise Control.
ACT	Active Cylinder Termination: Active Cylinder Management.
AF	Alternative Frequency: Automatic station tracking.
AG7	Designation for the 7-speed automatic transmission.
AM	Amplitude Modulation: Medium wave.
APE	Designation for the file extension for the Monkey's Audio audio data compression method.
BAS	Brake Assist System: Brake assist system.
DAB	Digital Audio Broadcasting: Digital transmission standard for digital radio.
DAB+	Digital Audio Broadcasting Plus: Enhancement of DAB with optimised digital audio compression.
EBD	Designation for electronic brake pressure distribution.
EBS	Designation for the electromechanical brake servo.
EDL	Designation for the electronic differential lock.
EON	Enhanced Other Network: Enhanced Other Network.
ESC	Electronic Stability Control: Electronic Stability Control.
ESC	Electronic Stability Control: Electronic Stability Control.
eSIM	Embedded Subscriber Identity Module: Permanently installed, non-interchangeable SIM card.
FM	Frequency Modulation: Very high frequency (VHF).
GPS	Global Positioning System: Global navigation satellite system for position determination.
HFP	Hands-Free Profile: Bluetooth profile for wireless telephony.
ISO	International Organization for Standardization: International Organization for Standardization.
LED	Light-Emitting Diode: Light-emitting diode.
M4A	MPEG 4 Audio File: Audio file format.
MP2	MPEG-1 Audio Layer 2: Format for compressing audio files.
MP3	MPEG-1 Audio Layer 3: Format for compressing audio files.
MPEG	Moving Picture Experts Group: Group of experts that works on standardisation of video compression, among other things.
NFC	Near Field Communication: Standard for transmission of data in the near range by means of radio technology.
PIN	Personal Identification Number: Numeric passcode.
POI	Point of Interest: Interesting location.
QR Code®	Quick Response Code: Binäre Darstellung von kodierten Daten.
RDS	Radio Data System: Radio data system for additional services.
REACH	Registration, Evaluation, Authorisation and Restriction of Chemicals: EU Chemicals Regulation (EC) No. 1907/2006.

Abbrevia- tion	Definition
-------------------	------------

RoHS	Restriction of Certain Hazardous Substances: Directive on the restriction of hazardous substances in electrical and electronic equipment.
SAE	Society of Automotive Engineers: Non-profit organisation for technology and science.
SD	Secure Digital: Flash memory card format, is used for SD cards.
SDHC	Secure Digital High Capacity: Further development of the SD card.
SG6	Designation for the 6-speed manual gearbox.
SIM	Subscriber Identity Module: Subscriber Identity Module.
SMS	Short Message Service: text messaging service.
TCS	Traction Control System: traction control.
TIN	Tire Identification Number: Tyre identification number.
TP	Traffic Programme: Traffic Programme in radio mode.
USB	Universal Serial Bus: serial bus system for connecting external devices.
VIN	Vehicle identification number: Vehicle identification number. Number for un-ambiguous identification of a vehicle, chassis number.
WAV	Waveform Audio File: Audio file format.
WMA	Windows Media Audio:Format for compressing audio files.
WPA2	Wi-Fi Protected Access 2: Encryption method for a wireless network.
WPA3	Wi-Fi Protected Access 3: Encryption method for a wireless network.



Index

A

Abroad

- Extended trips with your vehicle 175
- Selling the vehicle 175

ABS

- see Brake support systems 167

Accessing service schedules

- Accessories 406

Acoustic warnings

- Seat belt not fastened 50

Active Park Assist

- Cancellation 218
- Driving into a parking space 224, 225
- Driving out of a parking space 226
- Looking for a parking space 224
- Parking parallel to the road 225
- Parking perpendicularly to the road 225
- Prerequisites for driving into a parking space 225
- Troubleshooting 218

Adaptive Cruise Control

- Adjusting 188
- Cruise Control 189
- Deactivating Distance Indication 189
- Displays 187
- Driving situations 185
- Overtake function 185
- Overtaking prevention 186
- Radar sensor 187
- Sensors 187
- Switching on and off 187
- System limits 187
- Troubleshooting 189

Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring

- Displays 202
- Switching on and off 203
- Troubleshooting 204

AdBlue

- Capacity 456
- Refilling 314

Address

- Importer 415

Adjusting

- Backrest on the second row of seats 107
- Correct sitting position 48
- Electrical lumbar support adjustment 104
- Electrically adjustable front seat 104
- Folding the backrest backwards 110

- Folding the backrest forwards 110
- Head restraints 112
- Headlamp range 123
- Mechanical front seat 103
- Seats in the second row of seats 109
- Steering wheel 101

Advanced Traffic Sign Display

- Functional limitations 41
- Trailer detection 42
- Troubleshooting 43

Aerial

- Location 410

Air pressure

- see Tyre pressure 367

Air recirculation mode

- Auto Air Refresh 133

Airbag system

- Curtain airbags 62
- Different front passenger front airbag systems 57
- Faults 408
- Front airbags 58
- Indicator lamp 57
- Repairs 408
- Side airbags 61
- Switching off the front passenger front airbag 59
- Switching off with key-operated switch 59

Alarm system

- Anti-theft alarm 94
- Anti-tow alarm 94
- Interior monitoring 94

All-year tyres

- 370

Android Auto

- 282

Anti-freeze

- 353

Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

- 167

Anti-theft alarm

- False alarm risks 95
- Trailer 299

Anti-theft wheel bolts

- 387

Apple CarPlay

- 281

Areas where special regulations apply

- 271

Armrest

- 114

Assist systems

- Adaptive Cruise Control 185
- Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring 201
- Advanced Traffic Sign Display 40
- Anti-lock brake system (ABS) 167
- Attention Monitor 37

Automatic Emergency Braking	193	Urgent warning	194
Blind Spot Assist	206	Using	197
Brake Assist system	167	Automatic lighting control (AUTO)	
Cruise Control	178	Switching on and off	123
Driver State Assist	204	Automatic Main Beam Control	
Drowsiness Monitor	35	Switching on and off	119
Electronic differential lock (EDL)	167	System limits	119
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	167	Automatic mode	
Front Cross Traffic Assist	196	see Climate Control	132
Hill Start Assist	169	Automatic switch-off for electrical consumers	
Junction Assist	197	Vehicle battery (12-volt)	360
Lane-Keeping System	198	Automatic transmission	161
Post Impact Braking	167	Changing gear	161
Predictive cruise control	190	Driving	163
Speed Limiter	180	Faulty	165
Speed limiter with predictive control	181	Gear selector position fault	166
Speed warning	41	Kickdown function	164
Traction Control (TCS)	167, 168	Launch Control	164
Traffic Sign Recognition	40	Overheated	165
Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator	373	Pulling away on uphill gradients	164
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System	377	Stopping on uphill gradients	164
Assistance systems		Auxiliary equipment or body parts	407
Eco Coach	184	Auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation	
Evasive Steer Assist	196	Operating mode	140
Asymmetrical tyres	398	Programming a departure time	141
Attention Monitor	37	Remote control	142
Adjusting	38	Remote control range	143
Functional conditions	37	Running time	141
Functional limitations	38	Supplementary heating function	140
Troubleshooting	39	Switching on	141
Warning levels	39	Auxiliary heater and ventilation	140
Authorised dealer	6	Average consumption	22, 27
Auto Air Refresh		Axle loads	456–460, 462, 463
see Climate Control	133		
Auto Hold function	214	B	
Auto Start/Stop	157	Backrest	
Indicator lamp	157	Folding backwards	107, 110
When towing a trailer	297	Folding forwards	107, 110
Automatic belt retractor	55	Tilting	107
Automatic braking intervention	216	Backrests	
Automatic Climate Control	132	Folding forwards	104
Automatic Emergency Braking	193	Bag hook	291
Advance warning	194	Ball coupling	
Cyclist Detection	193	Attaching	293
Distance warning	194	Fitting	293
Evasive Steer Assist	193, 196	Fitting a bicycle carrier	303
Front Cross Traffic Assist	193, 196	Pre-tensioning	293
Junction Assist	193, 197	Removing	295
Pedestrian Detection	193	Ball head	
Sensors	195	see Ball coupling	293
Speed ranges	194	BAS	
System limits	195	see Brake support systems	167
Troubleshooting	198	Battery	

Disposal of used batteries	413	Brake system	
Replacing in the remote control	144	Malfunction	150
Belt status display		Brakes	166
see Seat belts	50	Brake fluid	355
Belt tension limiter	55	Brake pad wear indicator	150
Belt tensioner		Brake pads	148
Disposal	55	Brake support systems	166
Service and disposal	55	Electric parking brake	210
Belt tensioners	55	Running in brake pads	148
Bicycle carrier		Unusual noises	150
Fitting on the ball coupling	303	Braking after a collision	
Blind Spot Assist	206	Post Impact Braking	167
Displays	207	Brands	252
Plus	208	Break recommendation	
Speed range	206	see Attention Monitor	37
System limits	206	see Drowsiness Monitor	35
Troubleshooting	208	Breakaway cable	
Blower speed		see Safety cable	299
see Climate Control	135	Breakdown	
Bluetooth interface	243	Making your vehicle safe	74
Bluetooth audio mode	243	Breakdown set	391
Bluetooth profiles	243	Check after driving for 10 mi-	
Bonnet		nutes	395
Closing	343	Compressor	392
Display	345	Contents	392
Opening	343	Inflating the tyre	392
Warning lamp	345	Preparations	392
Bonnet space		Sealing the tyre	392
Cleaning and care	403	When not to use	391
Engine oil	347	Bulb failure	
Plenum chamber	403	see Changing lights	323
Preparations	343	Button cell	
Safety notes	342	In the vehicle key	81
Boot lid	95	Replacing in the remote control	144
Driving with an open boot lid	173		
Opening and closing manually	96	C	
Brake		Camera	
Auto Hold function	214	Add-on parts	406
Brake assist system (BAS)	167	Damage	406
Brake fluid	355	Limits	177
Brake fluid level too low	357	Camera lenses	
Changing	356	Cleaning and care	403
Checking the brake fluid level	356	Capacities	
Specification	356	AdBlue	456
Troubleshooting	357	Fuel tank	456
Brake servo	166	Car washes	401
Brake support systems	166	Central locking	87
ABS	166	Central locking button	89
BAS	166	Central locking system	
EBD	166	SAFELOCK	91
EBS	166	Centre armrest	114
EDL	166	Centre wheel trim	
ESC	166	Fitting	385
TCS	166	Removing	385
		Changing a wheel	

Lifting the vehicle	388	Maximum cooling output	134
Procedure	381	Menu in the Infotainment system	134
Wheel bolts	387	Refrigerant oil	412
Changing bulbs		Roof ventilator	136
Checklist	324	Service fluids	412
Direction indicator repeater	326	Supplementary heating function	139
Preparations	324	SYNC function	134
see Changing lights	323	Temperature control	134
Changing gear	159, 161	Climate Control menu in the Infotainment system	134
Automatic transmission	161	Climate Control system	
Gear-change indicator	171	Auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation	140
Manual gearbox	159	Troubleshooting	145
Selecting a gear	161	Clock	34
Selecting a gear (manual gearbox)	159	Cockpit	12
Warning and indicator lamps	165	Coming Home function	122
With automatic transmission	163	Component protection	411
Charging		Connected vehicle	247
Mobile phone	236	Troubleshooting	248
Chassis number		Connection	
see Vehicle identification number	452	Bluetooth	243
Check list		Cable	242, 243
In an emergency	74	USB	236
Checklist		USB port	243
Accident	75	Wireless	242, 243
Breakdown	74	Connectivity components	239
Breakdown set	392	Continuous parking lamp	122
Changing bulbs	324	Control units	
Lifting the vehicle with the jack	388	Updating software	240
Preparation for changing a wheel	382	Controls	
Pro Trailer Backup Assist	227	Cleaning and care	405
Child seat	63	Convenience direction indicator	116
Airbag sticker	65	Conversions	407, 411
Approval categories	64	Coolant	
Securing systems	67	Adding	353
Securing with a lockable seat belt	72	Checking the coolant level	353
Securing with a seat belt	72	Coolant level too low	355
Securing with ISOFIX	68	Coolant temperature too high	355
Securing with the top tether	70	Filler opening	353
Standards	63	Specification	353
Weight classes	64	Troubleshooting	355
Childproof locks	90	Cooling	
Cigarette lighter	233	see Climate Control	134
Climate Control		Copyright law	252
Air distribution	135	Cross Traffic Alert	
Air recirculation mode	135	Operating	229
Auto Air Refresh	133	Cruise Control	178, 189
Automatic Climate Control	132	Displays	178
Automatic mode	132	Troubleshooting	180
Blower speed	135	Curtain airbags	
Cooling	134	see Airbag system	62
Defrost function	135	Customer information	410
Manual Climate Control	133	Cyber security	

Connectivity components	239	Display area	28
Minimising risks	239	Displays	27
Security mechanisms	239	Engine code	30
Cyclist Detection	193	Gear-change indicator	29
D		Information displays	28
Dash panel	12	Instruments	27
Airbag system	56	Main display	28
Data connection		Maximum speed limit	29
see Wi-Fi hotspot	246	Operating temperatures	30
Data protection	45	Operation using the multifunction steering wheel	28
Comfort and convenience systems	46	Radiator fan run-on	30
Control units	45	Secondary displays	28
Data services	45	Speed warning for winter tyres	29
Emergency call system	47	Telephone	30
Infotainment system	46	Digital instrument cluster Pro	
Maintenance data	45	Changing main display	24
Mobile device	46	Changing view	24
Modem	46	Coolant temperature	26
Setting data	46	Digital compass	26
Third-party services	45	Display area	23
Data transfer		Displays	22
USB port	243	Engine code	26
Data transmission	239	Extending the main display	24
Daytime running lights	117	Gear-change indicator	25
De-icing door lock cylinders	404	Information displays	25
Declaration of conformity	410	Instruments	22
Radio systems	435	Main display	23, 25
Decorative films		Maximum speed limit	26
Cleaning and care	403	Navigation information	26
Defrost function	135	Navigation map	24
Destination information		Operating temperatures	26
Digital instrument cluster Pro	27	Operation using the multifunction steering wheel	23
Diesel	310	Outside temperature display	25
Ageing	312	Radiator fan run-on	26
Diesel engines		Secondary displays	24, 25
Technical data	459	Speed warning for winter tyres	25
Differential lock		Telephone	27
see Electronic differential lock (EDL)	167	Views	23
Digital clock	34	Dimension	6
Digital Cockpit Basic		Dimensions	454
see Digital instrument cluster Basic	27	Directions	6
Digital Cockpit Pro		Directive 2014/53/AB	415
Digital instrument cluster Pro	22	Directive TR-355	415
Digital compass		Displays	
Digital instrument cluster Pro	26	Adaptive Cruise Control with Lane Centring	202
Digital fuel gauge	31	Bonnet	345
Digital instrument cluster		Cruise Control	178
Multifunction display	31	Driver State Assist	205
Outside temperature display	29	Lane-Keeping System	200
Digital instrument cluster Basic		Resetting driving data displays	32
Coolant temperature	30	Warning and information messages	21

Displays, screens		
Cleaning and care	405	
Disposal		
Airbag system	415	
Belt tensioner	55	
Electronic devices	413	
End-of-life vehicle	415	
Used batteries	413	
Doors	87	
Automatic locking and unlocking	89	
Electric childproof lock	90	
Locking and unlocking manually	88	
Manual opening and closing	88	
Download		
Over-the-air update	241	
Drawbar load	456–463	
Explanation of values	452	
Loading a trailer	300	
Drawer	232	
Driver door		
Indicator lamp	88	
Driver State Assist	204	
Displays	205	
Function	205	
Prerequisites	205	
Troubleshooting	206	
Driving		
Economically	172	
General driving tips	170	
Pulling away on uphill gradients	164	
Stopping on uphill gradients	164	
Water on the roads	174	
With a trailer	301	
With automatic transmission	163	
With respect for the environment	172	
Driving abroad		
Headlights	124	
Driving economically	172	
Driving into a parking space		
Active Park Assist	224	
Driving out of a parking space		
Active Park Assist	226	
With Cross Traffic Alert	229	
Driving through water	174	
Driving tips	170	
Spare wheel	384	
Temporary spare wheel	384	
Driving with respect for the environment	172	
Drowsiness Monitor	35	
Function conditions	35	
Functional limitations	35	
Level 1	36	
Level 2	36	
Level 3	37	
Resetting	36	
Setting	36	
Troubleshooting	37	
E		
EBD		
see Electronic brake pressure distribution	168	
EBS		
see Electromechanical brake servo	168	
Eco Coach	184	
EDL		
see Brake support systems	167	
Electric parking brake	210	
Auto Hold function	214	
Troubleshooting	212	
Electrical consumers	234	
Electrical lumbar support adjustment	104	
Electromagnetic radiation	409	
Electromechanical brake servo	168	
Electromechanical power steering	146	
Electronic brake pressure distribution system (EBD)	168	
Electronic differential lock (EDL)	167	
Electronic immobiliser	150	
Electronic Stability Control (ESC)	167	
Emergency	74	
Fire extinguisher	76	
First-aid box	76	
First-aid pack	76	
Warning triangle	76	
Emergency braking system		
see Automatic Emergency Braking	193	
Emergency switch-off function	157	
Emission control	312	
AdBlue	313	
Particulate filter	317	
Engine		
Noises	153	
Running in	171	
Engine and ignition		
Automatic ignition switch-off	152	
Ignition lock	151	
Ignition switched on warning	151	
Immobiliser	150	
Preheating	153	
Starting the engine	153	
Starting the engine with Keyless Entry	152	
Switching off the engine	156	
Switching off the engine with Keyless Entry	156	

Switching off the ignition with Keyless Entry	152	Frequency band	258, 259
Switching on the ignition with Keyless Entry	152	Front airbags	
Unauthorised vehicle key	150	see Airbag system	58
Engine code	454	Front camera for driver assistance systems	
Displaying	32	Limits	177
Engine compartment		Front Cross Traffic Assist	196
see Bonnet space	343, 347	Front head restraints	
Engine oil	347	Removing and installing	113
Changing	348	Front passenger front airbag	
Checking the engine oil level	349	see Airbag system	56
Consumption	349	Switching off with key-operated switch	59
Digital display	349	Front seats	102
Filler opening	349	Mechanically adjusting	103
Oil dipstick	349	Fuel	307
Standards	348	Diesel	310
Engine speed		Diesel ageing	312
see Rev counter	30	Fuel gauge	31
EU Chemicals Regulation	413	Fuel standards	308
EU Directive 2014/53/EU	415	Identification	308
Evasive Steer Assist	193, 196	Petrol	309
Exit Vehicle menu	34	Refuelling	311
Expert assistance	6	Fuel economy	
Explanations	6	Driving economically	172
Exterior mirrors	130	Fuel gauge	31
Driving with a trailer	297	Troubleshooting	31
Folding in	130	Fuel level	
Synchronous mirror adjustment	130	see Capacities	456
External audio source		Fuel types	308
Bluetooth audio	243	Fuelling	308
F		Functional limitations	
Fastening rings	292	Advanced Traffic Sign Display	41
Fire extinguisher	76	Attention Monitor	38
First row of seats		Drowsiness Monitor	35
Installing the head restraints	113	Fuses	328
Removing the head restraints	113	Colour coding of fuses	332
First-aid box		Detecting a blown fuse	332
see First-aid kit	76	In the dash panel	330, 331
First-aid kit	76	In the front compartment	329
Storage location	76	Replacing	332
First-aid pack		Types	332
see First-aid kit	76	G	
Floor mats	147	Gear display	
Folding table	233	see Gear-change indicator	171
Ford Assistant	277	Gear-change indicator	171
Activating or deactivating the activation word	278	Digital instrument cluster Basic	29
Activation word	277	Digital instrument cluster Pro	25
Displaying the activation word	278	Glass surfaces	
Ending	278	Cleaning and care	402
Starting	278	Global opening and closing	
Troubleshooting	278	Windows	99
Voice commands	278	Glove box	
		Light	125

Gross combination weight		
Explanation of values	452	
H		
Hands-free function	275	
Hazard warning lights	74	
Head restraints	112–114	
Headlamp range control	123	
Headlamps		
Cleaning and care	403	
Headlights		
Driving abroad	124	
Heating	134	
Auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation	140	
Rear window heating	139	
Seat heating	136	
Steering wheel heating	138	
Supplementary heating function	139	
Windscreen heating	139	
Heating and fresh air system	133	
High-pressure cleaner	401	
High-visibility waistcoat	76	
Hill Start Assist	169	
Hood		
see Bonnet	343	
Hubcaps		
Centre wheel trim	385	
Wheel bolt caps	386	
Wheel cover	386	
I		
Ice removal		
Defrost function	135	
Identification number		
see Vehicle identification number	452	
If and when	320	
Ignition lock	151	
Unauthorised vehicle key	151	
Illustrations	6	
Immediate heating (auxiliary heater)		
see Auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation	141	
Immobiliser	150	
Importer		
Address	415	
In an emergency		
Breakdown	74	
Check list	74	
Hazard warning lights	74	
Making you and your vehicle safe	74	
Indicator lamp		
Auto Start/Stop	157	
Driver door	88	
		Tyre Pressure Monitoring System 376, 381
		Indicator lamps
		ABS 168
		Airbag system 57
		Brake support systems 168
		Central locking 88
		Changing gear 165
		Electromechanical brake servo 168
		ESC 168
		Seat belts 50
		Information displays
		Digital instrument cluster Basic 28
		Infotainment system 248
		Adjusting brightness 253
		Adjusting screen brightness 253
		Adjusting the map display 253
		Aerial 410
		App overview 254–256
		Apple CarPlay 281
		Before using for the first time 248
		Control centre 253, 256
		Exit menu 34
		Factory settings 254, 257
		Ford Assistant 277
		Function buttons 253
		Home button 254
		Home screen 254
		Main menus 255
		Media 261
		Menu button 254
		Mobile Apps 279
		Mobile phone interface 271
		Muting 254
		Navigation 264
		Notes on use 251
		Operating 253, 254
		Other applicable documents 248
		Overview 253
		Pages 253, 256
		Personalising 256
		Quick guide 254
		Radio 258
		Safety information 248
		Screen 253, 255
		Settings 257
		Sound settings 257
		Switching on or off 254
		System settings 257
		Tiles 256
		Time and date 34
		Using the internet 245
		Vehicle settings menu 34
		Volume 253, 257
		Wi-Fi hotspot 245

Instrument cluster		Launch Control	164
Coolant temperature display	31	Leaving Home function	122
Digital instrument cluster Basic	27	Licences	252
Digital instrument cluster Pro	22	Lifting the vehicle	
Fuel gauge	31	Checklist	388
Service interval display	33	Jack	388
Symbols	17	Light	
Warning and indicator lamps	17	Interior lighting	124
Instrument displays		Lights	116
Digital instrument cluster Pro	25	Acoustic warnings if lights are not switched off	124
Instruments		Activating automatic switch-off of side lights and parking lights	121
Digital instrument cluster Basic	27	Automatic lighting control (AU-TO)	123
Digital instrument cluster Pro	22	Automatic Main Beam Control	119
Interior lights	124	Automatic switch-off of parking lamps	122
Interior mirror	129	Coming Home	122
Internet connection		Continuous parking lamp on both sides of the vehicle	122
Quick connection	246	Cornering light	123
Internet use	245	Daytime running lights	117
Mobile device	245	Dynamic headlamp range control	123
Technical specifications	246	Front fog lamps	120
Wi-Fi hotspot	245	Headlamp range control	123
ISOFIX	68	Instrument and switch lighting	124
see Child seat	63	Interior lights	124
J		Leaving Home	122
Jack	388	Parking lamp on one side of the vehicle	121
Jacking points	388	Reading lights	124
Jump starting	333	Rear fog lamp	120
Connecting the jump leads	335	Side lights	121
Jump-start connection point	335	Switching on and off	117
Preparing	334	Vehicle lighting	116
Removing the jump leads	336	Load compartment	
Starting the engine	336	Load compartment cover	284
Junction Assist	193, 197	see Luggage compartment	283
K		Stowage areas	291
Key-operated switch		Load compartment cover	284
Switching off front passenger front air-bag	59	Roll-up	284
Keyless Entry	83	Load compartment equipment	291
Emergency switch-off	157	Loading	
Press & Drive	152	Driving with an open boot lid	173
Starter button	152	Driving with open rear doors	173
Keyless locking and starting system		Fastening rings	292
Keyless Entry		General information	283
Engine and ignition	156	Load compartment	283
Kickdown function	164	Loadspace	283
L		Trailer	300
Lane-Keeping System	198	Looking for a parking space	224
Displays	200	Luggage compartment	283
Sensors	199	Lumbar support adjustment	104
Switching on and off	200		
System limits	199		
Troubleshooting	201		

M

Main display

- Digital instrument cluster Basic 28
- Digital instrument cluster Pro 25

Maintenance 400

- see Service interval display 33

Maintenance duel 33

Malfunction

- Component protection 411
- Rain and light sensor 127

Manoeuvring 209

Manual Climate Control

- see Climate Control 133

Manual gearbox 159

- see Changing gear 159
- Warning and indicator lamps 161

Maximum speed limit

- Digital instrument cluster Pro 26
- see Digital instrument cluster Basic 29

Maximum trailer weight 456–463

- Explanation of weight information 452
- Loading a trailer 300

Media 261

- Connecting and selecting a media source 262
- Entertainment playback 263
- Favourites 262
- Folder structure 262, 263
- Function 263
- My media 263
- Playing media 262
- Symbols 263
- Video mode 263

Media connections 242

Microfibre fabrics

- Cleaning and care 404

Mileage 22, 27

Mirrors

- Exterior mirrors 130
- Interior mirror 129
- Synchronous mirror adjustment 130

Mobile Apps 279

- Android Auto 282
- Apple CarPlay 281
- Connecting a mobile telephone 280
- Mobile Apps Wireless 280
- Symbols 279
- Technologies 279
- Wireless 280

Mobile online services 247

Mobile phone

- Connecting 272

- Pairing 272
- see Mobile telephone 409

Mobile phone interface 271

- Active and passive connection 273
- Basic 272
- Comfort 272
- Connecting 272
- Connection types 273, 274
- Contacts 274
- Email 275
- Favourites 274
- Function 273, 275
- Hands-free function 275
- Making phone calls 274
- Pairing 272
- Phone book 274
- SMS 275
- Switching off 271
- Symbols 275
- Text messages 275
- User profile 273
- Wireless charging 236

Mobile telephone

- Charging 233
- Switching off 271
- Use without external aerial 409

Modifications to the vehicle 406, 407

- Plates 411
- Stickers 411

Multifunction display

- see Digital instrument cluster 31
- Trip recorder 31

Multifunction steering wheel

- VIEW button 23, 28

N

Natural leather

- Cleaning and care 404

Navigation 264

- Additional window 267
- Controlling the navigation map 265
- Destination 269
- Destination input 269
- Edit route 266
- Entering a destination 269
- Entering an address 269
- Favourite destinations 270
- Favourites 266, 270
- Function 265, 268
- Home address 266, 269
- Last destinations 269
- Learn usage patterns 267
- Learned destinations 269
- Navigation announcements 266
- Navigation map 265

Online functions	270	Outside temperature display	
Online Traffic Information	271	Digital instrument cluster	29
Quick start	269	Digital instrument cluster Pro	25
Restrictions	265	Over-the-air update	
Route plan	266, 268	Download	241
Saved data	267	Software installation	241
Saving destination	266	Over-the-air updates	240
Saving destinations	270	Overview	
Selecting on the map	270	Centre console	14
Starting	269	Driver door	11
Starting route guidance	269	Driver side	12
Stored destinations	269, 270	Front passenger side	16
Suggested destinations	269	Front view	8
Symbols	268	Infotainment system	253
Traffic disruptions	271	Rear view	9
Updating navigation data	270	Rear view with rear doors	10
Using contact data	270	Roof	16
Work address	266, 269	Vehicle	8
Zooming into the navigation map	265	Overview of indicator lamps	17
Zooming out of the navigation map	265	Overview of warning lamps	17
Navigation information		P	
Digital instrument cluster	26	Paddles	
Navigation map		Automatic transmission	163
Digital instrument cluster Pro	24	Paintwork	
Net partition	286	Cleaning and care	402
Networked vehicle		Parking	
see Connected vehicle	247	Prerequisites	216
New engine	171	Parking lamp	121, 122
Noises		Parking lock	
Brake support systems	169	Manual release	166
Engine	153	Parking sensors	
Number of seats	48	Switching on and off	220
O		Parking Sensors	
Oil		Troubleshooting	220
see Engine oil	347	Parking systems	
Oil change service and maintenance due!	33	Troubleshooting	217
Oil change service due!	33	Parking the vehicle	209
Online functions		Particulate filter	317
Navigation	270	Gear-change indicator	171
Online Traffic Information	270	Regeneration	317
Online services		Pedals	49, 147
See mobile online services	247	Pedestrian Detection	193
Online Traffic Information	271	Performance figures	
Opening manually		Explanation of performance figures	452
Sliding door	91		309
Wing doors	98	Petrol	
Operating temperatures		Petrol engines	
Displays	26, 30	Technical data	456
Operation		Plastic parts	
Rear view camera system	221	Cleaning and care	404
Other applicable documents	248	Plates	411
		Post Impact Braking	167
		Potentially explosive atmospheres	271
		Power steering	

Electromechanical	146	Symbols	260
Fault	147	TP function	260
Mechanical steering column lock	146	Traffic Programme function (TP function)	260
Steering	146	Radio Equipment Regulations 2017	415
Troubleshooting	147	Radio reception	
Predictive cruise control	190	Aerial	410
Activating	191	Radio remote control	
System limits	191	see Remote control	142
Troubleshooting	193	Rain and light sensor	
Predictive Cruise Control		Malfunction	127
see Predictive cruise control	190	Rain/light sensor	127
Predictive speed limiter		Reading light	124
Activating	183	Rear doors	
see speed limiter with predictive control	181	Driving with open doors	173
System limits	182	Rear seats	106
Preheating	153	Rear view	10
Preparations		Rear view camera system	
Adding coolant	353	Operation	221
Checking the coolant level	353	Troubleshooting	223
Checking the engine oil level	349	Rear view mirror	129
Refilling engine oil	349	Rear window heating	139
Vehicle battery (12-volt)	358	Recycling	413
Working in the bonnet space	343	Recycling end-of-life vehicles	415
Prerequisites		Refuelling	
Parking systems	216	Fuel gauge	31
Pro Trailer Backup Assist	228	Remote control	
Automatic braking intervention	228	Button cell	144
Checklist	227	Using	142
Manoeuvring	228	Removing ice	402
Operating	228	Door lock cylinders	404
Protective films		Windscreen heating	139
Cleaning and care	403	Removing snow	402
Q		Removing wax residue	402
Qualified workshop	6	Repairs	406, 407
R		Airbag system	408
Radar sensor	187, 410	Plates	411
Limits	176	Stickers	411
Radiator fan run-on		Replacement wheel	
Digital instrument cluster Basic	30	see Spare wheel	383
Digital instrument cluster Pro	26	see Temporary spare wheel	383
Radio	258	Replacing bulbs	
Displaying station logos and the DAB slideshow	259	In the headlamps	325
Frequency band	258, 259	Tail lamp clusters	327
Function	258, 260	Returning end-of life vehicles	415
Multifunction steering wheel	259	Rev counter	22, 27, 30
Reception mode	258	Roll-back function	
Saving a station as favourite	259	Electric windows	100
SCAN mode	259	Roof load carrier	305
Selecting a station	258	Rubber seals	
Station list	259	Cleaning and care	405
Station logos	260	Running in	
		Engine	171
		The first kilometres	171
		Tyres	365

S

Safety	48	Sitting position	48
Safety cable	299	Seats with airbag components	
Safety certificate	454	Cleaning and care	405
Safety information	248	Second row of seats	107, 109
Scrapping	415	Installing the head restraints	114
Screen	253, 255	Installing the seat	109
Adjusting brightness	253, 255	Removing the head restraints	114
Seat		Removing the seat	109
Folding backwards	109	Secondary display	
Folding forwards	109	Digital instrument cluster Basic	28
Installing	109	Digital instrument cluster Pro	25
Removing	109	Selecting a gear	161
Seat belt height adjuster	54	Manual gearbox	159
Seat belt routing	53	Selective wheel torque control	26
Seat belt warning system		Selector lever position	
Seat belts	50	Digital instrument cluster Basic	30
Seat belts	49	Digital instrument cluster Pro	26
Belt retractor	55	Selling the vehicle	
Belt tension limiter	55	In other countries/continents	175
Belt tensioner	55	Sensico (premium artificial leather)	
Cleaning and care	405	Cleaning and care	404
Fastening	52	Sensors	176
Seat belt height adjuster	54	Add-on parts	406
Seat belt routing	53	Cleaning and care	403
Seat belt warning system	50	Damage	406
Unfastening	52	Limits	176
Seat covers		Troubleshooting	178
Cleaning and care	405	Service interval display	32, 33
Seat cushions with seat heating		Service menu	
Cleaning and care	405	Displaying the engine code	32
Seat functions	114	Resetting oil service	32
Seat heating	136	Service interval display	32
Seats	48, 102	Time	32
Adjusting the head restraints	112	Service position	
Adjusting the steering wheel position	101	Windscreen wipers	321
Correct sitting position	48	Services	
Electrical lumbar support adjustment	104	See mobile online services	247
Electrically adjustable front seat	104	Setting	
Fitting	111	Installing the seats	111
Folding the driver seat backrest forwards	104	Removing the seats	111
Folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards	104	Time and date	34
Installing head restraints	113, 114	Setting the time	32
Mechanical front seat	103	Setting the time and date	34
Number of seats	48	Side airbags	
Removing	111	see Airbag system	61
Removing and installing the front head restraints	113	Side lights	121
Removing head restraints	113, 114	Sliding door	
Retrofitting	48	Opening manually	91
Second row of seats	107, 109	Snow chains	371
		Spare wheel	372
		Temporary spare wheel	372
		Sockets	233
		12-volt	234
		230-volt	234

Software installation			Switching direction indicators on and off	116
Over-the-air update	241		Switching high beam on and off	118
Spanner symbol	33		Switching parking lamps on and off	121
Spare key			Symbols	
Releasing	81		Media	263
spare wheel			Mobile phone interface	275
Remove	383		Navigation	268
Spare wheel	383		Radio	260
Driving tips	384		see Warning lamp overview	17
Fitting	389		SYNC function	
Information	367		see Climate Control	134
Snow chains	372		System update	
Spares	406		Prerequisites	240
Speed limiter			see Over-the-air updates	240
with predictive control	181		Troubleshooting	242
Speed Limiter	180		Systems	
Displays	180		ABS	167
Operating	181		Anti-lock brake system (ABS)	167
Troubleshooting	181		BAS	167
Speed limiter with predictive control			Brake Assist system (BAS)	167
Troubleshooting	183		EBD	168
Speed rating letter	398		EDL	167
Speed warning			Electromechanical brake servo (EBS)	168
Function conditions	41		Electronic brake pressure distribution (EBD)	168
Operating	41		Electronic differential lock (EDL)	167
Warning levels	43		Hill Start Assist	169
Speed warning for winter tyres			TCS	167
Adjusting	25, 29		Traction Control (TCS)	167
Speeds	6			
Starter button	152		T	
Starting the engine			Tachometer	
Emergency switch-off	157		see Rev counter	30
Immobiliser active	156		Tail lamp clusters	
Limited power	155		Cleaning and care	403
Steering column lock	146		Tailgate	
Electronic	146		see Boot lid	95
Steering wheel	101		TCS	
Adjusting	101		see Brake support systems	167, 168
Steering wheel heating	138		Switching on and off	168
Sticker	411		Technical data	452
Stowage	231		Capacities	456
Stowage areas			Dimensions	454
Drawer	232		Drawbar load	452
Folding table	233		Engine code	454
Glove box light	125		Engine oil standards	348
Wireless charging function	236		Factory plate	454
Stowing loads	283		Gross combination weight	452
Sun visors	131		Information on weights	452
Supplementary heating function			Maximum trailer weight	452
see Climate Control	139		Performance figures	452
Supplementary heating system			Safety certificate	454
see Auxiliary heater and auxiliary ventilation	140		Type plate	454
Switch-off for electrical consumers				
Vehicle battery (12-volt)	360			

Tyre pressure	367	Anti-theft alarm	299
Technical modifications		Drawbar load	300
Plates	411	Driving	301
Stickers	411	Exterior mirrors	297
Temperature control		Fitting the ball coupling	293
see Climate Control	134	Headlamp adjustment	301
Temperature display		LED tail lamp clusters	298
Digital instrument cluster	29	Loading	300
Digital instrument cluster Pro	25	Maximum trailer weight	300
Temporary spare wheel	383	Removable ball coupling	293
Temporary spare wheel		Removing the ball coupling	295
Driving tips	384	Retrofitting a towing bracket	296
Fitting	389	Safety cable	299
Snow chains	372	see Trailer towing	297
Text messages	275	Tail lamp clusters	298
Email	275	Towing	301
SMS	275	Trailer stabilisation	302
Textiles		Trailer stabilisation	302
Cleaning and care	404	Trailer towing	297
Things to note		Transport and towing	
Towing	301	Emergency situations	338
Third row of seats		Front mounting point	339
Folding the backrest backwards	110	Front towing eye	339
Folding the backrest forwards	110	Pulled vehicle	338
Installing the head restraints	114	Pulling vehicle	338
Installing the seats	111	Rear mounting point	340
Removing the head restraints	114	Rear towing eye	340
Removing the seats	111	Useful information for transport	336
Tightening torque		With a breakdown truck	337
Checking	369	With a towing bracket	341
Wheel bolts	369, 390	Transportation	
Tools		see Trailer towing	297
see Vehicle toolkit	320	Transporting	
Top tether		Roof load carrier	305
see Child seat	63	Transporting items	283
Total mileage	22, 27	Bag hook	291
Touchscreen		Driving tips	173
see Screen	253, 255	Driving with a trailer	301
Tow starting	333	Driving with an open boot lid	173
Tow-starting		Driving with open rear doors	173
see Jump starting	336	Fastening rings	292
Towing bracket		Folding the front passenger seat back-	
Fitting	293	rest forwards	104
Retrofitting	296	Loading a trailer	300
see Trailer towing	297	Loading the roof load carrier	306
TP function		Securing roof load carriers	305
see Traffic Programme function (TP		Stowing loads	283
function)	260	Travel mode	124
Traction Control (TCS)	167, 168	Tread depth	369
Traction disruptions	271	Tread wear indicators	370
Traffic Programme function (TP func-		Trim parts	
tion)	260	Cleaning and care	403, 405
EON	260	Trim strips	
Traffic Sign Recognition	40	Cleaning and care	405
Trailer		Triman	414

Troubleshooting

AdBlue level low	317
Airbag triggering	93
Automatic transmission	165
Boot lid is stiff	97
Brake pedal indicator lamp	165
Brake support systems	168
Brake system	150
Clutch	161
Direction indicator	120
Direction indicators do not flash when locking	93
Driving instructions	150
eCall Emergency System	79
Emergency start function	155
Emergency switch-off	157
Emissions-relevant fault	319
Engine management system	154, 155
Engine oil: Engine oil level is too low	351
Engine oil: Engine oil level too high	351
Engine oil: Engine oil pressure too low	351
Engine oil: Engine oil sensor fault	351
Engine overheating	155
Engine speed limitation	155
Exterior drive lighting	120
Glow plug system	155
Immobiliser	154
Irregular engine running	318
Keyless Entry	155
Lights	120
Limited power	155
Manual gearbox	161
Misfiring	319
One-touch opening and closing do not work	100
Parking systems	217
Particulate filter clogged	319
Particulate filter clogged with soot	318
Power steering	147
Rain and light sensor	120, 127
Red LED in the driver door lights up continuously	93
Seat belt warning system	52
Seat radio system	52
Selective catalytic reduction system fault	316
Starter button	154, 155
Trailer direction indicator	120
Vehicle battery (12-volt) indicator lamp	362

Vehicle battery (12-volt) warning lamp	362
Vehicle battery (12-volt): low charge level	362
Vehicle key not recognised	155
Vision	127
Washer fluid level	127
Window cannot be closed	100
Wipers	127

Two-way radio

Use without external aerial	409
-----------------------------	-----

Type plate

Type damage	372
-------------	-----

Tyre load

Tyre Mobility System	398
----------------------	-----

see Breakdown set	391
-------------------	-----

Tyre pressure

Checking	367
Spare wheel	367
Tyre pressure sticker	368

Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator

Function	373
Indicator lamp	376
Limits	375
Malfunction	376
Replacing tyres	366
Synchronising	376
System limits	375
Troubleshooting	376

Tyre pressure monitoring

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System	377
---------------------------------	-----

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

Adjusting	380
Adjusting the tyre pressure	380
Display of tyre pressures	378
Function	377
Indicator lamp	376, 381
Limits	379
Load level	380
Malfunction	376, 381
Replacing tyres	366
Selecting the tyre type	380
Spare wheel	380
System limits	379
Troubleshooting	376, 381
Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator	373
Tyre types	380

Tyre repair set

see Breakdown set	391
-------------------	-----

Tyre wear

Tyres	370
-------	-----

Tyres	
Troubleshooting	372

Tyres with directional tread pattern

U

Updating software 240

USB port 236, 243

Data transfer 243

Using a telephone 274, 409

Using the internet in the vehicle 245

V

Vanity mirrors 131

Vehicle

Making safe in the event of break-down 74

Notes on care products 400

Recycling 415

Returning 415

Vehicle battery (12-volt)

Automatic switch-off for electrical consumers 360

Charging 359

Checking the electrolyte level 358

Connecting 359

Discharge 361

Disconnecting 359

Explanation of symbols 357

Preparations 358

Replacing 359

Vehicle care

Bonnet space 403

Camera lenses 403

Controls 405

Decorative films 403

Displays, screens 405

Electrically adjustable seats 405

Exterior 402

Glass surfaces 402

Headlamps 403

Interior 404

Microfibre fabrics 404

Natural leather 404

Notes 400

Paintwork 402

Plastic parts 404

Polishing the paintwork 402

Preserving the paintwork 402

Protective films 403

Rubber seals 405

Seat belts 405

Seat covers 405

Seat cushions with seat heating 405

Seats with airbag components 405

Sensico (premium artificial leather) 404

Sensors 403

Service position for windscreen wipers 321

Tail lamp clusters 403

Textiles 404

Trim parts 403, 405

Trim strips 403, 405

Wheels 404

Windows 404

Winter conditions 400

Wiper blades 322, 402

Vehicle identification number 452

Position 453

Vehicle key 80

Changing the button cell 81

Functions 80

Synchronising 82

Vehicle overview

Driver side 12

Vehicle overviews

Centre console 14

Driver door 11

Front passenger side 16

Front view 8

Rear view 9

Rear view with rear doors 10

Roof 16

Vehicle settings menu

Opening 34

Setting 34

Vehicle status 34

Vehicle toolkit

Contents 320

Stowage 320

Ventilation 134, 135

Air distribution 135

Air recirculation mode 135

Blower 135

Defrost function 135

Visibility

Mirrors 128

Sun blind 131

Wipers 125

Vision 125

Voice amplification

see Voice Enhancer 258

Voice assistant

Android Auto 282

Personalising the activation word 278

Voice assistant (Siri)

Apple CarPlay 281

Voice Enhancer 258

Volume

Infotainment system 253

W

Warning and indicator lamps

Brakes	150	Low-profile tyres	398
Manual gearbox	161	New tyres	365
Warning lamp		Old tyres	365
Brake support systems	168	Replacing	364
Brake system	168	Replacing tyres	366
Warning lamps		Rotating wheels	369
Changing gear	165	Running in	365
Warning triangle	76	Snow chains	371
Washer fluid		Spare wheel	367, 383
Checking	346	Spare wheels	364
Refilling	346	Speed index	398
Washing by hand	402	Storing	364
Washing the vehicle		Storing tyres	365
Automatic car washes	401	Stowing the removed wheel	384
Hand wash	402	Technical data	396
High-pressure cleaner	401	Temporary spare wheel	383
Waste recycling	414	Tread depth	369
Water in fuel		Tread wear indicators	370
Warning lamp	31	Troubleshooting	372
Weight		Tyre damage	372
Explanation of weight information	452	Tyre lettering	396
Weight ratings	456–460, 462, 463	Tyre load	398
Wheel bolt caps		Tyre type	396
Fitting	386	Tyre wear	370
Removing	386	Tyres with directional tread pattern	398
Wheel bolts	387	Winter tyres	370
Caps	386	Wi-Fi	
Tightening torque	369, 390	Quick connection	246
Wheel change		Wi-Fi hotspot	245
Changing a wheel	389	Configuring	245
Preparations	382	Data connection	246
Wheel cover		Deactivate	246
Fitting	386	Infotainment system	245
Removing	386	Mobile device	246
Wheel lock		Windows	98
see Anti-theft wheel bolts	387	Cleaning and care	404
Wheel rims		Defrost function	135
Bolted-on rim rings	367	Global opening and closing	99
Bolted-on trim elements	367	Opening and closing	98
Identification	367	Roll-back function	100
Wheels		Windscreen	
Cleaning and care	404	Defrost function	135
Maintenance	369	Windscreen heating	139
Rotating	369	Windscreen heating	139
Troubleshooting	372	Wing doors	
Wheels and tyres		Door arrester	98
All-year tyres	370	Opening and closing	98
Asymmetrical tyres	398	Opening manually	98
Avoiding damage	364	Winter conditions	
Care	364	Snow chains	371
Changing a wheel	381	Vehicle care	400
Embedded foreign bodies	373	Winter tyres	370
Handling tyres and wheel rims	364	Winter tyres	370
Identification	396	Speed limitation	371

Wiper blades	321
Changing	322
Cleaning and care	322, 402
Wipers	
Folding back wiper arm	321
Function	126
Heated washer jets	126
Lifting wiper arm	321
Rain and light sensor	127
Service position	321
Wiper lever	125
Wireless accessory charger	
Troubleshooting	238
Wireless charging function	236